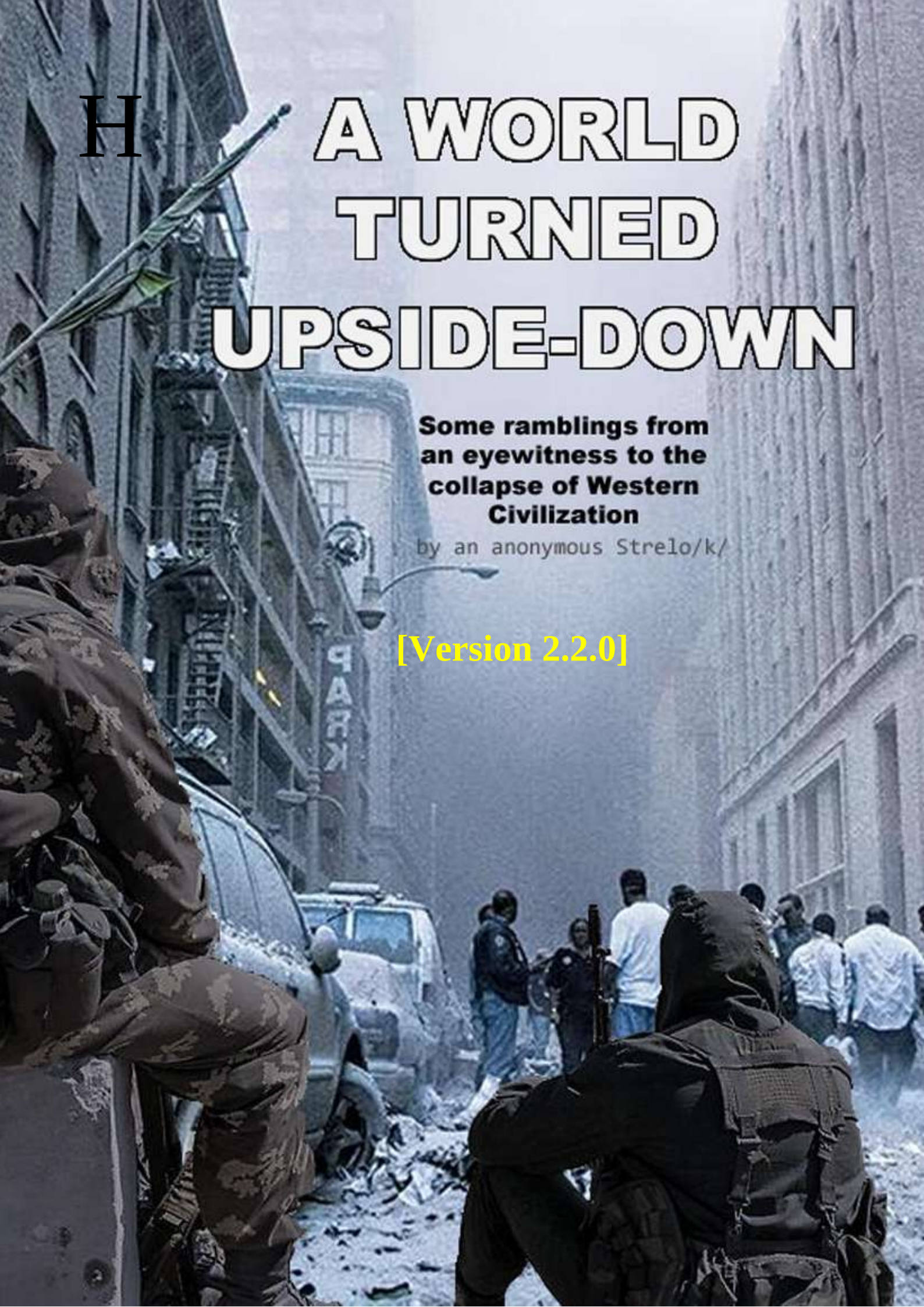

H
A WORLD TURNED UPSIDE-DOWN
Some ramblings from an eyewitness to the collapse of Western Civilization
by an anonymous Strelo/k/
[Version 2.2.0]

[Version 2.2.0]

Dedicated to the anons of /k/ and /wrol/ - godspeed, brothers.

Special thanks and mentions to "Jim", "Sev", the USMC anon, treeanon, and many, many more, all of whom contributed in big or small ways, knowingly and unknowingly. This book exists thanks to you and those like you, who seek to preserve and restore what we lost long ago.

Contents:

☼ **Part 1 - Fall of the British-American Global Imperium**:
History and Background of our problems

☼ **Part 2 - Psychopolitics of Pre-Collapse Environments**:
Risk Factors and Mitigation

☼ **Part 3 - Sword And Shield**:
Defending Your Tribe Under Collapse Conditions

☼ **Part 4 - After The Fall**:
Rebuilding Your Civilization From The Ground Up

☼ Bibliography and Suggested Reading

Author's note: I apologize for the rambling and poorly-(self)edited nature of this booklet. I had never planned to write it as it stands, it had started out as a useful list of handy hints and tips borrowed from all over the web, with different pieces written at different times, and grew and grew over time as I continued to witness our society going from bad to worse. Finally I decided to share it online, in the hope that it would help others who had come to the same concerning realizations as I have.

This book is published under a *copyleft* licence: you are encouraged to share and distribute this book on the condition that you do so without any modification of the contents and without charging or financially profiting from the distribution. Readers are welcome to bundle their own knowledge along with this book if they wish, as long as they make clear to readers that the information they choose to additionally provide was not part of the original book.

This book is intended for academic and entertainment purposes only. All content and information published in this book is provided to the reader "as is" and without any warranties. The situations and activities described in the book carry inherent risks and hazards. Readers must evaluate and bear all risks associated with use of any information provided in this book, including those risks associated with reliance on the accuracy, thoroughness, utility, or appropriateness of the information for any particular situation The author specifically disclaims all responsibility for any liability, loss, or risk, personal or otherwise, which is incurred as a consequence of the use, misuse, or application of any of the contents of this book.

This book is intended for reading and discussion by mature and rational adults. No time was wasted genuflecting to the idiotic unwashed rabble over the controversial and politically-incorrect statements contained within. If you're offended by any of the contents, just stop reading it.

As usual, heavily-edited or brand-new text in each edition will be presented in green so it can easily be found. Links will generally NOT be hyperlinked, but will be shown in **blue** for clarity.

Note Regarding the Links in This Document:

Where possible, the archived form of articles have been used, but the author recommends skimming through and downloading a copy of each video or file linked to in this book, as the internet is an unstable place and everything on it's subject to "link rot", deletion, or removal.

PARTIAL GLOSSARY OF TERMS

TEOTWAWKI - The End Of The World As We Know It - also see: SHTF

SHTF - Shit Hits The Fan, also see: TEOTWAWKI

EMP - Electro-Magnetic Pulse - fries electronics by overloading the circuits

CME - Coronal Mass Ejection (essentially, a solar fart acting as giant EMP)

Team - in this document means a like-minded post-SHTF group of 5+ people.

Group - in this document means a like-minded post-SHTF team of 5+ people.

Tribe - in this document means your team or group plus any of the more trusted and ideologically aligned members of their immediate or extended families.

Raiders - members of any hostile gang or group, with the ability to harm your people.

AO - Area of Operations - the location your actions take place in, after SHTF.

ACWE - the author's acronym for ***A**nglo-**C**entric **W**orld **E**mpire*: The political element of the US/NATO/Western bureaucracy, in particular the US State Department (the dominant element controlling all US foreign policy), as well as it's pseudo-religious element known as the "Cathedral" (see below), and plus the dominions and possessions under its hegemony or subject to its political control/influence (such as, but not limited to, the United States itself and its allies). similar terms used by other authors include **GAE** (Global American Empire), and **AINO** (America In Name Only).

The "Cathedral" - "Mencius Moldbug"'s term for the coalition of academics, journalists and hand-wringers that controls the US empire, centred on Harvard University and the London School of Economics. Essentially they form an "*elite within the elite*" of Western power - the Cathedral is what sets the "public policy"/morality, which scribes the modern Left's liturgy of Universalism (see below). These policies inform academia, mass media and government, which are the main pillars of the Establishment in the western world. See his "brief" explanation of the term: **https://archive.is/di6Zw**

Universalism - an atheistic belief system or pseudo-religion that is prevalent in ACWE, especially among its rulers and leaders. Its moral beliefs are very loosely based on, but also violently hostile to, Christianity, and include unthinking support for anyone considered to be a "victim".

Public Opinion - the attitudes that one can acceptably express in public without the danger of socially isolating oneself, thereby acting as a social force to keep people in line.

Overton Window - a concept delineating the "acceptable" internal limits of public opinion, which may vary from group to group. E.g., saying "*nigger*" at work is almost certain to get you fired, while saying it somewhere like 4chan would not.

Spiral of Silence - a sociological term referring to the pressure people feel to conceal their views when they believe themselves to be in the minority. Used politically to manipulate public opinion by e.g. censoring, deleting, and *shadow-banning* content that's within the public's Overton Window, but outside the Cathedral's one.

Asabiyyah - an Arabic word meaning a group's collective social cohesion and shared sense of purpose (pronounced ASS-ah-bee-YAh). A very similar concept to the German term *gemeinschaft*.

Part 1 - Fall of The British-American Global Imperium: History & Background of the Issues.

1. The Collapse

In one of the more memorable film scenes from *the Matrix*, Morpheus pauses before offering Neo the red pill and he says to him;

> "*You're here because you know something. What you know, you can't explain, but you feel it. You've felt it your entire life - that there's something wrong with the world. You don't know what it is, but it's there, like a splinter in your mind, driving you mad*".

Based on the fact you're reading this, I assume you have this feeling too, that *something* is wrong with the world you live in, and it bothers you. As John Mosby puts it in the introduction to his excellent book *Forging The Hero;* "*shit just ain't right*" - very few if any of our institutions work the way we know they ought to. They're grossly inefficient, pathetically incompetent or have strayed so far from their initial purposes they have forgotten their true mission. There are a number of reasons for this.

The first of course, is that entities will decay over time. The initial founder or founders are replaced by individuals who are lacking in those ineffable qualities, because the traits and abilities necessary to create a successful operation or entity are different than the traits and abilities selected for when climbing a corporate or organizational ladder. Founders tend to be highly driven but somewhat awkward introverts, but CEO's tend to be more of smart but average guys who get along with most people and know how to organize a party. The nature of any large organization is to reward people who get along easily with others and don't make a lot of waves while being supportive... this tends to involve support of a lot of bad ideas too, so you eventually end up with a sclerotic organization full of "*sensitive and supportive*" happy campers and yes-men.

In America and Europe, institutional decay has also veered politically due to the left's "*long march through the institutions*" - leftists have long discarded pure meritocracy to turn every possible entity into patronage programs, rewarding members of their coalition with comfortable positions in order to gain greater power. This did no serious harm when decision-marginal positions such as the labor force unionized, but not when the entire organization is in the same position.

For example, the maintenance department of the Washington DC metro resembles a Democrat Party electoral soirée more than anything else- passengers' lives have been put at risk, and trains almost derailed, due to their "tick the box" attitude regarding maintenance. Similarly, anyone who served in the US military can testify the same attitudes have taken over training, with more time spent each year on sexual harassment awareness training than at the firing range. Similar attitudes and outcomes are seen in African nations, where business or political positions are rewards for being member of the right tribe or family rather than owed to individual ability and skill.

There's also a cultural element- the days of pioneers and explorers are long gone; the last corners of the world are mapped out. If you watch a documentary on the scientists stationed in Antarctica, it resembles a reddit forum for quirky upper-class losers with fancy degrees. Medicine, NASA, the State Department, more... they're staffed with the nerdy section of the upper middle class, now reaching middle age and middle management. The education system first, and the bureaucratic system after, spent decades beating this crowd of well-certified NPCs in suits into always following the rules and deferring to authority to solve all problems or disputes.

Modern industrial-era schooling systematically destroys masculine traits like risk-taking, adventurism, vitality and good judgement, creating adults frightened by deviations from the status quo and with a constant desperate need to defer to expert opinion whatever the topic.

People are primed to look for certain signs indicating collapse, despite them not being remotely close to the way things actually happen. This is partly due to depictions in media, and may also partly be due to intentional miseducation, in order to make the real collapse seem less obvious. Collapses are rarely sudden and they don't tend to make the headline news, being gradual processes.

We're conditioned to view collapse through the lens of a fast-collapse catastrophic decivilization: War. Battle and death and nuclear flame. The destruction of cities and industries. Survivors scrabbling among the ruins for scraps to eat, too busy keeping their bodies alive to keep their civilization alive. Then they lose all knowledge of how to be civilized.

But there's also decivilization by erosion, and while it's goes on, nobody notices it, because it's a slow collapse. People are proud of their civilization, their wealth and culture, then the negatives are ever more forcefully pushed into the spotlight, and the good is forced into the shadows. Trade falls off, with fewer ships coming in each year, or worse, shiploads of goods arrive but they have little to take back in exchange. Costs rise, and wages with them, but the money is worthless - suddenly a loaf of bread that once cost a dollar now costs ten, and the rise in wages never seems to keep up with the costs. Jobs are few and far between, shops sit empty with their windows boarded up. Government always seems to be broke, with deficit spending used for the vital social services for which they just "*have"* to spend money, the most vital one being buying votes to keep the government in power. And it gets harder for those running things to get anything done – authorities keep pouring ever-more resources into the same old obviously-failing paradigms because the people at the top lack the skill, or often simply lack the ***willpower***, to try anything else. More and more parts of the cities become dangerous at night, and then even in the daytime. And it's been years since a new building went up, and the old ones aren't being repaired anymore. Finally, nobody fixes anything, the power goes out, and nobody seems to be able to get it started again.

Since ordinary people are still largely unaffected by riots in their own area and still have some money (even if just unemployment benefits) they don't take action to improve the situation. It's the same reason the Roman Empire failed to reform and act coherently when the barbarians started invading- bread and circuses is nothing new and it's even more prevalent today, with people having more luxuries than ever. Until rioters start dragging people from their homes, things continue to escalate.

You will find that you rapidly adapt to the new normal- you may have less than you used to, but you put on a brave face and ignore the problems that weren't there a decade or two ago. You reinterpret as your own decision something forced upon you by economic or social conditions. You're punished or mocked if you speak out, so you learn to comply and stay silent instead. You can't rationalize something, so you don't acknowledge it happens - you may reinterpret it as a voluntary, even fashionable, return to simplicity. We see this time and time again in history.



This is obvious in the way that what was vandalism and graffiti in 1975, became "*street art*" by 1985. When crack users started snatching necklaces from New York's well-to-do, they took to wearing turtle-necks, turning their engagement rings around and leaving their Rolexes at home and wearing cheaper options like Swatch (that's why became were fashionable among Wall Street types).

It seems as if roughly every 1500 years or so, civilization forms a powerful, cosmopolitan and interlinked globalized world-system, and then it collapses. The first we know of was the Late Bronze Age Collapse*, the second, smaller one, was the fall of the Western Roman Empire (whose knock-on effects still managed to hit as far as ancient China), and it seems that unfortunately, the third shall be ours. After the fall of Rome much of its former Empire became damn near uninhabited – essentially no cities, only low-intensity agriculture, and wide swaths of former agricultural land reverted to forest. Technological levels collapsed to well below pre-Roman levels.
(*see: **https://yewtu.be/bRcu-ysocX4**)

Which brings me onto our next point: Collapsing civilizations have several symptoms in common:
> breakdown of the rule of law
> the tribalization of social elements
> collapse of the main ethnic group's birth-rate
> normalization/acceptance of sexual dysfunctions including homosexuality and transgenderism
> mass migration of non-native groups into the central areas of the host civilization
> self-deprecation of the dominant ethnicity and its traditions
> anti-violence becoming an end unto itself
I feel I must emphasise that these aren't causes of the collapse- they're merely the **symptoms**.

With a little intelligence, you should be able to see these effects in the world around you. As an example of the first, one can see that the USA isn't a nation of laws anymore. Its rules are arbitrarily concocted, applied and disregarded based on whatever flavor of the month the media circus is peddling, alternating between unnecessary brutality on the one hand and limp-wristed anti-violence on the other. Everywhere in the West, elite civility is collapsing, and our rulers are playing with tactics that bring us closer to civil war. In many places in the American hegemony the elite are maneuvering to start arresting each other, everywhere political events are deviating further and further from established precedent and established legality.

As an example of the second, just look at the riots and violence whenever a black citizen is killed at the hands of US police (justified or not), and the deathly silence when the same happens to a White person. One leads to rioting and public outrage (with government doing little to stop it), the second one to... nothing at all, and even crackdowns on the handful that complain. The same with the mutual distrust and hyperbolic hatred between political groups, and so on and so forth.... anyway, you can look and see such things for yourself.



If you wish to see more examples regarding similar trends in the past, I would hint that you read a very short (only 27 pages) book by Sir John Glubb called "*The Fate of Empires and the Search for Survival*", which you should easily find online for free - it contains a plethora of historical examples.

"*But what can **I** do*" you may well ask? Well, the bad news is, ***you cannot halt the collapse*** at this point; Cultural Marxism has broken western society apart into many disunited competing groups, and at best you could hasten it or slightly slow it. ***But you and your family CAN survive***, with just a little forethought. The intent of this book is to help you, dear reader, create fertile soil in which to plant the seed of the next great civilization, while helping you with some knowle dge to avoid the worst effects of the collapse as best you can. I assume dear reader, that you live in the USA. Regardless, don't worry- wherever you live the same base principles will apply, though some aspects may be easier or harder depending on your local laws, conditions, and customs.

In a bad scenario, it's unlikely that things will suddenly deteriorate into some kind of violent chaos. The more likely worst-case scenario is one in which there will be unrest and martial law in urban areas and far less order than we're accustomed to everywhere else (more akin to New Orleans after hurricane Katrina) but nothing that resembles the future shown in the Terminator movie franchise. Desperate people will take desperate chances, the base emotions become prominent in many people's behavior, and hunger, cold, lust, greed and fear take charge of people's actions. You probably won't have to worry about massive roving gangs for quite a long time; but your concern will be with a couple of people breaking into your house who are willing to kill you for food or whatever may be available, stealing vegetables from your garden or firewood from your woodpile, etc. This is the primary type of danger you'll need to defend against as the collapse worsens.

Consider that people worry about ending up in a dystopian future, yet if we could somehow discuss current events with a man or woman in 1950 or even just get them to watch an average news report from today, they'd be horrified - we're living in the dystopia without realising it - a weird cyberpunk mixture of 1984, Brave New World, Harrison Bergeron, and Idiocracy. American political philosopher James Burnham correctly pointed out back in the 1950's that liberalism is an ideology of mass suicide. He even wrote a book on the subject called "*The Suicide of the West*". Even if you could somehow reverse things and "turn back the clock" 20 years or more, you'd soon find yourself right back here again, as the pattern was set at least a century ago. You're opposed to slamming into the canyon floor and exploding, but you're still in favor of driving off the cliff.

As the Red Skull pointed out to Captain America in a comic strip: "*You're not fighting to save America, you're fighting to change it back*" ...and what good is changing America back to what it was in 1960, '50, '40, whatever... if all it does is slowly turn back into what we have now?



As a side-note, I want to point out that for all its major faults, since it has already survived one social collapse, is now focused on its national interest, and is largely economically self-sufficient, Russia may somewhat ironically actually withstand the fall of what I call the Anglo-centric world economic empire (hereafter, ACWE) better than anyone else probably will.

During the first collapse noted above, the Bronze age Collapse which is sometimes called the Greek Dark Ages, the very art of writing was lost - it only survived in Egypt due to hieroglyphics being used by the priestly caste for religious inscriptions, and due to Egypt's pyrrhic victory over the invading migrants, the ones they called the "Sea Peoples". During the second collapse mentioned, writing in the western world survived only due to the Christian monasteries preserving what books they could find from earlier times, and much was lost. Nowadays, with most of our knowledge being stored electronically, we risk losing even more, and there are fewer powerful religious groups to preserve and keep safe the light of knowledge - muslims certainly won't be doing it with anything that isn't profitable, or which contradicts islam.



Consider that the muslims burned what remained of the library of Alexandria - the learning they claim as their own, that of Avicenna, Al-Kindi, Averroes, and Al-Razi, who as far as I'm aware were all recent jewish and Christian converts to islam, was simply the distilled and adapted ancient knowledge of the Greeks, Hindus and Persian civilizations, which had gathered dust in muslim libraries after they destroyed the advanced civilizations which created that knowledge in the first place.

Look at Damascus steel, or wootz as it's also known: in order to make the famous Damascus steel that so impressed the Crusaders, you need to heat iron hot enough that it melts so that the dirt floats to the top, becoming the slag, instead of remaining intimately mixed in the metal.

When muslims conquered the advanced civilizations of the world, the art of making good steel, and good swords, and good armor, which of all the arts of mankind was the one that should have survived through a dark age, was lost for a thousand years. The blades that so impressed the Crusaders were ancient heirlooms, stolen by the muslim conquerors from their betters. What do you suppose they will steal from our own collapsing civilization, that future people will gawk in wonder at and give them credit for "discovering"?

In an interconnected world, the ripples from an event in one location can rapidly go around the globe- this also holds true for disasters. A drought or earthquake in one nation can have knock-on effects all out of proportion if they occur in a key location - imagine, for example, what might happen to the internet if Silicon Valley happened to be the epicenter for a high-magnitude earthquake. Complex interconnected systems under pressure tend to respond in unexpected and chaotic ways. This type of collapse is known as a *Systems Collapse*.

The features of a Systems Collapse are:
1) collapse of the central administrative organization
2) disappearance of the traditional elite class
3) collapse of the centralized economy
4) settlement shifts and population decline

Note that these are usually not sequential - they can happen in any order, or together at the same time.

Believe it or not, #2 has already happened - the traditional elite class was eliminated in most of the world and replaced by ACWE's current leadership between the 1700's and 1900, and is now mostly composed of elected officials or the nepotistically uplifted members of ethnic power clans, this phase was finalized in continental Europe in the decade after World War one.

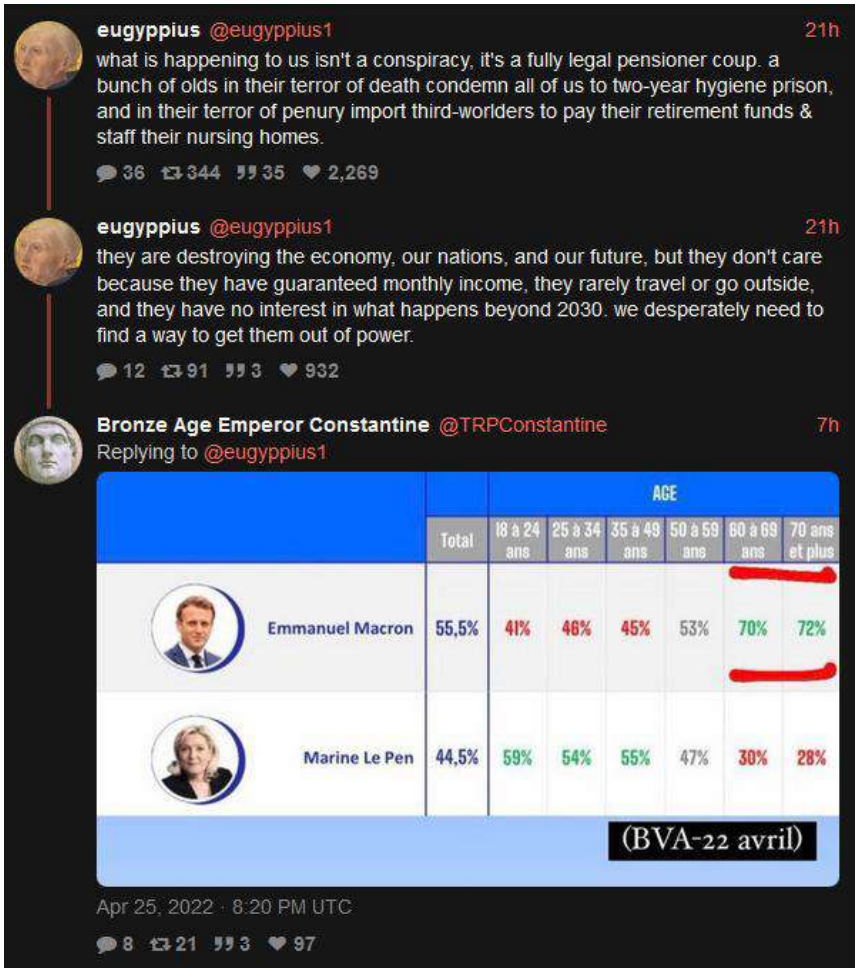
We lurch ever closer to #3 with every financial crisis - for example the SWIFT system that regulates credit card and international financial deals has been crippled by the poorly considered 2022 US sanctions against Russia and is being increasingly bypassed by the nations that must trade with it regardless, and we likewise edge closer to #1 with every major social unrest.

We are also currently seeing #4 take place in Western, ethnic-European majority countries. In regards to no.4 - as military historian Van Creveld's research indicates, when the immigrant population of a country reaches ~30%, war inevitably follows with a death toll matching the amount of migrants that entered - not a pleasant thought.
(**https://www.unauthorized.tv/programs/voxiversity-001-immigration-and-war-b24206**)

If you choose to study the books and links in this book, you may realize the causes of collapse are internal to ACWE and its economic system; events like the present mass migrations into western nations (the heart of ACWE) -though they should certainly be resisted- are just symptoms and in some aspects, are accelerating the collapse by fraying the bonds that allowed world-spanning societies of such disparate peoples in the first place.

You may see that it's extremely unlikely that collapse can be reversed without taking unpopular decisions and actions that would be violently resisted by the US imperial government and probably most citizens, decisions such as: the expulsion and deliberate persecution of non-White ethnic minorities, the removal of racial equality laws, the removal of gender equality laws and a return to patriarchal societal mores, and the disbandment of universities where such ideologies are fermented and spread (and elimination of the professor-priesthood that spreads it). Indeed, since they are the main sponsors, supporters, and beneficiaries of the collapse's causes, any real, tangible opposition to official policies would be treated by the Universalists who control the US Empire as treason or even terrorism, and any opponents would receive the harshest punishments imaginable.

Changing attitudes amongst the young are unlikely to become the majority view among the population until demographic changes cause ethnic Europeans to become minorities in their own nations (including the US). For an example of this, in the recent 2022 French elections, we see that it was overwhelmingly the non-native French citizens and the pension-aged elderly who voted for the pro-welfare, pro-collectivist candidate Macron and increased immigration, while the young native-French population leaned toward the more moderate candidate Marine Le Pen. Therefore, for simplicity this book assumes the collapse is inevitable, as we cannot possibly eliminate the elderly fast enough in time to save the Western world.



Consider that people keep saying things like, "*We could do X, but the cost is too high*". - if you're truly advanced, doing X becomes cheaper. Technological advance means everything should be getting cheaper. But none of the things that would indicate we are advancing are getting cheaper.

*2. **Lessons From the Past***

It's rarely discussed, but the degraded conditions of the working class in the West from the industrial revolution to today represent a regression to historical norms of social technology. The condition of inhabitants in a modern city is similar to the condition of their equivalents in an ancient pre-Christian city. In the Roman Republic, the plebeian class, just like foreigners and slaves, had no access to official religion or to legal sacramental marriage. We know that as a Roman patrician described it, they reproduced "*like beasts*", much as we see our own lower classes behaving today: rampant single motherhood, short term relationships, frequent infidelity, the abandonment of stable relationships in favor of hook-ups, and so on.

The lower classes had no religion, no hearth-fire gods or ancestor-gods in their households and families, and had access to worship only in the sense that the cult of the city, the rites of the patricians, protected those who dwelt within the walls. Most societies survive like this - it's essentially the condition of historical China, historical India, and the historical Middle East. In the original Indo-European (aka Aryan) homeland (somewhere between the southern Urals and the Caspian Sea), everybody who was not a slave was an elite, and where IEs conquered extant societies, they found themselves with a large class of plebs who were not exactly slaves, but who weren't exactly free men either, and so they generally ignored this class of people, leaving them outside the law and outside the state. This is also borne out by the evidence in Tilak's 1903 book "*The Arctic home in the Vedas*", which proposes that the ancient Vedic writings suggest Indo-Europeans may have moved to the Southern Urals area from somewhere even further north before their expansion into India, Europe, and everywhere else. Consider that India's caste structure dates from that expansion, and was an effort by the Aryans to distance themselves from the Dravidian religion (and blood-lines) they'd just conquered.

In any case, only Christian Europe granted sacred marriage and sacred fatherhood - the rights of the freehold - to the common man, and this is what caused the advancements in science and technology, and importantly in the military arts, allowing them to conquer the known world. This is obviously a game-winning social technology, one proven extremely successful by the last two millennia.

However, most societies endured for very long periods of time with a completely degenerate plebiscite, with rampant hypergamy, godless, sexless young men living only to consume, hyper-sexed alpha plebs randomly and irresponsibly fucking anything with a hole, and so on. Tragically, it seems obvious that this degenerate situation is stable despite being stagnant (no bases on Mars, no new science and engineering) and that our elite is of very poor quality, having become in these last two centuries quite evil and insane, and apt to get everyone killed by being that way.

If our elites were of a comparatively higher quality- as they were but a few centuries ago or even before the Renaissance, or like the Roman elite were in their early days, we might forgive or at least overlook the degraded state of the lower classes, but our modern elites are much worse, both uglier in behavior and more disgusting in their attitudes, appetites and habits, than modern plebs.

During the era of Republican Rome, Tiberius Gracchus wanted to distribute the fruits of empire more fairly, and he had a good point – the elites were hogging control of the empire to far too small a group to operate it, while at the same time they were distributing the fruits of empire to far too large a group to mantain imperial cooperation within the group. So factions arose, and factional conflict rapidly got out of hand. Thus a couple of centuries after Gracchus was killed for attempting to fix these issues, Rome got Julius Caesar, and then after it responded by killing *him* for the audacity of trying to fix Rome's problems, 4it fortunately met its match in Augustus.

Indeed, history shows us that in Republican Rome, Julius Caesar was one of the few who tried to save the Roman state - he saw that the old system was dead, because the existing government was created by and for a city-state, but it could not effectively rule a massive and growing empire especially considering the poor long-distance communication methods of that era. The system he tried to implement required the groups involved to recognize that it was a compromise, probably the best possible one under the circumstances. Of course, greed and fanaticism caused Caesar's solution to be rejected, leaving his cooling corpse in a puddle of blood on the floor of the Capitoline Senate.

Caesar's attempt to reform the Roman Republic into a form of moderate autocracy died stillborn - yes of course it may have ended up failing on its own; after all while Julius was a very smart and brave man, and perhaps also generally a wise one, but he wasn't a saint or miracle-worker. As history shows us, Caesar's murder by the Roman Senators set the stage for fifteen years of civil war even bloodier than the struggle he'd crossed the Rubicon to put an end to. In the end, the Roman Republic's rejection of Caesar's political model of moderate autocracy led to the supreme reign of Augustus as Emperor in a manner that in no way, shape, or form, could anyone ever call "moderate".

However, once cooperation among the elites is lost, it's impossible to get back. Charles II had the benefit of the old aristocracy literally sitting around in their castles waiting for a leader. No Roman emperor was ever able to build a new elite - it was simply impossible, and several attempts to do so were even refused by the decadent vestigial remnants of the old elite. This is why Roman law after Augustus was basically martial law, with the army frequently finding the emperor unsatisfactory and removing him, resulting in frequent civil wars whenever one had been poorly chosen, a situation exacerbated by the lack of a clear and accepted system of succession.

Democracies, and any system where transfers of power are peaceful, such as a Republic, require that the elite play by the rules, for limited stakes, which means such a system requires a virtuous elite. We no longer have the conditions necessary for democracy or for a Republic, and restoring them would require recreating a virtuous elite, a project that takes generations. "*Equality*", "*meritocracy*" and "*Free Speech*" were the wedges used to breach the castle walls of virtuous society. Only once those walls were gone did anyone realize that they were keeping society safe from the un-virtuous. Inclusivity is always a step towards excluding the founders: those outside cry to be let in, and once in, the outsiders eject the old guard. That's why gatekeeping gets condemned despite being so critical.

It wasn't until the barbarians reduced the population of Rome to a mere ten thousand or so in a series of extreme genocidal bloodbaths, that a new elite with a new co-operational consensus could start to arise. Eventually, a civilization becomes an Augean stable, impossible for any man to clean out (and there were Roman emperors of the absolute highest human quality imaginable who tried), but only a river of blood can truly clean it out.

So despite critics and detractors, I'll focus on the worst-case-scenario end of the scale: a slow and gradual TEOTWAWKI collapse taking years or decades, resulting in the US and EU fragmenting with loss of the rule of law, extended periods of civil disorder and chaos, and massive social unrest, all gradually worsening, but without any sort of sudden shock that would enable one to say "*this is where things went to shit*" - should collapse be less severe or complete than expected, then good: over-preparation generally has better survival outcomes than under-preparing.



3. Applying the Lessons I

In the future we shall see *more* cases of non-state actors (like ISIS, BLM, organized drug/crime cartels, communist groups, etc). warring on behalf of racial/ethnic/tribal, religious or cultural causes, rather than traditional *country-X*-vs.-*country-Y* conflicts. People from places where disorders based on such causes exist leave their shit-holes, but not their grievances and attitudes - they move to orderly "advanced" nations bringing their causes with them, finding enemies in their new environment, and turning them into the same shit-holes they hated enough to leave in the first place. This also happens with disaffected people from failing areas - just look at the actions of British and Californian expats in the areas they move to. To visualise what happens when the USA (or really, any western country) inevitably breaks up along its internal social/ethnic lines, just imagine Yugoslavia or Lebanon all over again, only much fatter and bloodier.

One of the keys to survival will be to have a strong enough in-group identity to withstand the group identity of these non-state actors; either you build a strong tribe/community that can hold together during such events, or you'll go under when they come to your area and dish out violence.

"Collapse" is quite simply the de-legitimization of government to the point where each cohesive community becomes its own independent government. Like the archaic renaissance-era concept of the "divine right of kings", government is a collective illusion. It exists only so long as people subject to that entity pretend it exists, and is sustained by the power of faith. Once that faith dries up, so does its power, and a powerless government rapidly ceases to exist.

This is why every level of government outside a handful of specific local county governments is hell-bent on removing your ability to act freely. Most pretend to care, but will readily "compromise" over popular astro-turfed "*common sense*" laws or continue to enforce existing laws and pretending they're oh-so-wonderful for not infringing on citizens' lives more than they already do.



By design, even the most rural emergency services, including (and especially) law enforcement agencies, are unable to remain fiscally solvent without constant external funding (e.g. state, federal). Public utilities like schools, courts, etc. are all in the same boat. This means that as soon as the purse strings are pulled, they roll over for their actual sources of finance (i.e.: not you). Again, this is by design, to ensure they're not independent, and thus neither are you.

In collapse situations, the communities which are able to do so reject the government's authority over them and instead exert their own authority against it and others for their own interests. In today's multicultural world, with mass immigration having forced wildly dissimilar cultures in close proximity, this inevitably causes ethno-centric wars. Fortunately, consideration of extreme political futures is finally becoming somewhat common among the public, compared to the ubiquitous “it can't happen here” paradigm thinking that not only treats such scenarios as unthinkable, but even considers contemplation of them a sort of social treason!

We have a wealth of information on how such things happen, though the real causes are often ignored. Most adults have watched several happen from the comfort of their living rooms. Whether it was the Lebanese Civil War in the 1980's, the fall of the USSR in 1991, the Yugoslav Civil War of the 1990's, the Sudanese Civil War in the 2000's, or even Ukraine's ethnic-Russian majority break away states of Crimea, Donetsk and Luhansk - these are all real-world examples of the establishment of separatist ethno-states and every step of their births was filmed or documented in some way, and often televised.



Militias, armies and insurgencies don’t spring up out of nowhere. They organise via workplaces, churches and communities. Organising is tougher in civilized societies because despite the obvious decay, the majority of citizens are conditioned from birth to ignore the decay and despair unless its right in front of them, and as such, will stick with whatever meager comforts they have presently since it would be 'tiresome' to sacrifice those comforts in the short term to prevent long-term harm. Even with their access to bread and circuses reduced (thanks, COVID), they're still too diverted by what remains to resist the subversion and degradation of their homelands.

Peasant revolutions (leaderless, spontaneous) only happen when a group feels PERSONALLY threatened. Be it with imprisonment, deportation, starvation, etc. The rise of one group of aloof assholes to an office that another group of aloof assholes previously held is not personal enough. The only time you'll see a group of people actually risk life and limb for a political cause is when they're already staring down the barrel of a (literal in most cases) gun. Despite mass killings civil war never happened in Cambodia. Civil war requires leadership and collective action to resist force. It’s awful hard to get such leadership after a dictatorship is established, especially a leftist one whose members believe they’re doing what they do for your own good.

Government sponsorship of violence against opponents (and/or its complacency in the face of incitement to violence) is a powerful tool of political repression - governments like Cuba, Venezuela, Iran, Nicaragua, China, and other tyrannies have used such tactics to great effect. When mobs attack anti-government demonstrators, for example, the police either disappear or stand by watching. In U.S. cities run by Democrats and on U.S. college and university campuses, the authorities increasingly stand by while radicals do their dirty work of beating up and silencing conservatives.

In societies riven by mutual hate, the people who control the police and public communications make all the difference. When they mantain impartiality, as did Germany’s Weimar government while the Nazis and Communists struggled for primacy, partisan warfare tends to be resolved politically—though the results are harsh. When societal hatred or the partiality of authorities results in deaths, long-smoldering cold civil wars can blaze into genocide.

Americans are now facing the danger of a civil war ignited this way. We don't think of civil war in this way because our Civil War from 1861 to 1865 was less a conflict within society than it was a highly organized war between states. That war notwithstanding, personal friendships and mutual esteem persisted on both sides, such as that between Ulysses S. Grant and prominent Confederate General James Longstreet. What we face now is much, much worse.

In a massive social collapse, most people will be able to keep only that which they can defend. This includes their lives, their homes, their food, their money, and if they're male, even their wives and perhaps their children. This is a thought that may disturb many people who are doing serious emergency planning; most people don't have a "survivalist" background or mindset and have never had reason to think about physically defending what is precious to them. A major disaster may change all that, just as it may change nearly everything else in the world for those living through it.

In an orderly, productive society with a stable division of labor, the harsh realities of life aren't so obvious. You have laws that most people obey and you have professional police who enforce those laws. It's their job to defend the lives and property of the average citizen; if any violence needs to be done doing it, police handle it. The average person never has to consider defending what is his unless he is personally threatened by a criminal. The threat of force by the police keeps order in the society and tends to discourage aggressive criminal behavior (not always very well). It also tends to hide a basic truth about the nature of human relations.

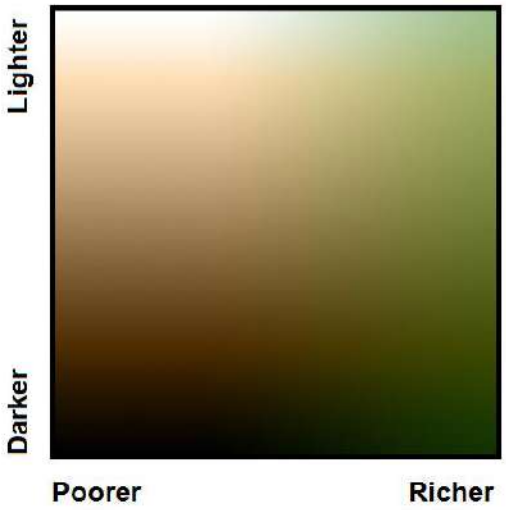
In a massive social collapse, law and public order break down and the truth about human rights is revealed: An individual has rights only as long as he can defend them. This is the subtle logic of violence. It has always been true but it's something to which most of us have never given a moment's thought. It's also a concept that makes many people uncomfortable because it contradicts much of the illusions by which we have lived all of our lives.

However, unless you understand and accept this basic fact of life, you may not survive the coming challenges. Should disaster come down hard upon us, it will destroy all the illusions and most of the rules we have lived by for the past hundred years or more. It will create harsh new rules. When the fundamental order of a society changes and new rules arise, those who fail to understand them suffer the most.

4. Applying the Lessons II

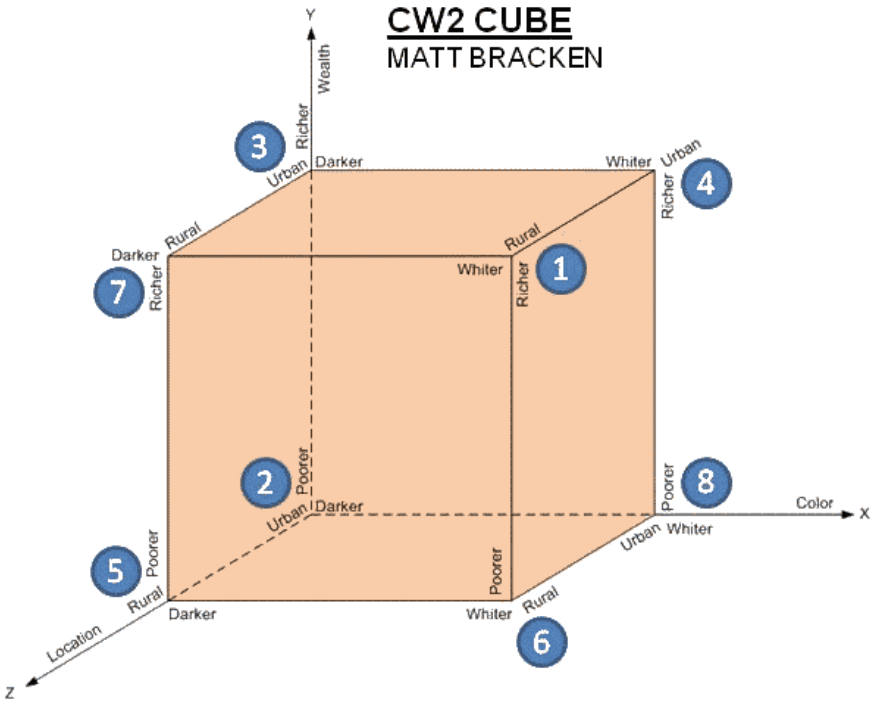
No sane person who's studied modern civil wars from Spain to Lebanon to the Balkans and so forth would ever wish to see a second civil war in the US, I myself dread the probability of such an event. But since all our political, cultural and demographic trends seem to be pushing us to that unhappy destiny, we'd best cast an eye over the socio-political terrain.

We can begin by analyzing **the CW2 Square**:
Draw a square and label one axis Poorer to Richer. Label the other axis Darker to Lighter. For brevity, lighter means Caucasian Whites (including in their native Europe), as well as residents of East Asian ancestry. For the US "Darker" includes African-Americans, while in Europe, it includes Africans, Arabs, etc. In the US Hispanics and other immigrants sit somewhere between the two. The opposed meta-groups are the poorer/darker vs. the richer/lighter, (or if you want to be blunt, Whiter). The richer/Whiter have the advantage of relative wealth, but counterbalancing it's that the poorer/darker have the sympathy of government power, despite their elected leaders mostly being anything but poor or dark.



Filling one corner of the CW2 Square will be the poorer and darker, who primarily are progressive leftists who believe in a malleable system of law where the outcome must depend on your ethnicity, and the other corner will be the richer and Whiter, who mainly are conservative or libertarian people who believe laws should be interpreted as literally as possible based on their original intent. Yes, there are exceptions: there are rich black cattle ranchers and poor Whites living in impoverished areas etc. However, focusing on them ignores the critical centers of gravity of a potential Civil War by over-emphasizing interesting but statistically-insignificant exceptions. Keep your eyes on the centers of gravity, not on the outliers.

We can expand the CW2 square to become the CW2 Cube invented by Matt Bracken, by adding the third dimension with another axis, Urban vs. Rural, or City vs. Country if you'd rather. Adding this axis gives us a geographical dimension to the meta-terrain, but unlike America's first civil war, there won't be a convenient geopolitical dividing line between opposing sides. In the USA, it's been often observed that today's red-blue political map is better understood at county than state level. Even states that consistently elect Democrats to Congress, (like Illinois, California and New York) solidly vote Republican outside urban areas. Obviously urban areas are heavily populated but geographically small, with all that means to the electoral process now and to a possible civil war later.



The Two Opposing Meta-Groups:
1) Poor-urban-dark
2) Rich-rural-white

The Six Outlying Corners:
3) Rich-urban-dark
4) Rich-urban-white
5) Poor-rural-dark
6) Poor-rural-white
7) Rich-rural-dark
8) Poor-urban-white

The Six Sides (faces) :
- Rich on top
- Floor is poor
- Urban is close
- Rural is far
- Darker tends to the left
- Whiter tends to the right

The opposing corners of the CW2 Cube can thus be seen as the poorer/darker urbanites vs. the richer/Whiter rural areas (hence all those "inbred redneck" slurs by the urbanites). Again, don't lose yourself in outliers- yes, there's a few rich, conservative blacks living in Wyoming, plenty of poor White liberal Democrats in rural West Virginia, some rich conservatives in San Francisco and every other exceptional case imaginable, but they're the exceptions - not the majority. Most Americans live in the mongrelized middle, far from the simplicity of the opposite corners, but any future war's center of gravity shall be the relatively richer, Whiter and more rural against the poorer, darker and urban.

Notice that this is an average - urban areas are overall richer, but they have many more poor than the rural areas do, whereas the rural areas are poorer overall, but the wealth is more evenly distributed. Naturally, many more conflict axes are possible than shown, like religious vs. non-believers, socialists vs. capitalists, statists vs. individualists etc. However, you'll find most of them parallel one of the axes already mentioned. It is quite telling that racial tensions in the Southern rural areas of former slave states are far lower than in the "multicultural" urban progressive conglomerates like New York, Chicago, or Los Angeles - I suspect this is because the culture of both races in rural areas is far more uniform and integrated than that of the cities, despite (or possibly even because of) the low rates of intermarriage and lower social mixing than happens in the urban areas.

One repeated lesson of modern civil wars is that there's predictably and inherently dangerous, often fatal terrain - much of its highly desirable and even advantageous before war's outbreak. A clear lesson of modern civil wars is that while they may often begin on purely political grounds, they generally rapidly devolve into something worse. Minority persons who escape as refugees are often lucky compared to the ones who horribly lost their lives during the escalating violence.

(In this context, minority is defined as "***the minority ethnicity within a given group or area***". blacks are the majority in some areas, Whites are the minorities in others, etc).

Frequently in modern civil wars, the roaming armed groups (in or out of uniform) that spring up intentionally target minority individuals who remain within their areas of control, forcing local people to kill their own friends and neighbors as a test of loyalty, and punishing any who refuse with death for being "traitors" to their cause. Besides pre-conflict racists and radicals, there will be an ever-increasing pool of persons attempting to expel local minorities from their homes. They may have been admired, respected and even loved for many years by their majority-population neighbors but it will not protect them. Those who have been ethnically cleansed themselves will seek out new residences, and any property belonging to "enemy" minorities will be the first on the chopping block. (Not the auction-block, for payment will be in blood). The process of minority eviction is self-perpetuating, for examples just look at former Yugoslavia.

Another lesson is that religious affiliation and political leanings can also be hidden, at least for awhile, and the well-off can sometimes hide their wealth - but things like cultural, racial or ethnic identity are almost impossible to hide long-term. Consider that before the breakdown of Yugoslavia, Serbs and Croats in what is now Croatia got along considerably better than Whites and blacks do in the US, had cultures that were far more similar to one another's, and had very high intermarriage rates. Yet the Croats, aided by Pentagon officials and the private military contractor firm MPRI, ethnically cleansed a massive swath of their country in 1995 as part of "*Operation Storm*", expelling all the ethnic Serbs. The lessons of modern civil wars should not be ignored, though it's up to you to figure out what to do to help yourself and your family while tensions escalate.

While we're on this topic, consider these exacerbating factors:
The first is the concept of multiple embedded minorities. Once conflict begins, locals living as a trapped and cut-off minority in what becomes "enemy territory" will be in mortal danger even if your immediate neighbors know, love and respect you. While your people might locally be the majority right now, always consider the multiple levels above your immediate neighborhood also. You've heard the saying "*there's always a bigger fish*", now picture a White family, living in a mostly black suburb, in a mostly White town, in a mostly black state when a White-vs.-black civil war breaks out.....

The second is the intrinsic instability of multilateral ethnic composition. The Serbs, Croats and Muslims of Bosnia provide a textbook example. Whenever local disadvantages are noted, or a tactical

advantage foreseen, each side backstabs yesterday's ally. In the United States the main sides might be Whites, blacks and Hispanics, but in many areas Asians, middle-easterners, native-Americans and other groups will either pick a side or flit between them based on the advantage to their own group, compounding the instability.

By comparison, the old black and White social dichotomy in the pre-1965 USA was astonishingly stable, albeit lop-sided. It's important to remember that before the dramatic 1960's leftwards shift in the balance of power, Hispanics were considered to be (and most importantly they considered *themselves* to be) White ... just watch one of those old-time "*I love Lucy*" episodes for the attitudes of the time. They only distanced themselves from the label of "White" when it became obvious that the power shift was permanent and could not be undone by business as usual, by voting, but would require a paradigm shift in the socio-political landscape.

And finally, urban settings are disastrous during modern civil wars, even if they offer excellent quality of life during peacetime. The highest-risk locales are high-rise buildings located near potential civil war flashpoints or fault lines. Living in a cluster of high-rises divided by a "green line" during a guerrilla war is a nightmare-level worst-case scenario; just ask the citizens of Sarajevo. Not to mention the misery attendant to life in a tall building without running water, electricity, sewage service, working elevators, heating or air-conditioning. This while subjected to intermittent sniper or artillery fire for months on end. If you disagree and don't believe that a general collapse or civil war in America and/or Europe is possible, then simply disregard this book. But if you think that a second civil war could happen picture the CW2 Cube and your location within it. If you realize that you're living near a probable ethno-social fault line, especially if you're a local minority, please - consider relocating.

A common sentiment heard from urbane, secular Bosnians living in the city of Sarajevo was of having had an utter disbelief that brutal, bloody, civil war could come to their modern, European city in a modern, secular nation and tear their lives apart... until it did.

In the last few days of the Western Roman Empire, we find the surviving writings of Prudentius, who argued that everything was going perfectly fine, no course change was needed just keep on with business as usual. Every declining empire has people like this - inevitably, they're wrong. Civilizations tend to collapse when they move left, and then fail to respond to a crisis or a challenge, such as Europe's current and ongoing islamic invasion. They fail to respond because they deny it, because they just cannot see it, hence people like Prudentius are both a symptom and cause of collapse.

The battle lines have already been drawn, unseen, and you gain no benefit trying to conform to the elites' idea of a "good guy". For the mainstream elites' views on the probability of collapse, see Ugo Bardi's 2017 book "*The Seneca Effect*", published for the Club of Rome. While I'm diametrically opposed to the Club of Rome's views in every other way, I do agree with them that a collapse is likely, even while I disagree about the why, the how, and regarding what should be done about it.

"*The collapse of urban cultures is an event much more frequent than most observers realize. Often, collapse is well underway before societal elites become aware of it, leading to scenes of leaders responding retroactively and ineffectively as their society collapses around them.*"
– Sander Vander Leeuw, Archaeologist, 1997



5. How Did We Let It Get This Wrong?

Author's note: This is my attempt at a syncretized summary of how the situation developed to the current point, and is by necessity incomplete. If it strikes you as too conspiratorial, feel free to skip past it to the more practical information in the next Chapter - it's not strictly necessary to read it to apply the rest of the information to safeguard your future, but it will help you make sense of how and why things currently are the way they presently are in the world if you do.

"*The attempt made in recent decades by secularist thinkers to disengage the moral principles of western civilization from their scripturally-based religious context, in the assurance that they could live a life of their own as "humanistic" ethics, has resulted in our "cut flower culture". Cut flowers retain their original beauty and fragrance, but only so long as they retain the vitality that they have drawn from their now-severed roots; after that is exhausted, they wither and die. So with freedom, brotherhood, justice, and personal dignity - the values that form the moral foundation of our civilization. Without the life-giving power of the faith out of which they have sprung, they possess neither meaning nor vitality*".
- William Herberg writing in "Judaism and Modern Man" (b. June 30, 1901 – d. March 26, 1977)

To understand how we can get ourselves out of the current mess, we must comprehend how we got into it, that we may better extricate ourselves and avoid the same pitfalls the next time around. A major point of our situation is the corruption of social values, and that is not limited to religion.

Every society has dominant values, and values don't exist in a vacuum. They grew out of geographically-based queries and traditions and suchlike. The conglomeration of these traditions is national religion, which includes the people's social beliefs and customs. The only thing that can keep a society moving forward is the contrast between its present self-image as opposed to what it believes it should look like, continually bolstered with more imaginative dreams based on proportionally increasing resources. What is the full aggregation of said teleology and hopes and dreams? The zeitgeist of the time. What is the full aggregation of every zeitgeist? Consistent and strong ideas. What is the full aggregation of such ideas? A national set of self-propagating values. To the individual, religion may be either hope or foolishness, but to the group, it's identity. It contains and absorbs tradition, which is a manifestation of the natural life of people. Its teachings comprise basic social guidelines and answers to the fundamental questions of existence for that group. It gives them a grounding and location for their existence, and room for their freedom to exist by showing the acceptable limits where one's freedom infringes on others. Thus as nations grow more secular, governments grow, and the liberty of the citizens shrinks.

A few centuries ago Europe finally achieved a highly successful social technology for peace on earth, for avoiding excessively destructive wars. That social technology which was lost during the twentieth century was: "***cuius regio, eius religio"*** - the Peace of Westphalia. Interpreting "*religio*" at its broadest, that meant every country is entitled to its own ways, and that the current ruler of another nation should be respected and left alone to do things his own way even if he is not following our ways. The Treaty of Westphalia aimed for a world of sovereign and independent nations who protected their own citizens, respected their neighbors sovereignty, and honored the differences that make each country special and unique. The Treaty of Westphalia was systematically weakened from 1900 onwards, and finally destroyed with the founding of the UN.

Both "World Wars" were a religious conflict with a 20-year armistice between the two parts - the established oligarchic empire warring against emerging new ones, with the same incessant propaganda about the latter's villainy. What religion is dominant within ACWE? Certainly not actual Christianity, for it is openly mocked. Nor is it Islam (despite it being favored), rather it's our oligarchy's oikophobic secular religion of postmodernist humanism, which replaced its former and slightly milder incarnation of humanist secularism in the late 1940's. This is pushed by the elite's preferred educator-elites; those forming what Moldbug called "the Cathedral" (for more info, see: **https://archive.is/di6Zw**).

Oikophobia is "*the felt need to denigrate the customs, culture and institutions that are identifiably 'ours."*" – can you find examples of that around you?

The USA is the present political and military head of ACWE, just as the UK was from the late 1700's until about 1918. It's military performance parallels the Ottoman Empire in the 18th century and the UK in the 20th - a gigantic Empire with a huge state-of-the-art military still winning the majority of battles, but starting to lose battles it really shouldn't lose at all considering its power, and with its internal organization showing its age and bogged down by corruption. Meanwhile the future world's foundation is happening elsewhere - this is the main reason WW2 killed off the British Empire after Japan proved they could militarily defeat them in the Far East.

Democracy hides it's authoritarianism behind a veil of civility and the "bureaucratic process". It's no more accountable to the peons than any other form of government, and the illusion that it is, is what makes it much worse - because it tricks people into thinking they asked for their reaming. At least in despotism the people and their despot know where they stand in relation to each other and the despot knows that if he bullshits too hard, he runs the risk of being dragged kicking and screaming out of his palace and having his head placed on a spike for all the world to see. Despots also tend to care more about their own self-interests and generally won't fuck with you if you're not in their way, whereas democratic "*rule of law*" controls almost every aspect of everyone's lives for its own sake.

There's a pretty clear distinction between "hierarchy" and "government" (in the sense of a modern bureaucratic/managerial state claiming jurisdiction over all aspects of your life and which locks up anyone who doesn't submit): hierarchy is natural and desirable, being driven by intrinsic ability and therefore meritocratic, while the "government" -especially democratic government- is an inverted hierarchy: the worst people get on top, then use their "lawful and legitimate" positions to shield themselves from retribution and consequences for the things they do and impose on others.

But in a democracy, votes are a commodity, and the cheaper you make that commodity, the easier it's to mantain power. So public perception is shaped by the media, and the public is given a "choice" of pre-selected oligarchy representatives and "rule of law" obscures the responsibility of the leaders and of the men who chose to enforce it - people are tricked into putting up with a lot more bullshit than they would ever tolerate with an "unaccountable" head of state. ACWE's leaders are masters at soft tyranny and you fell for the meme. As Lord Vansittart put it in his *The Mist Procession* (Chap. 10, 1958) "*Our elections have become auctions, where the best bidder won*"

In other words, voting within ACWE (and pretty much everywhere) is completely fake and gay and you really must expect it to be rigged. There's no way that Republicans will ever stop America's slide into the abyss. But you ought to vote anyway, because the harder the Universalists are forced to cheat, and the more obvious they're forced to be about the fake votes they need for their candidates to win elections, the less legitimacy they have in the eyes of the public.

Kings never actually had absolute power, because they don't actually oversee the daily operations of their realms – the aristocrats do that – and offing too many aristocrats drastically increases the odds that the king will have a "tragic accident". Likewise, the People don't have absolute control (and arguably they have significantly less) over a democracy, because a voter, even if elected Mayor, doesn't have the right to head to the local DMV/Courthouse and fire every bureaucrat in the room for gross incompetence, despite civil servants supposedly "*working for the People*". We also see that politicians can sometimes lose their jobs, but they can't ever seem to fire any of the bureaucrats. Which of them do you think is the monkey, and which one is the organ grinder?

Look at the 2020 US election - as often happens in other third-world nations located in South America or Africa, the least-popular candidate won the election with a larger margin than ever seen before, amidst widespread accusations of fraud which were and are ignored and mocked by the national media. The new regime then positions troops to occupy government institutions to "protect" them from those who feel the election was stolen - while those making such accusations are accused of being disloyal to the new regime, and the military is purged of any elements not vocally loyal to the new order. Interestingly, the rulers of ACWE felt secure enough to brag about their actions on one of their mouthpiece publications: [**https://archive.is/gvcvX**] Think of it working like a casino: in the long run, the house always wins, the outsiders always lose.

The Biden-Harris ticket that won in 2020 was not only a compromise within the Democrat party, but a way to secure the support of the permanent government, by freezing out the radical socialists who had supported Sanders. The US government's apparatchiks would rather have sided with Trump before Sanders - they could control Trump on the things that mattered most to them, but there was no telling what Sanders, or more significantly his supporters, would do in power. It appears the Democrats promised the apparatchiks a return to the old order they were comfortable with, so that they'd move heaven and earth to get Biden and Harris past the public opposition.

The present dominant narrative within ACWE views nature, including human nature, as something to be "improved" upon, and believes in the equal moral value of every human person. This leads to social progressivism, such as ideologies like feminism, gay liberation, pro-democracy movements, etc., and is used to justify much modern economic-industrial development, since this includes marginalized social groups in industrial life it's portrayed as the path forward for everything from political structures to universal medicine, etc.

This faith of progressivist multiculturalist idealism which I have argued is the religion of ACWE was called by the writer Moldbug, "*Universalism*" - he considers it a strain of Protestantism (and he traced it's evolution over the last few hundred years) which discarded everything supernatural (God, etc). in its quest for power, retaining only some basic values:
Equality - (the universal brotherhood of man),
Peace - (the futility of violence - in reality, victory through political conquest),
Social Justice - (the fair distribution of goods- in reality, violent political redistribution), and
Community - (the unquestioned leadership of "benevolent" public servants),

... indeed this "secular religion" does very much resemble the totalitarian theocracy John Calvin installed in the city of Geneva in 1541, most especially the insistence on official "truth" - refer to the trend of online "fact-checkers" if you can't see why that applies already. Modern progressives' belief in political correctness and diversity-worship are confusing and nonsensical to an outsider, until they're viewed as their tenets of religious belief – at which point their purpose and operation becomes startlingly clear.

Universalist behavior embodies that most eloquent of quotes by C.S. Lewis:
"*Of all tyrannies, a tyranny sincerely exercised for the good of its victims may be the most oppressive. It would be better to live under robber barons than under omnipotent moral busybodies. The robber baron's cruelty may sometimes sleep, his cupidity may at some point be satiated; but those who torment us for our own good will torment us without end for they do so with the approval of their own conscience*".

ACWE's religion displays itself as postmodernism, synthesized from a century-plus of propaganda and rammed down our throats to control us "for our own good". Globalisation is simply the newest form of predatory colonialism, bringing "enlightenment" to every culture and person whether they want it or not. It's the original progressive God complex - the elites have all the answers and you must accept them. When ACWE's elites call someone a "dictator" or their government a "regime" that means they're plotting to delegitimize, overthrow, and probably kill them, hardly a peaceful act.

Whenever there's a need for a bad guy on the world stage, western leaders (usually American) point at the accused claiming they're *violating the principles of (liberal) "democracy".* For example, the current arch-villain is Putin because Russia isn't a liberal democracy. This is despite the fact that on November 28, 1917, just weeks after the Bolshevik communists overthrew the democratic and constitutional government of Russia, which itself had replaced the Tzar relatively peacefully just months earlier, the US State Department's chief representative in Paris sent a coded telegram to President Wilson and the Secretary of State, stating: "*There has been cabled over and published here [Paris] statements made by American papers to the effect that Russia should be treated as an enemy. It's exceedingly important that such criticisms should be suppressed*..". as we can see, progressives of whatever flavor assist each other. The US spent almost all of the 20th century propping its official enemy: the USSR. Without that help, it would have rapidly collapsed economically during the 1920's. Read the book "*The Best Enemy Money Can Buy*" to see how the US gave aid (including military aid!) to the USSR, even during the height of the Cold War.

The Cathedral adapted to people recognizing its behavioral pattern by camouflaging itself, and injecting memetic beliefs that enable this into the popular consciousness via the media. It's a really interesting case of evolution in action, and generally we find that these memes are the complete opposite of reality:

→ **"Oppressive regimes are at war with "the people" – a mass of the lower classes".**
(In reality, Western Universalist elites ally themselves with the nation's lower classes and use them to wage a proxy war on the targeted middle or upper classes of that nation.)

→ **"Corrupt elites personally enrich themselves, using power for personal gain".**
(The Cathedral is pretty strict about avoiding direct, obvious, bribes both in foreign and domestic affairs: instead trusted cut-outs are used and the payments and services are decoupled; speaker and consultancy fees, "environmental impact" studies, fines, loans, all these and more are acceptable – but an envelope of cash is not.)

→ **"Autocratic regimes create hostility from the people due to their very evilness".**
(In reality, this is completely backwards – Universalists reward crimes and attacks on their opposition with prestige and money. The attacks (or responses to the attacks) are then used as "proof" of the evil nature of the opposition, much like a schoolyard bully mockingly saying "why are you hitting yourself" while hitting their victim with the victim's own hands.)

Government applies state power to ensure political outcomes – for example it makes broadcasters toe the line by direct regulation of the airwaves. The print media get access, to the extent that they play along with those they seek access to, hence the New York Times. Schools teach the government line on the great depression, and scientists and economists know that if you scientifically prove what politicians and regulators want to hear you get ahead, and what politicians and regulators want to hear is always that regulators are doing good, except that they need a lot more power because they aren't doing nearly enough – hence the noise about financial "deregulation", when all the supposed examples of financial deregulation are financial regulation, which always happens to be highly favorable to elements like Goldman & Sachs, who are connected to the regulators by a revolving door. At the same time, those seeking political outcomes, seek backing from state power. A marriage naturally ensues.

In the same way, Universalists populating those elements; the political, regulatory, financial, media, educational, etc. promote individuals who tell them what they want to hear, and what they want to hear is things that agree with Universalist beliefs, and things that scientifically "prove" what Universalists already believe – everything from the existence of "systemic racism" to the modern "original sins" of ~~global warming~~ climate change, overpopulation, and anything and everything in between. The system is purposely built in such a way as to dispel responsibility, so you can't point at any one person and say they're personally responsible for any one atrocity.

One of the early godfathers of progressivism, William James, penned a short essay in 1910 titled "*The Moral Equivalent of War*" [**http://www.constitution.org/wj/meow.htm**]. Read this and you'll learn that their entire strategy for seeking control of government is to promote false problems only they can "solve". In order for people to willingly surrender their rights as citizens for the duties of subjects, they need hear only a steady drumbeat of "something for nothing" behind a fearful hymn of how treacherous and fraught our world is.

"*Progress*", said C. S. Lewis, "*means getting nearer to the place where you want to be. And if you have taken a wrong turning, then to go forward does not get you any nearer. If you're on the wrong road, progress means doing an about-turn and walking back to the right road; and in that case the man who turns back soonest is the most progressive man*."

Think carefully: where would **you** wish to be, and are we actually getting any closer to that?

Some examples of such moral equivalents of war: drug and alcohol prohibition, economic inequality, climate change, sea-level rise, racism, sexism, misogyny, rape culture, violence and gun culture, homophobia, greed, poverty, campaign finance, "hate speech", White supremacy, freedom from ignorance, freedom from illness, et cetera, et cetera… Such messages are intended to assure you that if you were to be left alone to your own devices without their assistance, you'll surely go astray from the flock and be eaten by the wolves out there.

These wedge issues are designed to not be solved, but rather to be hardened and institutionalized - that is, they're designed to be used to create agencies staffed by loyalists that increase progressive power to control taxation and spending. The outcomes of such efforts frequently are the complete opposite of the declared and desired effects, e.g. see: **https://archive.is/3OgJW** . To hear any progressive meme is to hear a well-crafted rationalization for yielding them more power.

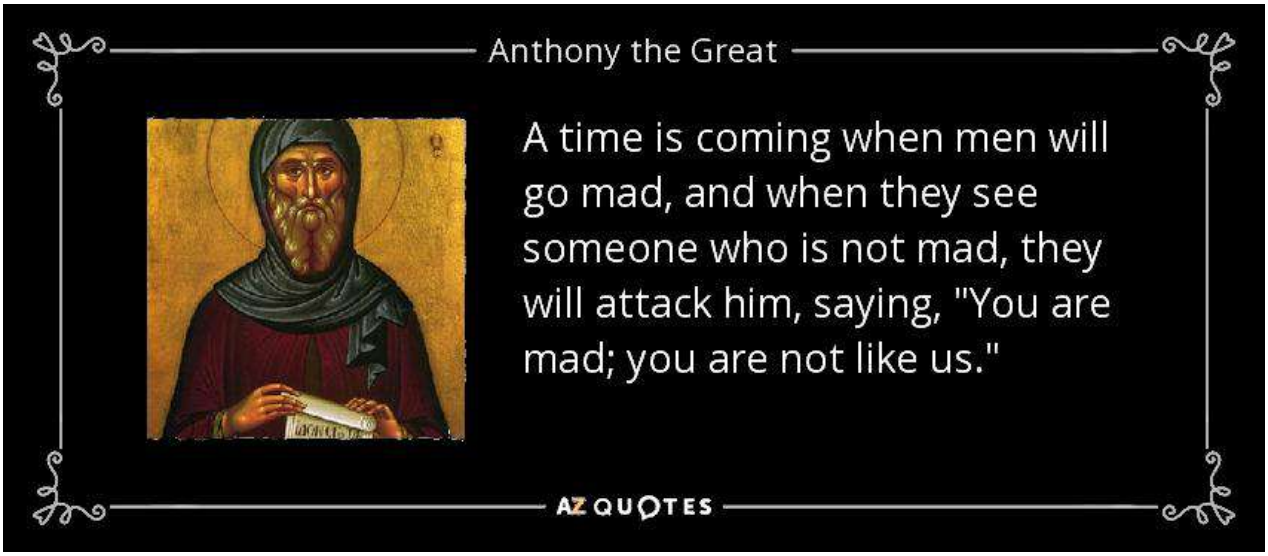
"*It dawned on me the other day that most of the scare stories in the media today are based on things that are invisible, like CO2 and radiation, or very remote, like polar bears and coral reefs. Thus, the average person cannot observe and verify the truth of these claims for themselves [sic]. They must rely on activists, the media, politicians, and scientists -all of whom have a huge financial and/or political interest in the subject- to tell them the truth.*"
– attributed to Dr. Patrick Moore, author of "*Fake Invisible Catastrophes and Threats of Doom*" (Ecosense Environmental, 2021)

When Bismarck ripped off social democracy from Karl Marx, Marx acidly predicted in his "*Critique of the Gotha Programme*" that the use of state power to implement his communism (of which social democracy is simply the most common form) could result only in a dictatorship of a bourgeois elite in need of a permanent underclass as the basis for their right to rule:

"*the democratic petty bourgeois want better wages and security for the workers, and hope to achieve this by an extension of state employment and by welfare measures; in short, they hope to bribe the workers with a more or less disguised form of alms and to break their revolutionary strength by temporarily rendering their situation tolerable*" - Karl Marx

To the surprise of his opponents, Otto von Bismarck openly acknowledged that this was "a *state-socialist idea! The generality must undertake to assist the unpropertied*". But his motives were far from altruistic, as he himself observed; "*Whoever embraces this idea ... will come to power".* The aim of Bismarck's social insurance (what we now call welfare) legislation, as he himself put it in 1880, was "*to engender in the great mass of the unpropertied the conformist state of mind that springs from the feeling of entitlement to a pension... A man who has a pension for his old age is ... much easier to deal with than a man without that prospect*".

So to put it more simply: Marx (despite his idiotic ideas regarding economics and human nature) was smart enough to suggest that commoners should create parallel institutions to benefit themselves. Bismarck foresightedly encouraged the commoners to buy-in to the political system instead, shackling themselves to the elite class who give the ***appearance*** of caring for the commoners, but in reality defraud and exploit them/us in a slavelike fashion. Guess which system spread?



6. The Role Of Science In The Machinery Of ACWE

To simply call everything "science" is to be misleading, often intentionally. Science has no intrinsic authority, it's less reliable than engineering, and increasingly, references to it are a deceitful bait-and-switch, in which the overly credulous are led to believe that because an individual with certain credentials is asserting something, that statement is supported by documentary evidence gathered through the scientific method of hypothesis, experiment, and successful replication.

Science does require a certain level of belief; otherwise the now-accepted theory of plate tectonics (for just one of many examples) would have been accepted on its merits, rather than being initially rejected when other scientists couldn't believe it. Think about how many things you believe just because someone told you they were true, and they seemed believable enough or you didn't think to question them. Anything that you didn't personally experience is belief-based for you …the belief that the people who claim to have experienced it were telling the truth.

For example: do you believe the planet Neptune exists? Have you ever seen it for yourself, with your own eyes? Or do you just believe it exists because other people claim to have seen it? You've probably never questioned that belief, because it seems believable enough. I do believe in the planet Neptune, but I also haven't seen it with my own eyes. I've seen pictures of it… at least, pictures of something that the people who took the pictures claim is Neptune.

I have no reason to not believe them, at least regarding the existence of the planet Neptune. Other people have told me that atoms exist, and again, I have no good reason to disbelieve them, as their arguments are plausible and their theory of atomic matter lines up quite well with the observable universe. However consider that the phlogiston theory likewise lined up well with the observable universe at the time it was in vogue. Perhaps someday we will learn that the theory of atomic matter is itself a very imperfect explanation of actual reality, I don't know, but to assume that just because an "expert in the field" tells us that something /is/, whether that thing is Neptune, atoms, or phlogiston, does not necessarily mean that it really is so, even when they point to studies that appear to support whatever their current claims are: **https://www.nature.com/news/over-half-of-psychology-studies-fail-reproducibility-test-1.18248** - similar situations are happening now in other fields.

Science is constructed by egos fighting - see Michael White's book "*Rivals: conflict as the fuel of science*" (ISBN:0-436-20463-0) if you don't believe me here. What convinces scientists in the end is not evidence (which is far too easy to deny or ignore) but the ambition of some scientists who look at evidence and can use it to get fame and a budget. But with a good hate campaign from the entrenched dogma, that ambition can be castrated. Peer Review is science by consensus: instead of experimentalists telling the scientific community what they see, the scientific community tells experimentalists what dogma says they should see, in truly cult-like fashion. See [**https://www.unz.com/pfrost/cleansing-scientific-literature/**]

If you refuse to believe that cultist group psychology and intellectiolatry does not exist in science, or believe that peer review is a good thing, pay attention to the rejection of evidence with germ theory from Oliver Gordon, through Semmelweis (who was ostracized from the medical and scientific community for saying washing hands saves lives.) until Pasteur (who was a chemist who lost his kid to disease, not a doctor. He had skin in the game and was not trained in the old paradigm). Or more recently, look at what happened to the discoverer of quasi-crystals, who later got a Nobel Prize for his discovery once the scientific community could not continue ignoring what he'd found: **https://archive.is/z8MYE** and **https://yewtu.be/V2GqU6fdjeQ**

Consider how China developed gunpowder, cannon, oceangoing ships, the magnetic compass, paper, printing, etc. etc. all **way** before westerners did, yet China went into decline despite such things being government sponsored: it had the same effect as government suppression. The reason for things like the "*encyclopedia of all knowledge*" being created was promoting and preserving knowledge, but the actual effect was to suppress and forbid it, because only what the bureaucrats thought they knew got into the records, and if you knew better than a higher bureaucrat, why, obviously you were defying authority and promoting ignorance and misinformation – a mechanism very similar to today's global warming consensus. Scientists who don't go along with the consensus to get along tend to lose their jobs and don't get published in the regular channels - a death-sentence in academic circles.

You don't get large accumulations of scientists unless they've been hired by a powerful grant-winner, and powerful grant-winners are ruthlessly selected to be people who won't go off the reservation, and to be the sort who only hire people who won't go off the reservation. Peer-review is just one of the more effective filters removing those who might otherwise stray, hence Universalism's love for it: **https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC4093306/**

When it was the Royal Society deciding what was science and what was the scientific method, it awarded prestige to some scientists more than others. Its motto was "*Take no one's word for it*" [**https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Royal_Society#Motto**] – which meant that any scientists who were claiming X had to show **how** they knew X was real, and meant that others had to be able to replicate the same experiment to show that the results of X were in fact real. Get yourself a copy of Robert Boyle's "*The Sceptical Chymist*" (yes, Chymist, spelt with a Y) from your local library and see if you can find anything described that remotely resembles the peer-review system we see imposed now. Healthy scepticism, even of long-established theories, is an essential ethic of science- as T.H. Huxley long ago wrote this is "*...the highest of duties; blind faith the one unpardonable sin*".

Genuine science is replicable. And "replicable" doesn't mean two scientist-priests recite the same doctrine, or that multiple scientist-priests have a consensus on how things are, it means they can explain what they did to learn the facts of something in such a fashion that anyone else could do it also. If they refuse to explain, if they obfuscate, they aren't scientists, but priests. The legitimacy of any particular scientific finding is whether applying the methods used in the study will result in similar findings upon repetition. **If a study can be replicated, the study's findings are verified**.

Peer review does not replicate studies, which means it doesn't speak to the veracity of scientific findings at all; it does not affect the legitimacy of a study's findings, or the conclusions drawn from those findings. It relies on opinion, and is not part of the scientific method - in most fields, such as physics, it's a new thing, crudely bolted-on, and wherever it's become a standard thing, we see stagnation. Peer review is consensus. Consensus is religion, not science. It works the way it's depicted in this insightful cartoon: **http://dresdencodak.com/2011/04/19/dark-science-09/**

In the halcyon days of western greatness, the majority of the members of our elites did not go to college. The Royal Society was not an academic institution, but a social and special-interest-based one. If you read old books from the 1930s and 1950s depicting top members of the elite, men born to wealth who subsequently became even wealthier, whenever they're funding the expensive events of the story, we read that they went to work straight out of high school.

The story line of 1930s science fiction books often features a great scientist, who in the science fiction writing of the era until about 1940 seldom has an academic degree or academic affiliation, though in 1940s science fiction we read about scientists that came out of university, but even in the 1940s, fiction depicted a wealthy elite and powerful men who did not attend university. When they chat to other wealthy men, they knew them from high school or through family connections, not from college. Interestingly, this is still partly how the elite connection network works.

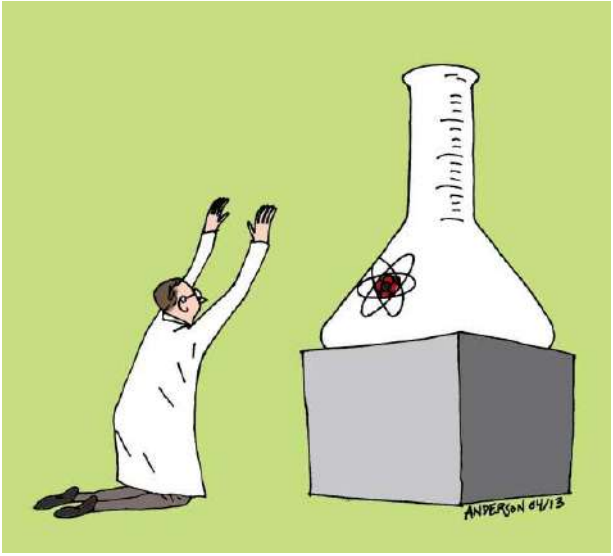
Early science fiction often has some super-science crisis, and scientists start chatting to other scientists about it. It's not academics chatting to other academics. The idea that college magically pops you into the elite is new, and was horse-shit from the beginning. University expansion was a Ponzi scheme - the only good jobs it ever delivered were jobs in the universities, and activities where government restricted entrance to academic graduates only. The time has long since come for the scheme to collapse, but the power of the university-based state religion keeps it alive.

When Harvard got supremacy over the Royal Society as a result of WWII, we got scientific truth determined behind closed doors on the basis of secret evidence that they will not show you even if you mount freedom of information requests. They call this process for determining scientific truth, "*peer review*"; it's the process as demonstrated by the famous case of Pierre Pachet, Professor of Physiology at Toulouse who in 1872 said "*Louis Pasteur's theory of germs is ridiculous fiction*".

"*The testimony of many has little more value than that of few, since the number of people who reason well in complicated matters is much smaller than that of those who reason badly. If reasoning were like hauling I should agree that several reasoners would be worth more than one, just as several horses can haul more sacks of grain than one can. But reasoning is like racing and not like hauling, and a single Barbary steed can outrun a hundred dray horses*"

- Galileo Galilei, *condemning what we now call "peer review"*.

Peer review might well keep out the cranks, but it also keeps out the impious, which makes it safe for a field of science to become a religion, and for scientists to become priests of a state-sponsored theocracy. Cranks have never been a threat to science, yet state-sponsored theocracy has always been a threat to science, thus peer review has always been a failure. It's caused by science becoming theology, and causes science to become theology.



In peer-reviewed science (just like journalism), there are powerful incentives to avoid data that deviates from the consensus of one's peers, but almost always we find that there are absolutely no social or career consequences for simply making up data - it's entirely up to the conscience of the individual scientist. The result of this is that if an honest scientist keeps running into data that deviates from the consensus of his peers, he is deep trouble, and unlikely to remain a scientist for very long.

Back in the days when physics made dramatic progress, there was little peer review, perhaps none. For example, "*Electrodynamics of Moving Bodies*" was not peer-reviewed, and today it would likely have never passed peer review – because: 1) it was written by a lowly patent clerk, and 2) it was in large part a novel way of looking at results that were a hundred years old. Outsiders and novel ways of looking at things are pretty much guaranteed to fail peer-review, even when they happen to be Einstein when he was still a patent clerk.

These days, most Academic "research" is custom-ordered by the permanent government, global warming being an egregious example. The permanent government decides it will promulgate some regulation or finding in order to reward a friend or punish an enemy, and then commissions some "research" to authoritatively justify this regulation or finding. This is the same way DuPont got CFC-11 and CFC-12 banned because of its supposed and unproven "risk to the Ozone Layer" right at the time when the patents DuPont held were about to expire. It did the same thing with the patent for DDT when it was about to expire too. Thus most academic research is meaningless except as an answer to "*Who does ACWE intend to destroy?*" We are in the third childhood of human reason, the latter days of the Roman empire being the second childhood of human reason.

Environmentalism (and several other "*–isms*") are state sponsored religions, which thanks to state backing have the privilege of publishing their holy texts in scientific journals despite a conspicuous and infamous failure to comply with the standards and rules of those journals, such as data disclosure. If these journals are reluctant to apply these written rules on certain sensitive topics, then what appears on those sensitive topics will not be science, and hence what appears or fails to appear in such journals is not an indication of facts, rather it's an indication of theology.

Wikipedia simply feeds you the poisons manufactured by Academia and the mainstream media, treating academia and the mainstream press as authoritative, forbidding any direct knowledge as "original research". Whenever it gets onto a political subject it lies (usually but not exclusively by omitting any politically-incorrect viewpoints), and these days just about everything is political. Their rules innately and inherently create bias, in that they require contributors to source their data, not from reality, not from what's observable, but from what "respectable authority" says.

For example, if you want to say that Karl Marx was an antisemitic jew, you aren't allowed to quote Karl Marx saying genocidal things about his fellow jews, you're supposed to quote some academic ***interpreting*** Karl Marx's genocidal remarks about jews. Like leftists, Wikipedia gives unfiltered and unspun information pejorative names, such as "original research", "anecdotes", etc., when to normal people they're known as "primary sources". Consider also who puts that content into Wikipedia before assuming it's reliable: **https://archive.is/FKm2D**

Every scientist today is a progressive, in that you're not allowed to do science unless you submit essays explaining that women are equal to men, only much more equal, and the wealth of the West was stolen from black Africans, black Africa officially being the source of all science, technology, and first-world standards of living, despite having done absolutely nothing with their continent's bountiful natural resources during the 40,000-year head-start they had on the rest of humanity.

Every single scientist today is required to demonstrate faith in truth by consensus, and thus every single scientist today is *de facto* required to reject and repudiate the scientific method, especially regarding politically incorrect subjects such as differences between the sexes or between ethnic groups. Maybe he or she believes in the scientific method in their heart, but they have to deny believing in it in public if they wish to get ahead anywhere in the scientific community.

So, every single scientist today is forced by the system to at least give lip service to ideas profoundly and radically incompatible with science. Newton, on the other hand, to the extent that he was issuing his own custom-made radical heresy, was issuing a religion even more compatible with science than standard issue Anglicanism, a belief system motivated by the intention and desire to be compatible with the results of the scientific method and to give moral and status support to the scientific method.

7. ***Foundation Myths***

The unknown person who shared this on 4chan got it broadly correct - the postmodern world's foundation myth is the holocaust, which has been grievously destructive to the cultural and social order for nations under the thrall of ACWE;

A foundation myth can be recognised because it fulfils three functions:
> 1) *It explains the origin and structure of the world (and society).*
> 2) *It defines ultimate good and evil (from those definitions are derived the values used to justify holding power)*
> 3) *It determines what is held sacred in and by that society.*

For modern Westerners the story of WWII has become the foundation myth. It fulfils all three functions:

1) We live in the "post-war world". The lines on the map, the institutions, the sense of what era we live in, all arise from the start-point that is WWII.
2) Ultimate evil is Nazis. Ultimate good is opposing Nazis. The values derived from these definitions are anti-racism, equality, diversity, anti-nationalism, non-aggression, and so on.
3) The only thing held sacred, that cannot be denied or mocked in the postmodern West, is the Holocaust.

The problem is that all three functions are backwards, or negative:
1) Instead of the origin event bringing fertility & new life, it was a conflagration of death and destruction.
2) Instead of ultimate good having the central position in the story, that slot is occupied by ultimate evil.
(Everyone knows that Adolf Hitler, the personification of evil, holds center-stage in the WWII tale)
3) Instead of something mysterious and sublime being held sacred, it (the Holocaust) is an obscenity.

Having a negative foundation myth means that the tree of life for Westerners is poisoned.
> Having a negative foundation myth means that the tree of life for Westerners is poisoned.

(also see: **https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Origin_myth** for reference)



In ACWE, things like single motherhood, the lazy, and low-IQ individuals have been subsidized at taxpayer expense for decades. Things such as productivity, childbirth, and civic-mindedness are penalized via taxes. This led us to have an abundance of the former, and far too little of the latter. Moral relativity creates a downward spiral. Sexual freedom and child killing aren't new, nobody here is an original thinker. Rome had this idea, Babylon had it, Sodom had it, Assyria had it, Persia had it. Sexual freedom goes hand in hand with the destruction of a civilization. But who cares, right? Morals are just relative, so just let murder run rampant. (see: **https://archive.is/ow8S6**)

Such behavior parallels the Mouse Utopia Experiment, you can read about that here: (**https://archive.is/49aQf) ** you can also read the paper based on the research here: **(https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC1644264/pdf/procrsmed00338-0007.pdf)**
Essentially, once societies achieve a certain level of size and complexity, its members begin a mental, moral, and even physical decline.

Within ACWE, the political Right (historically the bastion of social conservation) has constantly sacrificed its own to appease Leftist faux-outrage, but when it's the other way around the Left orders the Right to be silent. Western "conservatives" have conserved nothing, because they're too frightened to fight for anything. They parrot the idiot mantra "we must act better than them", and pat themselves on the back for their "principles" while their countries burn down around them.

But the real issue is and remains that western "conservatives" have been unable to formulate a vision for the future. No matter how idiotic it is, the Left always has some sort of vision, which is why it succeeds. Far too often, the Right has nothing more than "we want things to stay the same", which leaves those dissatisfied with the current paradigm willing to try *anything* that brings change. This point was made several times over a decade ago by Moldbug:

1) https://www.unqualified-reservations.org/2009/10/gentle-introduction-to-unqualified/
> "*Since there's no credible alternative to USG, its opponents have no Schelling point. Moscow could surrender to Washington. Washington has no one to surrender to. The East had a West; the West has no West. Thus, its only option is to live forever. And thus, the Tianming strategy for bringing it down: create a credible alternative. Ergo: become worthy, glasshoppa.*"

2) https://www.unqualified-reservations.org/2007/07/democracy-as-adaptive-fiction/
> "*The West has no West of its own. Besides tiny fossils of old Europe like Andorra, Monaco and Lichtenstein, the only successful non-democratic states in the world are Singapore, Hong Kong and Dubai, each of which is interesting and impressive, but none of which are without problems.*"

3) https://www.unqualified-reservations.org/2007/08/be-infinitely-devoted-to-your-beloved/
> "*... the West has no West of its own. No 19th-century state survived the democratic avalanche. When I say that democracy is the opposite of liberty —a statement which would strike most Westerners today as nonsensical, just as it might strike a faithful Soviet serf as nonsensical to say that communism is the opposite of progress— I have no examples, even across some dog-fenced border, to point to. And this difference is not evaporating at all.*"

To a degree, extreme individualism as seen in libertarianism as rooted in Judeo-Protestant thinking (which places disproportionate value on profit and self-interest) is also to blame as it has caused them to adopt an attitude of not caring about society- who cares about society when it's all about the individual? Libertarianism is classical liberalism, the cerebral offspring of an English Puritan sub-sect known as the Levelers, who opposed hierarchy like aristocracy, Kings, and bishops, but supported private property ("the means of production"), supported natural inequality, opposed socialism and what we now call communism. The Levelers opposed them for a mixture of religious reasons (God ordained private property and capitalism in the fall) and economic ones (price controls and debasing currency have bad results, thus wrecking the market won't work).

The issue with the various Leveller/Classical-Liberal/Libertarian theories that sprang up during the enlightenment is that if everyone is equal before the law you have to give everyone a vote, and then someone comes along and says "*Vote for me - I'll kill all these guys that use big words and you can have their stuff*". The libertarians/classic liberals were unable to realize the problem of keeping low-trust peoples away or under control, because of their universalism. Friedrich Hayek was quite correct when he stated "*socialism has never and nowhere been at first a working-class movement*". In every historical case, it began in the minds of the intellectuals then spread to the politicians, only entering working-class verbiage once politicians could present it as policy.

Similarly, the issue with the modern inclusiveness mantra is that not all people will cooperate with others; many will seek to preferentially benefit only themselves and their immediate family or social circle, rather than helping their national community as a whole. Such people are the ones who are most violently opposed to nationalism, as they seem to know, either instinctively or otherwise, that their actions and behavior place them outside of the national identity. They're often very patriotic to compensate for that lack of nationalism, as patriotism is loyalty to the State (that is to say, to a government), whereas nationalism is loyalty to a nation (or if you prefer, to a People - with a capital "P", if you understand the difference). Sadly, the meanings of these two words have been changed for ideological reasons over the years, greatly confusing the matter.

This is the influence of cultural marxism (which has since been renamed Neo-Marxism) - marxist communists also infiltrated feminism at its earliest stages, and that's without mentioning that it's **always** been about hating men, never about "equality": **https://yewtu.be/sCRohDqWDcw** This is a matter of historical fact, the similarities in feminist dogma and marxist philosophy are no coincidence. Pure marxism is about fomenting dissension between economic classes so as to destroy capitalist society and remake it into a "perfect utopia". The problem is that economic class is not immutable like marxism says it is; it's hard to get the working classes to hate the bourgeoisie when the working classes can ***become*** the bourgeoisie with hard work and good planning. Biological differences however ***are*** immutable, so marxists have shifted over to man-vs.-woman, black-vs.-White, gay-vs.-straight, etc., as their preferred lever to disrupt society.

Unfortunately for us, this combined into the condensing protestant/puritan doctrines of late 19th-century America - from the day in 1653 when Cromwell cracked down on those further left than he was, the predecessors of today's Universalists fled or were expelled to America, and there they dreamed of conquering America, re-conquering Britain, and perhaps conquering the world.

As Moldbug explains at quite some length, Universalism/Progressivism is a cancerous and heretical outgrowth of Christianity, taking up the theorem that the rules are less important than their moralistic intent, and then running with it through an academic lens of textual interpretation characteristic of, and borrowed from, Orthodox Judaism (*pilpul**), and heavily seasoned with Marxist anti-theism and, to coin a word, **intellectiolatry** (meaning: "*the worship of intellectualism")*.
*(*pilpul* explained: **https://archive.is/j24rX**)

It was these exiled Puritans who originally founded Harvard as a taxpayer-funded fundamentalist religious seminary [**(2017) https://oasis.lib.harvard.edu/oasis/deliver/~hua10011**], and as they became increasingly successful and obtained worldly power, they competed with each other for superior holiness, pretty soon becoming holier than Jesus in their own eyes (e.g. consider the temperance and anti-slavery movements) – hence you can nowadays find articles written by Harvard Universalists on how Jesus was racist and homophobic as if these were bad things.

Being holier than Jesus, they merged several of their schismatic branches of Protestantism, becoming unitarians, then as Marxism grew in popularity in the 1890's they became atheists, then as they were buoyed up by their victory in WW2 thanks to the power they gained from FDR's open pandering to them and the elite status given them as his "brains trust"*, they became extremely militant atheists who are violently hostile to the parent religion from which their heresy sprung. Harvard is ***still*** a fundamentalist religious seminary; they just changed the religion. (*this thanks to Woodrow Wilson putting credentialism on a pedestal and the 1883 Pendleton Act giving bureaucrats tenure.).

The key to understanding all this is getting the idea out of your head that religions need gods. This is a hard thing to do because progressives spent centuries creating the idea that belief in a god is what religion "is" and then describing themselves as the "anti-religion" guys. The reality is very few men can live without some kind of religion and every system claiming to be without religion mirrors religion and becomes one in its own right: think of Communism and how it treats Marx, Lenin, Stalin and Mao the way religions put up their prophets and saints. Think of the way North Korea treats the ruling Kim dynasty. [INSERT PHOTO OF COMMIE PARADE HERE]

The word "theocracy" doesn't have a firm standard usage, being mostly used as a slur by Universalists aimed at religious people or states they seek to attack and undermine – the essence of its meaning outside such usage is that such a society is run for the benefit of a religious goal, and how ***else*** would you define the progressive goal of equality/reason/progress, when even the act of seeing those words as positives is part of a progressive's religious belief?

Anytime you see a suppression of admittedly factual data because it's "wrong" or "immoral" to believe it, you've moved from a system of reason and truth to a system of dogma. When that same dogma is dominant at every level of society and not believing it's dangerous to keeping your job, your friends, and in some cases your life (Waco) then it's clear that you live in a theocracy. In our case, since Universalism believes in no gods, we specifically live in an ***a***theocracy*.

(*coined from **a**theist + theocracy)

Max Weber's book "***The Protestant Ethic and the Spirit of Capitalism***" incidentally explains how the Reformation helped to make it possible to acquire social holiness (and thus, respect, social status, etc.) without a monastic renunciation of worldly affairs as was previously necessary. Pharisee (priestly) holiness is relatively cheap and low-risk to acquire, whereas military glory is inherently expensive and dangerous to acquire - by dramatically lowering the barrier for entry to pharisaic holiness (which formerly required actually becoming a priest or monk), the Reformation thus made it easy for scumbags to increase their social standing and power, just look at our present ruling class. It is easier to have a virtuous ruling class if they're a martial ruling class, because gaining military glory requires personal risk and effort (and victory). High-risk, potentially deadly activities are an excellent test of one's character, unlike say, a diploma or doctorate (today's equivalent of religious ordination).

For a small, and partial, proof of the post-Christian character of progressivism, consider the ludicrous progressive belief that ***all people are equal*** in ability, virtue etc., which is what remains of the Christian belief that people are equal in the sight of God, after God was removed from the belief system. Equality implies fungibility — the two things are interchangeable and one may be substituted for the other in any circumstance whatsoever, the way a brand-new dollar bill and a wrinkled, old one are worth exactly the same. The proposition that men and women are equal, that races are equal, which leads progressives to the false conclusion they're interchangeable, that women can be soldiers and firemen, men can marry other men, and so on, can only be understood in a coherent logical framework as a proposition about souls, rather than bodies, and when this doctrine is doubted, we see the reaction from believers in "equality" is religious, not empirical.

Understood as a part of Christian belief, equality makes sense, because Christians believe that the most important part of the self is the immaterial soul – since a soul is immaterial, material differences have nothing to do with how God regards people's souls - pretty straightforward. So when viewed in the context of souls, equality does makes sense, but when it's removed from the realm of the supernatural, and rammed down our throats as if it were "*SCIENCE*!!!*" *(disclaimer: contains no actual science), the results are frequently near-catastrophic, especially as Universalist progressivism also discarded any of the tradition, logic and common-sense which would moderate Christianity in application, e.g. here is Saint Aquinas, arguing the Christian case against "open borders": **http://www.newadvent.org/summa/2105.htm#article3**

This is why any attempt to question the official narrative of the Second World War is strictly prohibited, indeed it's one of the worst possible thoughtcrimes in the USA, because the entire political structure of the ruling class is built upon the myths and legends fabricated in the aftermath. Most importantly, the official narrative channels the logical (Marxist-inspired) endpoint of the great historical dialectic, starting with the Declaration of Independence, and continuing right to the present day. If the official narrative of WWII is analysed and discovered to have been even slightly wrong, then the ruling class' structure is delegitimized, and all their decisions since then also. So the system protects itself by not allowing any questioning from within, and dismissing or attacking any questioning from without. ACWE since FDR became US president rests on the assumption that the actions taken by the rulers are justified and moral – remove the assumption of morality, and the whole house of cards collapses.

British Imperialism was an anti-colonialist movement, and was the disastrous predecessor of today's even more disastrous post-WW2 anti-colonialism, itself a mask for Universalist cultural imperialism.

Universalism has complete continuity of organization and personnel going back all the way to the ministers kicked out of the Church of England by Charles II for doing back then what they're still doing now. Under the initial Massachusetts colony charter, the Puritans created a government in which Congregationalism was the state church, the ministers were supported by taxpayers, and only full church members could vote in elections. It was in this society that Harvard was founded to ensure that Massachusetts had a supply of educated ministers. And though the faith of that state Church has changed utterly beyond recognition, that change into the modern progressive "globohomo" faith of Universalism happened incrementally, by small degrees, each small change originating at Harvard, the "Vatican" of the Puritan state Church.

For Universalists "*political correctness*" is religious orthodoxy, and "*multiculturalism*" and "*diversity*" are their religious tests for office. It's not possible to reason with a religious fanatic. It's not possible to debate a theocrat. True Believers don't want to have a discussion that reaches a rational conclusion. True Believers don't want to moderate their views to accommodate the sceptical. It's not possible to reach a reasonable accommodation with a fanatic. Their whole point is to be holier-than-thou. If you accept the theocrat's dictates, you can expect to be subjected to ever more unreasonable demands.

A not-so-hypothetical: let's say your employer subscribes to the fashionable theory that the observable inequitable distribution of technical talent across sex and race:
http://web.archive.org/web/20150617080133/http://www.bls.gov/cps/cpsaat11.htm
is caused by biases so small that no one can see them:
http://web.archive.org/web/20150617080133/http://www.tolerance.org/activity/test-yourself-hidden-bias

So you have to attend indoctrination ("training") courses for detecting original sin (unconscious bias). In professional America, since around 2015, this passes for sane and reasonable among Universalist true believers. The rest of us recognise it as anything but sane or reasonable. True believers agitate for insane and unreasonable things, but it's no use complaining: their goal is to make you complain.

It's no use trying to have a rational discussion. (Like, "*How can Unconscious Bias be responsible for a 5:1 male/female gap and a 60:1 White/black gap?*" and; "*How come I never see specific numbers given when talking about Unconscious Bias? How can the math possibly work?*" **http://web.archive.org/web/20150617080133/http://www.google.com/diversity/at-google.html#tab=tech**) if you do, you're trying to speak adult-to-adult. The religious nut wants to speak Theocrat to Unbeliever. The Universalist goal is to make you complain, and then to punish and publicly humiliate you for your insufficient holiness.

8. No Conspiracies

It's not a conspiracy: conspiracies meet and swiftly and secretly make decisions. Universalism's elites (aka "the Cathedral") cannot do this, because as a non-supernatural religion, it's more along the lines of a consensus or a climate of opinion. It takes a long time for new doctrine to become part of the party line that all must accept (look at the changes in elite and public opinions regarding homosexuality, for an obvious example). It does contain lots and lots of little conspiracies, each of a handful of people acting in their own sphere, but these little conspiracies aren't well-coordinated, and to the extent that they're coordinated, they're in large part coordinated through the not-at-all secret pages of the New York Times and other popular mass media, such as CNN, and so among their loyal and obedient followers.

Universalism's elites (the so-called Cathedral) never demand that anyone explicitly converts to progressivism. Their position is that every traditional theist religion that you might care to name has *always* supported Universalism's views on gay marriage, feminism, etc., only a very long time ago the ignorant haters who were originally setting up their religion just didn't understand their own religion as well as the Universalists do now – of course, anyone who disagrees is clearly just a stupid and ignorant racist bigot, so sayeth ye Universalist dogma.

This particular dogma of theirs is a borrowing from the Marxist theory of *false consciousness*, which claims that a person's consciousness is "false" if they pursue their own particular interests rather than their supposed class interests, and if they have beliefs that reflect their own lived experience rather than the Marxist interpretation of their lived experience, with the implication that people should act according to the interests of their class. This is also why you have leftists accusing people of "*voting against their own interests*", when they vote against leftists' interests.

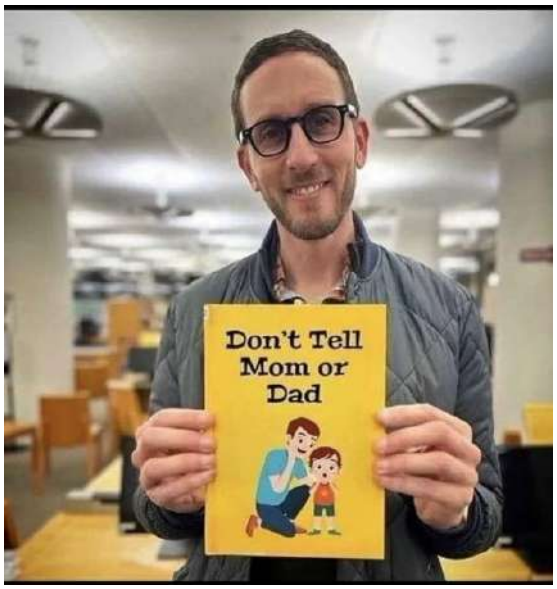
When the baby boomers came of age in the 1960s, they attended western universities, being taught by ACWE's indoctrinated "establishment", still full of heady excess from winning the war against their non-universalist enemies (the Nazis and the Japanese Empire) which proceeded to indoctrinate boomers with cultural marxism. The young boomers were (and often remain even now) utterly unaware that serious and intelligent people could and did disagree with ACWE's religious tenets. (An example of this is the popular but utterly false universalist meme that conservatives/racists have low IQ, see: **https://archive.is/ShqY3** and **https://archive.is/VDinH**) Over time, this educational echo-chamber resulted in an increasingly extreme doctrine, which for reasons unknown to me, spiralled into insanity in the early 2000's, and continues to do so today.

Universalists even repurposed the national educational curriculum sometime around the 1990's from its foundational purpose of indoctrinating children into worshipping the state, towards worshipping Universalism. Thus something that was useful, even if operating poorly and destructively, became malicious and is rapidly becoming worse, eg. [**https://archive.is/imDgs** , **https://archive.is/5w3rm** , **https://archive.is/gQqFu**]. This has nothing to do with funding, which mostly gets spent on administration, it's due to teachers who are increasingly creatures like this: **https://twitter.com/libsoftiktok/status/1532830992905404417** and this: **https://archive.is/FmnSc** Small local schools are small, and rapidly falling, fortresses of sanity in a rising ocean of shit. [eg: **https://archive.is/9Cu6U**] The further schoolteachers are from metropolitan authority, the farther behind the latest official orthodoxy they are, but that won't stop them trying to convince your kids to be gay or trans and worship blacks, which are positions of "social holiness" under universalism.



They don't even teach the three R's any more, instead they teach the three S's: *Sex*, *Self-esteem*, and *Social justice*!!!

University students especially are incredibly obedient and worship those that can bestow them with academic credentials, believing it will lead them to good lives and let them do fun things and that they will have real power ...all lies. Most graduates are just useful idiots or cannon fodder. The really brilliant ones are like rats in mazes; publishing research on some super-specific compartmentalized aspect of research that is completely unimportant and meaningless on its own. These geniuses never get to see what their research is actually part of or doing, and if they do see any small bit, they're brought under national security restrictions etc. They will never rebel because they worship their credentials and, like doctors, they've already committed their entire life to their work. The cognitive dissonance involved in keeping them convinced this is their meaning in life will never let them see how they're enslaved tools of nightmarish people. This is why university education encourages the malleable brains and morals of college kids to involve themselves in sterile casual sex and in drug abuse.



As Ted Kazinkski put it: "*University intellectuals also play an important role in carrying out the System's trick. Though they like to fancy themselves independent thinkers, the intellectuals are (allowing for individual exceptions) the most oversocialized, the most conformist, the tamest and most domesticated, the most pampered, dependent, and spineless group in America today. As a result, their impulse to rebel is particularly strong. But, because they're incapable of independent thought, real rebellion is impossible for them. Consequently they're suckers for the System's trick, which allows them to irritate people and enjoy the illusion of rebelling without ever having to challenge the System's basic values. Because they're the teachers of young people, the university intellectuals are in a position to help the System play its trick on the young, which they do by steering young people's rebellious impulses toward the standard, stereotyped targets: racism, colonialism, women's issues, etc. Young people who aren't college students learn through the media, or through personal contact, of the "social justice" issues for which students rebel, and they imitate the students. Thus a youth culture develops in which there's a stereotyped mode of rebellion that spreads through imitation of peers - just as hairstyles, clothing styles, and other fads spread through imitation."*

Hell, I'll let you in on a secret - the low-down on how decisions are ***actually*** made in ACWE:

> 1). A clique of (≤200) university professors (most at Harvard) has a new opinion.
> 2). The press manufactures consent for it among the public. This may take a decade or so.
> 3). The US government enforces the desired result within the US and worldwide.

FDR hollowed out the American Republic and left only its forms behind; the real power passed to the three-letter agencies and the State Department. Ultimately, the power passed on to Harvard, because Harvard teaches our ruling caste how to do their jobs, but with a 20-year time gap, so ensuring that those wielding power now are doing the bidding of the last generation's Harvard, and that SCOTUS is implementing Harvard's ideas from two generations ago. Recently, in reaction to Trump, our permanent government has taken its cues increasingly directly from Harvard, which is why "*kill whitey and take his stuff*", which is what is being taught at Harvard now, is a matter of actual policy debate in the Democrat party today, and not just their party line in 2040. The fact they're taking their marching orders more directly from Harvard means that we're faster and faster approaching a full-blown holiness spiral, that these ideas are getting closer and closer to the centre of power, no longer keeping a plausibly deniable distance, and immense political violence is looming over the horizon.

There's a concept known as the Overton Window*, which is defined as the range of discourse considered socially acceptable in political affairs. The far-Left has already extended it enormously to their favor since the 1950's, with their embracing and normalization of homosexuality, transgenderism, leukophobia**, and Marxist-Leninist ideology. We similarly need to extend it to our favor by helping people understand the dangers of socio-cultural bolshevization and to get used to the idea that subjugation and genocide are done subtly as well as blatantly - they instinctively understand this when

non-White, non-Western cultures are targeted, they simply need to break through the mental barrier to realize that this also applies to our own European heritage. Of course, this requires overcoming decades of propaganda conditioning - well before the NPC meme was a thing, westerners were programmed like cattle to be hostile to anything labelled 'racist' or 'fascist' by their social superiors.
(* also read: **https://archive.is/0TVyB**) (** leukophobia: *hatred of Caucasian people*)

Historically, Fascism was the only political ideology with a track record of defeating communism. Leftists don't have a good answer for it because it's a progressive ideology also and successfully operates within their same framework, which is why they're afraid of it. That's why leftists today call things that plainly aren't fascist, "Fascism" – they use it to define anything the left currently opposes since leftism's entire existence is based on the myth of equality and the belief that our world should be organized around this assumption. Fascism is the one enemy they can most zealously mobilize their minions against, because historically it was the most effective at suppressing them.

The word Fascism has now no meaning except in so far as it signifies "*something baaaaaaaaad*" to those who are otherwise sympathetically inclined to the other forms of socialism. Its original and very specific meaning has been lost under a tide of Soviet propaganda. Since you don't know what Fascism is, how can you struggle against Fascism? Oh, but you "know" what it's - it's whatever those who desire to manipulate you point at and want you to destroy for them.

One of the reasons modern socialists have basically stopped caring about the (mostly White) working class is that working-class attitudes align more closely (though not perfectly) with the views of centrist socialist movements like Nazism and Fascism than with the views of Marxist or Fabian socialism, or of mainstream progressivism in general. The elites quietly approve of this situation of course – it enables them to pat themselves on the back and say "*see, if it wasn't for our enlightened rule, these filthy plebs would immediately resurrect Hitler from the dead*!"

People who've been through college know the educational system is geared to rewarding conformity and obedience; if you don't do that, you're a troublemaker. It's a filtering device which ends up with people who really, honestly (they aren't lying) internalize the framework of belief and attitudes of the surrounding power system in society. Elite institutions like Harvard and Princeton and such upscale colleges, are very geared to a kind of socialization: teaching students how to behave like a member of the upper classes, to think the right thoughts, and so on. People within who don't adjust to that structure, who don't accept and internalize it (and you can't really work within it unless you internalize and believe it) the people who don't do that, there's all sorts of filtering devices weeding out and getting rid of independent thinkers and pain-in-the-necks, starting from kindergarten all the way up.

George Orwell's Animal Farm was a satire on the Soviet Union written in the mid-1940s. Orwell wrote an introduction to it which wasn't published at the time, and was found in his papers 30 years later. It was called "Literary Censorship in England", and it says that even minus the KGB, "free" England was not so different - the end result comes out pretty much the same: people with independent ideas or who think the wrong kind of thoughts are cut out. In it he talks a little, just two sentences, about institutional structure: he asks, why does this happen? Well, one, because the press is owned by wealthy elites who only want certain things to reach the public. His second observation is that when you go through the education system, when you go through the proper schools (Oxford, etc), you learn there's certain things it's not proper to say and there are certain thoughts it's not proper to have. That's the socialization role of elite institutions, and if you don't adapt to it, you're pushed out into the cold.

From about the age of six, children obsess over being accepted by the group and become hypersensitive to violations of group norms. This tyranny of belonging punishes perceptions which fail to coincide with those of the majority. Some people don't outgrow this even after reaching adulthood - this is especially common among women, who have this social conformity brutally strengthened during their teen-age years thanks to the education system and their peers.

Ironically, there's often more freedom of thought and even action in a totalitarian state such as King Louis the XIV's France or Fredrick the Great's Prussia than in a modern democracy - you're unlikely to make it to the top in a modern western democracy unless you have been adequately socialized and trained by the education system to the point that there are thoughts you just don't have, because if you

have those kinds of thoughts you never get allowed near those positions. It's like crabs in a bucket, but with ideas. Consider that the much-maligned Saddam Hussein allowed ownership of automatic weapons by ordinary citizens: imagine that- an "evil" dictator allowing people we're told hated him to own weapons those living in "democratic" western nations cannot.

This difference is most obvious looking at the attitudes of Chinese and Americans when they look at "democracy" - Americans say, "*oh yeah I get to make my own decisions*", and the Chinese say "*I'm surrounded by idiots, the last thing I want is to give them a say over how my life is run*!"

The original point of the USA's federalised government, with its multi-level system of town/county/state/etc., was to blend democracy's benefits at the local scales and minimise the idiots' effect at the larger scales, by allowing experimentation at lower levels with only the more successful solutions rising to be applied at higher levels. But constant centralization since the first Civil War moved essentially all decision-making power to the federal level, which ruined the whole design.
It's amazing how fast radical leftist institutions and innovations unravel in the worst way possible. You don't have to wait decades for the Russian revolution to become a nightmare- it was obvious in the 1920's, and the same happened everywhere: from China to Venezuela. Truly a universal achievement. Similarly amazing is their refusal to admit they're against some natural or structural reality, hence their pleas that "*communism would really have worked this time, honest*" if America hadn't imposed sanctions. It seems that, since they paid so much and spent so much in order to get educated, now they pretend to have the right to be right. Sadly, the most predictable fruit of their higher education is that they will rationalize the failure as yet a deeper fault in the "system" they're fighting against. Aristotle was right in saying sophists are the worst and must be incessantly mocked and exposed; naturally, academic attempts to re-evaluate and resurrect sophistry is a constant: [**https://tinyurl.com/yad4j8ne**]

"*If you ask any of them a question, he will produce, as from a quiver, sayings brief and dark, and shoot them at you; and if you inquire the reason of what he has said, you'll be hit by some other new-fangled word, and will make no way with any of them, nor they with one another; their great care is, not to allow of any settled principle either in their arguments or in their minds, conceiving, as I imagine, that any such principle would be stationary; for they're at war with the stationary, and do what they can to drive it out everywhere".* – Plato, student of Socrates.

The attitude of the elite class, and that includes the journalists, is that the general population are "*ignorant and meddlesome outsiders*" (that's a quote, by the way) who have to be kept out of the arena of public decisions because they're too stupid to not cause trouble if they get involved - just witness journalists' sudden hatred for "populism" since Trump's election in 2016 and the slow return of society's pendulum towards political conservatism. Commoners are expected by the elites to be spectators, not participants - they're allowed an occasional vote as long as they select one of the elites to run things, but then they're supposed to go home and watch sport or something. The participants are acclaimed as being "responsible men" and, of course, the journalists who report on them are members of that club too. Commoners aren't and will never be members.

So these smart guys are supposed to run the show and apparently they must not succumb to (I'm quoting from an academic article by Harold Lasswell here) "democratic dogmatisms about men being the best judges of their own interest" - because the elites just know that the common man is a terrible judge of his own best interests so the elites have do it for them for the common man's own benefit.

It's quite similar to Leninism and its emphasis on "scientific management" of production and control - the elites make decisions for you, and they're doing it in the best interest of everyone, so if you disagree with what the best decisions are, you must be the one who is wrong, not them.

It's probably part of the reason why it was historically easy for people to shift back and forth rapidly between supporting the Soviet and American systems - it's basically the same system, the only change is the words that come out of the elites' mouths. So when you hear some elitist idiot say that "people who vote for X are voting against their own best interests", you mustn't get upset and argue with them - you should get tar and feathers handy, if not a gun or noose.

9. Media and Information

I do broadly believe and argue that the mass media, including television, radio and newspapers, have a great influence in shaping people's ideas, in that the mass media is how most people are aware of events and decisions made outside of their immediate locality.

For example, if we had no mass media, we'd be unaware of, for example, a famine in Africa without actually being there ourselves, since it would have no direct effect upon us. Likewise, we'd be unaware of the results of an election in, say, Nicaragua, or a trade agreement between two countries on the opposite side of the world if it were not for the media. Country A's popular opinion about an election, war, treaty, or whatever, between countries B & C wouldn't exist if not for the media, because people in country A would be unaware of it. In this respect, the very existence of the mass media influences people's ideas, in that it exposes them to information that they would otherwise be unlikely to come across. (Note that unfortunately, foreign information can be presented to the public in order to drown out far more pressing events at home.)

We sadly live in a world where information is everything, at least in the minds of most people. Between local, cable, and satellite television providers offering access to information in all corners of the globe, to the Internet, we're often overwhelmed with a plethora of complex, rapidly changing -and often intentionally wrong- information being thrown at us 24/7/365.

However, while the mass media can influence popular opinion in a broad way, individuals or groups can ignore information presented by the media which contrasts too strongly with their world-view or desires, for example, despite the norms of society, there's any number of persons every year who break social taboos by committing crimes. Despite the media making the public aware of this taboo, individuals or groups may ignore this and decide it's acceptable for them to steal something. Conversely, while the media may attempt to convince people of some "fact", this information may be so antithetical to them that they will reject it. For example, despite Nazi control of German media in WW2, the German people remained sceptical of many Nazi ideas.

So therefore, while the media undoubtedly has a role in shaping ideas, it's also influenced and shaped by the ideas of the society it finds itself in, but individuals and groups may ignore or deflect the media's message based on their own preferences and /or desires. There's an Avarice song with the lyric: "*Politics and people are one and the same*", and up to a point they're right - everything a person sees, hears, and thinks ultimately makes up the fabric of the nation.

A newspaper, TV channel or website owned by a private individual is his or her own, and expresses only his or her point of view. Private individuals have the right to express only their own, and not anyone else's opinions. Similarly, this applies to corporate bodies or other groups. A journal issued by a professional sector, for example, is a means of expression of that particular social group. It presents their points of view and not that of the general public - for example, if medical professionals issue a journal, it must be purely medical, and cannot and must not be taken seriously if it should claim to express the views of any other segment of society.

The same applies to corporate media - any claim that a newspaper or other media format represents "*public opinion*" is groundless because it actually expresses the viewpoint of the private individual or corporate body that publishes it. The internet has allowed a true democratization of the press, and we can see the reaction of the elites whereby they have been seeking to manipulate public opinion towards a distrust of non-corporate and non-mainstream media. If the press is to truly be considered a means of expression and information-sharing for society, its control cannot remain in the hands of a few elites, nor can elites be permitted to "*fact-check*" dissenting opinions and views into oblivion, no matter the content of those opinions. It's concerning that the situation today is such that over 90% of the USA's mass media is in the hands of just six mega-corporations, and that journalists are almost exclusively the children of the mega-rich, just see: **https://archive.is/MKOCi** and **https://archive.is/ldr5Q** bear in mind, that the uncle of the woman mentioned runs the Wayback Machine internet archive site. ...Yeah.

In a world where nobody actually believes the media, controlling the media doesn't actually help you retain control. There are no reserves of fence-sitting journalists that can be drafted to fill in the holes and somehow make the official message more far-reaching or effective than it already is. There's no huge reservoirs of apolitical, unwoke college professors that can be drafted into talking some more sense into the "chuds". What we all saw in 2020 represents, to some fairly significant extent, the full scope of the political, social and economic power of "team blue" in America today.



"We are grateful to the Washington Post, the New York Times, Time Magazine and other great publications whose directors have attended our meetings and respected their promises of discretion for almost 40 years.....It would have been impossible for us to develop our plan for the world if we had been subjected to the lights of publicity during those years. But, the world is more sophisticated and prepared to march towards a world government. The supernational sovereignty of an intellectual elite and world bankers is surely preferable to the national autodetermination practiced in past centuries."

~DAVID ROCKEFELLER

And that team took its best shot in 2020, only to find out in 2021 that all the power they wield failed to decisively settle any issues or end any conflicts in America. Team red is still there, and like the "sleeping giant" that America was in 1941, they're now slowly waking up and starting to use their own power, on their own terms, in order to fight back (ineffectively, it's true, since most Republicans are just Democrats-Lite).

This is a big, big part of the reason the progressive left is desperately trying to convince the public that the traditional media (which they control and/or influence) is trustworthy and reliable, and that grassroots online web news sites and suchlike are supposedly "misleading" and full of "disinformation" - control over public opinion grows exponentially more tenuous the more people realize the media constantly lies to them; propaganda only works as long as people have some degree of trust in the propagandist, and the very act of using propaganda erodes that trust, to the point where people (starting with the most intelligent) begin assuming that whatever the propagandist is saying is the exact opposite of the truth.

A common trick used by western media is to immunize people against factual information by exposing it in some badly expressed or dismissive way. E.g. some respectable-looking TV personality supporting the official truth in a convincing way and presenting it as the majority opinion, with the factual alternative being presented by some random kook who makes it appear a fringe idea, etc. - the tricks are endless, and the methodology has been thoroughly studied for at least a century:

> *"Scientists at Rensselaer Polytechnic Institute have found that when just 10 percent of the population holds an unshakable belief, their belief will always be adopted by the majority of the society. The scientists, who are members of the Social Cognitive Networks Academic Research Center (SCNARC) at Rensselaer, used computational and analytical methods to discover the tipping point where a minority belief becomes the majority opinion. The finding has implications for the study and influence of societal interactions ranging from the spread of innovations to the movement of political ideals."*

[**https://archive.is/FlhIP**]*

* Original scientific paper: "*Social consensus through the influence of committed minorities*". Physical Review E, 2011; 84 (1) DOI: **http://dx.doi.org/10.1103/PhysRevE.84.011130**

A critical point to consider: if ***you*** are the 10% with the unshakable belief, you will ultimately win.

Both private individuals and corporate bodies should have the right to express themselves by any means to share their opinions and views, even irrational ones such as flat-Eartherism. It's the burden and responsibility of the viewer to use their own judgement to separate rational and irrational based on their own comprehension, experience and understanding, and social elites should be resisted whenever

they try to channel and harness information to manipulate the people, ***even (especially!) if they do so with the intent to do good***.

In fact, a ridiculous claim is far less harmful than a plausible but inaccurate claim. For a recent example few people think the COVID vaccines will turn you into Bigfoot or turn you gay, but most people seem to believe they're risk-free[1], have no impact on fertility[2], and that we should be giving them to children[3] Far more people have been harmed by official lies and official half-truths than by random goofballs on the internet. This is something which "conservatives" should (but generally don't) seem to understand.
(**1** eg. **https://archive.is/23JVr** ,**2**(a) **https://archive.is/mwsOB** ,**2**(b) **https://archive.is/zoU0G** ,**3 https://archive.is/QeQsd**)

While localised censorship may be acceptable, (e.g. the ban on pornography suggested below) it's important, even vital, that such censorship be **kept** local - better to make and enforce laws at the town or county level than state or federal ones, so that they can both represent the actual beliefs and views of the people, and also so that they aren't misused by groups or persons intent on power-grabbing through manipulating such means. This also implies a structure under which the states cannot simply overrule county decisions in the courtroom, nor should state decisions be liable to being overturned by a Supreme Court decision. This enables regional variations that adapt to local conditions, needs, desires, and culture. Creating such a structure begins with a demand from the population for such a pro-liberty structure, which means expressing the desirability for it right from the earliest upbringing of every citizen and inhabitant.

In a sane society, media would be included along with other entertainers and actors as the lowest class in society, just above slaves. They would be seen as degenerates who have little to no social status who are only allowed to come out to amuse their betters. An entertainer accosting a member of the soldier class, or even the peasant class, and subsequently being put in his place – in the dirt – would hardly be worthy of note other than further proof that entertainers are degenerates and have no place among proper society. I suspect that many view themselves as members of scribal class, not as mere entertainers.

10. Ever Wondered Why The Internet Keeps Getting Dumber?

Thanks to normalfags and social media the internet became shit sometime around 2007. That's when it really became mainstream for the average western family to be online. Before that, there was none of the SJW shit we now see on a daily basis, no stupid trends, no full-blown "black victimhood" debates, and hardly anyone got offended by what strangers said. In fact, go back a bit farther in time, and you notice that "*I'm offended!*" was once the prelude to a duel - how many people who claim they're offended would do so if the end result might be getting skewered by the rude guy's sword in a fight?

Anyhow, if you're old enough you'll probably remember when using the internet for fun was considered nerdy. Internet became shit the instant it became a plug-and-go service like cable, where you just turn on your device and you're online - this eliminated the required technical competence that kept most people out. Now the internet is full of shit that caters to the lowest common denominator.

Why?

I think what really happened was that technology got cheaper and became available to the uneducated/unintelligent masses. Don't forget, computers were really expensive pre-2005, so you only had people who were middle-class and up buying computers. Now, even someone in a Brazilian ghetto can access Facebook etc. from their smartphone and post their bullshit opinions everywhere. When the main method of accessing the internet switched to phones, things got dumber to accommodate the lack of keyboards - smart people have laptops, tablets at home and tower PCs at work but dumb people often only have their smartphone.

About 85% of the population in the West has an IQ of 115 or less (100 being the human average). So now that almost everyone uses the internet that average-or-lower-IQ 85% of the population creates a lot of content. Back in the day it was mostly researchers, office workers, business men, etc. and their immediate families that went online. And most importantly, it was the nerdier elements of such groups. So it used to be that we had the people with statistically higher odds of having a high IQ

creating content – most others didn't know how to use a PC, or even had access to one, let alone knowing how to surf the 'net. Whatever the precise percentages, this creative volume makes it easy to manipulate consensus. Especially certain content gets censored, e.g. government "hate-speech" bans.

Perhaps most importantly, it was precisely ***because*** most average people pre-2007 had so little access to the internet, or interest in it, that there wasn't any of the current progressive political BS pushed on young teens we see on all the social media networks. Since the internet is now available to almost any retard, the available content has also been dumbed down. Yes, intelligent content also increased (e.g. university-level papers, discussion groups, etc.) but in no way as explosively as did the dumb content (FB, Twitter, etc.). Every western young girl today is on tumblr along with half the guys. All popular media, all artistic content, ***all*** the shit directed at young people is dominated by progressive bias and the impact of it all is such that it's become popular to be involved with social politics.

This breeds identity politics where people are labeling themselves as gender queer, polyamorous, non-binary, whatever the fuck and people think they're cool because of it. The internet used to be a place where nerdy guys posted stupid jokes, played flash games, and occasionally chatted on AOL boards about the same kind of stuff they might talk about with their IRL friends. Now every ditzy teenage girl thinks she's some kind of political genius who needs to shoehorn her idiotic ideology into everything, and who feels anyone rightfully calling out her stupid ideas is an evil "hater".

When the young female population is convinced that the people with political opinions that aren't feminist, (or don't support homosexuality/transgenderism, aren't stridently pro-minority, or some other such progressive popular nonsense) are bad/evil/nazis/etc. then what happens is that the men who *aren't* idiots (and who therefore don't support these progressive beliefs) are shunned and impacted negatively by these idiotic women who ***do*** buy into that bullshit.

This is serious because the bulk of the next generation is by sheer default going to be more 'progressive' just due to being steeped in this crap from childhood and the insanity just snowballs from here. Just look at how much popular opinion has changed in just a few years in regards to the social crusades tumblr has, like the trans and genderqueer stuff or all this shit about "racism" they pulled out their asses. As today's teens grow up and start having kids, things will only skew more in favor of these perverted ideologies, dismantling the existing social order until it crumbles completely.

The dumbing-down of society we find online is also particularly noticeable by the type of people society looks to for advice and guidance. Once upon a time, people looked to "godly" thinkers, philosophers and theologians in regard to the issues of the day. Now, its entertainers and celebrities (and their corporate puppet-masters) who dictate and debate what's morally acceptable and what isn't.

The popular TV shows of yesteryear contained characters with virtuous, noble and interesting personalities. Today, most popular TV shows feature characters with extremely shallow personalities engaging in petty, selfish interactions and gossip. Even sports stars are considered to be role models and looked to for their political opinions on the national conversation.

Interestingly, these cultural shifts were noted by science fiction author Robert A. Heinlein back in the 1980's, when he said,

> "*... there seems to have been an actual decline in rational thinking. The United States had become a place where entertainers and professional athletes were mistaken for people of importance. They were idolized and treated as leaders; their opinions were sought on everything and they took themselves just as seriously — after all, if an athlete is paid a million or more a year, he knows he is important ... so his opinions of foreign affairs and domestic policies must be important, too, even though he proves himself to be both ignorant and subliterate every time he opens his mouth*."

Part 2 - Psychopolitics of Pre-Collapse Environments: Risk Factors and Mitigation

Noam Chomsky once gave a talk at the Z Media Institute in June of 1997 titled "*What Makes Mainstream Media Mainstream*" - it was reprinted as an article by disinfo.com a year or two later (when they still somewhat cared about actual free speech) and can still be found online. You should read it to better understand the effect of what was called propaganda in a more honest era. As Gerd Schultze-Rhonhof stated: "*The forces that caused the First World War also caused the second … they're on the edge of starting a third one and are always finding idiots that will obey them."*

11. The Goal Is To Not Die

Remember the classic story about the grasshopper and the ant? In the spring and summer months, the grasshopper sung and danced, enjoying the warm sunshine. However, the ant was working hard; gathering and storing food for the long, dark winter ahead. The grasshopper mocked the ant and its preparations - why not kick back and relax when there's such an abundance of food? But the ant ignores the carefree grasshopper and sticks to its hard work. Fast-forward to winter, and the once-carefree grasshopper is now cold and starving. The ant however is warm and well-fed in its nest, feasting on the food stores it prepared during a time of plenty.
The moral of the story - Be prepared. The winter is almost here.

Humanity's complex systems are efficient yet dangerously brittle. Take for example an average aluminum can: bought from a store shelf, taken home, consumed, dropped into a recycling bin, collected, melted down, refashioned into a new can, refilled, returned to the store shelf, and purchased again ... potentially all within the space of 60 days. Our enormous gains in productivity, logistics, and technology have ushered in an era of plenty, ease, and wealth. But removing any of the essential underpinnings of modern human organization causes a cascading sequence of failures that ripple through the economy with ever compounding results. Remove multiple underpinnings at once, and you get mass starvation, social disorder, and population collapse.

In theory, surviving our civilization's inevitable collapse is simple- get yourself away from other people and be self-sufficient. There's plenty of information available on the matter these days. It's fairly clear that deprived of their industrial backbone, most of our cities, suburbs, and in some cases even nations would not support a fraction of their current population densities - and would become horrid death traps. Living off-grid, even only partially, should shield you from all but the very worst apocalyptic events. After all, even if an all-out nuclear war came, it would not be the end of the world, but merely the end of our present civilization.



It's perfectly ok to be afraid. It's not ok to give up. The way to be less afraid is to prepare. Get off your computer and go outside. Teach yourself to dig a concealed firing position in the woods where things like a SWAT team and vehicles are worth fuck-all. Plan your responses to various scenarios, and practice them. Find the nastiest, most inaccessible place within 5 miles of your house and learn the fastest way to get there. Learn to live there for a whole weekend with only what you can bring in a backpack in the worst weather possible; the fucking *Boy Scouts* had a merit badge for knowing every inch of land in a 5 mile radius from your house, and fat fucks today can't even do half of what children were once capable of.

If you live in the city, learn to disappear; establish nearby points that you can escape to, that are out of sight and from which you can plan your next move. Should the authorities decide to make an example of you they're not planning anything past raiding your house. If you can be arsed to stop masturbating over your despair long enough to think of a quiet, out-of-the-way alley you think you'd be able to get to before they get into your apartment, you're already a step ahead.

If you're not willing to fight for your rights, you don't deserve to have them.

When it comes to emergency preparedness, it's important to prepare for the less severe yet more realistic situations that are likely to strike you and your location at any time - it's certainly more entertaining to speculate about a Chinese invasion or insurgency against a government suddenly turning totalitarian, but it's far more realistic to seriously evaluate the consequences of sudden loss of employment, natural disaster such as flooding or landslides, the spread of an actual pandemic, or even just the gradual and increasing disruption of access to water, food, energy, transportation and public safety due to the gradual societal collapse most of us can see creeping up all around. It's also important that a single localized event cannot take from you all that you have prepared.

A few things to think about: **https://yewtu.be/uEYGeYLECzY**



Imagine having your SHTF supplies securely stored in your house, but you're forced to bail out in a hurry with your family when the house catches fire in the middle of the night. Suddenly, all your supplies have gone up in smoke! Instead of having multiple, redundant caches in various locations (oh, you didn't have a cache of supplies in a cheap storage unit on the edge of town, or laid up with friends or family at their farm, anon? Oops, too bad). which may enable your family to go on living sort-of normally until the insurance pays out so you can rebuild, you're suddenly bereft not only of your home, but all your moveable property and your emergency stockpile as well.



What if a major chemical plant on the edge of your city exploded, and citizens were told to evacuate because it was now leaking toxic chemicals all over? Sure, you could take your bug-out bags, and drive off to your Aunt Sally's just outside the danger area, but now you've left some of your best supplies at home where they could be looted while you're away, or perhaps they're unreachable at your bug-out cabin a hundred miles away (why don't you live there?).

Consider this: How much food do you have? How long will it last your family if the store shelves are empty and stay that way? If the power goes out, how much of it will spoil? Do you take any medicine that keeps you alive? If so, how much do you keep on-hand? How long can you go without a pharmacy? What would you do if the system was so messed up that there was nothing **in** the pharmacy? Novices plan tactics, professionals plan logistics. Prepare yourself for smaller but still serious problems, as well as the larger ones like complete collapse: **https://yewtu.be/AD3DgarmwV0**

It's important to remember cities are artificial constructs formed as people came together to trade, interact socially, and benefit from scalar efficiency of public services (such as schools, sewers, water, etc). and common defense. Yet cities can't survive without resources from their surrounds; most notably, electricity, water and food. While electricity and water can sometimes be created or found within city limits, space requirements mean no city can possibly feed the people within it. By their nature cities depend on importing food as well as other resources.

Widespread availability of (relatively) cheap electricity is the engine powering a modern city. Electricity makes practical things that modern people take for granted: fresh meat, fresh vegetables, frozen foods, climate control, effective and safe lighting in buildings and streets, and communications media ranging from the telegraph and telephone to HDTV and Internet.

Electricity makes lighting, heating, powering elevators and pumps practical in large quantities, and electric controls and signals are far more efficient, easy to produce and to mantain than mechanical or pneumatic ones. The development of electrically powered motors, switches, relays, and other controls made the development of the modern factory practical, which in turn allowed for more employment in the city, which, in turn, encouraged population growth.

A significant population limiter that electricity and the development of refrigeration eliminated was the need for cities to be located within a day's shipping time from the sources of fresh food. Meat, poultry, milk, butter, eggs, greens, all had to be produced in the immediate outskirts of the city. This limited the geographical area into which the population could expand, while the lack of electricity also limited vertical expansion as well. Lack of electricity meant that the largest non-electrified city in history, nineteenth-century London, only had a population of about 2 million. Electricity allows for local storage of refrigerated goods, but also the shipping of refrigerated goods in trucks and railcars.

We see the effects of poor electrical availability in nations such as Venezuela, where rolling brown-outs cause a cascade of compounding problems. Consider - power outages often accompany severe weather events, and electricity is usually the first thing to go when the weather gets violent. In many urban areas, power grids are antiquated and somewhat fragile. A typical outage may last a day or so and, though inconvenient and frustrating, isn't usually too much of a hardship. However, should the outage continue for several days, urbanites will face significant issues - many, if not most, city dwellers rely on electricity for heat and cooking, and nights get pretty dark without electric lights. This can lead to significant security concerns depending on the size and demographics of the city.

The power might not go out just because of people or storms either - in September 1859, the Earth was bathed in a coronal mass ejection (CME) from the sun when a powerful solar flare sent a gigantic pulse of electromagnetically charged ions hurtling towards our planet. It was called the Carrington Event after British astronomer Richard C. Carrington, who was among the first to observe and report it in the scientific literature of the time. You've heard of the aurora borealis, right? Typically, auroras can only be seen by people residing in the highest latitude regions of the world like Alaska or Norway, but during the Carrington Event especially spectacular auroras were seen as far south as Hawaii and Cuba. There were some negative aspects to those pretty lights, though: the event caused major problems with electrical systems, primitive though they were at the time - telegraph systems in particular went haywire, with wires melting, delivering shocks to the operators, and even catching on fire! This was way before electric devices became commonplace, of course - it wasn't until the early 1900s that cities began installing electric lights. If such an event repeated itself today, the impact would be catastrophic to the power grid, causing current surges to overload electrical grids and ruin unshielded electronics.

While bad enough that power circuits and such would be destroyed by an EMP or CME, even worse would be the damage to power transformers - both complex and expensive, there are thousands of power transformers in every major city, yet replacement transformers are rarely kept stocked in significant numbers as only a handful of replacements are needed in any given year, even in the biggest cities - replacements which cannot be manufactured except in factories themselves powered by electricity. If EVERY power transformer got fried, and the handful of on-hand replacements did too... what would you do, what would your family do, if the power went out, and stayed out, for years?

12. Collapse Of Social Order

Another concern is civil unrest. The term "civil unrest" covers a wide variety of public disturbances by groups, often because of protest or outrage. It includes riots, strikes, uprising and rebellion, looting, sit-ins, demonstrations, parades, sabotage, kidnapping, shootouts and sniping, executions, bombings, and other forms of terrorism, street fighting, and even outright civil war. In most cases both police and military will be involved, often clashing violently with the dissident groups. Things get particularly ugly because the motives for the violent power struggle are usually hate, resentment, and fear. Most civil unrest and armed conflict results from tensions that build up over a period of time, and some people can sense when the time is right to leave for safer turf. jewish people seem to be especially good at sensing such occasions. Occasionally a single event results in a sudden rampage. The best way to avoid getting captured, injured, or killed in these situations is to avoid them entirely by getting out before they escalate or evacuating as soon as the opportunity presents itself. Once you're caught in the middle of it, getting out can be tough.

"Social order" is a delicate thing- it's a state of mind that easily collapses under the right conditions. Just consider the LA Riots after the Rodney King trial, the breakdown of society in New Orleans after Hurricane Katrina, the 2011 London riots*, or the widespread rioting in the US that began after the death of George *"fentanyl overdose"* Floyd in 2020**.** Consider also that there are groups who will take advantage of such events to commit violence. Once people realized that police emergency services couldn't or wouldn't handle the situation, "Law and Order" ceased to exist as they reverted to barbarism- acting the way they'd always wanted to, but couldn't because of the police, looting and destroying other people's property and taking out their personal and social frustrations on innocent victims who happened to be in the area. Only the threat of immediate death stops looting and violence. Rifles work wonders in such situations.
(* **https://tinyurl.com/2b93fwtr**, or in the original German here: **https://archive.is/Jy1Ki**)

Rioting and mass disobedience by blacks and leftists in America's cities demonstrates that once begun, violence, looting, and arson often continue for days or even weeks unless the military or police are ordered in with zero-tolerance orders. The US has increasingly become politically polarized- half the country considers itself conservative, and nearly half identifies as progressive. The differences are for the most part irreconcilable thanks to political rhetoric, which went from mostly respectful to becoming open calls for leftist violence. Ongoing government gridlock on social and fiscal issues is frustrating taxpayers - almost the only area where the ruling bureaucracy functions is fruitlessly spending more money and going to war, which further increases voter frustration. Mass civil unrest by popular movements in France, Germany and elsewhere similarly show that there's widespread discontent with the existing bureaucratic status quo under ACWE, and the only response so far has been to deny there are any problems, repress media coverage of such events, and become increasingly authoritarian, compounding the issue.

There's an enormous crisis of legitimacy that our political class, economic elites, and major institutions face right now. Many people are very unhappy for a variety of reasons. I can't predict exactly when or if the current system is going to come crashing down (I suspect within <50 years), but it doesn't take a genius to realize that ideological conflict and cultural rancor will increase in this country and even worldwide. You can only tell people to stop believing their own eyes for so long, especially if living standards continue to decline. Even if there's no "massive backlash", there will be cultural insurgents who refuse to go along who will command considerable and ever-increasing sympathy.

13. Urbanized Society

People have been living in cities for nearly 4000 years. During all that time, countless disasters have struck those areas. Everything from volcanic eruptions to war, terrorist attacks to earthquakes- time and again, urban residents have come out on the other side, perhaps a bit battered, but still holding strong - human beings are fairly resilient creatures, after all.

This era's unprecedented urbanization is concentrated in the least developed areas of Asia, Latin America and especially Africa. The data shows that coastal cities are about to be swamped by a human tide that will, in less than 40 years, force them to absorb a population growth equal to that absorbed by the whole planet in all of recorded human history up to 1960. Virtually all this urbanization will happen in the world's least developed areas, by definition the poorest equipped to handle it - a recipe for conflict, crises in health, education, and governance, and food, energy and water scarcity.

Rapid urbanization creates economic, social and governance challenges while simultaneously straining city infrastructure, making the most vulnerable cities less able to meet these challenges. The implications for future conflict are profound, with more people fighting over scarcer resources in crowded, under-serviced and under-governed urban areas.

Sadly, forward-planning for disasters, especially for civilizational breakdown, seems to be somewhat of a taboo topic. Your local society must embrace or at least tolerate your planning for mega-scale disruptions or disaster events. Perhaps you and your group could set up a local civil-defense NGO to act as a "think-tank" and to war-game solutions to various disaster scenarios.

14. Society When The Penny Drops

"*He actually knows what has to be done and how to do it, and he's going right ahead and doing it, without holding a dozen conferences and round-table discussions and giving everybody a fair and equal chance to foul things up for him. You know as well as I do that that's undemocratic*."
- from "*Oomphel in the Sky*", by H. Beam Piper.

Following the collapse of every civilization, when governments fail, or are too weak to control outlying areas, warlords have sprung up to take over those lawless regions, and to fend off neighboring warlords who wanted to seize control over more land. After the Roman Empire fell, men little better than bandit chieftains established their rule over leaderless populations too weak to effectively protect themselves. In other cases, local strongmen gathered family and friends to defend and rule over their areas. Often these groups clashed until a fragile stability formed which we now call early feudalism.

Warlords will not just be inevitable, but in many cases even necessary to keep peace and order. They will arise from the local people, often elected on their own merits or otherwise achieving their position as an ad-hoc solution to local needs. They must be administrators, judges, tacticians and sincere protectors of the citizens. This is why I emphasize the need to be a local and accepted member of the community, so that the warlord is either you or one of your tribe. Help your community in the good times and your community will help you in the bad times.

Politicians have no goal in life but to gain and hold a place at the public trough by appealing to the lowest common denominators in their constituency - the kind that believes the world owes them a living. A politician could never eliminate a societal parasite on whom he could later depend upon for votes, thus any existing elected official should be written off as a choice for warlord.

Remember that politicians ***are*** experts - at becoming elected. The idea of having experts in charge is a bad one. They should be placed a rung lower, among advisors and government agency staffs. Why? Because you need a generalist at the top that doesn't get bogged down in one area - which experts often do. Also, who decides what skills are important? In China a few hundred years ago higher bureaucrats were chosen for their brushmanship and poetry skills. They knew nothing about the things they were supposed to supervise - but luckily their staff knew. So, it sort-of worked as long as there weren't any new ideas or unusual events that the top man was too ignorant to understand and the staff never got to hear about - this led to a millennium of deliberate technological stagnation, done to keep the system stable.

Ancient Rome used to formally appoint a man to lead the nation in times of war or crisis with near-total power, calling this position the *Dictatores*, which literally means "speaker of orders", from this comes our word "dictator" now applied to mean an authoritarian ruler. You'll need a similar role for your town after SHTF, but select a man who won't want to continue in the position, lest they end up a king. Perhaps the Chief of police or local sheriff may be an appropriate choice, their habit of deferring to political authority should make it easier to peacefully get them to step down once the worst passes.

You and other members of your group should surreptitiously steer your nascent society towards good long-term choices that will ensure survival, preferably before collapse (maybe even averting it, if you're extremely lucky).

Avoid breaking small laws now - this avoids drawing attention if/when you need to break big ones later on. Whenever possible, **LEAVE YOUR PHONE AT HOME**. As people during the 2020 US political riots and the 2021 January 6th Capitol building trespassing incident discovered, during disturbances authorities use phone metadata to create a backlog of actionable arrests they work off over time. As the collapse worsens, power and communication grid failures will mean this will be increasingly difficult for them to do, but you must protect yourself while it's a danger.

In the same vein, get on good terms NOW with the movers and shakers of your community. Attend council meetings, chat up the local sheriff, volunteer for local civic clubs, attend public town hall meetings, join community organizations and assist other members of your group to do so (and gain positions of power within them if possible at any point), etc. **However, always avoid being overly partisan when talking politics with people outside your tribe** - get other people's viewpoints before explaining your own (regardless of the political party involved) and at all costs avoid sounding like a conspiracy nut - it's best to emphasize and encourage local self-determination with something like: "*both sides are pretty useless, we should just do things for ourselves and for our community*", even better; couch your positions in terms leftists find acceptable – for example, you're not against "illegal immigration", you oppose "globalised corporate wage-dumping and unfair worker exploitation".

Organizing collective defensive, WITH POLITCAL CLOUT AT THE LOCAL LEVEL, encourages police neutrality - show up strong or not at all. Relying on your enemy to kick things off when you already lack all organizational or political power is a terrible idea. Run for your local council, pick whatever party is most likely to win and usually does in the area, even if it's the Democrats or whatever. Win, then fill any available positions with your fellow tribe-members and run it however you want to run things. If necessary, find ways to screw over the usual guys who run in the area - whatever it takes to achieve that, from sugar in their gas tank to an ice-pick through the head.

The "revolution/civil war/boogaloo" scenarios touted by some will never happen until areas become politically autonomous to the point they can resist the state. Groups like the IRA and UDA weren't created by loner outcasts lashing out, they came from the will and support of their people, who were able to exert power as a group against the state and shield the militants. Random acts of violence are meaningless and counterproductive if your communities aren't united and organised enough to exert power. The most revolutionary act you can do is to have plenty of children, gain social capital, organise your community, and gain social ties in preparation for the absence of the state.



Many political militants (on the right AND the left) believe that when government collapses, they will seize power. This is not so - any remotely sensible leaders will take the sensible first step of sending their local police and deputized militia to wipe them out. The trouble, of course, is in ensuring you have sensible leaders. The antifa types I use as an example are unlikely to actually seize power themselves, but are easily maneuvered by the left-leaning to take on a brownshirt role for someone who knows what they're doing, just as has happened time and time again through history, such as Lenin did in Russia, Mao in China, Pol Pot in Cambodia, etc. - there's good reason for Stalin calling the likes of them "useful idiots".

15. American Events

Another example of useful idiots were the "Conservative Trump supporters" who "overran" the Capitol building on January 6, 2021 – they did so because they were *allowed* to, because security and police literally opened access doors for them and made no effort to stop them. Analysis after the fact converges pretty strongly on the whole episode being a false flag event and/or deliberate trap. Similarly, thousands fell hook, line and sinker for the "Qanon" scam, which we can clearly see in hindsight was an elaborate psyop created by someone with an intricate knowledge of group psychology and designed to lull followers into a sense of complacency and prevent them from actually taking any sort of real-world action. Imagine if, instead of wasting time online with that tomfoolery, those people had drawn up and distributed lists of known leftist financers and sympathisers to friendly elements capable of detaining those individuals until the election ended.

In fact, the Qanon nonsense was one of the most amazing examples of normie wilful ignorance. The basic premise was utterly laughable; it can basically be summed up as some government guy saying "*hi, I'm from the government and I'm here to save you ... from the government*". Not one sucker stopped to think why this Q person would inform them for the express purpose of telling them to ***not*** do anything, and in a way so easily noticed and traceable by any "bad.gov" types. Qanon is reminiscent of the scam emails deliberately riddled with spelling and grammar errors to weed out people too smart to fall for such an obvious scam. The same people who obsess over their OpSec and their emails being read *actually* thought it perfectly reasonable that a super-duper-secret conspiracy ***within*** government would just post their super-duper-secret plans and aspirations on 4chan. The Q stuff probably started as a joke, but I assume grifters and leftist G-men turned it into what we saw.

As it was, Trump led his army of fans to the banks of the Rubicon hoping that doing so would pressure the Senate into doing what they should have done in the first place. Instead, some of the crowd were suckered into crossing without his explicit command and instead of seizing the lead and crossing with them, Trump fled and denounced them after the fact. Congress took a while to run away after the guards allowed the protesters inside the perimeter - had the idiot mob sealed the secret exits with armed men ready to liquidate anyone who ran, instead of posing like tourists to take selfies within the building, the US might yet be alive - with a little reshuffling of political figures, perhaps, but with the original vision of 1776 intact and revived anew.

As it is, just like the Reichstag fire, this crisis/opportunity has been seized upon by the leaders of the Democrat party and their rulers in ACWE. You can expect massive crackdowns on any political speech that defies their views from now on. First comes a digital purge and then the physical: expect to be hounded, beaten and jailed if you disagree with the official story of the events of Jan 6th, 2021: that it somehow was a treasonous terrorist attack by "*evil alt-right nazis*" against democracy, the rule of law, and mom's apple pie. Americans mock and laugh when the British get arrested for "hurtful" tweets and posts - guess what? The emboldened ruling class will now bring that to our shores. "*How* **dare** *proletariats like you criticise the regime*", they will say, as they kick in your door. This is the reason Bitch... ahem, Mitch McConnel set up the impeachment process to charge Trump with "treason" over the matter ***after*** he left office, to be activated if Trump resisted their ***actual*** coup against him, and against ***actual*** democracy.

So to anyone who attended: congratulations! - the USA was already a corpse, and now the Capitol protesters removed any chance whatsoever of resurrecting the rotting, maggot-ridden cadaver of Uncle Sam, all for lack of an actual plan. Trump himself takes some of the blame - a scammer all his life, his followers should have realised he was never going to act unless he was led around with someone holding his hand, because acting like he has a pair just isn't in his nature. Look at all the failed attempts to contest the even-more-than-usually-blatant* fraud of the 2020 election through legal means - ignored because the system simply won't allow itself to be threatened: when even the Supreme Court refused to hear Trump's case on procedural grounds, after the very people he directed to present those cases sabotaged the presentation to the courts, that should have been a sign something stronger was needed. The right and left of the demorepublicrat mono-party system are playing the same game here - the preservation of their political and social power.

*(watch "***2000 mules***" if you failed to notice how rampant and routine electoral fraud is)

Here's the thing - overthrowing a nation's present leadership, even the half-assed LARP version we saw, can work, but not in a vacuum: this isn't some videogame where you capture the flag and you're the boss now. You need a plan, you need to prepare a shadow government, and you need to be able to actually implement a Second American Republic, even if you're on the receiving end of violence from the holdovers of the *ancién regíme* you just overthrew. Coups aren't just improvised on the spur of the moment: one plans and plans the strategy and the tactics to be used, and then finally seizes the opportunity when it presents itself. See Luttwak's 1979 manual, "*Coup d'État: A Practical Handbook*" if you still think I'm wrong here. Oh, here's a hint - the guys at Harvard, the ones who've infiltrated and control every single government bureaucracy, printed a revised edition in 2016, the year Trump was elected, and if that's not a hint to you, nothing is.

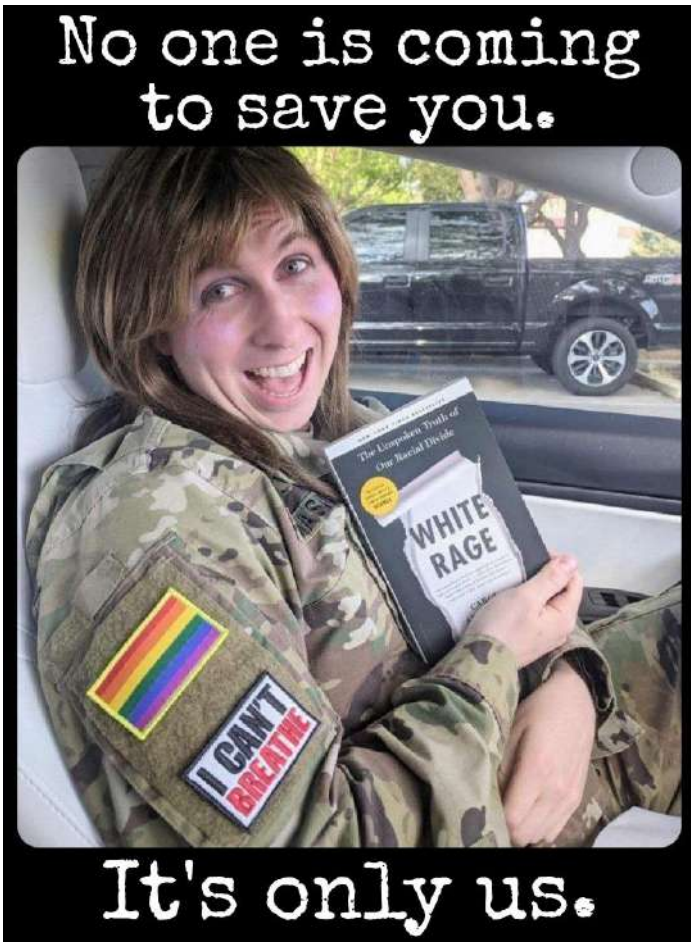
The reason that the storming of the Capitol was not a coup wasn't ignorance (though less of that may have avoided the event happening in the first place, or caused it to succeed despite the general incompetence of those involved) it was the lack of both spirit and will, both in Trump himself, and those that entered led on by Feds/BLM/antifa activists posing as one of them.

In a decade or two, people will be saying that empty bluster killed off White conservative Americans as a class. An entire class of individuals who never had the balls to actually take power, and if any among them did have the balls they were too politically ignorant and strategically incompetent to use them properly, but despite having no balls and no strategy, they just could not shut the hell up with their advocacy and drawing genocidal anger from the left.

Consider that in late 2020 Twitter removed a post from President Muhammadu Buhari of Nigeria, so Nigeria indefinitely suspended Twitter's activities in the nation as reprisal for the censorship in the lead-up to the 2021 Nigerian elections, and booted Twitter's staff out of the country. American conservatives are the punching bags of the world not because everyone is out to get them but because they're unusually pathetic and weak, while simultaneously being loud and stupidly obnoxious.

Try imagining yourself as a slave owner in ancient times presiding over a hundred slaves, and about a half-dozen are constantly trying to foment rebellion, telling the others that they're unappreciated, they're worked too hard, they're ruled over by degenerate aliens. From the slaves' point of view, it's not right, it's not fair, and it's unjust. Well, all that's completely true, but so what?

From the owner's point of view, there's nothing worse than an uppity slave, and it's best to deal with them post-haste, preferably by making an example of them to deter any others so inclined. Realistically, we who live under the corrupt, degenerate and tyrannical regime of ACWE are subjects, not citizens: perhaps technically not slaves, but with exactly the same amount of political power and independence. Indulging in delusions of power and grandeur has got to be one of the worst options possible.



Armed insurrection is **not** a viable near-term path to increased liberty, prosperity, and a return to "*classic American values*". The lumpenprole* poor in this country (of every all creeds and colors) are far too contented with receiving handouts from their political liege-lords.
(*a stolen leftist term for politically "asleep" peasants)

You can't outvote them because even on the rare occasion that our rulers don't have the votes to do what they want, they'll just cheat, and (outside minority religious demographics like traditional Catholics, Mormons, and the Amish) you're not going to out-breed the lumpenproles either. The regime simply has more bodies and ordnance to throw at their problems. Of course, the biggest problem they ultimately wish to eliminate is you.

Saying "*leftists are unarmed*" assumes "leftists" are merely the assorted rabble of Antifa and BLM, and not the actual ruling government controlling the FBI, CIA, NSA, ATF, thousands of local sheriffs, police commissioners, and DAs, as well as the Army, Navy, Airforce, Marines, and their respective National Guard elements.

It makes no difference at all if individual soldiers or officers hate their overlords as long as the bulk are still going to follow orders, and it has been conclusively shown that yes, they're going to follow orders. The leftist street rabble is also increasingly armed- late 2020 saw several cop killings and literal executions of Trump supporters on the street, checkpoints manned by armed antifa members and "NFA Coalition" personnel, the armed takeover of several city blocks by the CHAZ/CHOP "commune", the takeover of CHAZ by actual honest-to-god black warlord rapper Raz Simone and his goons, who promptly implemented a crude form of feudalism (*LOL you can't make this shit up*), as well as patrols by armed black militias in majority-White neighborhoods after Arnaud Arbery was shot while lunging for a weapon, all of which authorities did nothing at all to prevent.



When police are told to "stand down" and not arrest people committing street violence, you can be certain that the people issuing the orders to police are the same people who are issuing orders to rioters, and that the destruction and any conflict between police and rioters has (to some degree) been scripted and choreographed, usually by someone who loathes and despises rank-and-file cops.

Consider that when members of a right-wing group politely listen to an FBI provocateur proposing that they bomb someone and then proceed to call the provocateur an idiot for the suggestion, they all go to jail for "planning a terrorist attack". However, when members of left-wing groups commit ***actual*** arson and murder during riots, and a leftist Molotov lands at a cop's feet and very nearly sets him alight, everyone acts like it's an unfortunate accident – which is exactly what it is: the whole thing is put on the streets by government-sponsored groups that are themselves just as much part of the government as the police – predictably, in "riots" between police and leftists, the only people actually attacked and murdered or harmed are neither police nor leftists.

The left does not win, and it ***NEVER HAS*** won, by fighting in the streets - that is left-wing propaganda and leftist history. The left faction of government (whether it's the Bolsheviks in the Russian Empire in 1918 or the Democrats in the USA today) use this myth to seize power from the traditional and legitimate government - first they fill the streets with violent rioters, second they forbid the army and the police from dealing with the riff-raff, then while the adults are away they cry out; "*Oh no! We have been overwhelmed by the mighty, powerful and justifiably enraged masses and must bow to their every whim, which we shall interpret for the rest of you."*

The violent rabble in the streets are used by the left faction of government to legitimize the government bureaucracy doing illegal things, such as suppressing any actual grassroots opposition and having judges legislating, budgeting, and administering from the bench. But crushing the rabble does not remove the left faction of permanent government - doing that requires installing a Commodus, an Augustus, a Sulla, a Napoleon, or a Pinochet.

Similarly, a Stalin figure would rise through leftist ranks unnoticed, because Stalin was a street thug, which is why it's been suggested our version of Stalin under ACWE would likely have an Antifa background. A Napoleon would bide his time until ready to mount a full-scale assault, which is exactly the opposite of Trump and so many "American Conservatives" who keep running their mouths off, issuing stern warnings to the left, rambling various formulations of "*this time they've gone too far*", crying or cracking lame jokes about hypocrisy, and pointing to the vast array of guns they'd never even dream of using without very clear and unambiguous instructions from a legitimate authority figure… and, as explained in chapter 2, **you don't get to <u>be</u> a legitimate authority figure in ACWE's domain unless you're already in the progressive left.**

Conservatives really need to stop with the "*I can't believe the Left is such hypocrites about [insert_vague_topic]*" whine. The Left wants conservatives (and right-libertarians) in jail, or dead, <u>period</u>. They aren't bound by moral categories, nor have they ever claimed to be. They're the self-proclaimed arbiters of moral categories - morality is what they say it is, when they say it is, whenever it's politically convenient for them to do so. Morality serves the Party, not the other way around. THAT'S WHAT POLITICAL CORRECTNESS IS. The Left is in the business of moving goalposts. It's who they're and what they do, all the way back to at least Lenin.

Let's be clear: you should ***<u>not</u>*** be anti-cop because of "*the poor oppressed black man he shot by the rayciss po-po while he dindu nuffin*" - you **<u>should</u>** be anti-cop because it's the police who are the ones carrying out our rulers' orders to stop people in the US, Europe, and probably everywhere else too, from cleaning up their own neighborhoods and restoring a functional civilization.

In a one-party state such as the USA - and you should finally be able to see that that is what it's and has been for quite some time now that the mask is falling off - the Party, the Government, and the Country are considered to be one and the same, just as it was in the USSR or China. This makes any criticism of the party, criticism of the government, and makes any criticism of government, criticism of the Country. All political crimes in the USSR were "anti-Soviet agitation". All political crimes in China are "inciting subversion of state power". And finally, all political crimes in the USA will soon be "anti-American treason".



Armed men are seen manning checkpoints controlling entry to the CHAZ. Police say they have received complaints that protesters are demanding cash to enter the zone, and shaking down businesses inside for 'protection money'

The one bright spark in all this is that once the mask falls completely off political power, when censoring dissent because it makes a mockery of government is not just what power does, but also what it actually admits it's doing[1,2,3], it becomes utterly unfashionable for any cool person to support the government. So if you're ahead of the ball, and somehow survive the purges by (for example) creating an underground revolutionary shadow government, those who step up to oppose those in power will side with you, if you're cool enough. And you ***do*** need to be seen as being cool in order to get the mass of the people to tag along.

[1]. Take for example, the July 2021 public comments by Jen Psaki, White House press secretary for the Biden regime, that the US government was:
"*flagging* [for deletion or censure] *problematic posts for facebook that spread disinformation*"
... who decides what is "misinformation" and what isn't? Do you see anything concerning about private companies allying with government to censor what people read when the subject matter is not even illegal? Consider that the two main topics undergoing censorship at the time were *a*) the results of state vote recounts for the 2020 presidential election that put the regime Ms. Psaki represents into power, and *b*) the complications and side-effects resulting from use of the experimental coronavirus vaccines. Psaki also publicly stated that people "*banned from one social media platform should be banned from every social media platform*" …

[2]. Such as the repeated US government attempts under the Biden ~~regime~~ presidency to create a "*Ministry of Truth*"-type organization: [see: **https://archive.is/Gnr43** and **https://archive.is/0HH1Y**]

[3]. People asking too many awkward questions or stirring up too much trouble are apt to disappear:
[**https://archive.is/e8o7S**] - notice that the coworker who asked questions was fired.

It's difficult to face the reality of destruction, and know that the nation you grew up in, and have been conditioned to love the very thought of, is in its violent death-throes. Consider however - what do you love more; your country or your kids? You cannot save the first, but you can do something to save the second. The American Empire is dying, but the political elite won't give up their hold on power - they will cheerfully bend and twist the Constitution's words beyond recognition in order to maintain their stranglehold and maintain their position. Their ham-fisted and violent attempts to save themselves in the name of "*saving democracy*" (yeah right) destroy the very democracy they claim to be salvaging.

To end the farce, those creating the future must have a vision of, and hold fast to, a government which effectively serves every American. It will probably be some sort of monarchy, though it won't use the name. Indeed, America's future Caesar is probably alive right now, in his late teens or early twenties. Our Caesar is not going to be elected, either openly or sneakily- they rigged an election against an innocuous boob like Trump (and smugly admitted it: **https://archive.is/gvcvX** and they're currently projecting their own plans and actions onto those they hate: **https://archive.is/WQWjo**), so there's no way they'd allow the election of someone competent.

Eventually, America's future Caesar will rise through the ranks of whatever organization they're in. Perhaps he will be an antifa type who realizes he is being played for a fool and becomes disillusioned, perhaps he will be a young military officer who remembers the late-night bull sessions where he and his friends discussed how to lead America out of its mess. Events during the fall of the USSR suggest that our Caesar may even come from the spook community - there must still be a few of the extremely smart people that once filled the three-letter agencies around.

But this future America won't be like our America, will not be an America united - the America you know is dead. The only thing that's left of the America founded in 1776 is the name- **R.I.P.**

16. <u>The Position Of Jews In All This</u>

Since I know that some of the people who will read this may be inclined in particular ways, here is a small clarification to their thinking that may orient them in a more productive direction:

The ruling elites (and yes, there's a disproportionate percentage today that is jewish) have a long history of hiring jews to do the dirty work, then discarding them when things get rough. This is encouraged by low jewish empathy for the gentile out-group (for example, see here: **https://yewtu.be/bankfbs64da**) - consider that when Medieval peasants got pissed off with their jewish tax collectors, the elites of the time would allow a pogrom or two, but the taxes ultimately remained - this system hasn't changed now that the elite is 40% jewish, other than the mob being pointed at Whites instead of jews. I say this not so that you sympathise with jews, nor to get you to hate them, but so you understand the *process* that is being applied. Blaming (only?) jews means the real underlying problems are never solved because you only solved a minor surface-level problem.

With their high verbal IQ and great skill at manipulating outsiders, jews were a good fit for Universalist purposes, but they're always the dog, never the owner. It's the same pattern we see happened in Old Europe back in the day: the elites of the time knew they couldn't effectively exploit people as well as jews could, so they put jews in charge of exploitation. And as jews tend to do, they went too far and paid a heavy price (just as they probably will again) at which time they'll blame the goyim for their troubles - it sucks to be a middle-man minority in the long run, but self-reflection never seems to be an option for them.

Be very careful of leftists/socialists using jews as a scapegoat/excuse for the failures inherently caused by leftist ideals, and then pushing for a slightly modified leftism without jews afterward - any nation that goes down that road ends up ***much*** worse off in the long-run. Guys like Soros and his kind retire to private islands, while the jew that runs a bagel shop gets beaten up and his shop burned down. The Cathedral doubtless has prepared for the possibility it may need to toss the jews overboard – it's been standard operating procedure for a thousand years: hire middlemen to do the dirty work, and when things go bad, blame them and toss them to the wolves. Their replacements as front-men and middle managers to power will probably be the (dot) Indians (see the image on this page for an example).

Rockefeller, Ford, Carnegie, MacArthur, Walton, Vanderbilt, Pew - these guys weren't jews, and the foundations they created (and which carry on their work to this very day) aren't in any way jewish. For example John D. Rockefeller was a Baptist, a White Anglo-Saxon Protestant, and he did more to push leftist progressivism onto an America that wasn't interested than any jew ever did in his time. His descendants never stopped. Everything bad the communists did may well have started with jews doing it, but everything bad that progressives are doing in the US and Europe <u>*RIGHT NOW*</u> started with mainline protestants – and *their* particular brand of progressive trash can be traced all the way back to Cromwell's puritans. While they bring their own problems, it wasn't jews that gave us prohibition, female emancipation, and the War Between the States, though they eagerly attached themselves to those movements once they saw their success, greatly exacerbating the situation. It also wasn't jews who caused WW 1, though jews involved in international finance profited disproportionately from it.

By and large, the big problem with jews is that quite a lot of jews, in America, Europe, and elsewhere, propagandize the ideology of ACWE's regime. This encourages people to think thoughts with harmful consequences. However: if the political winds were to change direction, the same jewish individuals that people (quietly) complain about now, would enthusiastically serve the new official belief system just as they served the old, encouraging people to think thoughts leading to positive consequences, and if politically kept on a tight leash, they'd prove as useful to the new system as they did to ACWE: being converts of convenience to postmodernism, they'd readily convert to other political ideologies under the right conditions.



The most important reason you should not hate jews ***as a group*** is simply the all-consuming stupidity such hatred causes in people. Not just that - talking about jews makes you ineffective. It gives the people who hate your existence an easy label to smear you with and a handy club to beat you down with. It also means other people, those who might otherwise listen to you, ignore you as a ranting "*crazy conspiracy-theory Nazi*" kook. jews aren't that close-knit an ethnic group – while a jew will always choose the side of another jew over a goyim, he will also always try to backstab other jews to benefit himself. When jews were allowed into the progressive ruling elite in the 1940's, those that "converted" to progressivism, proceeded to impose racial integration in their effort to out-progressive the progressives and make them feel guilty. When someone bitterly weeps over separate drinking fountains, it's nearly always a jew trying to out-left other leftists, even if this screws over other jews.

jews are vulnerable to being taken for a ride due to ethnic loyalty. jews invested in Bernie Madoff's ponzi scheme because he told them he was screwing goy customers, and would give his fellow jews a piece of the action. They trusted him because he was jewish and they were jewish, and they thought they were joining with him to do bad things to non-jews. He lied - while he did screw over his goy customers, he screwed over his jew customers too. Not only are jews less cohesive than the Nazis thought they were - they're way less cohesive than jews themselves think they are. jews have feared the goyim since forever – see the Exodus narrative, the scroll of Esther narrative. If Hitler didn't exist, the jews would have invented him. In large part, they did.

Which means when you say "*the jews did it*", you're playing right into your enemy's hands, even if (as commonly happens) the jews really *did* do the dirty work. If all jews suddenly vanished overnight, Universalists have a ton of minorities lined up waiting to take their place and keep stomping on your face forever. If you were to "gas the jews", then antifa and their ilk would be mildly inconvenienced for awhile and government would calmly continue implementing left-authoritarianism. On the other hand, if you seized all the progressives in government and in official institutions (especially academia) instead, and gave them all one-way helicopter rides out to sea, then while there would indeed be a lot of wet jews, there would most importantly be an end to the government's slithering crawl towards left-authoritarianism (the remaining rabble having to seek legitimate work is just the cherry on top).

The suicidal "values" of today's West are identical to those of the Oneida Community, Piero Arellano, the late ancient Greeks, and so on. For the last 200 years, we see jewish communities dying out in the proportion in which they assimilated progressive values. For example while we can definitely blame jews for their involvement in creating Bolshevism, it's wrong to say "the jews" created Bolshevism to benefit themselves, since the Old Bolsheviks (who were overwhelmingly jewish) were devoured by the Bolshevik golem they created. The jewish role in Bolshevism, just as with Universalism today, resembles that of being the "patient zero" for a terrible memetic disease.

Looking back through history, we find that jews tend to be the chief spreaders of, and also chief victims of, memetic diseases. Until 1945 Western society mostly avoided these diseases, because until that time it was still considered acceptable to shun and criticize jews and any ideas they supported.

So we see that Marxist Dialectics strikingly resembles Talmudism, where each rabbi's interpretation of jewish Law is based on what some previous rabbi said or wrote, rather than what's actually written in the Old Testament, and so each layer of interpretation drifts further and further away from the Old Testament (which jews basically never read anyway). Similarly, we see each intellectual engaging in Marxist dialectics takes a previous Marxist intellectual as basis for their opinions, rather than Marx's supposed original sources and observations. Marx himself tortured his sources to squeeze actual history into his "theory" of history, predicting the "inevitable" victory of the proletariat – he did it the same way Talmudists tortured the Old Testament to justify whatever they want to justify. This typically jewish approach to evidence and argument is the mental and philosophical equivalent of having a doctor who fails to wash his hands as he goes from one patient to another.

The secretive and treacherous character of the Cathedral does makes a lot more sense and is a lot easier to understand if one conceptualizes it as a single hostile actor eg. "*it's the Jooz*". This model, like the phlogiston model, makes a lot of accurate predictions. Someone who believes "*The Jooz*" run the world is in better contact with reality than the typical blue-piller. But that model predicts saner and more future-oriented behavior by the elites than what we actually see.

"*Jooz*" plan in centuries, but our elites like Germany's Merkel posture for tomorrow's headlines, causing the frog to notice that the pot is being heated - actual behavior by ACWE's elites is less future-oriented and more random than predicted by the model focusing on "*The Jooz*" - in the US, progressives oblige us by frequently letting slip their intention to exterminate everyone not on board with their idiocy. Observed behavior tends to align with entropy, whereas a vast jewish conspiracy would be far more organized and orderly. The actual behavior of the Cathedral tends to move society from a highly ordered state to a less ordered state, dismantling Chesterton's fences, thus the Cathedral, like Murphy, always sides with disorder, entropy, the hidden flaw.

Consider a cancer cell: On a microscopic scale, what it does is indistinguishable from what a healthy cell does; it grows, absorbs nutrients from the bloodstream, replicates. But in doing so, it replaces the highly ordered structure of healthy cells with an amorphous blob - one that pursues mere growth without any regard for the cooperative functions a healthy cell performs with its neighbors. Entropy, disorder always increases. Life exists, a living creature exists, by increasing its own internal order, at the expense of consuming external order and excreting disorder.

A functional society generates internal order, like a living organism. The individual organisms of the society find safety, peace, order, and secure property rights. And from these intangible forms of order, they get more tangible, individual-organism-scale forms of order: food in the supermarket, electricity at the switch, water at the tap. Leftism consumes the order of society to grow and live, as a parasite or a cancer consumes the order of the organism in order to live. And eventually the lights go out, as in Venezuela or North Korea.



The order of society is in what are known as Chesterton's fences – the rules and customs of a society. Leftism removes Chesterton's fences, deeming them irrelevant obstacles to "progress", just as bones and blood vessels and lungs and heart and brains are irrelevant obstacles to cancer cells. The ensuing social disorder becomes visible well before you get to the North Korean point where the lights go out.



And for the last several hundred years, no-one that's been in a position to run things stopped to say: "*um, hey guys, maybe deconstructing every single aspect of the culture which enabled our society to reach unprecedented amounts of wealth, civility, knowledge and safety isn't such a good idea*".

From about the year 1900 to the present, we see affirmative action for women in academia. One can plausibly blame jews for the massive affirmative action in favor of blacks starting 1970 or so but large numbers of women were being promoted way beyond their abilities from much earlier and it was obviously the evangelicals doing it. jews just did not have the power - they were excluded from the establishment. Further, the first black poster-boy, the beginnings of affirmative action for blacks, was JJ Thomas* in 1869. Women and blacks were being promoted, back when jews were still being firmly excluded from the halls of power. Who was promoting JJ Thomas? The Puritan-led evangelical movement at the time, based at Exeter Hall. (*he invented the "ebonics" language-concept)

The Left (in the English-speaking world they were once called Whigs) take up many tools and abandon them when they stop being useful. But the job is always the same: destroying whatever nation they're in. When jews were reliably Leftist, the Left rewarded and promoted them. But when Israel acts like an outpost of Western behavior against the Left's new anti-White allies in the Arab world, suddenly the Left doesn't like jews any more. jews are proportionally much more leftist than gentiles and played a pivotal role in every leftist intellectual movement. Fortunately for non-jews, jewish movements have a tendency to spontaneous self-destroy.

jews have been genetically, socially, and culturally selected to be high-trust within their in-group and low-trust outside it for millennia, so they do well in a society where defection and betrayal is the norm. Furthermore, they have typically been used as cut-outs for European elite misbehavior. Notice that the hand of Soros is the hand of the State Department; he had to beg and scrape before Hillary Clinton, which is a clear indicator that his will is not his own. There's not truly a jewish Problem. There's a Holiness Spiral and Elite Problem, and the corrupt and decadent elite wave the jews before you as a matador does a cape; to keep the bull's attacks away from the one sticking him with spears.

When jews cause social friction in our societies, it's rarely jews preventing us from fixing those issues, rather it's ACWE's Universalists that forbid us to notice the friction, and forbid us from acting to fix it, because anything opposing jews or jewish actions is seen as being inextricably linked with Universalism's anti-God; Hitler. Remove the shield provided to them by Universalism, and any complaints by Ashkenazi power clans can be brushed aside without a moment's thought.

See what I did there? "*Ashkenazi power clans*" - we're brainwashed by Universalists to hear anything complaining about "jews" in general as hateful and ignorant nazism, as if you think the nice little old jewish lady next door wants to drink your childrens' blood… "Clans", on the other hand… well, they're outdated, they're secretive, they're possibly associated with the KKK, and they're undeniably present among successful members of Ashkenazi groups in industrialized countries. Again, remove Universalism's fat fingers from the scales of power and law, and any social problems involving jewish people can quickly and peacefully be resolved.

The main point here is that with the death or removal of progressive ideology, and therefore the end of bestowing jews with holy protected victimhood status and immunity from criticism, we can safely ignore Shlomo the deli shop owner, who, despite being a bit tight-fisted and obnoxious, does little or no harm to society while his actions are held in check, and we can pay careful attention to David the CNN journalist, who constantly and willingly pushes progressive ideology, including encouraging anti-White hatred and racial animosity on TV.

After all, consider which of those two is the more likely to pose an actual threat to the continued well-being of the average citizen of your country - the guy who occasionally short-changes you a few cents when you buy bagels, or the guy calling for your violent death because some dead White guy* legally owned a bunch of black slaves to work in the fields 200 years ago?
(*actually, more often it was some dead *jewish* guy, but whatever teachers say, people believe...)

History shows us that differences can be tolerated as long as the divisions remain distinct. The myth held by jews that muslims were somehow wonderful to them is a reflection of the fact that Ashkenazi jews hate Christians, partly for being nearer, partly for their religious split with Christians in the first century. If Mizrahi jews still existed, they'd probably hate muslims more and Christians less, and for the exact same reasons. Another example is that while there were obvious issues, blacks and Whites in the US South coexisted and the further apart they remained the less friction there was. Since the "civil rights" era, friction continues to escalate as the social/cultural gap between the two continues to be forcibly pushed shut, and two people of very different abilities, attitudes, and outlooks constantly confront each other to the detriment of both.

Communists particularly and especially don't like jews, especially Trotskyites; despite Trotskyites being almost entirely made up of jews even today. One of the first things Soviet Communists did when they were consolidating power in the 1920s and were still largely all Trotskyites was to go after jews. They were striking at what was nearest and most like them - other jews. Eg. See the *Yevsektziya*. This was also when the percentage of jews in Communist power echelons was at an all-time high, and the percentage of declassed elements among jews was higher than among Russians and other ethnicities.

Having said this, progressives (and remember, Communists are only a subset of progressivism) are more tolerant of religious jews than religious Christians. This is because religious jews are a relatively small group with minimally visible media presence and pose no threat to progressive hegemony, and the average progressive never comes into contact with them anyhow. Religious Christians on the other hand (think Sarah Palin) are quite the opposite, posing a significant threat to progressive hegemony, if only they got into gear and started making the progressive conspiracy theories about them a reality (which they won't - be honest, you know it as well as I do).

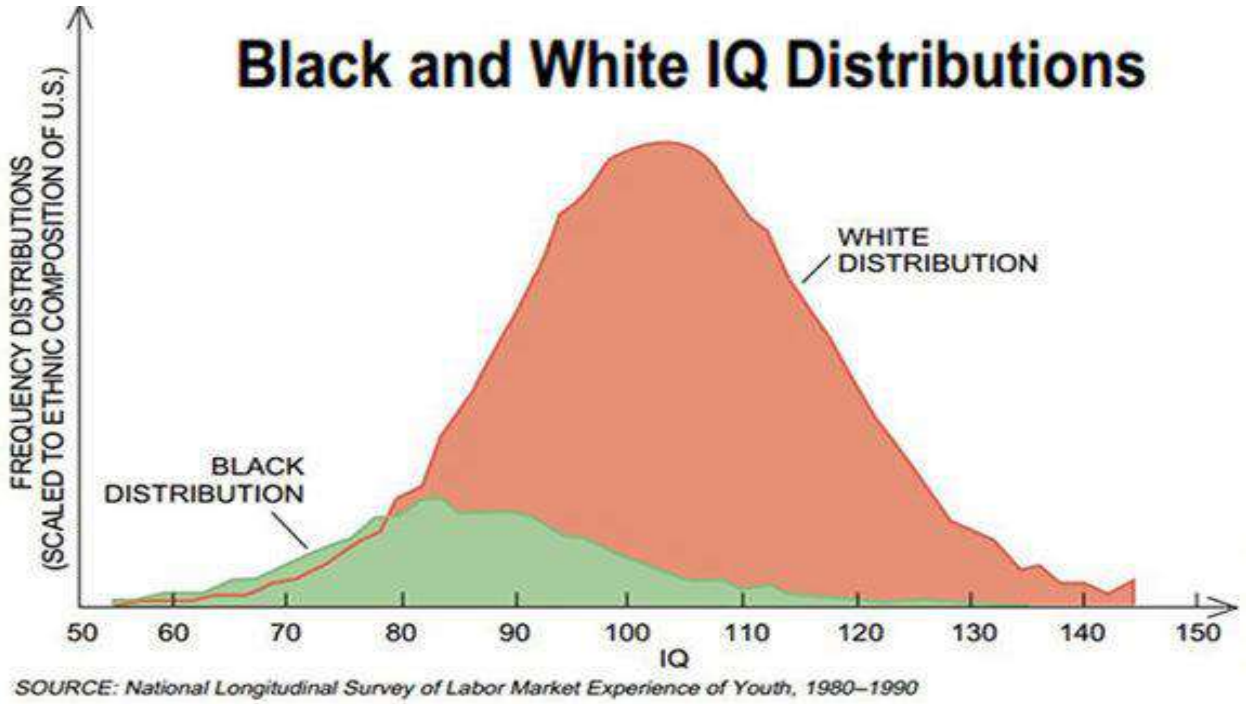
Notice that progs don't get upset over the Amish, Mennonites, Adventists, etc., even though progs systematically persecute them: for example, the reason you get Amish in US flyover states and not coastal states is that progressive state laws on education and so forth effectively make it illegal for Amish to raise their children as Amish. Adventists get pretty serious levels of persecution also, and Mennonites by now have revised their practices to meet prog demands - instead of getting married at 18, their daughters now go to college and most of them turn into whores. Orthodox jews are doing so also but more slowly, for example a senior US council of rabbis essentially advised jews that Orthodox Judaism should apply a policy of "don't ask don't tell".

This is why jews are relatively tolerated by prog authorities when they defend their communities against rioting blacks, while Christian Whites doing the same aren't tolerated, and are instead harshly made examples of. This is why, paradoxically, Progressives are more tolerant of jews than they're of Christians, while commies are more tolerant of Christians than they're of jews, as we can see laid out in the Russian history of the 20th century.

The problem is that Whites have largely internalized a belief system created by Universalism's equality principle, where acknowledging that you're in any sort of danger from people of other races is forbidden, and where natality among the productive classes diminishes due to a perverse combination of economic disincentives and institutional social pressures – which is how Detroit died, and how the rest of the US is dying. The same applies for Europe with its muslim problem.

17. <u>Why You Don't Have A Unique Culture Anymore</u>

If humans are individuals with individual souls and abilities or whatever, why are cultures so uniform within themselves? And why are they so different from each other? The answer to cultural diversity between cultures, and uniformity inside them; and to the world's utter dysfunction in the postmodern age is: ***most people are stupid***. Most people, most individuals, are pretty dumb – even the ones who think they're not (often *<u>especially</u>* the ones who think they're not). The Bell curves of IQ by ethnicity should be pretty well-known, though they're not.



Well, the dumb people (the 99%), they have to be taught. Repeatedly. They need to repeatedly, mercilessly, be drilled on their actions until they reach the level of unconscious competence. They need to be made to actually focus on the task at hand instead of constantly wasting their self-awareness building a mental narrative where they're high-status: Dick the factory worker needs to focus on putting the widgets in the machine, not on how he could be a quarterback. Jane in the office needs to focus on filling out the budget spreadsheet correctly, not on who said what to whom in the lunchroom last week. This doesn't just apply to manual skills either, it applies just as much to the mental ones, even to culture itself.

And that's what we see most cultures doing: they transmit the same thing, the same cultural memes, over and over again for generations. A frequent method is to attach some mystical value to the thing (usually: their God ordered them to do it), some ancestor worship (well, they *<u>did</u>* come up with doing it in the first place...), and over time you have people who become very proficient in, say, horse-archery, architecture, sailing, warfare, whatever, and it's so deeply ingrained in their culture that it gets automatically associated with the culture by people from other cultures, like how you just automatically associated horse-archery with the Mongols.

The average human can do something with an acceptable level of proficiency if they focus on that thing and ONLY on that thing for, well, forever. Over time we see marginal, evolutionary changes, the ones we call cultural change in history books. Of course cultures have different degrees of change, some are quite fast (post-black-death Europe) some are pretty much static (Eskimos). Different variables influence that rate of change, and some peoples just don't seem to change much at all, and perhaps they're unable to – I imagine that in the case of the Eskimos, change would cause them to be less well-adapted to their environment. My hunch is that, after environment, average ethnic IQ is the largest defining factor in the rate of cultural change.

For example, bees don't require math skills to make honey, but historically, rice farmers did. Which is why the average IQ of rice farming cultures is 105, and why Asians are associated with good mathematical skills. You can read about this in the book "*Outliers: The Story of Success*" Malcolm Gladwell, ISBN 0352749561657 On the other hand, once you get below an IQ of 70, people have trouble learning manual labor skills like hunter-gathering, as we learned about in the case of McNamara's Morons: **https://yewtu.be/_J2VwFDV4-g**

Of course this works at all levels: nation-level, tribe-level, caste-level, institutional level. Imitation, repetition, drilling* - it's the only way to really acquire proficiency at anything, to practice forever under people who have practiced forever. Indians took it a bit too far, and they even forced people to only marry other people who have practiced the same thing forever.
(*in the sense of doing the same thing over and over again)

Take Japan as an example: everybody who comes to Japan is amazed at how civil and polite the people are. You think that's the work of days or months? No, it's years and years of merciless drilling at home, at school, at the sports club, at their first part-time convenience store job - kids who aren't drilled on it never learn it properly, and the Japanese can spot them from miles away.

Japanese companies even have remedial boot-camps to drill such people military-style on proper Japanese manners, and even afterwards you can still always tell who was drilled early and who had to take remedial classes. Drilling for manners isn't negotiable; it's part of Japanese tribal identity – part of how they define themselves as a people. Given that next door there's China where they don't drill their people to be polite at all, you can appreciate the overboard drilling.

The thing is, cultural change isn't an unmitigated good: it destroys proficiency-by-drilling, i.e. stop drilling and you stop making good stuff. Japanese artisanship is a good example of what boring practice can do. Europeans invented machines so yes, there's less need for practice-based artisanship, but that's caused widespread misery for those who need drilling to do anything useful, not to mention awkwardness for older generations who can't keep up with ever-changing new ways to do stuff.

And that intergenerational awkwardness is what Asians will NOT stand- old people are in charge there, and young people accept the need to wait to be in charge. And when they're in charge they will make sure that the cycle is not broken and they get the respect they waited so damn long for. Cultural change is, in a sense, a form of disrespect towards one' forebears, and it breaks the cycle of cultural transmission. I'm sure the old fisherman wouldn't be happy if his son decides to make fishing nets a different way, or if he stops making nets altogether- if the kids stop making nets you may end up without the knowledge to make them at all and then the whole village starves.

Breaking the cycle (a phrase that has a weirdly positive emotional undertone) of cultural transmission brings positives and negatives. A positive is, it creates progress! You stop emphasising and teaching one thing, people stop being able to do it, so you have to come up with something else. *Voila*, steam machine. *Voila*, airplanes. *Voila*, penicillin. *Voila*, smartphones. Works well as long as the things lost aren't too central. It's pretty cool and we all owe a lot to it.

The downside of that, the negative, the bad, is it causes the vast majority of people (the less inventive and creative, who therefore benefit the most from traditional methods and habits) to become miserable and inefficient worker drones (wage-slaves), who then rightfully become angry at the system that caused their situation - men are turned into mere biological machines by the push of "progress" towards "efficiency".

It also means you lose skills that may have significant survival value, or other values, and which then aren't available when they're needed again – it's why you see countries like Japan spending quite a lot of money to preserve their traditional cultural skills. It's not just about mantaining their identity – it's also a sensible fallback in case everything goes to shit.

Ironically, the hippies were right - for all the wrong reasons, but they were. A system in which financiers get all the say, and the entrepreneurs and providers of labor get none or are overridden is a recipe for conflict. We're seeing that conflict emerge globally, and it's getting increasingly ugly. One thing that's become clear is that capitalists and their managerial flunkies don't give a crap about "conservative values". They'll promote the most outrageous woke shit if they believe it's in their monetary interest.

While today the general political axis is, ostensibly, between left/socialists and right/capitalists, the original right was very much anti-capitalist. What dismantled the old society, the *Ancién Rêgime*, in the end was not leftist agitation but rather industrial capitalism. That era's political right couldn't quite name what made them uncomfortable; they thought greed was evil and commercialism vulgar. Joseph Schumpeter eventually named it for them: creative destruction - that's what capitalism is all about: the rationalized pursuit of profit burns through everything. That which is demanded will be made, that which is not demanded... we'll try to convince you to buy it, but if we can't find a way to make a buck out of something, out the door it goes.

Technology advances fast, marketing makes fads easy to make, easy to break, so creating a constant cycle of new and disposable products keeps business going. There's no money to be made in cars that don't break, just as there's no money to be made on ideas that don't go out of fashion. There's scientific progress, as long as its marketable, and there's been fantastic technological progress, since it's normally marketable; ideological progress is not very marketable and so little talent has gone there (people continue recycling the obsolete early-1800's ideology of Marxism, for example). In fact, we're arguably getting dumber every day in many areas.

In the 30-year period between 1935 and 1965 humans passed from propeller-driven biplanes made mostly of cloth and wood to supersonic jets and rockets made of advanced alloys that allowed us to land on the Moon - the nuclear rockets that would have allowed mankind to finally become a spacefaring civilization were even ground-tested. Then in the following 45 years little happened, or worse, we saw setbacks.

Currently, there are no heavy-lift rockets such as the Saturn 5, the Space Shuttle was scrapped, the supersonic airliner Concorde is no longer operational, and the nuclear-thermal rocket engines that showed themselves to be powerful, safe and reliable, were quietly shelved. With no obvious and immediate profit to be made in space travel, out the door it went.

When a return to the Moon was seriously being considered by NASA (the Constellation program) in 2004, it was mainly based on technologies similar to those that 40 years ago allowed humans to reach the Moon but, mainly for economic reasons, the whole program was cancelled in 2010, including the projected Ares I and V launchers and the Orion spacecraft (unrelated to the far more impressive late 1950's-era Project Orion). No marketable profit = no moon.

The embrace of capitalism and its dynamic made England the most powerful nation on earth, and its colonies and former colonies are all prosperous nations, yet they're also the most de-culturized. They've lost touch of all of the ancient customs that defined them as a distinct nation, instead adopting a very streamlined lifestyle, adapted for productive life - they're very productive people, yet they're also psychologically conflicted and impoverished. How many Americans or British complain that they "*have no culture*"? Like the blind fish living in caves, whose unused eyes atrophied, the Anglo-Saxon peoples have lost their unused culture. Part of the support for multiculturalism, is the recognition that Third World peoples ***do*** have a set of customs and folkways that defines them, makes them '*vibrant*' and '*more real'*. Those sound like empty words, but they're not. They describe a real difference. Words mean something.

Customs and folk habits, tradition, are for the most part irrational and unproductive. They're things that don't have a cash value, and can't be marketed. But they're part of tribal identity, and part of culture. Anglo-Saxons no longer have any of that – they've streamlined their lifestyles to adapt to capitalism, where the necessary skills and mindsets change constantly. They aren't allowed to drill each other on some quirky traditional customs, or transmit them to their offspring.

We've been raised on non-judgmentalism, the equal value of all people and all opinions, tolerance and equality and all that jazz – we're only permitted to have a rationalized framework of societal norms to ensure we keep being productive members of the corporate-industrial capitalist workforce within ACWE. And those norms can't be very particular, nor can they differ too much from those of any other place, otherwise we wouldn't be interchangeable economic cogwheels.

What do the English mean when they talk about "British values" - can anyone even tell you what the difference between "British values", "American values", "Canadian values", or "Australian values" is? If you ask people, you'll hear it's all about '*tolerance*' and '*human rights*' and that kind of bullshit. But those are abstract values, Universalism's values, they're not British values. Culture is made of particular customs, not generalized homogenous gray pap.

Modern civilization assumes that people are better off the more material things they want that they are able to get (it's misguidedly called "*standard of living*"); its values are quantitative and material. For example: "*how much is he worth?*" really means "*how much money has he got?*" A modern traveller thinking to visit some tropical "paradise", often asks whether or not it has been "spoiled" yet. Such a question hides within it naive tragedy, and condemns the asker: we all know "spoiled" means "degraded"; but the word also means "plundered"- one can be robbed of more than just material goods.

In a well-intentioned speech made in 1942 Henry A. Wallace, the vice-president of Boston College, promised that when the war was over "[Western] *nations will have the privilege to help* [other] *nations get started on the path to industrialization. ... As their masses learn to read and write, and as they become productive mechanics, their standard of living will double and treble*." He did not speak of the price to be paid of losing their own culture, or that "progress" would mean all those affected would be reduced to consumers with an unending desire to have more, more, more of the latest whatever. As Plato said, "*poverty consists not in the decrease of one's possessions but the increase of one's greed*".

So the unhealthy Western obsession with change ('*progress*') makes it deny the most basic human way of cultural transmission: focused drilling. Asians are still pretty much for it (probably too much, as they even drill smart kids into becoming worker drones), so they'll probably keep some level of civilization while ACWE (including Europe) strive to get their shit together, if they ever do.

Once, the author was riding a bus while on holiday overseas. The bus drove past a religious shrine with a prominent crucifix on the side of the road, and the local driver and most of his passengers crossed themselves as the bus passed it. Noticeably, every local who performed this customary tradition was at least middle-aged. One young family was present and the parents followed the custom, but with body-language indicating they were embarrassed to cross themselves in public. Their children did not cross themselves. It seems that that tradition is being lost there, and in a few decades, yet another nation will become an undistinguishable gray piece of ACWE.

Of course there's still lots of drilling, but it happens inside workplaces, being used to teach people how to do their tasks. The same way modern nations aren't allowed to produce particular culture, we see that companies rarely have their own cultures anymore, and the most successful ones are the ones that hold onto their personal corporate culture tooth and nail. It's the only way for a group of average humans to function, really. You need to drill people into following company orders, into doing things in a particular way, or else nothing can get done.

One solution we've tried is more effective drilling (what we used to call 'education') to make them proficient at whatever productive industry there is at the moment. It worked while a) the rate of change was pretty much generational, i.e. you could expect to use the skills learned in school when you become an adult; and b) schools drilled kids with merciless efficiency and brutality.
So kids actually learned a) manners and b) a trade.

But then, we became so enamored with 'progress' (cultural change) that we came up with the fantastic idea that if you stop ALL drilling at all, and just teach instead some abstract nonsense about queer history and democratic values, people will come up with new things all the time! Ain't that awesome? So there's the stupid idea out there that there's not enough innovation (riiight… tell that to the Mesopotamians who decorated their homes the same way for 3000 years), and we apparently need to come up with even more new stuff, but the people just can't keep up. Why could that be?

Official answer: Drilling is the real problem because uhh… just trust us dude, if we stop drilling kids and just tell them to go with their feelings they'll be super-creative!

Real Answer: the world does not work that way and the idea is fucking stupid.

This has been done since around the 1960s, with the predictable result of a complete breakdown of traditional manners and culture, making dumb people (= left half of the Bell Curve) totally unproductive, ultimately becoming junkie welfare addicts. Smart people still somehow come up with enough things to keep the economy going, but demographic changes indicate it can't last much longer. The 3rd-worlders we're importing to replace our useless idiot underclass are even dumber than our existing native underclass, and we're not truly educating them either, merely teaching them, so we're just creating a doubled-up junkie welfare-addict plebeian mass.

As T. S. Eliot stated in his "The Idea of a Christian Society":
"*If your real ideals are those of materialistic efficiency, then the sooner you know your own mind, and face the consequences, the better ... The more highly industrialized a country, the more easily a materialistic philosophy will flourish in it, and the more deadly that philosophy will be ... And the tendency of unlimited industrialism is to create masses of men and women — detached from tradition, alienated from religion, and susceptible to mass suggestion: in other words, a mob. And a mob will be no less a mob if it is well fed, well clothed, well housed, and well disciplined*"

In the present-day, our elites are faced with the reality that their constant drive towards "*progress*" and "*efficiency*" and "*free trade*" has led to an ever-increasing number of people in the lower rungs of society becoming "surplus to requirements", and the question then is, what to do with them. They've tried welfare, and we can see the results - look at the underclass, whether White or black is almost irrelevant: fat, unhealthy, almost constantly sick, and of the worst behavior and tastes imaginable.

So, our elites next plan seems to be to simply to have less of us "surplus, inefficient" people around.
[continue here, include links]

18. The Fall Of A System

Governments are mostly made of illusion. There's nothing sacred about being a senator. If enough people believed that the MS-13 gang was the legitimate government of America, it would be. However, government itself (and that's to say, the regime which includes NGOs, key businesses and political figures) is only as powerful as the personal networks of a few hundred people. Consider how impossible it would be for a president to exercise power without enough personal relationships with the media bosses, local strongmen (political or otherwise), and other key people within the wider regime. That president wouldn't find many people willing to do what he wanted done*. But such personal networks aren't immortal. When the networked individual dies, his piece of the network dies too. The only way to preserve a regime is to pass on your network to your successor, biological or otherwise. (*: Oh wait – remember Trump 2016-2020 and his fights with the bureaucracy?)

Communism in Russia and China proved that you can destroy the system by killing officials, there just has to be more people doing it. But the only context where assassination is useful to whoever commits it's if there's a sympathetic replacement waiting, and in such cases it's usually an organization doing it while fully aware of the consequences, not some lone autist lashing out at whatever he can reach.

If you're going to be causing chaos, you need to be organized for the aftermath. Look at Vietnam and the JFK assassination; Kennedy stood in the way of the bureaucracy and they had LBJ ready to take over. They killed JFK, let the autist take the fall, and they took the US to war just as they had planned. Without a functioning shadow government ready to take over, political assassination is counterproductive as it forms an excuse to further repress you, while the idiot mob cheers them on.

If enough key people die without suitable replacements, the entire regime network fails. In politics "experience" is code for how many key people you have connections to. Consider the president of some hypothetical nation - he dies, his heir dies, perhaps many other top people do too. The replacement president is a man who doesn't know, and isn't trusted by, the army's generals. His staff gets replaced by people who don't know the important media figures and bureaucrats and the right way to approach them. Or picture if the CEO of a media corporation dies and gets replaced by a person who doesn't know or have connections with the key figures that run it? You get chaos.

Look at antifa in Europe and the US - they aren't actually that well-armed, but they're radical and they're organized thanks to their connections with their neoliberal puppet-masters, the US right is at most only armed thanks to the neoliberal establishment crushing organisation via propaganda and state violence. In a post-SHTF situation, antifa types will rock up to town hall meetings set up to decide what to do, and will simply out-shout everyone sensible and push them aside, by stepping into the political vacuum by being organized and politically active.

Meanwhile, if you're just sitting there polishing your AR, you'll become one of the voiceless servile laborers under the dictatorial "leadership" of their puppet-masters, and any resistance when they come to take your guns and supplies will become propaganda to justify their actions, eg: -

"*Comrades ... uh, I mean, Citizens! watch as we punish this eeeevil fasheest terrorist who dared to resist the will of the community by refusing to hand in his babykilling guns for the greater good! Why, he hurt one of our gentle and loving antifa volunteers who politely asked him to turn it in by kicking his door down at 3am. He even had food that he had kept hidden during this crisis, clearly he is an enemy of the People ... I mean, of Democracy! Anyone who disagrees clearly sides with nahtzees!*".....

Radical types such as antifa today will be the ones with the personal & political connections to provide the local community with a stable form of government that can provide supplies and food while protecting from outside forces, meaning people who don't give a shit about their idiotic ideology will join them simply because it means their kids get fed. (During the Russian Civil War, most of the people who joined the Red Army had no idea what Communism even was, they simply wanted to eat and avoid dying). They have sympathetic people embedded in government **right now**, you probably don't. So make those connections, and make them now.

Good examples of community groups to get involved with are things like: your town's Emergency Preparedness program, 4-H, the local Fish and Game Club, Red Cross, Neighborhood Watch, Volunteer Fire Dept., Police Auxiliary, Neighborhood Soup Night, PTA (extremely important IMHO), Scouts & Guides, Habitat for Humanity, and so on. If your community doesn't have a group you think would be useful to the community, get involved in starting one up yourself.

You don't need hundreds of people who are politically on-side, a literal handful of right-minded folks with good connections built-up over time may well be enough to prod your town to good choices when disaster strikes and it becomes obvious help will never come. If you're there at the center of things during minor local crises giving out level-headed advice, you'll be looked to for advice and guidance when bigger disasters happen. Presence is key - you must show sensible leadership and enough compassion to be accepted *now*, in order to make the hard decisions later.

If your leadership means you protect people from capricious violence and they can feed themselves, they'll generally tolerate your government. If your presence means they get the food and safety and can also get and keep a wife and home, they'll actively support your government, and will fight for you even if you're culturally and racially alien to them, as the Gurkhas do for the British, as do the disparate people who make up the French Foreign Legion do, and as did the barbarians who served Rome and later, Byzantium.

This is the same system muslims in the Ottoman and previous eras used to get loyalty from the conquered peoples who submitted to them, especially considering that they also practice polygamy, and thus take all the best women for themselves. You could achieve similar results (after SHTF) by banning divorce for those who swear fealty to you and follow your ways, but allowing it to those who continue resisting – many a man will see the danger in losing half or more of his earthly goods, and compare this to the benefits that this won't happen under your group's wise leadership.

Read the book "*MAGS: the People part of Prepping*" by C. Hogwood for more ideas.

Post-collapse, austerity would be a fact of life for some time, so the local societal parasites would have to be removed if they refused to clean up their act. This would entail rounding up all the habitual criminals, pimps, whores, sex offenders, long-term able-bodied welfare recipients, winos and drug addicts, etc. and then either forcibly expelling them, putting them to forced labor, or if necessary, permanent elimination. Cruel, yes, but under the circumstances so will everything be.

Trump's surprising 2016 election win provided a breathing space before the forthcoming civil war, but it also energized Universalists to openly use and promote political violence, which may well create conditions far less favorable to the nation as a whole than had Trump never run at all.

The left is just not agreement-capable. They cannot make peace. They cannot sign a treaty and then force their subordinates to stick with the terms of that treaty. We have long passed the point where a handful of executions could stop the left singularity from getting lefter. Any compromise peace that allows the left to keep getting lefter will collapse. The fundamental attraction of leftism is "*We're the winning side, we've been knocking over apple-carts for three centuries, join us and you'll get lots of apples*", and the leftward slide since 1710 or so keeps going faster and faster.

Just like Pinochet's Chile and Franco's Spain, any victory with the enemy entrenched in the judiciary, media, and academia is merely a temporary breathing space: any permanent solution requires a significant number of major Universalist figures being permanently removed from circulation. If we end up in control, whether peacefully or after some sort of conflict, it does little good in the long-run unless victory is used for, and followed up by, a decisive attack on the spy agencies, the FBI, the DoJ, the media, the internet monopolies, the schools, academia, and the judiciary. For victory to stick, for America and the world to regain health, the universities and courts need to be cut down to size. To steal an overused phrase, that's a very big swamp to drain.

In ancient Rome, we see that Constantine gave up on draining it, and instead built a new Rome in Byzantium, letting old Rome wither on the vine. We may well need to build new institutions, and ensure that the old institutions wither away. It's time we rebuild Jerusalem.

19. Predictions Of Forthcoming Civil Instability

Sometime in 2024 will be when everyone finally realizes that the Republican Party, the outer layer of the American one-party system, is dead. Sure, any red state in the 2022 midterms became a tiny bit redder, but watch as all the red seats in blue states "mysteriously" flip blue – the red counties dotting the blue states will vanish. Then the cuckservatives will cry "*You've really done it now! When we take back the presidency in 2024, you'll be sorry!*"

But when 2024 comes around they'll be even more blatant about electoral theft than they were in 2020 - you can expect Cathedral mouthpiece publications like Time magazine and the New York Times to put out articles first denying any wrongdoing, and then shortly afterwards gleefully explaining how they manipulated the election* but that it was justified in order to "stop fascism".
*(… again. Check out: **https://archive.is/gvcvX** if you haven't done it already).

After being cheated in the midterms in 2022 and the presidential election in 2024, anyone with half a brain finally realizes the Democrats no longer need the fig-leaf of opposition the Republican Party provides. No amount of "*we'll get them next election, after this overreach*", copium will cut it. Suddenly, elite-faction Republicans will realize they have been kicked to the curb for good and Democrats realize that they're competing against each other, now.

At that point, the next election requires violence to solve, and it's in the context of a battle over the 2026 midterms that the USA will visibly all go to shit. Knife-fights (metaphorically) start between America's elites, with officials sending government goons to arrest each other. Eventually, a former big shot, probably one that was not well-known to the public for being a big shot, is killed while "resisting arrest", then we'll start seeing tanks rolling down main street USA.

This will be a situation paralleling the overthrow of Tzar Nicholas III and the overthrow of King Louis XVI. In both cases, their deep states expected to continue governing without the inconvenience of a King bothering them, but they were soon in for a big surprise.

Expect to see the US deep state struggle with the radical left for power (the Republican Party being irrelevant after 2026.) Everyone, including the radical left expects the deep state to win and restore normality, but this is normalcy bias - the establishment left lacks cohesion, and elements within it will be fighting one another with literal guns at that point, so each member of the establishment left will try making their own deal with the radical left at the expense of the rest.

Everyone in the deep state thinks that with the democratically elected president out of the way, they'll be running the US, but there's far too many of them, they're all going to cut a deal with the radical left, and they're all going to find themselves with the short end of the stick in their deals.

Eventually the leftism spiral will be ended by a Napoleon or Stalin figure - if we're lucky, we'll get a Cromwell and then leftism will slowly empty out for lack of new applecarts to knock over. At which point hopefully an alternative socio-political worldview will gain mass traction. And that new "religion" will need to ready itself for eventually becoming the state religion, just as progressivism is currently the state religion.

The time of electoral politics is over, and the time for an alternative mass religion is not yet. It will likely take quite some time before our enemies have finished destroying each other, so in preparation, we should build tribe and prepare for widespread hardship. This isn't going to be like the first civil war, with borders and two clear-cut sides.

If at any point, there's not a speedy resolution to the mess, or if the economic system collapses too suddenly due to the political instability, we will see open warfare in the US. I predict a Great Depression 2.0 by 2030. If this comes before or during the expected political instability I expect in the period 2026-2030, expect war to spread globally as longstanding disagreements and border disputes are settled in the absence of America keeping a lid on the local boiling political pots.

One relative benefit of the resulting economic disruption at the US Federal level is that all welfare (especially EBT handouts) will end. This will encourage the self-removal of any latinos who remain rootless and are in the US just to send money home. Worldwide examples show that in times of hardship or crisis, temporary economic migrants are the first to "bug out" to more welcoming areas.

This should be encouraged at every turn, and little prompting would be needed to encourage members of an otherwise shiftless and near-starving black population to follow suit, especially if a propaganda campaign was run indicating that such-and-such a country was inviting them in with open arms and offering work and housing due to labor shortages... a country such as Canada, Israel or Liberia, for example. True, this would require spending some of the public money to get them there, but it seems a tolerable expense considering they would arrive without a valid passport or documents after a one-way trip and having no way to return. What happens after their arrival, is up to them and the locals. No returns or refunds accepted, sorry!

20. Visions Of War

Events we can expect to see if the new US civil instability turns "hot":

> political war:

Leftists are going to vandalize or burn cars with Trump bumper stickers (more than they do already) or homes that once had Trump signs in their yards. Right-wingers are similarly going to remember who in their neighborhood had Hillary/Biden/Bernie signs in their yards or on their cars and toss molotovs or road flares onto their roofs in the middle of the night. Anyone with any recent overt political display is going to be targeted by neighbors who remember them as 'the enemy'. The feds, of course, will be carrying out constant false flags, for a number of reasons: to provide excuses for crackdowns on political enemies, to appear proactive (and therefore justify a bigger budget), and to make it seem like their enemies are actually dangerous. Expect political assassinations of local figures, and increased militancy by anyone who views the situation realistically. Expect the federal government to try to quietly suspend the bill of rights "to mantain order", and fail miserably at it. You'll also see constant media propaganda railing against "*nazi militias*", "*White supremacist terrorists*", "*alt-right extremist cells*" and other similar non-existent problems - in doing so, they will create such groups for real.

> racial lines:

1. blacks will walk into random malls, businesses, etc. in White-majority areas and just start mass-killing White people. The "black Nationalist" black terrorist who rammed a crowd of White revellers in Waukesha, Wisconsin in late November 2021 will just be the first of many such events. Police responses will as always be late, ineffective, and targeted at Whites who defend themselves. Media coverage will almost totally ignore the carnage, the race of perpetrators, or even the fact there were attacks. This will doubtless lead to some Whites retaliating by burning down public housing and attacking blacks over the 'random' murders (unlike targeting their enablers in the media or police, this will prove ineffective). It will eventually escalate to the point people are afraid to go out in public for fear of being attacked by opportunistic race warriors, forcing a lot of people currently sitting on the fence to pick a side.

2. Hispanics will form gangs/militias to form and protect separatist enclaves in their neighborhoods. The USA's Hispanic population is critical - until the 1980's, they were considered to be White for census purposes, and Hispanics of the era integrated well with White American culture (partly because immigrants of that era weren't all lower-class as now) some may recall the leading male actor of the 1950's show "*I Love Lucy*" was a Cuban Hispanic, for example. If Hispanics side with the poor/black/left element in a civil war, the likely outcome will be that the average citizen's life in the USA will end up much like the slums of Brazil. If they side with the richer/White/right element, the end result is far brighter, and likely to resemble Singapore or pre-1945 Europe. This will also likely happen with other groups having a distinct cultural identity, such as some Southrons, Irish-Americans and Italian-Americans… and of course, ***your*** tribal group, right? In short, American Whites need to get legal Hispanics on-side as allies, something that the wignats are currently too stupid to do.

> religious war:
Muslims and edgy gaytheists will shoot up and burn Christian churches more frequently than they already do now. Expect a dozen Robert Bowers and John Earnest types to attack synagogues. Expect a hundred Brenton Tarrant types attacking mosques. Religious buildings will be frequently burned down and the culprits never found. Pretty soon nobody will feel safe gathering in groups that make big targets. Many synagogues are already fortresses thanks to jewish paranoia, and a lot of Christian churches have formed internal security/militias, e.g. strategically positioning members with concealed carry licenses within the churches in case of a mass shooter, in response to church shootings over the last few years - this ties in to the likely racial warfare mentioned above. Expect to see a few attacks against big-name colleges, but not many – however, these will get a disproportionate amount of biased media coverage. At some point there will probably be some kind of bomb attack against a major televised sporting event, which the media will work very hard to portray as "*White supremacist terrorism*", only for it to be revealed as being anything but, and then it will be completely ignored.

Meanwhile, most normal people are going to be increasingly angry at the situation and will find themselves pushed to their limits. A few may start targeting politicians, government employees, and journalists in retaliation. We'll see some real heavy-duty crap hit the fan if/when China and Russia start sending arms and support to various groups to escalate the war and ensure everyone is too distracted by their local situation to deal with them. Expect Mexican drug cartels to start smuggling weapons and explosives north as well as drugs. Smart tribes will stock up with this stuff at this point.

There will be Nazis, black supremacists, Mexican *La Raza* types, muslims, Mormons, federal agents and their globohomo allies, libertarians/generic boomer conservatives, and more, all fighting each other simultaneously, each faction either trying to gain control or simply carve out a territory for themselves. Once the situation degenerates enough, expect California to separate from the US only for them to find out they can't go it alone, and Texas to do the same but more successfully.

Alliances will shift as factions team up against common enemies, and then fall apart as infighting pits them against each other. Expect to see fascist groups infighting over "*pagan LARPers*" -vs.- "*dead jew on a stick*" factions, libertarians teaming up with ethno-nationalists against authoritarian globalist progressives only to then turn on each other over arguments over rights-vs.-duties and freedom-vs.-degeneracy, muslims teaming up with Marxists against Nazis only to turn on each other over the question of alphabet people.

Factions turning on each other over purity spirals, old rivalries, and real or imagined slights. And then on top of all that you'll have the thousands of lone wolves, opportunists, and small buddy teams operating independently who don't align with any one group, or who do, but have no idea what team anybody they encounter is playing for unless it's super obvious. It'll be a fucking mess.

21. What An American Collapse Means For The World

A collapse of America will make the breakup of Yugoslavia look like a fucking walk in the park, and it's going to spread like wildfire throughout the entire world, domino-style. Europe will probably tear itself apart over the space of a couple of decades, with patriots and nationalists fighting to save their countries from their globohomo elites and the imported hordes of africans and muslims, the muslims recruiting africans and fighting to conquer European soil just as they did in the past, and globohomo fighting to save itself, probably by allying with the islamists – this is likely to involve the globohomo European elites converting to islam, and deeply regretting it soon afterwards. The EU will fragment and vanish (the first clear sign will be a country protecting its borders by reneging on the Schengen agreement, probably Poland), and so will NATO, probably none too soon either.

China and other countries will probably take advantage of the distraction to start some shit that would otherwise lead to nuclear hellfire and WW3 – expect China to quietly retake Taiwan and likely fight India over its longstanding border dispute. Pakistan will likely also seize more disputed land in Kashmir – this one might go nuclear. Depending on what Europe is doing at the time, Serbia might retake Kosovo, Spain may split in two, France will almost certainly fall into a messy ethnic civil war, and Britain will impose draconian martial law in an effort to keep order (…unsuccessfully). Expect Turkey to invade Greece and possibly the Balkans as well. Israel is likely to seize land from its neighbors, and then find out that it cannot keep it without US support – the Golan Heights will likely return to Syrian control at some point. Many other nations with frozen border disputes with their neighbors will seize the opportunity to resolve those issues to their satisfaction in ways that ACWE would never permit or tolerate.

Russia will quietly kick out the pro-US government in Ukraine if it hasn't already, and will exert its regional autonomy. Despite much butt-hurt, expect to see the Baltic states come to some sort of political accommodation or even alliance with Russia once the EU/US recedes as a regional influence. Expect peace and stability to return fairly quickly to any regions and areas under Russian influence. Russia and probably China will almost certainly send weapons and KGB/Spetsnaz advisers to various factions within the American civil war once they carve out territories.

The first fragments of the former USA that receive Sino/Russian assistance will dominate the post-fragmentation landscape - expect there to be several of them, with the bulk of aid and assistance being given to whatever group is the weakest at any point in time, in order to balance out the others' influence.

In Africa, expect existing national borders to be largely wiped aside when the more competent, aggressive and unified groups *(*cough* Tutsis *cough**) form local states that are mostly ethnically monolithic invade and displace purely geographic African countries. In South Africa, the native Boer will either be exterminated – or, with ACWE's meddling and influence finally out of the way, will seize a piece of the country and successfully hold it against the black population's attacks (possibly with foreign assistance from China or Russia in exchange for local mineral wealth).

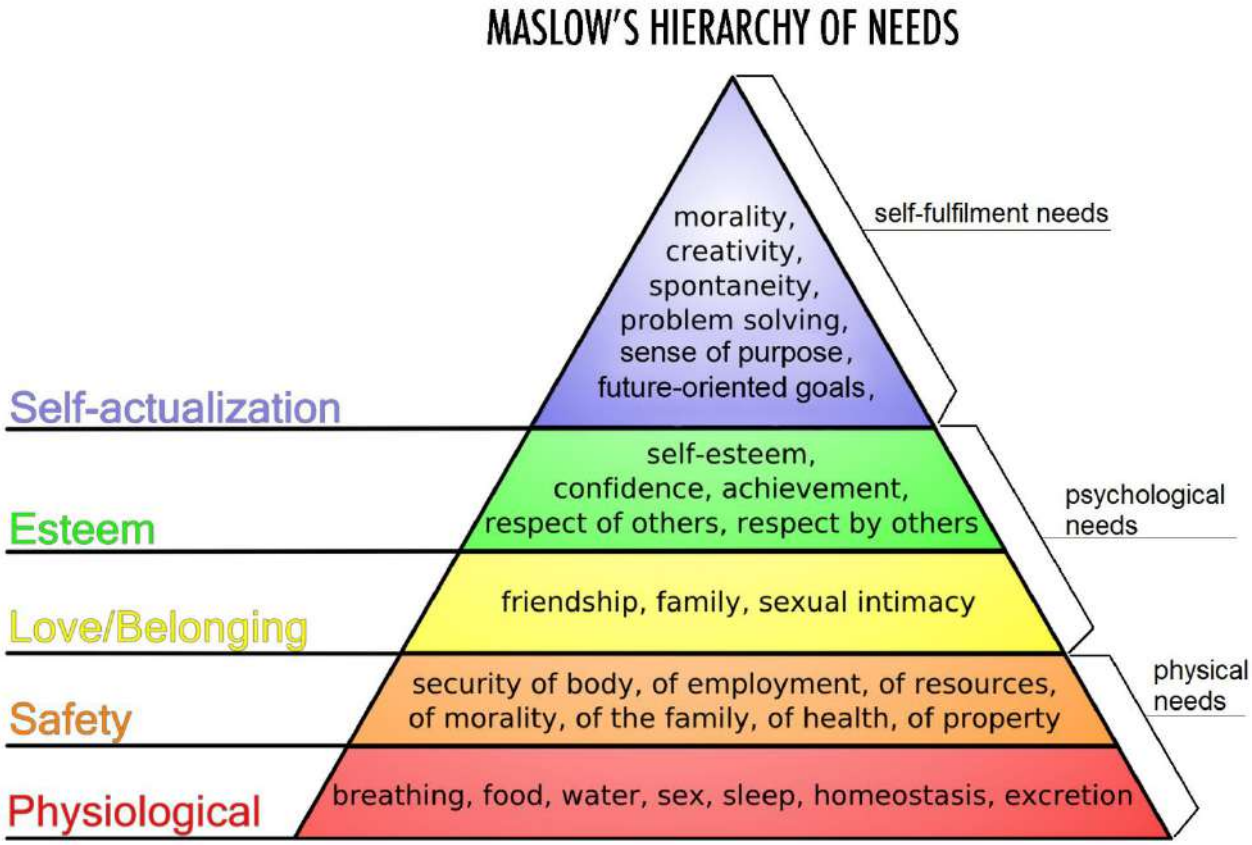
In the longer-term I've no idea what the ultimate result will be, other than it will be very different from now. Universalism unfortunately has quite a bit of life left in it, and so it remains a danger.

22. [RESERVED]

23. [RESERVED]

24. The Nitty-Gritty – Getting And Keeping What You Need

According to Maslow's well-known Hierarchy of Needs, each level is built on the one below.
The lowest levels, the physical needs, can be summarized by the "Rule of threes" - a person can survive without air for 3 minutes, without water for 3 days, and without food for 3 weeks. Sometimes, shelter gets thrown in (3 hours) but this is highly variable depending on climate, and includes the clothing you wear. To these, I've seen hope added (3 seconds), but I think a far more valuable inclusion would be "society" and/or "security", as you'll find that without some sort of relatively safe and stable social structure, any large group of people would begin to fragment and fight among itself. Shelter in this book is considered to be included under security, since it provides a person with physical security from their local environmental conditions.



To summarise, our basic needs to survive a societal collapse in the long term are:
Air
Water
Food
Society
Security (individual and collective, including Shelter)

So with that in mind, let us go through our needs and find safeguards for them, bearing in mind that the first rule of survival is; if you find yourself in a panic, sit down and do nothing until the panic subsides. Rule number 2 is; refer back to rule one. Preparing for crisis situations is not about having lots of "stuff"- it requires mental preparation to resist the bad times that come to us all.

SHTF is not just a solar coronal mass ejection, breakdown in government, foreign invasion or whatever, it's also things like another depression/recession that wipes out your job and savings, or a massive storm that wipes out the electrical supply and blocks roads in mid-winter, it could even be something like China's accidental 2019 bioweapon release (the coronavirus outbreak) turning from an epidemic to a full-blown pandemic. (*I actually wrote that before it happened. - Author*).

If you can survive the first 72h of an immediate crisis, your chances of making it alive increase dramatically. The more you understand an environment and the less you fight it, the kinder it will be to you. Remember also that failing to plan, is planning to fail.

I don't want to crowd this section with too many videos, as there's so many out there, so I will only provide one fairly basic and somewhat boomerish one, but a search for the word "*prepper*" on youtube or equivalents will bring up a massive amount of videos, some good, some not. If they focus on guns a lot and ignore things like medical care and growing vegetables, I suggest moving along to another content creator. [**https://yewtu.be/QUEFV3XQd6Q**]

+ + +

THE MOST IMPORTANT THING TO REMEMBER:

Under no circumstances whatsoever let yourself become a refugee under government control in some camp. People herded like this have statistically shown the *lowest* survival rates in every single conflict, disaster, or crisis since the dawn of time.

+ + +

25. Air

Other than suggesting you stock up a few gas masks or N100 masks and other air filtration units for your family "just in case", there's not that much I can say about air. For any gas mask/s, stockpile as many good-quality replacement canisters as you can afford to get your hands on.

Do make sure that any underground structure you use has adequate ventilation - late Cold War pamphlets on building nuclear shelters contain valuable information on how to build simple but effective ventilation methods and air pumps that might be suitable for your needs depending on specific events during the collapse, and may be useful for designing air filters and pump units for the vulnerable (eg. infants, old people) under other scenarios such as a super-volcanic eruption, or even to pump air for blacksmithing.

I will counsel you to be sure to carefully disguise and protect any air intakes: while raiders may find it impossible to break down the door of your secret emergency bunker, there's nothing easier than lighting a smoky fire at the air inlet and shooting you as you crawl out gasping for oxygen.

26. Water

Like air, water only becomes an issue when it's in short supply. On an individual or family level, your urine is the best indicator of how dehydrated you are, and your thirst the best indicator of your need to drink (when it's warm, at least). Water in your camelback or bottle isn't doing you any good if you're dehydrated, so drink it! You should be passing clear urine twice daily; it should not be yellow. Drink more water and when you stop, eat foods with some salt so you actually feel the thirst and don't become hyponatremic, a diet rich in leafy greens and low in carbs will also greatly help to mantain your body's electrolyte balance. Even when water is abundant, always carry at least 2L (64oz) in two or more bottles because it gives you more options. Drink one liter (32oz) with dinner, and the other during the morning to hydrate, in addition to any you drink during the day when thirsty.

At high temperatures, even a man resting under shade loses as much as a pint of water per hour during the day as sweat; if he works his water loss and requirement increase in direct proportion to the physical effort. Hardworking personnel, such as builders, marching troops, and laborers may require as much as 3 gallons (13.5 litres) of drinking water a day. It's impossible to reduce water intake through training, and any water restriction below the required intake will rapidly cause loss of efficiency, reduction in the ability to work, and deterioration in morale.

Should such a restriction continue for hours, the core body temperatures of personnel will rapidly increase to unsafe levels causing heat exhaustion, and soon thereafter, heatstroke, collapse, and even death. For any given amount of work at high temperatures, the water requirement is identical whether drinking takes place only at mealtimes or when thirsty. It has been shown that the greatest benefit and highest efficiency lies in drinking small amounts of cool (not cold) water frequently.

At low temperatures, exactly the same rules apply and water intake must be proportional to the energy expended, except your sense of thirst will be diminished - this does **not** mean you're properly hydrated if not thirsty! Your need for water is just as great in a cold environment as in a hot one. Leaders must ensure personnel drink frequently in cold climates, especially when men are performing hard labor. Warm beverages (e.g. tea, coffee, hot chocolate, etc.) are beneficial at intervals to mantain morale and health if the weather is especially cold.

Water purification tablets come in two versions: chlorine and iodine. Iodine takes about 45min, tastes strange, and isn't effective against Cryptosporidium. Chlorine dioxide is, but it's slower taking up to 4 hours. Stock up and cache them, and also any filters your other systems use.

Without technological infrastructure, boiling your water is one of the few ways to kill cryptosporidium (the other is chlorine dioxide such as in Aquamira, which takes 4 hours to kill it) but this leaves the water tasting flat and stale. To fix this, after boiling, half-fill a bottle with the boiled water and shake the crap out of it. You can also improve the flavor by leaving a fruity herbal teabag in the cold water for a short while so it gains a very weak taste. You can even reuse the teabag several times.

Simply adhering to the basics of modern public health (especially regular hand-washing with soap) will have a huge impact on keeping infant mortality low, life-spans long, and reducing death from disease after a collapse. However, this by itself will not be enough.

We take clean, safe drinking water for granted in the present day. Due to a variety of reasons, as the collapse worsens this will no longer be the case in many areas. While it can be relatively straightforward to catch rainwater off your roof in tanks, and to gravity-filter it using third-world level methods, the mass supply of safe drinking water will become a huge problem, one exacerbated by urban population densities and the nature of water supply to those areas:

Modern cities are built over a grid of water pipes divided into pressure zones. Pumps and elevated storage are used to mantain relatively constant pressure in all the pipes in each zone. Buildings in large cities throughout history have been low-rises, as historically there was no water supply to upper floors, no easy way to get water up there, and no way except stairs to bring stuff up.

The reason the upper floors had no water is that it's impossible to use simple positive displacement pumps (like the old hand-pumps of the Wild West era) to pump water higher than about 22 feet (6.5m), meaning all water had to be hand-carried up stairs. In some cases, it took the development of cast-iron pipes and high-pressure pumps to produce enough pressure to feed all the grid and enable modern urban plumbing to be used - very few cities could rely on gravity-fed aqueducts as early Rome did. This also means such places are serious fire hazards after SHTF once replacement parts for pumps and other such devices start breaking down and their components become harder and harder to find. It will take quite some time before new pumps can be designed and built with available technology. Due to this, apartment complexes taller than about 5 floors and high-rise flats will be almost completely useless for living in once the power and water supply becomes unreliable, mostly due to issues of water supply.

Another major issue will be waste removal- many buildings use septic tanks that allow sewage to collect in a storage tank during the day until a pump "blends" it into a liquid slurry and forces it into the sewer system. However, these systems require electrical power and water to function, and if either service is disrupted, sewage will build up to unhygienic levels. Should this sewage leak it will pollute groundwater, contaminating the soil you use to grow crops and causing outbreaks of things such as cholera and typhoid that are almost unheard-of today. Sewage removal will become a pressing issue, and plans must be made to collect and dispose of human wastes. This can be as simple as collecting them in carts and dumping the lot into a large pit such as a disused quarry, as long as someone such as a geologist can first ensure that any liquid will not flow into or contaminate groundwater. Such a sewage dump could also become an important source of nitrates for farming or explosives manufacture down the line. There are books available on the subject that may help you, and many include the words "latrine" or "humanure" in the titles. I suggest browsing the following links and books to get you started:
https://archive.is/bZ8kE , https://archive.is/1JLur
[epub] **http://library.lol/main/D326A6A470B017ECCB5C180B9E89F76B**
[pdf] **http://library.lol/main/5C091C93CC71019F0F615B4B0475EF1E**

You will also need a practical means of large-scale disinfection of both water and wastewater. It must be easy to produce, understand, and mantain. In addition, you must have the ability to make sure that any given amount of water is drinkable and safe. The first reliable means of disinfection of a public water supply was created when a typhoid epidemic struck Northern New Jersey in 1913, and the source was identified as a stream feeding into a reservoir in Boonton that supplied water to Jersey City. Charles Wallace and Martin Tiernan found a way to accurately inject measured amounts of chlorine gas into the water supply in a repeatable, measurable, way.



Previous attempts to use chlorine, both as a gas and as calcium hypochlorite, had been tried but too little does nothing, and too much produces diarrhea and vomiting in victims. Why chlorine? It produces a residual, meaning you can ensure the water in which chlorine is present is disinfected. And this residual can be measured with relatively simple technology that can be found in high-school or university textbooks.

*27. **Food***

Once, stores had large stockrooms where they kept goods to replenish the shelves as needed. However, sometime in the late 1990's, something called Just in Time (JIT) inventory systems rose in popularity - computer programs were developed that kept much better track of the merchandise in the stores than could previously be done, and the re-ordering of goods was automated. Merchandise comes from the warehouse, off the truck, and immediately onto the shop floor. Thus stores use more of the available space to actually sell products. So, stores were remodelled and stockroom space drastically reduced. It's a good concept that makes perfect business sense when things are normal. Just-in-time delivery also encourages dependence on far-flung "readily" available resources instead of local/regional stockpiles that encourage civilized forward planning and don't clog highways as much. But when resupply is disrupted, such as when roads are cut off or there's a sudden increase in sales due to panic-buying, stores rapidly run out of bread, milk, and other commodities. When that happens, it could easily be days before shipments arrive... providing trucks aren't delayed by the very event that caused people to panic buy in the first place.

The omnipresent problem of starvation means humans have only ever been at peak population capacity. Earth can mantain a maximum of perhaps a billion hunter-gatherers on all continents. About six billion people are possible with crop rotation, dung for fertilizer, tilling, irrigation and agriculture. Eight or so billion with advanced chemistry to create bulk fertilizer and pesticides. About ten to twelve billion with genetic engineering and all modern science is easily possible, and likely even more, at a comfortable lower-middle class European lifestyle – this depends on who the people are however, just look at what remains of Detroit.

Basically, all predictions say the global human population will peak at about 10 billion before the population starts declining in 2150 or so* - this may mean mass famine in less developed areas if demand outstrips supply before then, and everywhere if SHTF at any point. This ignores the possibility that someone invents a new and better way to produce bulk food first.
(*See this excellent presentation on population: **https://yewtu.be/FACK2knC08E**)

But what about a vegetarian diet, you ask? While there's certainly some merit in a greater percentage of vegetables in one's diet, vegetarianism in general and veganism especially, rely on nutritionally-fortified processed foods often sourced from a global footprint. This is clearly unsustainable post-SHTF, and is unhealthy even now in the case of children - there have been numerous child abuse charges laid and even a few deaths due to vegans forcing such diets onto their offspring. In the long-term, total human veganism would require cutting down all forests and destroying all ecosystems, because a mixed diet has a lower geospatial footprint, no matter what veganism's proponents claim – meat is mostly produced by grazing animals on marginal grassland where vegetables can't be grown. If the land isn't used to graze animals, it simply reverts to wild grassland, because food crops won't grow.

Just as the Eskimos did, humans **can** survive on an all-meat diet, provided we make sure to eat plenty of saturated animal fat (which is where most animals store spare vitamins, etc.) and some offal or marrow (such parts are best used to make broth or stews). A pure meat protein diet will cause "rabbit starvation", but our cave-man and early pastoralist ancestors survived in places where you can't grow vegetables like the early Bronze Age steppes, due to eating the fat, and also eating milk products such as butter, sour milk, yoghurt and cheese, and of course, eventually a mutation appeared and spread that enabled them/us to drink fresh milk as well. The existence of "rabbit starvation" shows we have a biological need to consume saturated animal fats, and may indicate that the American population's current collapse in testosterone levels and epidemic of rampant obesity is actually caused due to the widespread replacement of healthy animal fats by processed seed oils.



The most important take-away from this is that due to excess human predation on large wild herbivores (such as deer, etc). , you'll NOT be able to depend on hunting to supply food in the first few years after SHTF, and that you'll have to defend your food supply, both crops and livestock, as you pursue food self-sufficiency through agriculture. Those living in coastal areas may be able to supplement their diets by fishing.

Throughout the Middle Ages and right through the Renaissance two questions decided how poor you truly were. Firstly, could you buy a piglet in spring to fatten up and slaughter in autumn? Second, could you grow your own vegetables on a small plot? If the answer to both was yes, your household should be all right - unless the pig died or was stolen. If the answer to both was no, odds were you'd get so weak and malnourished over winter that any disease could kill you.

That having a pig could literally mean life or death to a family may seem unbelievable today, but the average household would not have had cash to buy the 150-200 pounds of meat-products a pig provides. As this was likely the only fat and animal protein available during winter, its production and preservation was vital.

With a small vegetable plot of your own, bought winter vegetables could be supplemented by fresh winter-hardy kale plus stored onions, roots, and garlic, thus adding not just variation, but also some sorely needed vitamins and minerals to the winter meals.

During summer the danger of malnutrition or starvation was less for the poor, partly because the prospects of earning a wage were greater during the growth season, and partly because even the poorest family could supplement their meals by gathering wild plants such as young nettles, dandelions, wild onions, lovage, ground elder, and angelica. A surprisingly common emergency food that may be available to you is cattails. They don't seem to appreciably pick up environmental pollution, but any of the parts of the plant you use, do need to be well-washed.

Aside from salt pork and fresh kale, winter food in a poor urban household was likely to consist of porridge made from bought grain, a few of the cheapest vegetables, plus the coarsest bread from the baker and the cheapest small beer from the brewer. If spices were bought they would likely be mustard and vinegar, other flavorings being whatever herbs and berries were gathered or grown – only the well-off could afford expensive and exotic imported spices like pepper or cinnamon.



Which vegetables were the cheapest would naturally vary from area to area. Some foods such as beans, turnips, swedes, oats, and millet were considered too coarse for digestion by anyone but the coarsest laborers, and were thus found exclusively on the tables of the poor. Other items such as peas - and, in some areas, cabbage - were cheap but eaten by everyone. The peas weren't the fresh, green summer vegetables we think of today, but the hard yellow or green split-pea sort, which were fully matured on the plant before being dried for storage.

Step one in securing your food supply is naturally, home caching additional food and consumables. A home cache is a supply of food and tools in your house (or other home) that permits you to live off stocked goods for a determined amount of time if all outside support ends. If the grid goes down, communications are jammed or dead, the water is cut off, and fuel sources are gone, our standard of living is built on a soap bubble, and a cache will delay the worst for you and your family.

Four days without food will not overly impede or injure you if you're a healthy adult at full strength, but after that you'll begin to weaken noticeably. Armies worldwide have derisory names for their rations but the fact is they're packed full of vitamins, calories and goodness to keep you on your feet- they've got everything but flavor. Realistically, you won't eat MREs for months on end post-SHTF, unless of course you really hate your colon and like to shit out rocks. Save MREs for infiltration ops and emergencies, and use rice, dried beans, canned goods, hunted small game, etc. as your usual daily foodstuffs. I do suggest placing one MRE (or equivalent) and a jar of peanut butter in each of your bugout bags, in case travel takes longer than expected.

In the present day, stockpiling preparedness supplies is surprisingly easy - there's no need to purchase special foods for this, your normal long-life products such as salt, sugar, flour, coffee, tea, spices, canned goods, bags of White rice, dried beans, and dried split peas, etc. will all work well, as long as the foods have fairly low acidity. Things like wheat, dried corn, instant coffee, honey, and pasta all have an unlimited or at least decade+ shelf life if sealed in airtight containers and kept in a cool, dark place. Just buy a few extra items each time you go to the store for your normal groceries, especially when they're discounted. If you have a freezer, keep it well stocked, again just buy extras of the normal things you usually buy when you see they're on sale. If an emergency does come, be sure to use the frozen foods first if the power goes out, even if they will remain cold for a couple of days if the freezer was full and is kept shut - fill any empty gaps in your freezer with bottles of clean, frozen water to retain the cold should the power go out.

Consider a home cache as a back-up pantry in an odd place. Be sure to include some hygene products such as toilet paper, baby wipes, ladies' sanitary products, etc. If you're on a tight budget or living paycheck-to-paycheck, I urge you to look up Susan Gregersen's book, "*Poverty Prepping: How to Stock Up for Tomorrow When You Can't Afford to Eat Today*" to start breaking out of that vicious cycle. Here's a couple of links with more ideas to get you started: **https://archive.is/Rcq2Y** (for a 30-day emergency food supply), **https://archive.is/EnLQi** (for a cheap one-year emergency food supply) - the site is still up as I write this in early 2022.

If you find yourself too tired to cook when you're getting home after work, you'll tend to eat out a lot more. Eating out is very expensive for what you actually get. The best way I've found to avoid this is to make time on your days off to bulk-cook meals. You can easily buy take-away containers as used in Chinese restaurants in bulk packs, and fill them with stew, pasta and sauce, or basically anything else (except fish, because reheated fish really stinks), then allow the meals to cool and either refrigerate them if they will be used in the next 72 hours or freeze them if they're likely to take longer before being used. Rather than paying $10 or more for an unhealthy burger for one meal, you get several days' worth of, for example, a delicious and healthy beef stew for the same cost. If you're worried about monotony, just bulk cook several meals, and number the containers, then eat a different number each time, eg: Monday Lunch, meal 1, Monday Dinner, meal 2, Tuesday Lunch, meal 3, Tuesday dinner, meal 4, etc… all you'll need is a microwave oven to defrost and reheat the meals when you take them out.

Gradually stock up on non-perishable foods. Wheat, dried corn, instant coffee, honey, and pasta all have an almost unlimited shelf life if sealed properly in airtight containers. Tinned foods will last at least 5 years if kept clean and dry (rotate stock and use the oldest dates first).

If you have the space, take it a step further and learn how to salt meat and fish, and to bottle or can veggies, it's not that difficult. You can find plans online for dehydrators too- beef jerky can easily be made in bulk if you bother learning how and, if stored properly, can last for years. Do half of that and before you know it, you'll have 6 months to a year's worth of food, and best of all - no one will be aware you're doing it. If you like history, start looking into how people preserved food before electricity was invented (in the 1700's). This will help if there's no electricity.

There’s plethora of information available both on- and off-line on traditional methods of canning and other food preservation and storage methods, and books can easily be ordered. I recommend getting some information and trying your hand at some small-scale food preservation as a hobby now, while the need is small, so that once the situation worsens you only need to scale up your efforts. Besides that, home-made jams, pickles and preserves taste better and are healthier than any store-bought ones, and make handy and relatively cheap personal gifts for family.

It's an excellent idea to stock some powdered skim milk and perhaps a tin or two of infant formula even if you don’t have children. The former lasts far longer than whole powdered milk due to the lower fat content (sadly, the fat tends to go rancid over time as it reacts with residual oxygen in the bag) and can be used in the same way as normal milk once rehydrated, the latter will be a godsend if anyone has an infant during or after the collapse, as the mother's milk may dry up due to stress, poor nutrition, or hormonal issues. If these get close to their use-by date and you don't normally use them yourself, they can be donated to charities in your local community.
Even if you're an urban dweller with limited room, you should be able to grow some basic vegetables in pots, such as lettuce, carrots, cabbage or other “micro-greens", to supplement your diet. you'll find that home-grown vegetables aren't only tastier, but also more nutritious than store-bought products. If you're new to gardening, books can easily be found at libraries, bookstores, or online to start you on this journey. Look for headings that include words such as “*mini-farming*", “*self-sufficiency*", or even “*vegetable gardening*” - bear in mind many books on gardening will focus on decorative plants such as flowers, which are less useful for our needs.

Be sure to reconnoitre and jot down which parks and yards in your area could be ploughed up and used for food production. The same again for warehouses that might hold food, and for buildings that could house friends and family fleeing the disaster. In addition to storing heirloom seeds now and pre-planning to grow crops in the surrounding areas, it's an excellent idea to create edible gardens, so that the 99% of people who don't know what to look for would walk right through one without realizing the plants within are food at all. One of the best books for this is “*The Edible Ornamental Garden*” by John E. Bryan and Coralie Castle (101 Productions, 1974, 192p).

Unlike at present, where obesity is the number one health issue plaguing Americans, fat will be one of the most important parts of your diet- it's absorbed more slowly by the body than sugars and carbs, meaning you'll feel fuller for longer, and the energy it provides also lasts longer. Fatty food is also denser and more nutritious than sweet foods, meaning it takes up less space and weight for the same caloric value. Together with vitamins and minerals provided by leafy greens and other vegetables, and protein from legumes and the odd bit of meat, it will form part of a well-balanced post-SHTF diet.

True primitive-woodsman-type survival skills take all your day, every day, just to scrape a living together in the form of water and calories. The sort of vegetable food you can find in the wild, even if you know which plants to eat and how to prepare them, is generally so low in calories that it's hardly worth eating. As a general rule, green plants don’t have much in the way of calories. Calories come mainly from the roots which supply the plant with the energy to grow next year – stuff like potatoes and yams – or from the seeds such as corn and many types of nuts. As these don’t commonly grow wild you're not going to get them except from other humans or growing them yourself. The notion that you could live for prolonged periods off the land as a guerrilla-type fighter is ridiculous when carefully examined in the cold harsh light of day.

Your main source of meat protein after SHTF won't be beef- cattle will be too valuable as a source of milk and cheese for that because it will be near impossible to continue with modern high-intensity agriculture, and anyhow they will probably need to be guarded against theft while they graze. Your protein will mostly come from rabbits, the occasional chicken (more useful for their eggs), goats (again, more valuable as a source of milk and cheese, but year-old males will be good for the pot) and a pig or two for your winter meat. Again, don't expect to hunt for your meat - just as they were hunted to almost extinction by both armies during the US Civil War, deer and other wild creatures will take decades to recover from people's actions, and sport hunting is in any case an inefficient source (in fact usually an overall negative source) of calories in any SHTF scenario. Trapping and snaring are far more effective, though the catch may sometimes be odd.

Wild meat is more... "*interesting*" in that, dead or alive, it's more likely to have parasites. Fortunately, thoroughly cooking it will render these safe so be sure to have your meat well-done. You might want to use chilli, curry powder or some other strong flavouring spice to hide any disagreeable "gamey" taste (they also will help kill any remaining bacteria). Of course, if you stick to the rabbits, chickens, goats, and suchlike that you should be breeding yourself, the meat you're eating will be healthy, even though it may come in smaller portions than now.

28. Feeding Your Family After The End Of Our World

I've heard it said that with modern farming methods, you can feed a family of four on one acre. That would not include land for any animals other than a few chickens and rabbits however. Others say you can survive with as little as 600 square feet, but I'd rather do more than the bare minimum - that sounds pretty marginal and what if your crop yield is worse than expected, or you can't use machinery? I suggest 2 acres/person minimum, not including the space for your house.

Say you eat three eggs each for breakfast, and use some for other stuff, you'll want a dozen or more eggs a day. You need at least as many laying hens, and ideally also a rooster to breed more chickens. If you eat less than a dozen eggs a week, three hens are enough. Either way, extra fertilized eggs can go into an incubator, and the chicks can be sold or traded if they're not needed for meat. If you don't want to use an incubator, hard-boil any eggs you don't want to eat, mash them, and mix them into the chickens' feed, or save them for your pig, dogs, and cats. You **must** boil the eggs first so your chickens don't risk catching a prion disease from eating them. (You can't catch one unless you eat people or eat an animal that already has it from eating its own species– look up how "*kuru*" or mad cow disease works.)

To feed the chicks, plan on letting them run outdoors part of the day, if you can. The older chickens will need to be prevented from eating things like your tomatoes, but before these form, the chickens will perform valuable work in eating the bugs that will otherwise attack the plants. Be sure to provide the chickens with fresh greens too, they will need it to keep healthy, especially if you want them to be productive when egg-laying. Young children can be encouraged to gather worms and wild foods that they can bring home for the chickens to eat. Sure, you can pay to buy layer pellets or grain to feed to them, but you're trying to prepare in case of SHTF remember?

For milk, goats will serve you far better than a cow – fresh goat milk can even be given to infants, but it does not keep long even when refrigerated. One milk goat will produce all the milk you can use while she is lactating. Two she-goats, bred to alternating schedules, should leave you with excess milk all year long. Goats do far better in company as they're social animals, and will remain healthier if they have a friend. You'll need a ½ acre of good pasture for them and the chickens together as long as the soil and rainfall are decent. If you have room for a third, a male goat will also provide you with more goats, which you can eat or trade. You'll need one anyway if you don't want to rely on other people to breed your goats to produce milk.

If you want beef, you shouldn't need more than a calf per year, and I would suggest finding a dairy farm in the area, and buy one male calf each year from them. If you have a goat that gave birth at about the same time, you can raise the calf on the goat's milk, and will have some of the healthiest calves in the area. Be sure to castrate the calf while it's still young – you won't want to deal with them when cow puberty kicks in and they start sniffing around after the neighbor's cows. Raise them in a pen for the first three to six months, and wean them to grass after. Plan on butchering them around the one-year mark or their second year at the latest, to ensure the meat is still tender and lean. You can do that yourself or send them off to a butcher (will cost some money). A yearling provides you with a freezer-full of good grass-fed all-natural beef. Plan on a ½ acre of good pasture for the heifer, in addition to the land for goats - the two species usually get along ok.

If you really want cow milk, look into Dexter cattle - they're a small breed of multi-purpose cattle. Two cows can run on two acres of good grass, and give you all the milk and meat you need, with some left over. Think very carefully before getting a milk cow. She'll produce five gallons of milk or more every day for 300 or so days a year. Many cows can give over 13 gallons a day. She will need lots of grain or lots and lots of high-quality grazing to do it, and you'll need to milk her twice every day, with the first milking at 5am – if you don't, the milk will dry up. Even the Dexter breed gives a gallon per day, which is a **lot** even for a family of four. Any milk (from any animal) that you don't drink while it's fresh gets turned into butter and cheese. Plan on an acre of good to very good pasture for each cow.

In addition to this you'll need to feed them, especially over winter, which means you'll need additional land for hay pasture. So you'll also need a tractor, and equipment to cut and bale hay – note that you'll need even *more* equipment to move round bales, but far less is needed to move square bales (the smaller sizes can generally be moved by hand). Or you could go full traditional and sheaf your hay, but that's very manpower-intensive work and needs lots of people.

Pork is excellent for the smallholder - you can often pick up a weaned piglet for under $20, sometimes under $5. Feed it with your leftover kitchen scraps, milk, eggs, and let it clean up the garden after all the good stuff has been harvested – it will even plough up the soil a bit… perhaps a bit too much in some cases! Butcher pigs when they weigh less than 100 pounds, and get another for the next year. Or go to a pork auction and pick up an old boar for maybe 5 cents a pound, but take him straight to the butcher, since he is strong enough to tear up your barn just for fun, and he will if given the slightest opportunity. Forget about breeding your own hogs – you won't have the space, equipment, facilities, or expertise to do that. You need a ¼ acre per pig minimum, and keep them away from the chickens or they may eat them.

One acre of orchard should do you: say, 4 cherries, 2 apples and 2 pears around 30ft. apart, 2 peaches at 20ft, 2 plums at 15ft. I'd add 100 strawberries, 6 blackberries, 6 raspberries, and 4 grapes to the mix, as they will bear fruit sooner. A few nut trees would be good to add if they will grow where you are: maybe 2 pecans (35ft), 4 hazels (15ft), and 2 chestnuts (30ft). Even if you don't have enough room for trees, put in a 50ft row of asparagus, 4 hardy kiwis on a trellis, and 12 rhubarb plants.

If your neighbors have the same species of trees and they're close enough to yours for pollination you can put them farther apart, or put your trees closer together if you get dwarf varieties. Invest in a beehive or two placed in the orchard, to pollinate the lot and provide plenty of honey, but don't gather honey in autumn unless you want to spend money to feed your bees over winter.

This leaves you around ½ an acre for your vegetable garden, that's just under 22000sq.ft, arranged in



whatever shape it comes in, which should be plenty for all your vegetables and cooking herbs. Add at least 1 acre if you need a private wood lot, and at least 2 or 3 for growing your own grain, though I don't recommend growing grain at the scale you'll most likely be working with (it needs a lot of work and equipment). Spend as much as you can afford on GOOD, solid, fences.

Six to ten acres should be enough for three to four people if you get decent land, put up good fences to keep out vermin (deer, coyotes, feral dogs, urbanites...), and put in the work. This assumes one of the people has an outside job that pays all the various taxes, etc. you're currently subjected to - there's a reason people had big families. It could be done by grouping a few families if they will work together, or getting members of your extended family to live there.

Even while living in the city, working a 9-to-5 job, many of the necessary homesteading skills can be learned, and once learned, put into practice. Your own personal situation will place limits on what and how much you can actually do – e.g., while raising goats may be out of the question, raising a few tomato plants and kitchen herbs in pots on a window sill is a definite start.

By learning to live more frugally, you'll be better able to save towards someday getting your own piece of land. Perhaps you choose to buy produce when it's at its cheapest, in mid-summer, and home can or dry some for your food storage? Go to produce sellers and ask if they have any produce that is too bad to sell. Often produce is damaged in shipping and cannot be sold, but is still perfectly usable. Vegetables with a small spot of spoilage can often have this section removed and the rest be just fine. Often the seller will give you these vegetables for free, or at very low prices. The food can then be reclaimed, dried, frozen, home canned or eaten fresh. The bad parts can be fed to any chickens that your space might allow, or if nothing else, could be used as compost for your plants. For "city compost", mash all the bad plant parts in a container or run them through a blender with just a little water, and pour the slurry around your plants.

29. Final Considerations Regarding Supplies And Storage

Slowly work your way up the "preparedness chain" - start by stocking for 72 hours, then a week, then a month's worth, etc. The home cache is a supply of food and tools in your house that permits you to survive there for a pre-determined period if all outside support ends: e.g. if the grid goes down, communications are jammed or dead, the water is cut off, and fuel sources are gone.

Especially if you live somewhere affected by tornados or severe storms that could damage or flatten your house, empty a cabinet in your bathroom and stock it with bottled water for at least two days, water purification devices, a camping stove and a brand new can of fuel for the stove (brand new because they're sealed ready sale on store shelves and usually don't leak unless punctured), some basic food, at least two flashlights and their batteries, a family first aid kit, a change of sturdy clothes sealed in plastic, and a battery powered multiband (& CB or ham) radio.

If you have no basement or other underground structure in your preferred location, consider building one. If you're currently renting, then I suggest having your home cache set up so you can easily move it into your bathroom at a moment's notice. Why the bathroom? Because partly due to their smaller size, the fact many don't have windows and the presence of pipes in the walls, bathrooms are considered to be the strongest above-ground room in most houses.

In areas such as a hurricane zone you need to consider that your house might be destroyed. This may also happen if rioters set it on fire. If you examine pictures of hurricane- and tornado-struck areas (or of burned-out homes) you'll notice the soil around it's usually still there- the building may be gone and the trees as well, but it's rare for the soil to be removed, except by flash floods. So, as far as food and water is concerned, if you have no basement or backup location then your second cache could be right there in your yard - if you keep a month's supply of food and water in the house, have a month's supply of food and water (purification) cached underground in the yard.

Dispersion of your supplies and equipment is extremely important- learn to cache. A sealed plastic 44-gal drum, carefully packed with sealed, airtight bags of dried rice and beans (and a few waterproofed bags of ammo, etc.) and buried in a known but secret location (or rather, several such barrels in multiple locations) enables retrieval even if marauding bandits forced a family or team member to reveal the location of one such cache under duress.

Food cached outdoors should be compact and long-lasting like canned goods or even portable foods like backpacking meals and MREs. If you aren't using sealed PVC pipe, or even if you are, protect cans from moisture by individually sealing each can in plastic - cans last <u>at least</u> 5 years if they're kept dry and are completely undamaged. Remember that caches have a dual purpose; not only will it be a backup to your home cache (in case it's destroyed or confiscated) but should also contain what you need to make it to your first bug-out cache should you need to abandon your home location.

Spare weapons also should be cached, preferably a primary cache of well-oiled/greased rifles tightly sealed in a plastic or Mylar bag, with a single full load-out of ammunition in a cheap set of webbing (a great use for ALICE gear or those cheap Chinese chest rigs, actually) each item separately vacuum-sealed into another, airtight Mylar bag and placed into a sealed 6- or 8-inch diameter plumbing pipe or other waterproof container and buried (preferably vertically, and at least a foot below the surface).

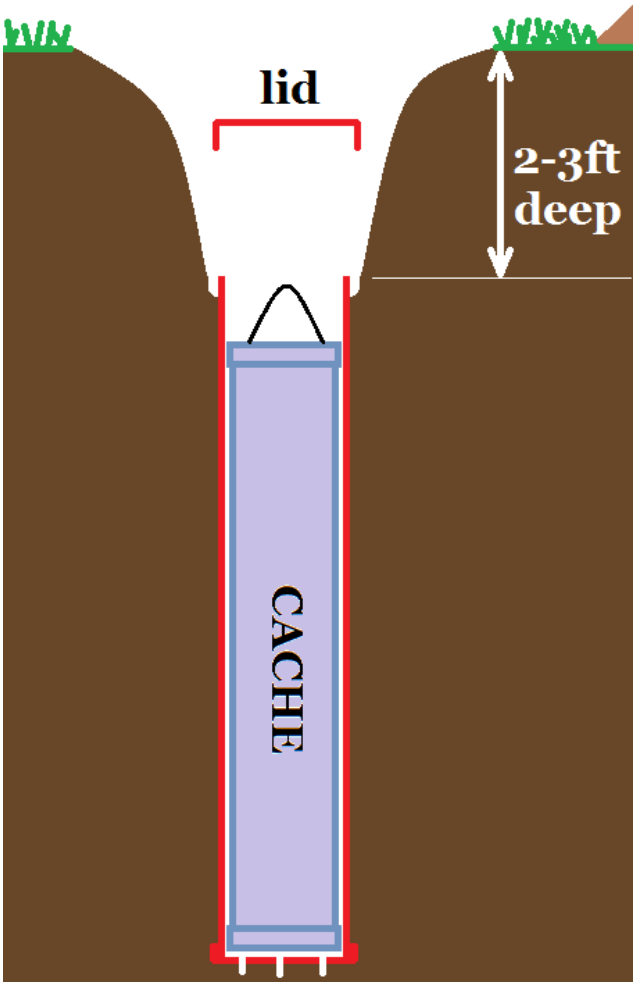
<u>Don't</u> remove scopes from weapons as they may be impossible to re-zero later. Avoid disassembling weapons if possible as some small parts may become lost in the process. Avoid getting grease in or on any optics or electronics - keep lens caps on and wrap scopes, lights, and lasers with plastic bags and tape before applying preservative grease to weapons. Always remove <u>all</u> batteries from items before caching, and store them separately in airtight plastic containers.

Ensure ammunition isn't exposed to grease or oil - these can penetrate cartridges over long periods of time and will make ammunition useless. Seal ammunition in airtight containers or "Ziploc" bags to reduce deterioration: a preferred method for ammo is to place 20-30 cartridges at a time into a Ziploc bag and then seal several such bags in a tight-fitting plastic container which is then waterproofed with a couple of wraps of duct tape around the edge of the lid before being placed in the cache. Don't vacuum seal ammunition or lighters, as this <u>will</u> cause leakage and deterioration.

The same process should be used using cosmoline (or at least, a thin layer of heavy marine grease) for secondary caches. If you manage to get out of Dodge with all your equipment during SHTF and don't need these weapons for yourself, they can be handed out to new members of your group as it grows in size. The reason I don't recommend using cosmoline for your primary weapon cache is because you might need the cached weapon(s) operational immediately after retrieval. Brownells, among others, makes something called rust-inhibitive grease (RIG), which I recommend. I strongly recommend attaching a brightly-colored warning note that clearly says something like: "*Warning: grease-coated bore, chamber and bolt face! Remove before firing*!"

A manual soil auger is the best way to dig a vertical hole for a cache tube - these are used to create the holes for fence posts and are sold in models from 6"- 12" in diameter (12" is the size you'll need). They have a turning handle on top generally made of 3/4" steel pipe, connected to a shaft of similar material. It may be necessary to lengthen the shaft, as the device will usually only dig down to a depth of about four feet, while you'll need a hole that is overall 6-7ft deep to fit the cache. Don't bury tube caches horizontally, as this presents too large a target for metal detectors. Ensure the cache's top is at least 2ft underground to prevent easy discovery.

When buried underground, a cache tube will be nearly impossible to remove as the soil settles in around it. For this reason be sure that the permanently sealed end of the tube is placed down into the hole, and the loose end facing up. This way you can access, remove or replace items in the cache without removing it from the ground. Alternatively, place your cache tube inside a larger tube to prevent the settling-in of the soil from "locking" the inner tube into place. See the diagram - notice how the removable blue inner tube is inside the larger, red tube. The blue tube has end caps permanently sealed into place to ensure it's waterproof, and the outer (red) tube has a lower cap fitted that is drilled with a few drainage holes and a top cap/lid that is loosely fitted. Be sure to throw a few spadefuls of gravel into the bottom of the hole before you install the outer pipe so the drain holes don't clog. When it's time to retrieve it, the top of the outer tube can be dug up, the inner tube withdrawn and taken, and the lid of the outer tube should be replaced and re-buried in case the location is needed again in future. If using a single tube rather than this dual-tube system, include the gravel, *do not* include the drainage holes.



If you intend to leave the cache undisturbed for over 5 years, I suggest you use 8in plumber's PVC piping for the inside pipe regardless of the contents, and permanently seal it at both ends - retrieval will require cutting the pipe open with a hacksaw, but the contents will remain dry. Use 10" or 12" pipe for the outer tube if you decide to cache your things in this manner.

Ideally once a cache has been buried, clean up the area, carry away any of the excess soil you dug up, and replace the grassy sod, then don't mess with it at all until retrieval, other than to visit the site maybe once a year to ensure it's not been dug up by others – do so as unobtrusively as possible so it looks like you're just hiking through the area, there's no need to stop and dig, just look at the burial location to see if the soil has slumped or been disturbed (which is what would happen if the pipe or container had been dug up by someone).

Regarding long-term storage of gasoline - DON'T. Deal with it the same way you deal with your food storage, and rotate it regularly, using the oldest stuff you stored first. You're incorporating your stored foods into your normal weekly meals, aren't you? Replacing items as you use them, so they're always fresh? Well, do the same thing with your stock of gasoline. When your vehicle's tank gets low, transfer a 5-gallon can of gasoline into the vehicle's tank, then refill the can with non-ethanol gasoline* at the same time you top off your tank. There's hand-pumps available to make it a lot easier to transfer the gasoline than picking up a 5-gallon can and pouring it (it's surprisingly hard to do without spilling at least some). Do this and your gasoline will always be fresh, and you can more easily buy fuel when it's a little cheaper. (* because ethanol "corn gas" gums up or goes stale in less than six months.)

By all means use something like Sta-Bil to keep the fuel usable for longer while it's stored, but don't leave your fuel stored for years at a time – again, rotate through your stored fuel. Be aware that some old (pre-1960) gas engines can sometimes be adapted to run off kerosene, but they still need to be started with gasoline, meaning a fuel switch and extra piping and tankage needs to be fitted. I mention kerosene because it has one of the longest stability profiles when stored properly, though resupply is likely to be quite difficult depending on how widespread and severe the collapse is. Finally, remember that diesel engines can be tuned to run off filtered light vegetable oil or biodiesel, which seems to make them far more practical for a post-collapse environment.

*30. **Security & Shelter***

Security is about defense, both individual and collective, and can be divided into the following concentric areas of interest: yourself, your family, and your group or tribe. I include a section on emergency planning as a separate component, as that straddles all these groups. Let's look at some steps you can take to safeguard each of those.

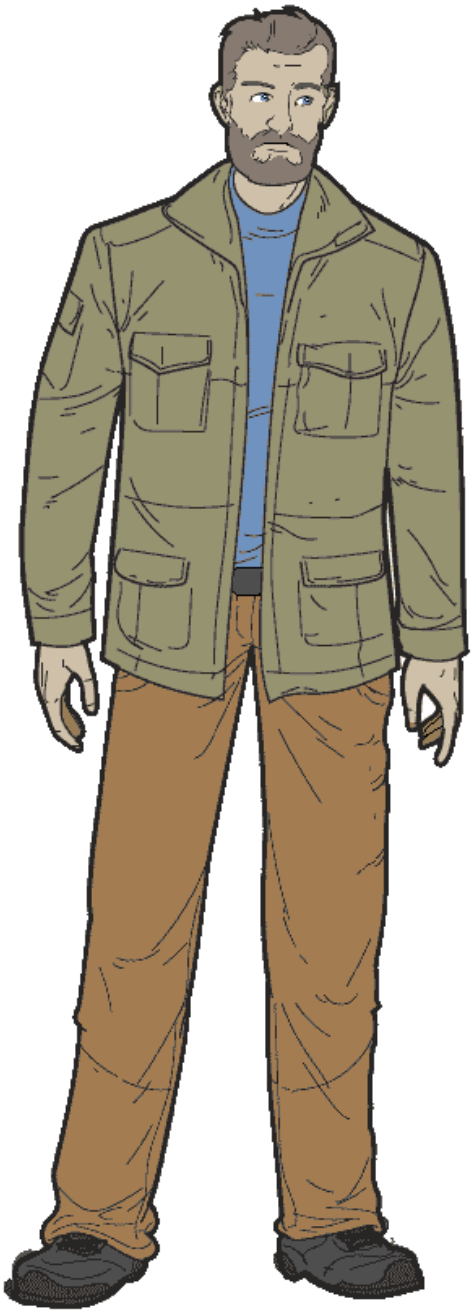
We are constantly taught by the priests and minions of ACWE that "*Violence is not the answer*" - it's drummed into us as the dogma of the modern age, a dogma so rigid one is punished for merely questioning it. But what life actually teaches us is that "*enough force, applied at the right place and time and in the right way - is the ONLY solution*". - How odd that we are forced to internalise propaganda that we instinctively understand is false.

Be different: give violence a chance.

ALWAYS REMEMBER THAT UNDERESTIMATING A POTENTIAL THREAT OR ENEMY WILL LEAD TO FAILURE OR DEATH FOR YOU, YOUR FAMILY, AND YOUR GROUP.

*31. **Security & Shelter – 1. Yourself:***

If you're realistic, you'll realize you can't do anything for your community until you're personally squared-away. Being personally squared-away means having the logistics (supplies), the training, and the ability (*like, ya know... the minimum daily PT regime suggested in this book*) so you can keep yourself and your family safe.



Once you're up to speed with those basics, ***then*** you can start being concerned for your community/group, but if you fail to sort yourself out, you'll be a useless drag to them just like you're a useless drag to your own family and a disappointment to your parents. Plenty of losers out there excuse their own failure to get sorted out with some lame excuse like "*oh, I just focus so much on my group, I don't worry about myself*" - **no**. This kind of person is just a fucking useless turd who expects to be babied along like the fat jerkoff they are.

Apart from a stash of relevant supplies, owning appropriate weaponry and having the training to use it, the most important things to mantain your personal security are an awareness of your surroundings and a defensive identity profile, including but not limited to what is known as the "gray man" concept - plenty of information is available on the matter online.

"*Gray-manning*" might be summarized as the sociological art of blending into the crowd and becoming forgettable by affecting a mask of dorky blue-collar harmlessness. It resembles the social doctrine of taqiya in Islam (basically, muslims present an outer air of conformity in non-islamic societies to allow them freedom of action, up to and including preparation for jihad against those societies). Such techniques are also used by undercover secret agents and military personnel who are attempting to evade capture, especially in POW situations, and it's known there under the non-indicative heading of "tradecraft". Consider that as I write this (Sept/Oct 2020) wearing a BLM shirt makes you a gray man in most US cities.

Start by **not** dressing to stand out - where possible dress in clothing that makes you blend into the crowd, or even that looks a little shabby - this will reduce criminals' view of you as a juicy target, and make you quite forgettable to anyone walking by. At most have one item of outer clothing that is immediately identifiable by pursuers and make sure it's something you're willing to throw into a bin if necessary to escape - for a visual example of this, in one of the Bourne spy movies, the main character is being chased while wearing a very distinctive sport jacket. Once he turns the corner on his pursuers, he quickly removes the jacket and dumps it in the trash, and throws on a baseball cap. He reverses direction, and walks calmly past the men chasing him as they continue to run in the original direction, looking for signs of a man in that distinctive jacket.

An extremely important point in implementing the concept is for you and anyone in your team is to avoid being a loud-mouthed braggart. Braggarts aren't well-liked and draw undue attention to themselves, easily ending up in fights they should never have been involved in. Don't talk yourself up, don't brag - be modest, a quiet professional. You've heard of the movie Fight Club, right? What's the first rule of fight club? **Exactly**. Don't copy the attention-whores that are the Navy Seals, instead copy Delta, I've yet to see a movie made based on any of their factual exploits.

The lower your profile, the more likely that you'll succeed if you've no options left but fighting, - this also applies to other levels, but especially personal security. Speaking of fights- avoid getting into them. Should you be attacked and forced to fight, the only rule is to win. Once you win, what happened is whatever you say happened. To ensure you win, don't get into fights in the first place.

If you **do** get into a fight, it's not going to look like a boxing match. Ever. You'll grapple for maybe a max of 30 seconds, then one or the other of you'll be fucked for lack of oxygen. Don't believe me? Look at MMA cage matches. You're not going to be fighting to protect your pride or your honor, you're fighting to win and so you and your family survive.

No matter how tough you think you're, if you're attacked your plan should be to, at most, shove them away long enough to get an arm free, draw a gun and shoot them until they stop moving. Then if they try getting up again, you should shoot them some more, until they stop permanently.

Turn up your perception - be aware of who and what is around you when out in public. **Do not** wear headphones when moving about in public, and when in cities use windows as mirrors to check what's behind you. Try to avoid setting patterns- doing the same thing the same way at the same time and place leaves you vulnerable to anyone who notices your pattern of behavior.

Don't engage in bizarre and dysfunctional behaviors, or display any outward physical appearance that will allow the minions of ACWE or the local regime to portray you or your group as dangerous nutcases. Avoid distinctive hairstyles or tattoos, avoid association with or membership in any group the media might paint as "radical" or "extreme", and avoid wearing clothing in public with symbolism that shows familiarity with weapons, warfare, or the "tactical" scene - for example, don't wear a magpul t-shirt when buying groceries. Never under any circumstances show any excessive display or emphasis on guns or weaponry. You don't hang a shovel or a pickax over your mantlepiece where anyone can see it, so why would you hang a tool like a rifle there?

Finally, remember that despite what's usually believed by conservatives, police ***aren't*** on your side, and ***don't*** sympathise with you. The best you'll ever get from them is armed neutrality - like when local Sheriffs announce they won't enforce gun bans. Consider that when car-burning riots raged in Sweden, police had a policy* of deliberately doing nothing about rioters while cracking down** decisively on those they deemed "vigilantes" who tried to stop immigrant rioters burning cars and neighborhoods. Adding insult to injury, they issued parking tickets on burned cars***. Indeed, one of the effects of the 2020 US riots is that many police in urban areas throughout the US are quitting their jobs due to politicians cutting wages and refusing to support police politically, only for those jobs to be handed over to leftist yes-men (possibly the whole reason for not supporting them). Police will never, ever, EVER fight for you - not until after it matters.
(***https://archive.is/EXHb0** ****https://archive.is/5bKwR** *****https://archive.is/CgX4R**)

Every Day Carry (EDC)

EDC is an acronym you'll run across regularly if you frequent any "prepper" social media websites (you should browse a few, to gain insights on preparing for a potential TEOTWAWKI). It stands for Every Day Carry, and refers to items you ideally want to have on you whenever you leave the house. By always having some basic items with you, you're less likely to be caught off-guard by any sudden emergency - items such as a folding knife or a multitool, a small ferrocerium fire-starter rod, some cordage, a phone, a light source, wallet with cash, and perhaps a handgun depending on the laws where you are, would be a good basic EDC. Remember that depending on where you live or work, you may not be allowed to have all these items with you every single day. For example, attorneys regularly visit courthouses; bringing even a tiny Swiss army knife along means never seeing it again.

The biggest advantage humans have is the use of tools. Therefore you should carry a folding knife or a multi-tool as part of your own EDC if possible. Nearly all multi-tools include a knife-blade, and though a multi-tool won't replace a toolbox, it's far easier to carry around. If you've never had one, you may be surprised at how often you end up using it. Regardless of which you decide to get and carry, don't cheap out - get a solid, good-quality one that will last and hold up to hard use. Look for reputable brands like SOG, Leatherman, Gerber and Victorinox - avoid cheap knock-offs. There's key-chain-sized models, but full-sized ones are more effective and much easier to use. The most-used tools are generally the knife blade, pliers, wire cutters, scissors, and screwdriver heads (flat and Phillips). I strongly recommend choosing one with a saw. Inevitably, someone will ask if they can borrow it. When asked why they don't carry their ***own*** knife or multi-tool, they inevitably answer something like "*I don't need one".* Your response to that should be: "*Then you don't need to borrow mine, either!*" - Be sure to have a good fixed-blade knife when going out to the field or woods as well as the smaller folding one.

CASH AND A CREDIT CARD – these are a necessary component of an urban EDC kit. Ideally, the credit card should be one with a zero balance and only reserved for actual emergencies. This is not the card you use to buy coffee, fuel, or groceries. You want as much of an available balance as you can manage repaying. While some disasters will end up negating the use of credit cards (e.g., major power outages cutting off computers, a Carrington event, possibly even some wars), always try to use the card first in genuine emergencies if you find yourself needing to make a purchase or secure a motel room for the night. This frees up your available cash. Carry at least enough cash money to cover a motel room and a meal or two. This amount will vary, of course, based upon where you live. In the upper Midwest, maybe two hundred dollars would be enough. In New York, that number might double. Stick with small bills, nothing higher than a twenty- it may be difficult for people to break larger bills. Obviously use the local currency is if you live elsewhere.

Note that this cash is for emergency personal use only - whatever you do, don't go and stockpile cash money in large quantities, unless it's gold or silver coins – not only will police seize it if they find it (on the convenient legal assumption that it's drug money), but all it takes is a vote in congress, and the pile of banknotes stacked in your little home safe "for a rainy day" is suddenly good for nothing but kindling - either because they vote to switch over to a fully digital currency (likely) or if the bottom drops out of the dollar at any point (extremely likely).

FLASHLIGHT – This one should go without saying. Buy a small one with an LED bulb and long battery life. Do some research before buying, and buy something reasonably cheap so you can get more than one.

NOTEBOOK - a small one is great for jotting down notes, such as where you parked or the license plate number of the car that ran you off the road. Keep a pencil with it. Pens run out of ink or can freeze up whereas pencils can be sharpened with your pocketknife if need be. Write down any important phone numbers inside the cover, in case you lose your phone or the battery dies.

FIRE TINDER AND IGNITION SOURCE - No kit's complete without the means to light a fire. Therefore, keep a lighter as well as a small stash of tinder with you. The tinder could be as simple as some dryer lint held in one of those keychain fobs normally used for medications. I like to use cotton balls dipped in melted paraffin. A small ferro-cerium rod is also a good thing to have.

PRESCRIPTION MEDICATION – if you need medication to remain alive and healthy, always carry enough of an emergency stash to spare to last you at least a day and preferably two, even if you cannot access your usual supply. Use one of the keychain fobs mentioned above to keep it in.

EMERGENCY WHISTLE - a great help if you need to signal for assistance. You can blow a whistle far longer than you can shout, and the sound carries much farther than a human voice. Get a two-tone pea-less storm whistle as sold to hikers for emergency use. Useful if you're trapped in a building due to fire or some other emergency.

SELF-DEFENSE WEAPON - this one is a judgment call and situation-dependent. Each person needs to decide for themself if they want to carry something for self-defense and, if so, what it should be. For many here in the United States, the weapon of choice is a handgun. If you agree, I urge you to seek out proper training. You should also carry enough spare ammo in your pack to fully refill your loadout at least once and preferably twice - a gun without bullets is useless to you. Other self-defense options include pepper spray, stun guns, Tasers, and extendable batons. Each has advantages and drawbacks, as well as legality issues depending where you live and work.

This sounds like lots of stuff but most will fit into your pockets without much bulk. You can also put several of the items, like the knife, whistle, and fobs, on your keychain depending on the size, which then goes into your pocket. This keeps everything together easily. Another option might be to purchase a small belt pouch to keep it all in, which is what I do when I'm not in an urban area.

EDC FOR CHILDREN - Even at a rather young age, children can carry at least a few things to use in case of an emergency. You're not likely going to give a four-year-old a pocketknife, but they can certainly carry a whistle in their pocket or on a string. That's a great place to start, in fact. Teach them to use the whistle if they ever get lost. Another good item for a young child is a small flashlight - choose one for them that's reasonably cheap but has a decent battery life. As they get older, add to their EDC gear as appropriate. While school rules will probably forbid the carrying of knives or multi-tools, they can certainly have a flashlight and a cell-phone. When you feel they're mature enough, let them carry a small folding knife or multi-tool when they aren't in school, taking care to teach them the proper use and maintenance of them.

In a post-SHTF situation, even kids too young to carry a weapon are useful as perimeter early-warning sentries; give them a radio while they take the dog/s to play and poke about your property, and teach them to calmly call in and report if they see any suspicious activity. You can see an example of this in the movie Black Hawk Down, where it's the local kids who warn the local militia that the US forces are arriving.

Other stuff to consider:

Your house keys should be separate to your car keys - carjackers often use auto registrations to find the owner's house and enter using the garage door opener and keys. No cars are known to have been car-jacked while moving- slow down well before stop lights, and actively scan your mirrors, all of them, as most carjackers attack from blind spots in rear. Keep car doors locked while driving in the city. Surveys of criminals indicate they're hesitant to rob when they're unsure of success- tinted windows help make them unsure of the number of people in a vehicle. If driving with family, let your wife drive when in towns, and use LIFO (Last In, First Out) to enhance security. Don't nose-in when parking, you should back in instead for a faster exit.

Keep your cards in a separate sleeve to your wallet. Or keep at least some of your cash in a wad. Throwing the wallet or wad of cash to a mugger may well distract them long enough to make a clean getaway or draw your weapon. Don't have ID that shows your residence in your wallet if you plan to throw it. Fences pay higher prices for stolen cards when the victim can't cancel them- that's why many victims are shot, and why criminal organizations are moving away from physical theft of credit card information, and instead skimming the numbers with card readers and such.

To protect your identity profile, you must start by protecting yourself from identity theft. Your social security number (or other country's ID number) belongs to no one but you. Don't use cheques with SS#'s, don't give it out to credit agencies, etc. Opt-out means you forbid the credit agencies from selling your information - be sure to do it in writing.

32. Opsec, Comsec, And Cybersec

There's not that much need to worry about some FBI/CIA/NSA/007 secret cyber-agent guy actually hacking into your computer(s), but there's a need to pay more attention to basic PERSEC - I see people voluntarily give out a ton of personally-identifiable information on public forums, and it doesn't take the efforts of a government or a megacorp to ID them online- just some patient basic research and common-sense is enough.

Never put any sensitive documents in the garbage- burn or shred any sensitive materials, notes, and personal financial records to keep them a secret. Paranoia is not retroactive – once something is out of your hands, you can't do anything about it, just like you can't hide your name or face later if you already posted it publicly somewhere.

Remember when some guy used Sarah Palin's Wikipedia info to answer the "personal" questions that allowed them to reset her email password? Thanks to Facebook and LinkedIn, the same kind of personal info is now out there for all the world to see. The term for this is "*cognitive hacking*", and those "*post your birth month and day to get your stripper name*" memes circulating on FB and elsewhere are just as effective. If you get asked to set up idiotically insecure security reset questions like "what's your mother's maiden name", the best thing to do is to input a random string of word salad like so: [**https://xkcd.com/936/**], with some numbers and non-alphanumeric characters (e.g. %, $, !, @) thrown in the mix as well. (Don't actually use the example in the link).

Such passwords or reset answers should be written down on paper (***never*** stored electronically) and kept physically secure somewhere - buy a small fireproof safe for such things, and put your passport, birth certificate, land deeds, and any other such valuable paperwork in there also, preferably have it all in a folder or pouch that you can simply grab and run with in an emergency.

Educate yourself and take steps to protect your online presence by:
1) Learn about IP addresses, cookies, history, etc. and what they do.
2) Surf via a VPN service that is not based in a "Five Eyes" country and does not log your data.
3) Choose a secure browser like TOR Browser (or better yet, TAILS) to route your activity.

Using the same browser with and without a VPN, destroys whatever privacy you gained from the VPN - for example, the idiots who log into Facebook on Google Chrome, then close that tab and switch on their VPN to log into an electronic Korean haberdashery club (4chan), are the worst. Not only does Chrome **constantly** send data to Google on your browsing habits, but FB cookies are used by multiple sites to track you as an individual online. If you use the same browser through a VPN, they now know that you're using a VPN, and can ID each of the access points you use. There are plenty of web browsers that don't cost you a cent, and that don't backdoor your personal data, so spend the 10 minutes or so to look into them and use them, and use separate browsers for your social browsing and for your private use with VPN. It's never too late to install a Linux OS, but avoid the Red Hat Linux distro because IBM now owns that one.

Anytime you use ***any*** website running *any* Google scripts, including YouTube, Google already knows who you are even if you aren't signed in, and even if you're on a VPN. Multiple unique factors identify you online, like as your monitor size, operating system, browser type & version, drivers used, and hardware. You're not browsing anonymously unless you know how to hide all that info, and incognito mode gives you no privacy from anyone other than the other people who access your computer (and remember: at work the SysAdmin can see everything you're doing online there).



If a VPN is based in one of the "Five Eyes" agreement nations, asks you to provide your real personal information, and doesn't allow payments via anonymous cryptocurrency like bitcoin, it's unlikely to actually care for your privacy. Using just a

VPN by itself does **not** guarantee full privacy. Make sure you use a browser plugin like NoScript to block trackers, and frequently clear out your cookies on a regular basis. Finally, when using a VPN, change the time zone setting on your computer to the time zone of the VPN exit node you're using.

Remember that anonymity is, at heart, a state of mind and series of behaviors. You could have all the fancy anonymity-enabling tech in the world but if you post a picture and, in the background, something like the readable barcode of a boarding pass is visible none of your anonymity precautions matter. Programs like TOR or TAILS* aren't magic wands that make intrusive surveillance vanish - they're specific tools giving specific benefits **if used correctly**.
(* https://tails.boum.org/home/index.en.html and https://yewtu.be/zXUcYMscIbE)

You give yourself things you only do with them, and things you only do outside them. You *never* do TOR things outside TOR, and you *never* do clear-net things in TOR. Mixing the two is how you lose anonymity. Remember also that elements of TOR were created by DARPA, meaning the US Government can very probably see everything that you decide to do on TOR if they so wish.
Don't use email for any private or sensitive matter that you don't want everyone to know about, it does not matter what email you use it can all be accessed by authorities at any time for any or no reason at all. Don't use Discord or any smartphone apps to communicate sensitive topics. In fact, just don't use Discord at all, and avoid smartphones like they're carrying the plague. Definitely avoid using Microsoft products whenever possible, and **do not** run your Steam games client in the background while using a VPN or looking up anything that could get you in trouble.

Old-fashioned paper mail is often the best for sending sensitive communications if face-to-face methods aren't available, *if* you can find a way to encrypt information into normal-seeming letters or documents. The history of encryption has a wealth of information on doing things like this, just remember that everything can be cracked eventually, and if anyone is aware that there's something to find, they will not stop looking, so the first concern is to give the impression that there's nothing to find in the first place.

Firefox by default reports your IP and all nearby wifi systems to Google even if you're not using google search nor any google services. Thunderbird reports your IP to Google. By knowing the nearby wifi systems, Google can locate you relative to nearby wifi points. From a multitude of browsers reporting in, it locates wifi systems relative to each other. When it does ground level photo drives for Google Earth, it locates wifi systems relative to streets and houses. Knowing the location of some wifi systems relative to streets and houses, it can locate all wifi systems relative to streets and houses. So when you launch a search for a sexual preference, or a politically incorrect fact, Google can tell what house you're in and even where you're sitting when you search for unapproved knowledge (**http://www.mozilla.com/en-US/firefox/geolocation/**). ...This information is kept by Google forever.

Mozilla piously proclaims: "*Your privacy is extremely important to us, and Firefox never shares your location without your permission."*

This is of course a lie. Firefox doesn't share your location to advertisers without your permission – but it continually sends your location to Google without any permission at all.

Google also tells us (http://www.google.com/transparencyreport/userdatarequests/):
"*Like other technology and communications companies, Google regularly receives requests from government agencies and courts around the world to hand over user data."*

Did you notice that? "*government agencies **and** courts*" - no warrants needed.

"*Google ... provides government agencies with e-mail communications, documents, browsing activity, IP addresses used to create an account and other data when asked."*

If your privacy was actually important to Google, the browser would only send this information to Google when advertisers requested it and you gave them permission, or to government agencies with a valid court warrant. Bear in mind that the "Five Eyes" agreement means that if a US government agency is refused a warrant to gather information on a US citizen, they will simply ask the equivalent snooping agency in Canada, Britain, etc. to spy on you for them instead.

To prevent Google snooping in your electronic business directly:

1) Don't use Google (well, duh…).
2) If forced to use Google, don't use Google accounts.
3) If you must use Google accounts, e.g. since a Google account is mandatory for an android phone, create it using a proxy located in a region different to yours, preferably one controlled by, or allied with, China or Russia, and don't use your android account for anything else.
4) Do *NOT* use Google search for anything related to politics or money, since this is sending your searches character-by-character to Google HQ.
5) Definitely do not use Google search while logged in to your Google account.
6) **Don't use Chrome**, because this reports all your browser activity to Google.
7) Disable all durable cookies for Google servers.
8) Regularly clear out cookies and scrub your cache, etc. after visiting anything that could get you on a list - BleachBit worked for Hillary, let it work for you. (See: **https://archive.is/c5g2I**)
9) Install a browser extension like *NoScript* to help block ads and trackers.

To turn off Mozilla's automated snooping on you on Google's behalf:
> Mozilla Firefox
Type 'about:config' in the address bar and click through the warning
Type 'geo.' in the search box - a list of items will appear
Set the '*geo.enabled*' item to read 'False'
Right-click on the *geo.wifi.url* item or the *geo.provider.network.url* item, select 'Modify'
Modify the item from *google* to '*http://localhost*'
Right-click on the *geo.timeout* item, change to '1'
Also change the following settings:
Search for and set the *pdfjs.disabled* item to read 'true'
Search for and set the *browser.urlbar.trimURLs* item to read 'false'
Search for and set the *browser.pocket.enabled* item to read 'false'
Search for and set the *dom.event.clipboardevents.enabled* item to read 'false'
Search for and set the *esni.disabled* item to read 'true'
Search for and set the *trr.mode* item to read 'true'
Finally, search for and set the *network.trr.mode* item to '2' to make **all** your DNS go over HTTPS.

> Mozilla Thunderbird
Select Tools/Options/Advanced/General/Config Editor, click through the warning
Type 'geo.' in the search box - a list of items will appear
Set the *geo.enabled* item to read 'False'

Buy an external drive to store your files: 2TB+ drives are pretty cheap these days, and you should have at least 2 to regularly backup anything on your PC or laptop - if your data isn't on hardware you control directly, it's not really your data. The same goes for cloud computing - everything you put in it can be browsed at leisure by the provider. Microsoft, in partnership with Google, have managed to re-invent the mainframe: the default settings in Windows 10 hosts your "My Documents" on OneDrive, whereas previous Windows OS's always locally hosted them. Win10 does store local copies of your data, but mirrors everything to OneDrive, meaning people are using cloud storage without even realizing it. The files stored in OneDrive are regularly scanned by an AI that looks for "sensitive data" – meaning anything with information that Microsoft can sell to others, and also anything that the US.gov pays them to keep an eye out for. Win10/11 even occasionally sends Windows screenshots of whatever you were doing at the time, btw.
It's never too late to switch to Linux.

Everything you send through gmail is scanned by the world's best and most powerful AI (or at least it was before they modified it to stop it noticing race and sex) and any good stuff is forwarded to your potential enemies. If you're a business using Google Analytics, Google leases out the use of your customer list to your competitors. It therefore seems likely that if you're a user browsing a political website that uses Google Analytics … well…

When you look at any webpage that links to Google Analytics, your browser executes it's script file, which is three thousand lines of code, that's eighteen kilobytes, exercising every security flaw and privacy bug in order to identify you and where you are, which it reports to Google: what you've been doing, that you went to *this* page, that you went to *this* page from *that* other page, how long you stayed there looking at it, and so on and so forth. Even if the page you're on doesn't link to Google Analytics, the next page you go to probably will, ratting you out and telling Google where you are and where you've been.

And even if you're the goodest good goy progressive that ever rioted for Antifa or BLM, consider that **18kb** of JavaScript code, executed over and over and over again, significantly slows your browser and entire computer right down. It's the reason that if you open Windows Task Manager while running an internet browser with multiple tabs open you may well see multiple instances of the same browser, or see excessive memory use for programs that are themselves pretty compact.

To stop this, you should set up your computer's ***hosts*** file to block any data being sent to or from your computer, for any domain you don't want spying on you.

To do that, find the *hosts* file in the following location on your windows PC:
For Windows XP Home, Vista, 7/8/10/11 etc... look in *C:\windows\system32\drivers\etc*

The file you're looking for is simply named "*hosts*" and should show no file extension. Open it with any program you use to edit .txt files – you may have to open the program in admin mode.
At the top of the file you'll see a bunch of comment lines that start with " # ". Ignore them.

After the comment lines, the first line should read:
127.0.0.1 localhost

If not, add it in, exactly as written, no other marks. This tells your browser or any other program on your operating system to block any data transmission to that site and redirects the transmission to your own computer. You shouldn't need to remove anything from the file so unless you know **EXACTLY** what you're doing don't fuck with anything other than what is described here.

Below all other lines in the file add the following. Adding these redirects any request for the listed domains back to your own computer, effectively blocking them from spying on you.

127.0.0.1 www.google-analytics.com
127.0.0.1 google-analytics.com
127.0.0.1 ssl.google-analytics.com
127.0.0.1 googlesyndication.com
127.0.0.1 tcp.googlesyndication.com
127.0.0.1 doubleclick.net
127.0.0.1 g.doubleclick.net
127.0.0.1 googleads.g.doubleclick.net
127.0.0.1 www.onclickmax.com
127.0.0.1 www.oneclickmax.com

IF you know what you're doing, this can also be used to block ads, but if you don't understand what you're doing, DO NOT FUCK AROUND or you risk breaking your computer.

You may also wish to read:
https://how-to.fandom.com/wiki/Guide_to_internet_privacy

Similarly, everything you upload to the cloud backup service your android phone keeps nagging you to use is a massive gaping pestilent security risk. I don't know for sure that the same is true for Apple and Microsoft's cloud services but it's almost certain, since Skype calls are scanned by speech-to-text algorithms, and if the AI thinks the text is "sus", the video and audio are forwarded to the NSA - all video-over-internet programs such as FaceTime, Zoom, etc. do this, the only difference is who gets the footage. This is in addition to Windows Media Player tattling to Microsoft about every audio and video recording you ever play on it.

Smartphones of all brands and makes are completely compromised. Based on the Snowden leaks, we know that all metadata, including location data, search history, media data, etc., is automatically fed by the phones to the telecom companies, and the intelligence agencies look through the databases your data are on, on a regular basis using AI. Your phone can even collect audio in real time, even when the phone is off - all via automatic scripts filtering and sorting communications based on key words, people associated with, country communicated with etc. etc.

Apple has repeatedly stated to the public that it wants to include software in their OS that looks through your images and content (for what, they won't say) and sends copies to Apple.

Companies like Apple and Google don't care one bit about you, and will fuck you every which way they can [**https://archive.is/qHkQF**] until they squeeze the final penny from your corpse. You think that sounds paranoid? Fuck you. Justify how it's ok for Microsoft to spy on your Skype calls [**https://archive.is/Q0V4r**]? How Google can gather information about where you've been, even when your phone is off [**https://archive.is/6Gg95**]? How about how Uber has secret passenger ratings that affect your service if you don't fit a certain profile [**https://archive.is/beWGv**]?

They can do all of this, whenever they feel like it, because no one but them can look inside their black-box programs and change the code. Companies keep their code private because they want power. They want to do whatever they want to in your computer without your knowledge, altering things on their terms, and restricting the rights of people who pay for and use their products. They don't need your permission, they don't want your input, they don't need a reason, and they'll lie their asses off if it meets their bottom line and pleases their overlords.

A black-box system is a data prison: your input goes in, its output comes out, and in-between you don't have a single fucking clue what happens. As a convenient example, if you run iTunes on your computer [**https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/ITunes#Criticism**] you have no way to verify what's actually happening in the program, because it's closed-source and thus nobody can verify the program's inner workings.

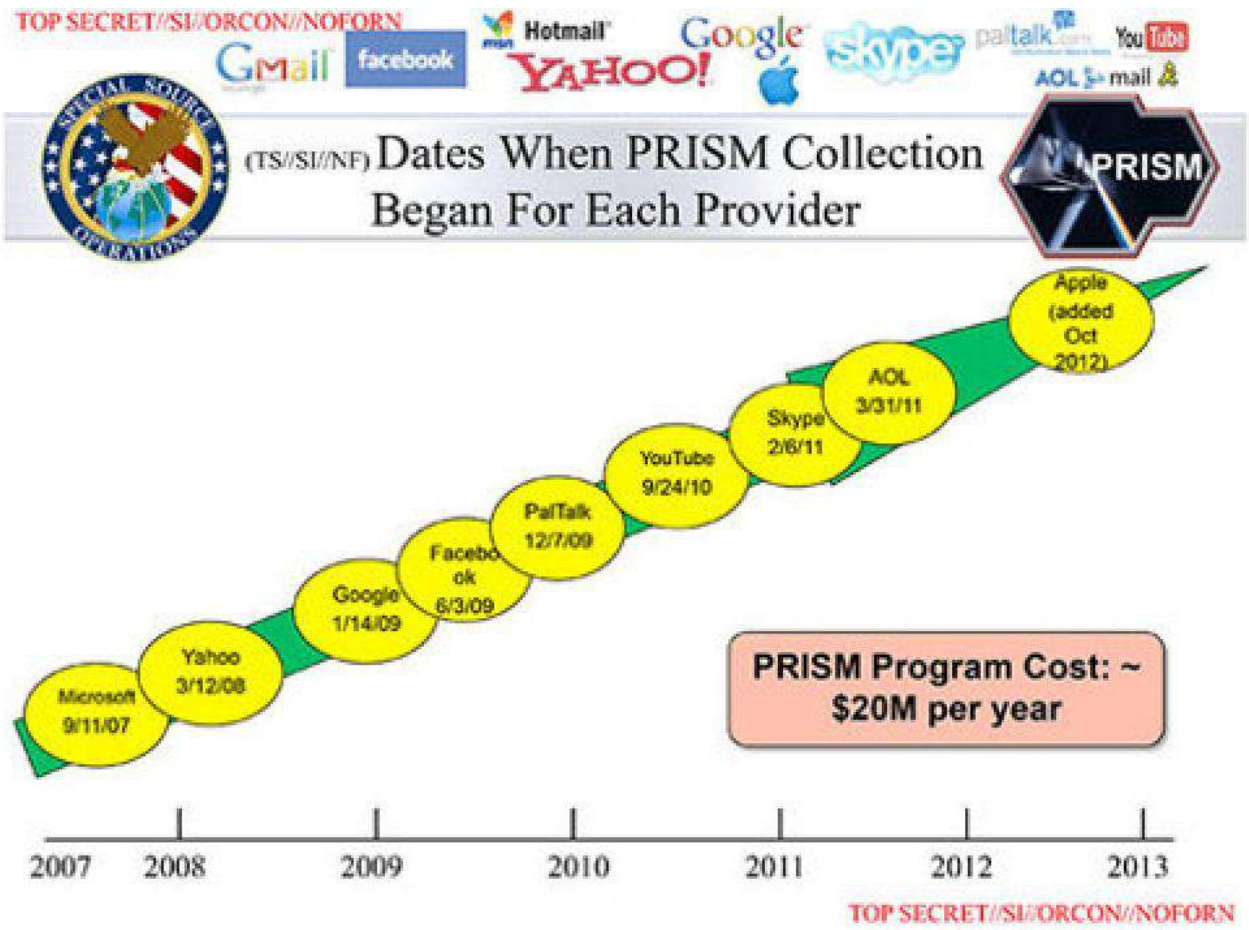
How would you know if iTunes is secure? How do you know it isn't sending your data to Apple, or the Government? How can you fix these problems if you can't read the program's source code?

The answer is: you can't. And; *Apple knew about iTunes' problems for three years*, letting the NSA snoop on users for three years [**https://archive.is/FhnDu**], including [**https://archive.is/sa4xC**] spying on other installed programs such as Skype (another black-box), user e-mail clients, and social media accounts. That whole refusing to help the FBI to unlock a suspect's iPhone thing, that Apple did a few years back? It was great PR work, but complete BS.

By using black-box programs, you trust all your personal information and data to whoever wants to manipulate and take advantage of it. It's like handing a bag of gold to a criminal, because he pinkie-promised he wouldn't steal it. Even the very best antiviruses aren't very effective at picking up malicious code embedded within programs. The only way to know a program is giving you what you asked for -*and nothing else*- is to have its source code disclosed and audited by the end-users. The solution is to remove proprietary software from your computer, and replace them with FLOSS - Free, Libre, Open Source Software.

Remember that that almost all printers imprint a unique code onto every document using a series of almost-invisible yellow dots: [**https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Machine_Identification_Code**]

Always assume that no matter what you say or do online or by phone, there's an illegally placed government agent looking over your shoulder and reading everything you write as if you were under the scrutiny of the Chinese Communist "Social Credit" system. And I'm sorry to say, there really ***is*** - the NSA's PRISM program does just that, automatically and globally, to build up an average "pattern of behavior" - if you as a citizen deviate too far from it, you're likely to get flagged as a potential subversive. This part does not involve a human being "in the loop".



They've actively monitored certain domestic groups that they were interested in, including Anonymous, OWS, Tea Party, etc., infiltrating their IRC groups, even identifying members IRL. They profit from this by selling all of the personal info they gain from everyone (read: literally everything and anything, including conversations you had when your phone was "off") to foreign countries (eg. Israel). However, as long as you don't "out" yourself as a potentially dangerous subversive, you'll be left alone, if only on the grounds of cost, read: **[https://archive.is/n72cG]**

DARPA is trying to develop artificial intelligence for the US intelligence spooks that can reportedly determine the authorship of anonymous writings [**https://archive.is/JkFcA**]. However, **don't panic** - first off, remember most new tech is marketed with a lot of hype that overstates what it can do. If this is ever going to be useful to them, it'll be in very narrow situations such as they *already* suspect person that A and person B are the same guy thanks to a similar writing style, and want to prove it in court by wowing a jury with some smooth bullshit talk about "AI verification".

Secondly, for a countermeasure here's what to do; don't write with your usual style. Got favorite metaphors, phrases, spellings? Don't use them. Deliberately use turns of phrase you normally wouldn't, eg. if you're anal-retentive about commas and semi-colons, deliberately misuse them when you need to mask your identity. You hate seeing "*different than*"? Say it when masking, etc… Basically just fuck up your grammar so their robot gets the big sad. There's no way they can sweep the whole Internet for everyone's texts and compare every person to every other person in any reasonable timeframe.

Yuri Bezmenov, the ex-KGB agent that escaped to America, said that the main purpose of propaganda and espionage is to DEMORALIZE a nation. This is how it's always been. There's far less need to have physical power when you can control information to make it seem that your power is limitless. Nobody will dare to rebel against this bullshit because they think since the government has surveillance they will get fucked. It may even be true - they can easily make an innocent person out to be a criminal - spooks plant CP on the computers of "inconvenient" people to silence and discredit them, just as happened to the Vegas shooter's brother when he wouldn't shut up about the inconsistencies in the official story. Look up some of the videos where Snowden talked about this, I'm sure it'll make sense to you. You're not really safe even if you're innocent.

Edward Snowden's heroic 2013 revelations cut both ways. The primary tool of control within ACWE's virtual panopticon is psychological, not informational: uncertainty and lack of privacy instils submissiveness. Citizens, never sure when they're being watched and what is being watched, begin to assume the rulers are always watching and know everything about them, even their innermost thoughts. In today's hi-tech goldfish bowl, they have archived copies of all e-mails since late 2001, and they have archived copies of everything you said or did on any social media from about the same time. They may not have actually had a human being read all your e-mails since that point, but it's been scanned word-for-word by the best AI that taxpayer money can buy - the same goes for every single internet search you ever did, all the freaky midget porn, everything, all of it. So the most important thing you can do is make your online presence look non-threatening to their system.

This has always been a key feature of secret police. They want their targets to think everyone and anyone could be a spy – without paranoia among the public, their existence does not protect the government. Since the ruling class sees every White person in the western world as a potential threat, the secret police are trying to make sure every White person knows or thinks they're being watched. What we are seeing today is public revelations of their spying effort to intimidate opponents. They really ***do*** believe that Trump was put in office by a secret conspiracy against them. This paranoia and fear are driving the explicit use of force by the rulers, one which reveals their hidden weaknesses. Don't underestimate them however, because they still have considerable strength.

For an example of how they operate once you're on their radar, German police use a program called '*Landestrojaner*' or '*Bundestrojaner*' to infiltrate the computers of 'suspects'. It's a trojan virus that is completely undetectable by commercial antivirus software, since any antivirus programs distributed in Germany are required - by law - to include a government backdoor. (The NSA has similar arrangements with manufacturers of software and hardware sold in the USA – including things like having manufacturers plant black-box code in BIOS, or designing hardware to be easier to hack.)

Anyway, their program doesn't just key-log everything, it also takes screenshots of your browser activity, and can be used to upload files onto your computer (aka, to plant incriminating evidence), it can even be used to remote-control your computer, to (let's say) access websites that will get you in deep legal trouble.

The German police used this software tool for 2 years before it was discovered. And it was only discovered because evidence started to show up in the court files of people who got convicted with the evidence being collected in a magical, unexplainable way. When a hacker organization combed through the hard drive of a convicted guy and discovered an unknown, undetectable, highly sophisticated trojan virus, the police and the politicians still tried to deny that they were involved in this. Eventually, the entire thing came out, but there's no sign that German police actually stopped using it, and their programmers are likely less well-funded than those the US has.

However, there **are** groups that are better-funded than the US government. Google has a thing they call "*Project Shield*" [**https://jigsaw.google.com/projects/#project-shield**] - a partially-AI-controlled platform that uses (mostly) metadata signatures in order to pre-emptively discover and silence "problematic" opinions as defined by Silicon Valley's sense of self-righteous moral supremacy. This especially targets any criticism, or potential criticism, of "protected classes" as established by the 1964 Civil Rights Act (blacks, women, etc).

You job from now on is to feign a slow reduction in interest in dissident material – stopping suddenly is likely to bring MORE attention on you, so it needs to be gradual instead. Spreading subversive thoughts online is dangerous if you don't completely understand what you're doing, so stick to doing it in meat-space, and take every possible precaution there too.

Always think twice about what you do online and if it's really worth exposing yourself – obey the law so you don't have the authorities breathing down your neck. Once you're on their radar, they will be out to get you and you'll be the first person they think of if someone else screws up. As the global situation worsens, the gloves will be off, and they will remember who the troublemakers were, and use them as examples to make the herd cower in fear – **don't let that example be you**.

Most importantly, in your interactions either online or IRL, don't LOOK or ACT like the kind of person they'd be looking for. If someone seems like they'd be a threat to someone who believes as you do, don't ACT as if they're a threat, whether they're a fed or some antifa stooge. They don't know jack shit about you, they're most likely simply trying to flush people out by their reaction - keep your friends close, and your enemies close enough to stab.

Pay attention to the symbols used by the system to 'prove' someone is a rebel dissident, and avoid displaying them (no nazi salutes or similar blatant idiocy if you're a wannabe fascist under a Bernie Sanders neo-Communist regime, for example). They will mostly be using easily-avoided processes to get their arrests; learn the processes and symbology that they utilize in their assessments and you'll most likely not get swept up and thrown into their gulags. It's the same as weed "possession laws"- it's really super easy to not get nabbed for using it, unless you're an idiot who does shit like wear pro-weed T-shirts and dreadlocks, so don't be the idiot. It's similar to the old "*if she floats, she's a witch*!" where it was always the dumb one who was seen doing things everyone in that era considered "witchy" who got accused and arrested - don't be "that guy".

Remember Ruby Ridge? The Feds tried to frame Randy Weaver with a BS weapons charge to turn him informer on some White nationalist types. When he refused, they shot his wife and kids. Apparently refusal is so rare that the FBI considered this to be a rational reaction. More often, they find someone who's already got a felony record and threaten to bust them back to jail unless they comply. The Feds put pressure on their agents to get results; agents put pressure on their informants to get results. So they don't just look for illegal acts, they prompt people to perform illegal acts, or sometimes they'll just ***say*** that illegal acts were being planned.

There's been reports recently (2022) of former Green Beret types leaving the military and being asked by feds to infiltrate "militia" groups (obviously, avoid having anything to do with such groups). There's only been reports of a couple such guys saying 'no', and the feds never act small so they would have asked dozens at least, which leaves a ***lot*** of ex-military SF types who didn't say 'no', despite being immune to the usual pressure methods because they have clean records.

Remember the WW2 poster: "loose lips sink ships"! Consider: If someone was going (for example) to commit an act of violence why the fuck would they announce it online, if doing so was not actually a COINTELPRO-style attempt to get the host website shut down? It should go without saying that if someone hypothetically intended to do something unlawful, they should never, ever, discuss it anywhere- just plan it out and do it, then keep your mouth shut about it. Ever wondered why online calls for violence are almost always mass shooting events targeting minorities or random citizens who aren't the cause of the problem? Mass shootings that, when carefully investigated, lead back to the FBI, CIA or related agencies almost every single time?

The rule of thumb for anything involving the internet: if a site or program isn't open source but doesn't charge you to use it, they're selling your usage data to advertising companies and/or to the government. (Eg. Google, Google Chrome, Facebook, Discord, etc). The most important point in securing your comms is that if you don't completely understand something, you should never use it for anything sensitive that could get you under suspicion or behind bars. This is the main reason using your phone should always be avoided - the app itself may be open-source and reputable, but the mystery soup of spyware OS it runs on ensures that you're still sending all your sensitive information, browsing behavior, and physical location directly to Google or Apple HQ at the end of the day.

Want to keep something secret? Don't take it online. That's just stupid. Need to remember something secret? Don't use a computer to write it down, use pen and paper.

For further useful information, Richard Stallman, a grassroots leftist promoter of open-source software, has a list of companies which violate your privacy and use unethical business practices on his webpage [**https://stallman.org/**], which may help you avoid some of the worst privacy violators out there.

Also have a read of these links:

https://anonymousplanet.org/guide.html
http://www.sovereignman.com/nsa-black-paper/

Finally, I once again remind you to **LEAVE YOUR PHONE AT HOME** whenever possible to frustrate any actionable behavioral-pattern metadata gathering.

33. Security & Shelter – 2. Your Family:

You must get your family (at least your spouse) on-board with your preparations. Nothing spells doom more clearly than a spouse who considers your preparation to be a stupid waste of money. Be sure to introduce them to the concept slowly over time, by asking questions along the lines of: "*I'm concerned by that rioting we saw on the TV, what do you think we could do to protect ourselves if it happened here?*" and suchlike. Once they're on-board, however tentatively, include them in planning - start off small, with items such as: "*what could we do if our house caught fire*" and progressing with things like "*what if there was widespread rioting in our city*". Discuss the likelihood of such events and take small, gradual steps to prevent harm if they occur.

34. Kids

If you have children, ALWAYS have at least three up-to-date 4in x 6in photos of your children in your bug-out kit, and if possible smaller copies in your wallet. Make sure you have physical photos in case your phone is lost or stolen or the battery is flat.

The first needs to be a full-face photo for identification, with hair away from the face and no smile. If possible, have them put on an "uncertain or scared" expression.

The second should be a full-body photo of them standing at a door next to a doorknob- describing the child as being 3'8" tells us very little, but we can instinctively understand their height when it's compared to a common house door-knob.

The third should be a cheerful family group photo of yourself and the other parent with the children, to prove you're actually related (due to present social biases, this is especially important if you're their father, sadly).

If you can, get half-tone (or grayscale) copies made of the photos - it's much easier to photocopy a hundred copies of these to hand out and put up around the area if a child goes missing. When going somewhere with your children, take a picture with your phone before leaving the house, of what they're wearing that day to make it easier to describe their appearance if they get lost.

Also for your kid's safety, consider printing out a small list of important phone numbers such as parents' home, work, and cell numbers, plus numbers for at least one or two other trusted adults. Laminate it and keep it in your child's backpack, or make smaller, credit-card-size versions, and get them to keep it in a pocket when you go out. Teach younger children to seek out a police officer (despite not being on your side, they're less likely to kidnap the child than a random person) or trusted teacher and to present that person with the card if they get lost. Do ***not*** teach them to trust random women as studies show that ~75% of all the perpetrators of human child trafficking are women-
[see: **https://archive.is/dhYU1** and **https://archive.is/VPBtK**].

35. Split Families

With roughly half of all marriages ending in divorce today, many children experience shared custody arrangements between the parents. This leads to some challenges regarding disaster planning, particularly if only one of the parents is on board. Uncomfortable though it may be, the parents need to have a conversation. Assuming you're the parent who is concerned about emergency planning, I encourage you to go easy and avoid any scare tactics - simply inform the other parent that you're putting together contingency plans for what to do if disaster should strike, such as a major power outage or some sort of weather event.

One of the most important things to decide is who will pick up the kids from school if an emergency strikes during the school day. When deciding where the children should go following a disaster, safety comes first and it may make sense for the children to go to the home of the "prepper parent" - or it might not, or the other parent may object violently to this idea, especially if the prepper is the father and the "main" carer is the mother. In an emergency don't break out the calendar and argue over who had the kids last weekend and who cancelled at the last minute two weeks ago - it may be necessary to make allowances in your plans to bring the other parent along to ensure the safety of the children, as much of a strain as that may be.

*36. **Your House***

Your home is your castle - if you can defend it. The most secure room in your house should be your bedroom. You're most vulnerable when sleeping so that makes sense, right? Make sure you have some sort of firearm where it can be gotten to reasonably quickly in your bedroom if anything goes bump in the night. If you have kids, get those pistol safes with the finger code entry, or something similar that doesn't need you to fumble with keys in the dark. We've all seen the stereotypical movie scene where the hero's love interest hides from the bad guys under a bed, only to be discovered and dragged out. Clearly, hiding under a bed while unarmed isn't going to provide much in the way of safety. Even if you're armed it's a dangerous location that provides little protection. But what if it could? The section on defense of a single building goes into some detail on how to harden your bedroom as a target and make it more secure against someone who has entered your home.

One cheap and simple home protection step if you're not renting, is to replace the existing weak and short door-hinge screws on the front door and master bedroom with long deck screws, and to replace the door of the master bedroom with one that has a solid core. If you're renting, then you must carefully judge if you can at least replace the screws without the landlord becoming upset. It's a great idea to add extra hinges to the front and master bedroom doors as well, and randomly space them to make ballistic or other forms of breaching more difficult.

Governments around the world are usually quite open about sharing what they want you to know about current events, disaster preparedness, and other matters - the FEMA, CDC, and ready.gov sites are full of educational and media material, for example- FEMA's Emergency Management Institute especially is a wonderful source of free, independent-study emergency training accessible to the public.

On the other hand, there's plenty of information governments worldwide at all levels ***don't*** want you knowing or thinking about. Censorship isn't dead, and government can and will withhold whatever they want from the public under the rationalization that sensitive sources and information must be protected: censorship is good for national security, and ignorance is bliss and prevents panic. The truth is much simpler: uncomfortable information is often politically dangerous, especially when it involves the government's embarrassing incompetence, waste, corruption, and procrastination.

Where to turn for comprehensive information? Unfortunately, the answer is internet and the media. The first is full of fanaticism, exaggeration, and censorship, the latter partisan bias, political spin, and sensationalism. Most people now get their information from the internet because it's easily available, with smartphones putting it at our fingertips 24/7. Research, offline networking, and effective bullshit filtering skills are now just as essential (if not more essential) to survival in any crisis as any 72-hour kit gathering dust in your bedroom cupboard.

Every household should definitely own at least one portable radio that can access shortwave frequencies. The biggest lesson to be learned today is how quickly and easily news media can be silenced whenever government sees fit. The great thing about foreign broadcasts, particularly from countries not on friendly terms with the USA (eg. Cuba's Radio Havana), is that their news about what happens in the US and other countries have a different slant than -and sometimes entirely contradicts- news broadcasts by US networks. Unfortunately, these foreign broadcasts are often surprisingly correct regarding events, because no one would listen to a news station that constantly lies (unless they're a fan of CNN, heh heh heh). Foreign broadcasters may delight in revealing details the US.gov would rather keep quiet - details that may be critical to your own well-being and survival. In the event of a major catastrophe, who seriously thinks the official line will be anything other than: "*Stay calm plebs, we have everything under control*"? A metal garbage or paint can with the sides and bottom lined with clean, dry cardboard will protect electronics like your shortwave radio from events like an EMP or CME.

Don't answer the door by opening it unless you have a locked heavy-duty safety screen door in place. Better yet, use an intercom, install a CCTV camera, or buy one of those door bells that make your phone ring (some even give you a video feed). Outside sensor lights at night make criminals avoid the area. Keep unbarred doors and windows closed and locked unless you're in the room, even in the day. It only takes an athletic person a minute to climb a fence to get to an upper floor window if they can't be seen from the road.

Screen your phone calls and listen to who is calling before picking up. Make sure your phone number is not only unlisted, but also unpublished because intruders have been known to use reverse directories and call before burglarizing (Alternatively, don't have a landline and rely on a cell-phone instead). Your message should not mention your full name, but should be something like, "*Hello it's John, I'm always here, but I'm probably working at my computer right now."*

Teach your kids to safely use a fire extinguisher to put out a fire - have a backyard fire sometime, cook some smores or marshmallows on it, and then teach your kid to operate a fire extinguisher. For the cost of a $30 extinguisher bottle including refill, you could teach your kid how save your whole family from a fiery, agonizing death.

For other items you should probably get to ensure you and your family's continued well-being, see the chapter on Selecting Personal Equipment. More information on home defense can be found in the section covering defense of a single building.

37. Miscellaneous

Even if your ID and documents are in a safe location, have copies made and certified and keep them in a separate secure location, and possibly have a third set stowed in your bugout bag - 99% of the world relies on proof and paperwork - whatever you have in your bugout or get-home bag, it's all for nothing if you get stopped at a checkpoint without ID and no-one there recognizes you as being one of the locals. Property deeds, insurance papers, car papers, drives license, passport, etc. - copy all your documents and make sure you have those copies!

Slowly build up a supply of cash for emergencies. Large withdrawals of cash from the bank can trigger (and transactions over $5000 will automatically trigger) a report to the government. New regulations signed into effect in mid-2021 by the Biden administration will force US banks to keep detailed records of **all** financial transactions and withdrawals, and pass these on to the IRS.

The best way to avoid being blackmailed or extorted and used by potential enemies is to avoid excessive debt, adultery, alcohol, drugs, and crime. If you have done something wrong, let your group know so that your group can hopefully assist you out of trouble, and outsiders cannot use the information against you.

If you own a vehicle, keep an emergency kit and a small get-home bag in the trunk, even if your normal commute is just a few miles. This saves you remembering to put one in there should you take a longer drive, and may allow you to assist someone else who is in trouble. Include jumper cables and a tow-strap, as well as a comfortable change of clothes, sturdy walking shoes, maps, a hat and some bottled water. Also keep a neon orange hi-vis vest or two in there- throwing one on over your normal clothes will paradoxically **reduce** your social visibility in urban areas, even if you generally wear a suit, but especially if you work a trade.

Either in your wallet or in your vehicle, keep a credit-card-sized laminated list of phone numbers for emergencies. Be sure to include your own number, your home or spouse, next-of-kin, and other such important details. How many of us memorize people's phone numbers anymore? I know that many people are too used to the convenience of just being able to search through their phone for someone's number - what if your phone is dead?

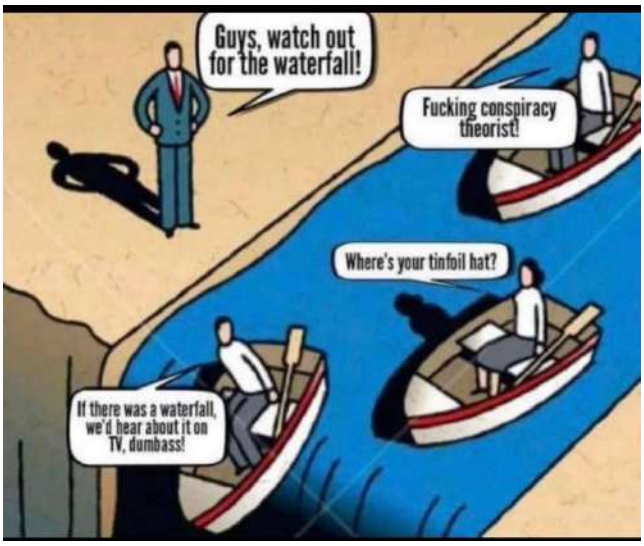
Physical fitness will help you to remain healthy despite stress and fatigue. See the "Fit to Fight" section for some basic but solid suggestions for individual physical training.

38. Security & Shelter – 3. Your Group/Tribe:

Consider that there's strength in numbers- better to have a dozen or so families bugging out (or in) together and working together to provide food and security post-SHTF than one family or worse, an individual, trying to stay alive with no help at all. I again recommend reading John Mosby's book "*Forging The Hero"* for guidelines on how to successfully turn your group of like-minded individuals into a tribe - appropriately to our needs, the subtitle reads: "*a tribal strategy for building resilient communities and surviving the decline of empire*".

Also, watch this for some ideas: **https://yewtu.be/X4egUXFCtiY**

There's no need to preach to outsiders that the world is going to shit. There's no need to argue, to convince them- if they haven't come to a similar observation themselves, you'd waste time trying to lead them to the logical conclusion of the present situation. Just scrape together a few people, reliable people, politically-attuned people, and concentrate on them and their families. If they aren't fit or skilled to begin with, so what? Fitness can be gained, skills can be learned. But you, you need to be the one to show them the way. You need to be the rock they can rely upon during the storm. You need to be the guy (or gal!) with the solutions, or to open the door and help them find the solutions, all without falling into the trap of being a tiny dictator.



People don't care, and never care about issues that don't directly concern them. If the propaganda machine portrays an US adversary as especially vile, or a crisis as being sufficiently severe, they may take a few minutes or an hour to say "yeah, we'll go along with that", but if you think they'll care enough to take to the streets unprompted, you're badly mistaken - think of the Vietnam war; if it hadn't had compulsory military service nobody would've protested it. That's the sad reality.

"*Why the big secret? People are smart, they can handle it*". - J
"A *person is smart. People are dumb, panicky, dangerous animals and you know it".* - K
- Men in Black

I'll be brutally blunt about this: do not assume that you'll be the person in charge of your tribal nucleus once it forms – there's likely another person more charismatic and capable than you are. This does not mean you throw a temper tantrum and act like a little bitch by taking your gear and going home when they become leader – it means you continue to support your tribe and help them with the stuff you actually know about.

One of the first things to be done once your team forms is to learn who's smart and who's not, learn the intrinsic motivation of the members, learn about their character - this can be done during the training on the basic stuff. Once you really know your people you can really work with them to exploit whatever time, budget, and hardware you have to the fullest.

We live in a rather unique point in social development. We're more globally connected than at any other point in history. Yet, at the same time, we are more disconnected on a personal level than ever before. On a daily basis, we might chat with a friend on another continent, yet we often don't know the names of the people who live right next door to us. It's important to get to know your neighbors, particularly in an urban or suburban setting.

You need not become best buddies with everyone in your building or block, but you should do what you can to at least learn their faces and names. If nothing else, this will help you notice when someone in the area is a stranger to the neighborhood. If the opportunity presents itself, encourage your neighbors to engage in some prepping themselves. I'm **not** suggesting you invite them over for a tour of your disaster supply closet, but every person who has his or her own extra supplies is one less person who is likely to knock on your door looking for a handout.

There's safety in numbers, of course. By networking with your neighbors and getting to know them, you can begin to recognize strengths they have which you may lack. For example, you may be fearful of firearms and hesitant about owning one, but your neighbor is a lifetime NRA member and has expressed numerous times his or her strong dislike of thieves. On top of that aspect, despite what the media likes to portray, many human beings do tend to try and help one another during a crisis. Not all, of course, but quite a few will do whatever they can to help their fellow man or woman. This is helped dramatically if the people actually know one another.

You could also go a step further and look toward setting up a Mutual Assistance Group (MAG). This is a group of people who have committed to working together in the event of a disaster or other emergency. A MAG is not something that is formed overnight, but takes time and effort to create and mantain. An excellent resource for creating a MAG is "*MAGS: The People Part of Prepping by Charley Hogwood*". Another good resource for organisations of this type is Michael Mabee's book "*Prepping for a Suburban or Rural Community*". Not all members of your MAG will necessarily live in your building or even on your block. But hopefully, most if not all of them will reside close enough that you can rely on them for help, just as they will rely upon you.

In the book "*Emergency: This Book Will Save Your Life*", the author becomes a hard-core prepper – but by the end of the book he's contributing his new-found expertise as a paramedic to his local CERT (Community Emergency Response Team). In the book, the fire chief who taught the CERT course emphasizes that in a large-scale emergency, help doesn't start flowing until it's all coordinated, which means it might not come for 5 days to a week.

Even if you yourself are too old or too broken to be a dick-swingin' gunslinger kicking in the doors of your tribal enemies, this does not mean you don't do PT or have a gun handy. You still actively support the younger, fitter folks by "earning your keep" - contributing your efforts to the health, security, and well-being of the tribe. Your specific contribution to the tribe will naturally depend on your socio-economic status, role, and occupation, both before and after SHTF.

For example, after SHTF a bartender's eavesdropping may provide crucial information that ends up enabling your military forces to efficiently defend your town. Or perhaps they may be able to drop a few "roofies" in the drinks of enemy personnel on R&R, enabling their capture and interrogation. Maybe you're a farmer who can sow an extra acre of crop to set aside to help feed the tribe now, or to sell on the local black or gray market later to finance your tribal operations. You could be the local gun dealer or pawn-shop owner who buys a couple of guns from a private seller and "forgets" to record them so they can be sold to members of your tribe without a paper trail (after SHTF, naturally). Perhaps you're a factory-owner who can provide some space in a warehouse to use as a way-station on an evasion corridor, or for use as a militia hospital. Are you a machinist or a gunsmith, that could manufacture firearms, suppressors, or other necessary items, should the need arise after SHTF? Or are you the manager or employee of a grocery store that can put aside some foods that are still edible, but have damaged packaging that prevents them from being sold to the public? Are you just someone that has a spare outbuilding or basement that can be used by the tribe to warehouse goods for later? Maybe one of you has a relative with connections to the criminal underclass, that can provide smuggling services for a fee if it becomes necessary someday. Are you a doctor or nurse? An EMT or a paramedic? A veterinarian? CNA? Maybe you can buy an extra ammo case a month now and set it aside for later on, or you can afford to purchase an extra roll or two of bandage each time you go to the grocery store, and set it aside? Can you take an EMT course? Can you afford to chip in so that *someone else* in the tribe takes an EMT course? Even a CNA certification course? Doctors and nurses can get a little busy at times, and they will need help caring for wounded and injured tribesmen, and even "just" a CNA can have a useful role to play. To paraphrase Mao Tse-Tung, you're the sea that the tribal fish swims in - everyone can (and should) contribute ***something*** to the tribe's survival.

Regardless of the specific role someone plays in the tribe's efforts, it's critical to understand that success depends on such contributions remaining secret - secrets must not just be kept from rival organizations, but even from apparently friendly or supportive neighbors who aren't part of the tribal core. Even other members of the tribe, outside the leadership, may not know exactly what a given individual does for the tribe. Keeping such information compartmentalized, even within the tribal core, reduces the odds that someone reveals it to someone who does not "need to know."

REMEMBER: Avoid felons. Don’t plan or talk about violence or any illegal actions (because you have no intention of ever being involved in such things, ever, right? right?). Do not associate with anyone who does. Don’t associate with anyone who you know did so in the past. Once again (and I know you're hating that I keep saying this) ditch the phone at home, and keep everything important strictly offline.

39. Emergency Planning Is A Team Effort

For both your family and your group, you should get together and generate a small selection of plans to guide you in case of emergencies. Your emergency plans should be uniquely tailored to meet your needs, whether you're an individual, have a family, or are part of a multi-family group. However, regardless of your numbers, there are a few general principles common to all plans.

Everyone involved in or affected by the plan should ideally be part of its creation - Mom, Dad, the kids, even your uncle or grandparents, if they live with you. Sure, your four-year-old probably isn't going to help much in the planning process, but older children should definitely be a part of the conversation. Perhaps it's because of the popularity of zombie movies and post-apocalyptic/disaster movies, but many teenagers today will have given at least a little thought as to what they'd do in a disaster, and will contribute some great ideas to the plan.

Not every single step of each of your emergency plans needs to be meticulously written out in detail, but you should at least have an outline for each scenario, hitting the main points for members of your family or group to refer to, and so that everyone knows what the main intent is.

Avoid including information that could pose a security risk if an outsider finds a copy of the plan - this includes things like the addresses of your bug-out location(s) or where someone would find your firearms or other valuables. Consider utilizing some sort of code-names for your bug-out locations (BOL), eg. you could refer to them as London, Paris, Berlin, and so on. Naturally this implies everyone is absolutely crystal clear on which codename refers to what location.

40. Communication Is Key

Planning for communication is a key element of any disaster plan. While we live in a day and age where we routinely chat with people all across the globe using handheld devices, it's important to realize the use of those devices hinges upon their ability to function properly. If any element of the equation is taken away, such as power for the device, the transmission signal reaching the satellite, or the signal reaching the other device, the system falls apart. Plan ahead for backup means of communication. For starters, each family member should carry a wallet card or some other list of important phone numbers. If your cell phone runs out of juice, you won't be able to access the contacts list. Should you need to call a family member, knowing they're number six on your speed-dial isn't going to be of much help.

41. Timed Check-Ins

It's also wise, as part of your written disaster plans, to set up a specific time interval for calls home or to other family members. What this does is help prevent unnecessary worry on the part of folks at home as they anxiously wonder when you'll be calling. If the plan says you'll call every hour, or every half hour, they know when to expect the phone to ring. They can spend the time in between listening to news broadcasts or otherwise trying to gather information to help those family members who are away from home. This sort of arrangement is also good for preserving the battery in the cell phone. You can turn the phone off when not in use, confident that family members know you won't be calling for another hour.

As has been found time and again during and immediately following disasters, cell phone towers quickly become overwhelmed. While you might see full bars of signal strength on your phone, there may be so many people trying to make calls at the same time that few of the calls actually get through. Worth noting is the fact that text messages will often still get through during those times, as they're routed through a different system. If you can't get a voice call to go through, try texting. This is something to keep in mind when it comes to communicating with children who may be stranded at school. While school rules often forbid the use of cell phones during class time, in an emergency I doubt many teachers are going to be handing out detentions to the kids who are trying to get in touch with parents.

42. Communication Tree.

A communication tree is also advisable - in very simple terms, assign a person to be the start of the tree and they call two or three people on the list. Each of those people call two or three people, and so on down the line. This is quite an old system and works very well for spreading information quickly, even if you're limited to face-to-face conversation or the written word: Paul Revere's ride anyone? However you set your communication system up, everyone involved with your plans needs to be on the same page with regards to communications. Who contacts whom and how will the contact happen?

43. Get Safely To Safety, Together

One especially crucial planning aspect for guys like you is to select gather-up locations or waypoints (in military parlance, a form-up point or FUP) with team members and your families once SHTF or disaster hits. Perhaps the team could rendezvous at the home of one of the members, which could then be used as a base of operations.

It sounds easy, but the process and procedures need to be finalized, shared, learned, and, yes, **practiced** occasionally by all parties. Communication is critical when preparing to survive any type of disaster event.

Consider Rick Rescorla - he was the security chief for the firm of Morgan Stanley in the Twin Towers during the terrorist attacks on 9/11. For years prior to the attacks, Rescorla insisted on conducting regular evacuation drills for employees, despite the management disliking the drills because they disrupted the workday. When the attacks occurred, nearly 3000 Morgan Stanley employees began evacuating in an orderly fashion. Rick's insistence on practicing evacuation procedures saved all but thirteen employees from a horrible death.

Part of the considerations for FUPs is understanding that there's different types, the main difference being distance from your primary residence. However, other situations may also factor in- e.g. adults at different work sites during the day, children at one or more schools, and even kids away from home at college or their own workplaces.

These alternative situations must be planned for so everyone concerned rallies to the same FUP when it becomes necessary. Plans must be made for who and how communicates to the others that the plan is being activated. As with most disaster reactions, nothing is easy, and many a spanner ends up jammed in the works, hence the need for practice runs.

Here are three basic “alternative situations” you might want to consider planning for:
> you're at home.
> you're driving through, or at work in, your town.
> you're driving on the interstate or in a remote area during a business trip or holiday.

Firstly you must identify an FUP relatively close to home. A number of events could cause you to evacuate, but the level of seriousness dictates how far to travel to meet up. If your people can't meet at a designated primary residence to bug in or lock down temporarily, then the first FUP needs to be relatively close to home. This could be a corner grocery store, gas station, or convenience store. The plan must detail how everyone gets there and each person's role.

The next location is further away, such as a place at the edge of your town or city you can get to while avoiding high-congestion roads. Consider sites like shopping malls, a business park, area police station, or other well-known locations. Finally you must map distant gathering points up to 100 miles or so from your residence(s), for severe incidents like a hurricane with time to evacuate to a safer zone. Each FUP needs an “open” date/time reference and a “closed” date/time reference. E.g. FUP1 is open from 15 minutes after the first warning of a SHTF event until 24 hours after the first warning. If someone misses that time window, they must proceed to FUP 2.

Again, think this through. Pick safe spots. Know what you need to take. Calculate travel times for both best- and worst-case scenarios. Work out how to communicate the plan. Provide maps, addresses, contact numbers, text numbers, and supply lists. At some point practice a gather up scenario to see what works or fails. Make sure you can do it without relying on GPS.

Should your team have selected to “bug-in” before SHTF in an urban location, your team must be big enough to mantain a 24/7 watch over your perimeter, meaning it should number at least 10 adults, and this minimum number assumes you have access to say, solar-powered CCTV cameras with video feed to a central location, and you've prepared your base to minimize access points.

Of course, as with everything, there’s a downside: problem is, one person can watch four CCTV monitors for about 12 minutes, and then their attention will start to wander. If they're trying to multitask (eg they're cooking dinner at the same time) you'll be wide open to anyone approaching (and dinner will be a burnt mess). By adding movement sensors that silently draw attention when someone or something moves around on the approaches to your safe zone, then the efficiency of your CCTV lookout is massively increased.

In any case, every mature person (note: not “*adult*"- better a sensible teenager than a childish 40yo). should go armed at all times to respond at a moment's notice if someone attempts to infiltrate your retreat, which needs to be as low-profile as possible. Infiltration in all cases should be met with overwhelming lethal force if the rule of law has broken down, so that surviving attackers cannot return with more people whom they've enticed to help attack you with tales of your vast food supplies, etc.

Most importantly, remember that technological aids like intrusion-detection systems, CCTV, communications equipment and night vision are insufficient - they definitely are force multipliers, but you will still need to have actual underlying ***force*** to act against the hostile elements.

Above all, connect with other like-minded individuals and prepare yourselves - start small and be a founder. Take the initiative to take back your sovereignty.

*** Additional Prepper info Here, maybe? [a page max.]

44. Specific Hazards For Urban Dwellers

Cities present serious risks during a crisis. The most serious are:

1. collapse of social order (riots),

2. failure of the water treatment and delivery systems,

3. depletion of food supplies, and

4. power grid failure.

While not every situation will appear in every city, every situation will be found in cities.

45. 1. Surviving A Collapse Of Social Order

Mental Preparation

Surviving large-scale rioting requires serious preparation. Realizing civil unrest can happen without warning is the beginning of mental readiness. For example, rioting in major cities can be triggered by celebration (drunk sport fans setting fire to police cars) and by outrage (police shooting a criminal black). The participants in Europe's soccer riots are mostly young male fans who go to the game intending to drink and fight. Regardless of the cause, your response is the same: escape the rioters and keep your family safe. Prevention beats reaction so staying off city streets after the World Series or the Super Bowl is smart.

Physical Preparation

The following tactics assume that you're fit enough to run - part of surviving any situation is staying in good physical condition. Physical preparation begins with always wearing shoes or boots that you can run in. For women this means wearing flat- or low-heeled shoes with straps (lace-ups are best) or carrying a set of lightweight running shoes at all times – a set of cheap canvas sand shoes can pack small enough to fit in any larger purse. Regardless of footwear, you must be fit enough to run far and fast enough to elude the swiftest person in a mob. The race won't be very long because as the mob thins, participants lose their nerve.

Wearing a small backpack or fanny-pack is better and safer than carrying shopping bags or a purse, as it's easier to run, maneuver, and defend your family with free hands. If you have small children with you, have them grab your belt with both hands and hold on. You should be able to drag them to safety if you do not have to stop for them or pick them up. Their best chance for survival is if you stay upright and balanced. Practice this technique at home. Make it fun but make sure the children understand that they must hold on, no matter what.

If the mob is far away enough, climb on top of a tractor-trailer or similar large vehicle and lie flat on the roof. While rioters will smash up the windows of the truck cab, they won't be able to see you, and your only danger then is if they burn the truck. In the worst-case scenario, preparation includes being able to defend yourself and your family against armed or unarmed assailants. Apply for a concealed-carry permit, pay for good training, and carry a handgun. If you can't or won't, take self-defense training or a hard-style martial arts course like Tae Kwon Do, and in your car keep a length of metal pipe, or a baseball bat, ball and glove (the ball and glove create a reasonable excuse for the bat being there if the law decides to make an example of you).

If legal where you live, buy a large (13 oz+) can of bear- or pepper-spray - small (keychain) cans don't contain enough spray to stop and deter assailants. Spray the closest person in the face and sprint away from the mob. When the first few you sprayed double up and begin coughing and moaning, the rest will likely rethink the situation; if not, turn, stop, and repeat; then sprint away again. In most urban riots, a large can of bear spray is more useful and also more use-able than a gun. If such sprays are illegal, investigate other spray products that have a similar effect but won't cause permanent injury. Hairspray or bug spray can be used if nothing else is available, but **don't** stick around for police to find and arrest you. Wearing a surgical or dust mask helps protect your anonymity if you're forced to do what needs doing to get away, and prevents police from arresting you for the crime of daring to not let an angry mob rape and/or kill you.

Flash Mobs
An urban flash mob is impossible to predict and difficult to avoid unless you're part of the specific social media network they're planned on. If you're shopping away from a store exit when a flash mob or flash rob (intent on crime) enters, you have little choice but to stay where you're and avoid eye contact with participants. Most flash mobs form quickly and disperse quickly, so remain calm and vigilant and be ready to defend yourself. If you're near an exit when a flash mob enters, calmly proceed to the exit and leave – don't record the event or attempt to make calls while in the area. Most flash robbers simply want to get away quickly with whatever they stole.

Stampedes - Spontaneous and Deadly
Fleeing a burning building, nightclub, or stadium riot is difficult to prepare for because of the sudden panic. In November 2010, over 350 people died in a stampede on Cambodian bridge. YouTube video of the aftermath shows people jammed so tightly that they couldn't move. Compressing or confining people increases panic. In February of 2003, the Chicago E2 nightclub stampede killed 21 people. In February 2003, a nightclub firework accident in Asbury Park, New Jersey, killed ninety-five people because the doors were locked, causing crushing deaths by panicking people. In December 2009, a nightclub firework accident in Perm, Russia, killed 139 people. My advice is: avoid crowds, especially where exits are few or may be blocked. Note the location and number of exits whenever you're entering a public place.

Mantain Situational Awareness
Is there a fire escape ladder low enough to jump to and escape? In any case avoid liquor stores or retail stores with jewelry or televisions in the window; they'll be the first to be looted. If you see military troops arriving assume that marshal law has been imposed. If you see riot police, don't assume they can or will help in any way – treat them as just another violent hostile gang. Can riots or insurrection happen again? Ask people with firsthand experience: Those in Ireland, London, Spain, the former Yugoslavia, or Greece. Ask those in Lebanon, Iran, Egypt, Yemen, Libya, or Syria. Ask those who lived through the Democrat Party-incited and -supported US riots of 2020.

Something to consider - H. John Poole mentions in his book "*Militant Tricks: Battlefield Ruses of the Islamic Insurgent*", that Iraqi Sunni insurgents would target Sunni civilians in order to gain the support and sympathy of the occupying US political and military forces. They did so by presenting a narrative of the attack that falsely indicated it been performed by Shia insurgent groups hostile to them. This sort of cynical false-flag incident is something you may need to guard against when dealing with other groups after a SHTF event, especially in urban areas.

In most urban disasters there's a mass exodus of the unprepared. Once this begins, highways may be jammed up at critical locations, causing gridlock for the trucking industry. If we're lucky, some trucks will continue to roll. If not, then assume that nothing gets through.

Use Your Head – Less Running, More Cunning
If facing an armed military, police, or paramilitary roadblock, try to remain calm. Cooperate with them but act confidently, respectfully, and with reserved friendliness. Much better to act as though you're traveling to complete important but friendly business rather than letting on that you're fleeing and in panic mode. If you can convince them that they no reason to detain you, you'll be allowed to pass through. If that ultimately means bribing them with money without implying that the bribe is immoral or unethical, so be it. If they're corrupt but not violently criminal, they'll take your money and let you through. In nearly every case where you find yourself facing the gun-muzzles of police or military personnel, the gunman will either be more scared than you, or a fearless bully with a grudge or agenda. In the first situation It's best to calm the gunman's fears and project sympathy with the job he has to do. In the second, what the gunman is looking for is respect. Neither will sympathize with a wailing tearful idiot pleading for their life. Best give them what they need or want, and mantain composure so you can get through and get out.

Tactics for the elderly, injured, or disabled can be as effective as escaping on foot. For example, if you see a mob running toward you from a block away, consider climbing into a commercial or industrial trash container and covering yourself with the contents. Another tactic if you have the time is to carry a White cane and pair of dark glasses. When you see trouble coming put the glasses on and walk slowly away from the mob - blind folks don't run - while sweeping the cane smoothly from side to side. If traffic is moving near you consider asking drivers for a ride – perhaps you can wave some cash to entice drivers, especially outside the US, but always be careful in case you move from the frying-pan into the fire and end up robbed, murdered or raped.

Those with sufficient upper-body strength could consider opening a manhole cover to hide in or escape. Make a manhole-cover tool by winding a few feet of tough wire into eight-inch lengths to connect the center of two four-inch-long bolts or screws to form an I-shape. Select wire and bolts with care because they must be both strong enough to hold a manhole cover's weight and small enough to slip through a hole in the cover. Carry the tool with you when in a city. To use it, push one bolt through a hole in the cover and use the other bolt as a handle to remove the cover. This little tool is worth remembering how to make. In the example image, screws were used because if the loop is tight, they won't slip out when tilted sideways to put in the access hole.



46. 2. Failure Of Water Treatment And Delivery Systems

Water is *the* key resource for preparedness planning - plentiful fresh water is the most critical resource for all societies; for drinking, cooking, washing, and gardening. You can improvise replacements for a lot of things, but you can't improvise water. Active adults need to drink a minimum of at least 60oz/2L of water or equivalent fluid hydration per day, and even more in extreme conditions. Dehydration can easily kill someone in just three days, and can cause severe functional difficulties in a single day, especially if it's hot. In a major disaster you can expect to lose your normal water sources due to power failure to the pumps, infrastructure collapse, structural damage, and contamination. Even with extreme conservation measures you'll need at least one gallon (~5L) of water per day. That one gallon provides just enough water for one adult to drink and cook, and none for washing.

Nearly all people in First World countries are dependent on grid power to supply their water. That critical one-gallon-per-day mentioned just above won't be coming out of the tap for long if the power is out: should the grid go down for more than a few days, water towers will quickly be drained and huge numbers of people will be forced to draw water from open sources. Thankfully, there are streams, rivers, lakes, and ponds within walking distance of most homes, even those in cities. Rainwater from roof downspouts can also be used, but for many, especially people in areas with only seasonal precipitation, the logistics of hauling home enough water will be a massive challenge. Even rural people with wells will face difficulties if there's no power to get it out of the well and into their homes.

Adequate stored water is a way to stay ahead of the game. If you think there's any chance your water sources will be cut off, fill the bathtub and as many clean containers as possible and then shut off the main supply to protect the water that remains in the house. Running out of water means you'll be forced to go out and look for it, putting yourself at risk. Even if you find water, once you've harvested it, to avoid disease you'll need to *treat* that water with chlorine, iodine, or a top-quality water filter such as a Katadyn Pocket. Most people don't own a water filter – sure, boiling it's an option, but only if you have natural-gas, propane, or wood cooking stoves, since electric ranges don't work without grid power. A slow sand filter is a simple, cheap and effective way to purify quite large amounts of water of questionable purity- I see no need to describe how to build one here as it can easily be learned with a quick internet search and is rather straightforward.

Expect the stupid and unprepared to become violent if they run out of water.

47. 3. Depletion Of Food Supplies

A shortage of food ultimately results in the same behavior as a shortage of water. First, people eat what's in the pantry, then they loot grocery stores and malls. After that, with all local supplies depleted and no hope on the horizon, they leave the city and start ransacking nearby homes. Some will hunt in nearby forests, but most city-dwellers don't know how to hunt, and any available prey animals will soon be hunted to extinction by those who do know. In any case, anyone with the means to leave the city will likely do so soon after their food shortage begins.
[See: https://www.EndTimesReport.com/food.html]

If you have prepared by stockpiling an emergency food supply as advised elsewhere in this book, food shortages are less likely to affect you, however it's important that you don't let anyone outside your tribe be aware of this fact: you must also imitate them in their efforts to scrounge for food as the days pass, or they will realize you have food and attack you for it.

48. 4. Power Grid Failure

Nothing is as suddenly obvious nor has such a gigantic psychological impact as the failure of the power grid. When the electricity stops, almost everybody knows it at the same instant (unless it happens at night). Naturally, during the first few hours of the power failure, if it occurs, people will assume it's a temporary situation. Maybe a tree fell on some power lines, or perhaps a transformer blew up somewhere nearby. They'll sit tight and wait for the power to come back on. What if it doesn't? Then the city faces a severe problem. Without power, obviously, everything shuts down.

Within hours, looting begins in the more crime-ridden cities (we saw this in New York a few decades ago, and even in London more recently).

The longer the power stays off, the worse the social disorder. Loss of power brings entire cities to a halt. While vehicles may get around for a few more days (using whatever fuel they have left), businesses obviously won't be operating. Houses that depend on electricity for heat will quickly reach winter temperatures, freezing many occupants to death.

While those that depend on electricity for air conditioning will just as quickly reach summer temperatures, resulting in death from heat stroke. Hospitals and police stations may have generators on hand, with a few days' worth of fuel, but in short order, that will be depleted, too. But the water treatment plant will almost certainly be off-line without power, causing all the events mentioned in the water section, above. Let's face it, electrical power is probably the worst thing to be without in the city. If you have power, you can survive a food shortage, perhaps even a short water shortage. But without power, all bets are off. If you have a "bug-out" vehicle stocked and ready to go, this might be the time to bail.

Here's the above advice in a fictional generalized scenario;

You previously made plans to head for your bug-out location at your buddy Frank's farm due to constant reports of increasing rioting and violence in your city, but the day before departure, police go door-to-door “temporarily” confiscating firearms from citizens in the name of “public safety” after the start of the Event (whatever might be the cause).

You're not going to have a shoot-out with the police with your wife and kids there (are you?), because even though the police's circle of control keeps shrinking, you're still inside it and know they have a habit of shooting people at the least sign of resistance, and then shooting some more, so you hand over the shotgun and pistol you have in your home quietly and without causing a fuss or drawing attention, even asking for a receipt and advice on when you might be able to collect them again, something you're well aware will never happen.

Afterwards, you quickly ring your work to let them know you're not coming in next week because you “caught the flu", then you turn off your cell-phone, wrap it in two layers of foil and drop it in a drawer to mantain OPSEC before loading up your car with everyone's bug-out bags and extra spare food. You top up the fuel tank from a jerry can you keep stored in the garage and you sit an extra one in the boot as well.

As you pass the last gas station on the edge of town, you notice that rioters are turning cars away based on the driver's race, so you stop briefly on a side street and use a virgin burner cell-phone for the first time, to send coded warnings to the rest of the team about the confiscations and escalating violence, urging them to get to the primary bug-out location at Frank's farm (e.g.- “Just checking to see if we're still on for Grandma's birthday party next week?” = get out of town right now, stop for nothing, meet up at Frank’s) ... You also had a couple of spare smartphones with no chip in (and which also have never been used) full of apps and reference ebooks, which were carefully stored to protect them against EMP, etc.

On your drive to Frank, you stop by a nondescript patch of woodland, go for a walk with a shovel, and return with a three-foot long piece of 8in PVC pipe sealed at both ends. Inside are two ARs, two cheap sets of webbing, two pistols, and enough magazines and rounds to hopefully arrive safely at your destination - you quickly cut it open with the hacksaw you keep in your car’s toolkit. You also replace the number plates on your car with some you got from an old wrecker's yard, so that the CCTV camera's that seem to be popping up on roads all over these days can't confirm that it's really you traveling.

When you get to the farm a couple of hours later, you see you're not the first to arrive- three other team members and their families arrived earlier, with similar stories to yours.

Together, you prepare the barn so that it can be used to live in, and bury additional caches of spare supplies, weapons and ammunition in the woods a few miles from Frank's farm, as well as preparing a roster to supervise the CCTVs that keep watch on the farm's perimeter...

Now, most of that scenario could have been used in exactly the same way if you had to leave your house because of flooding, fire, etc. etc.

49. Choosing A Survival Location

If you grew up in a small town and moved away, you really should seriously consider moving back to the area, or at least keep a holiday/bugout home there and visit regularly to mantain bonds with the locals, including your relatives. In other cases, depending on the local political climate, you may be able to do the same in your current town or city suburb, but either way, this requires, even demands, strong interpersonal bonds. There's no way in hell that you'll survive for long as a lone wolf.

Remember that every urban dweller will attempt to exit the cities once the situation deteriorates sufficiently, and that as the saying goes "*civilization is three missed meals from anarchy at all times*" - you must expect the idiot masses to escape the cities through major travel arteries, and for the smaller "feeder" cities to be swamped by desperate, violent and helpless (and basically useless) refugees- the sort you couldn't even offer to pay in food for digging some crops into the ground, because they'd stab you first.

The actual location of the town or village is more important than what is built on your land there currently- even if the house on the land you choose needs significant work, or if you must use some sort of temporary housing such as an RV, tent, or the liveable portion of an already standing structure such as a barn, that is still better than a mansion in a vulnerable location such as a city.

When living ceases being easy, society's dregs will become predatory earlier and to a greater degree than the working- and middle-class ethnic Europeans who had a stake in the system; consider that many of them just sat around without doing anything but sucking at the teats of society. How many were a part of the problem? How many actively contribute to the instability with crime, political tribalism and street violence?

Societies in harsh environments with scarce resources and societies in collapse tend to care a lot about ethics but also devolve into tribalism with a very, very different set of ethics applied to the in-group and the out-group. For a barbarian, anyone not considered as being one of "our people" - which is the same thing as "the" people - is considered to be no different to a wild animal. Consider how Eskimo's prefer to be called by their own word for themselves: *Inuit*. Now, the word *Eskimo* actually comes from one of their neighbors and means "*eaters of raw meat*", while the word *Inuit* means "the people" in their own language. Consider the implication of this: to them, anyone who is not one of them, an Inuit, is not a human at all. So why does your tribe need a name when *you're* just people and everyone else are the ones who are not?

Consider: a zombie apocalypse won't happen because of some weird virus - it will happen because there's no other sources of food, and the zombies will be as well-armed as you, as smart as you, and working as a team to hunt you down and cut off and eat pieces of you. Every time food got scarce humans turned on each other and created weird religions about it, it's not an exception it's practically a rule. Most people will choose not to die. Think to yourself: "under such conditions where would it be safe for my family and I to live, permanently?"

A useful guide to assist you would be Ragnar Benson's 1998 book "*The Modern Survival Retreat - a new and vital approach to retreat theory and practice*", and also go and watch **https://yewtu.be/ljUQqUOQBsg** for some pointers and ideas.



50. Real Estate - Location, Location, Location.



A small rural town or village, suitably selected for remoteness and limited access would make a fine bastion of civilization for you and other like-minded inhabitants to shelter from the fall of the rotting corpse of globalized "western" civilization, especially if the inhabitants deliberately cultivate a separate identity from the mainstream national population starting ***before*** TEOTWAWKI. Eventually after a generation or more, your descendants will achieve a point where you can "reboot" and form a new nation, eventually spreading out from your location.

In North and South America, your best chances of doing that are by moving to as remote a rural location as possible. In Europe, you should try moving to an offshore island if at all possible (as long as you can maintain the ability to travel by sea ***and*** can build your own boats), otherwise by selecting a suitable village in a hard-to-get-to valley where you can cut off road access for an extended period. Isolation improves your safety, and will help create separation of identity, on which more later. Proximity to mass movement corridors like highways or mountain passes bring attention to homes and towns, eg. in the former Yugoslavia these suffered repeated looting and violence by soldiers from both sides during their civil war.

Everyone that has successfully moved off-grid as you must do, did so in steps. The specifics were naturally different, but all of them addressed a few things before they made their move. Step one in your plan to survive must be to find a town or village that you and like-minded individuals can move to, with the intent of building a self-reliant community.

Any location you select to bug-in or bug-out to must have the following, in order of importance:

> Low population density, low ethnic diversity, and low crime rate,
> a reliable, secure, year-round supply of clean drinkable water,
> land of sufficient expanse and quality to be able to achieve food self-reliance
> limited access and ability to further limit it e.g. by blocking roads, to ensure physical security
> a reasonably temperate climate, enabling one to grow everything but luxury foods locally
> enough of a sense of community to withstand raiders and external pressure

High mountain areas are unsuitable for several reasons- altitude means a short growing season forcing locals to import most food. Winters are long and cold, leading to high prices and low availability of fuels, including wood. Desert and arid areas are just as bad - lack of water will doom any area with significant populations. This same lack prevents food self-sufficiency.

In the USA, Northern California, Oregon and Washington State were long touted as survivalist havens: mild climate ensures long growing seasons and means one can even sleep outdoors much of the year. But these otherwise excellent areas would soon be swamped with urban refugees. The climate and modern road net ensure that millions of Californian urbanites would soon swarm there like a horde of locusts, consuming everything they can and destroying everything they can't.

A good book on selecting the location (with a somewhat different and more individualistic take on it) is "*Prepper's Survival Retreats*" by Charley Hogwood (ISBN: 978-1-61243-749-1).

One of the most important things to think about and look for in a piece of land is water. A good water source can make or break a homestead. You may not only want to check out the annual rainfall in an area, but also how deep the water table is. Most well drillers can give you a pretty good idea how deep the water table is in a given area. While it's possible to gather enough water to run a frugal household with rain water catchment (such as a cistern), having water for livestock and irrigation is more difficult. Natural springs and year-round streams are a big plus when looking at land. Find out about any problems that may be present with the water supply before you buy - local wells may dry up in summer, there may be unwanted minerals in the local water, or the water may taste bad, or even be polluted.

The deeper the water table, the harder to get the water to the surface. Old-fashioned "pitcher pumps" will draw water only about 20 feet, deep-well pumps are available that use manual and electric power. People coming off public piped water systems, need to educate themselves to the realities of where their water comes from. A property having only a low-capacity water system in place shouldn't be rejected out of hand, but you should acknowledge that water problems on the homestead cannot simply taken resolved with a call to the local utility company. The land you look at may not have adequate water for your needs, and it's up to you, not the seller, to determine this. It's almost impossible to over-stress the value of an adequate water supply.

The next area of concern is access - this simply means getting onto your land. There are at least two possible problems with access. One is: does the land have legal access? In many areas legal access is established, such as when a road or trail has been in use for a long time, but this is not always the case. Just because the seller was able to drive you to the land does not always mean that there's legal access. A slightly higher-priced piece of land with guaranteed legal access, may be less expensive in the long run than a lower-priced piece without access. While almost all states have laws making it unlawful to "land lock" anyone off their land, but the new landowner may have to buy "right of way" access at market value. Few states require granting power access - with legal access, the electric company can bring power lines beside the right of way. Otherwise, you may have to go to your neighbors and ask them to grant the power company right of way.

Another important access problem is terrain. Swampy areas, steep hills, creeks that swell during rains, areas prone to flooding, or anything that makes getting to the land difficult or impossible, should be considered before buying. You may well be in for "price tag shock" when looking at the cost of building materials. Any buildings or other improvements already on the land increase its value… and cost. Maybe the old house is too rough for you to live in long-term, but it might make a work shop or barn. Consider **all** improvements that are extant or necessary when looking at land, including how far power lines would have to be run. If you plan on heating with wood, the size and quality of the wood lot should be looked at.

Soil quality and the local growing season should also be considered before buying. Regardless of the hard work you put into the land, the climate will affect what and how much can be grown. Consider the local severity of winters and how hot the summers are. State and local laws might also restrict the use of the land - you need to find out about these before you buy, not after. How fast is the area growing? Having more neighbors might affect local restrictions on land use, or more people putting in wells might, in time, lower the water table. If you're choosing the land to homestead and culturally isolate, you want an area that is definitely <u>not</u> showing rapid growth.

Distance from things like schools, hospitals, shops, and most importantly, the possibility for work may also need to be considered. Finally, the price must be taken into account. Two very similar pieces of land can often vary greatly in price in the same area. By talking to the people already living in an area, it's sometimes possible to find land far below the price of what the Real Estate dealers are showing. Real Estate brokers work for a commission when selling the land, if you buy directly from a seller, you can often save this commission. If you already have some land that does not stand up to these ideas too well, then there are ways to work around many problems; but homesteading is much easier without all this extra effort.

51. A Potential Issue: Small-Town Blues

Be aware that if you have no relatives in a small town, you'll probably suffer from the effects of regionalism. Regionalism is similar to nationalism or to racism, only it involves xenophobia by people living in an area against anyone from outside, especially new people moving to the area. In essence, the locals are the in-group or tribe, and being the new people, you're the out-group. In many cases this divide is deeper than race or creed. Ironically, the very thing that would work for you if you become part of the in-group, works against you becoming part of it in the first place.

City people *will* encounter regionalism if they move into the countryside and it can be difficult for family members to endure it. There are some villages or small towns where your family could live for a generation and yet their children will still count as the "newcomers" (in especially severe cases, someone from eg. New York moving to the Deep South will always be regarded as "*that damn yankee*" by the locals, and that person's children might be known as "*the yankee's brats*" all their lives. Possibly the grandchildren may escape the moniker. There are villages in Europe where families that have lived there for over two centuries are still only *almost* one of the locals - yes, these are extreme cases, but they illustrate that you must select your location with care).

This has major repercussions for the political aspects of bugging out to an isolated area as it can easily lead to conflict with the long-term residents of that village/small town when the "newcomers" try to change or influence local politics to prepare for SHTF scenarios. The locals have a higher chance of having more wealth and status than the "newcomers" and can make life really difficult for them. Even if they aren't especially wealthy, they can easily sabotage your plans through nonviolent means, and many a bug-outer has purchased a farm in some small town only to find that the locals consider the present title holder to be an irrelevant nuisance to their traditional hunting on land their ancestors owned long before the Civil War.

The rich amongst them may even be in alliance with, or favor the politics of, those that that caused the collapse of the civilisation - the town the author originally grew up in is definitely one such place, being politically controlled by the nepotistic members of the local freemason's chapter. This must be taken into account during your planning, and is a big part of the reason I suggest to move or bug-out to the small town you grew up in, **if** it's suitable.



*52. **Settling In To Your Digs***

Once you find a suitable location, and purchase some property there, you'll need a trade or business you can perform in that location. Some roles, such as medical personnel, mechanics, etc., will be welcome everywhere. Others will find it harder to be gainfully employed in an isolated village (there's not much call for say, a stockbroker in a town whose economy is centred around farming), so you must select a trade you can perform in the place you selected. The last thing to completely break down will probably be postal and delivery services, so if you have a mail-order business, perhaps run via an online store, that would be perfect: as long as you have stock to sell you'll still be in good shape. This might be a good backup to running a local business, though unlikely to be enough on its own.

To further prepare for the collapse, you and your fellow settlers must prepare. You can expect a return to an average level of technology similar to the late 1800's once the electricity finally goes out and the limited supplies of spare parts run empty.

Do so by building up yourself and your town to prepare for a self-sufficient existence beforehand. Once the gasoline and diesel run out, alternative energy systems will have to be constructed or adapted to supply power to critical buildings and homes. Machine tools can be run by steam power, mills by water and wind, and so on and so forth. Why not simply prepare so that all you have to do is whip a tarpaulin off such equipment that you laid aside beforehand?

Of all the things set in the *1632* universe* there are many reader-contributed nonfiction articles in the *Grantville Gazette* that give insights into many of the technological problems you might face after a collapse, from glass-blowing to medicine (see: **https://grantvillegazette.com/).** You would be wise to download and print off any useful articles, as well as reading some of the books for some hints regarding post-collapse reconstruction of society and technological civilization.

Let's say you're the town mechanic, well then- as funds permit, buy equipment that expands your abilities - a welding machine to fix farming equipment, a diesel generator to keep it going even if you have to run it off cooking oil, some blacksmithing gear to build new basic parts, lathes and grinders to turn them into more advanced parts, etc. Each purchase should expand your abilities, and reduce your need for external help and support. Second-hand equipment, built in earlier times, is often far more reliable and durable than items made in the last 40 years or so, and cheaper too.

Whatever your role in the community, applying similar principles won't just enable your business to grow; it will ensure that the state of the rest of the world will be less important to your chances of success. Other local metalworking shops and businesses should also have machine tools of type and kind sufficient to manufacture basically everything that might be needed to restart civilization. The same goes for carpenters, etc.

There are now, today, hobby machinists who manufacture small steam engines of about the same size as a lawnmower for fun. The only real difference between these and the ones once used to drive ships and haul trains is in size. Perhaps some among you could take up the hobby, or make friends with someone who does, and if SHTF, assuming you can access a reliable source of combustibles, you'll be having an industrial revolution in no time at all.

Other considerations for your town once you're settled in will be to ensure you're stocked with an ample library of hard-copy reference materials on any and all useful technical and non-technical subjects. Older books are especially good, as they came from a time people were more self-reliant and actually made things with their hands. Do *not* allow your local public library to discard their older books when they acquire newer ones without first having some members of your group go through and retain in storage anything that contains any type of potentially useful information. Old encyclopaedias from before WW2 are especially valuable in this regard.

* a series of stories by far-left union-boss-turned-author Eric Flint and other contributors, based on the premise that a small Appalachian mining town is sent back in time to 1632.

Imagine that you're a scholar in one of the great libraries of the early Iron Age, like at Alexandria. A fire breaks out. You cannot stop the fire, and you cannot save all the scrolls. There's little time to think or evaluate the situation. What to do? You scoop up as many scrolls as you can on your route to the nearest exit, if time permits choosing those that appear to be more important or unique. The result is not ideal, but preferable to letting the entire collection go up in flames. Better to record indiscriminately than to lose the entire collection.

Similarly, save as much as you can of our present-day cultural treasures - we have no idea if, for example, any full and unedited editions of the works of Plato, Aristotle, Aquinas, Shakespeare, Mark Twain, Tolkien, etc. etc. will survive. The present progressive trend is to destroy books, only this time it isn't just stuff titled "*Sex Lives of Toddlers*, by Magnus Hirschfeld" see: **https://archive.is/WLuYv**

While it's unlikely to actually be a conspiracy by Universalists to erase the pre-progressive past, if you read what the librarians are saying about it <**http://web.archive.org/web/20140519005318/http://www.librarything.com/topic/102043**>, well just read the thing - the autistic bureaucratic cluelessness of these people is unbelievable. But in the context of their jobs, they do have a point; there's a lack of space, gotta make things out, my boss ordered me to, if this goes public people gonna make a fuss, we don't want that. So: burn that shit, so there's more space to put the latest editions of Twilight and 50 Shades of Grey on show, that's what the public wants. See how librarians are well-drilled in book-burning. They were told to burn them, and so they do. Bureaucracy incentivizes becoming clones of the USSR.

How should they check which is valuable and which not? We've not been taught to tell good literature from bad, Shakespeare from Harry Potter, or even right from wrong; the doctrine of tolerance and equality just won't allow it, so why should some books be preserved and not others? Why should anything be preserved? The only criteria they can use under equality is readership, a commercial decision based on the lowest common denominator. And commercial criteria alone will soon finish with destroying many, many books, starting with all those inconvenient old racist and homophobic books from the 19th and 18th centuries, already rare and hard to find now.

Therefore it falls to people like us to preserve our historical culture and knowledge. A copy of each major significant work sealed into an airtight plastic bag and safely crated out of risk of fire and flood could provide a wealth of assistance to a reborn western culture someday. Old encyclopedias currently squirreled away in attics and basements like this may enable lost technologies to be reborn after those who hold the know-how pass on.

Another good target for the long-term will be the ability to print and bind books the old-fashioned way without electricity so that you can copy and disseminate information you already have. It may be wise to invest in and refurbish an older hand-printing press or a binding machine for that purpose. A good run-down of the kinds of information to seek out and learn, and useful guidelines on the kinds of books to seek out and stockpile, can be found within Lewis Dartnell's 2014 book, "*The Knowledge: How to Rebuild our World from Scratch*" - rather an appropriate title considering our goals, don't you think?

You should further ensure your town or village has excellent medical facilities of all kinds including the ability to perform surgical procedures. Your local hospital or clinic needs to be well-equipped and funded so that locals can be treated there when SHTF and not need to rely on outside help which may by that point, no longer exist. The last thing you want is your people to die because of diseases and injuries that could have been cured with access to modern medical treatment - you'll already have a high enough death toll after SHTF from natural causes and violence, and a local medical clinic that is kept well-stocked and staffed is a guard against such things. It may even be a source of income for the town if people begin taking their injured there for care, however be sure to carefully ration medication in such cases.

An important aside is that once it becomes obvious that things will not return to the "old normal", your medical staff needs to take on young and willing people as apprentices, so their knowledge does not end up dying with them- much of modern medical knowledge is the type of thing that cannot be learned from reading, but must be picked up from an already-skilled practitioner. However I do recommend getting the book "*Where There's No Doctor - A Village Health Care Handbook*"*, and getting at least a CERT and/or TCCC emergency medical qualification, or your nation's equivalent.
[*a .pdf-format copy is available here: **https://tinyurl.com/WhereThereIsNoDrPdf**]

In similar vein, it might be appropriate to ensure that once your people have significant control over the local Sheriff's department, you lay aside funds for arms and vehicles to resist attack of the town by large armed groups, such as fragments of the military who abandoned their posts but not their weapons. An armored vehicle or two laid aside in a warehouse under the technical ownership of the Sheriff's department, and better yet a few (or ideally a dozen) belt-fed machine-guns similarly sitting in the police armory of a department firmly under your control, are good insurance against the worst-case scenarios after SHTF if your town can afford the purchase. Certainly, such purchases would massively bolster the effectiveness of a post-TEOTWAWKI citizen militia of the town's people.

In a non-first world country it always pays to be close friends with a doctor, a bureaucrat, a cop, etc. Cultivate relationships with such people by having a couple of meeting a year with them, joining the same clubs they're in, playing golf with them, giving them small gifts etc. Even if you never need them to do you a favor, it's solid social investment. At the very least when you talk with them you may be able to steer conversations to places where you may find out something useful or unexpected. Now that the whole of the Western world slides towards third-world conditions and demographics like South Africa, these habits will become critical.

Part 4 - After The Fall: Rebuilding Your Civilization From The Ground Up

53. The Bonds That Bind Us

From an individual standpoint, you could probably do worse than connecting with your immediate peers in your area and making sure you've got each other's backs in the event of a crisis, but that only goes so far. It's relatively ineffectual unless every community and clique does it, and it would probably require a near-mythical black Swan event to make everyone commit to action.

Remember that as society's collapse slowly worsens, the police ***won't*** be there to protect you **from** anything, but by golly, they'll be there to arrest you when you defend yourself or try to do anything actually sensible for yourself. As evidence- the 2020 riots in the USA, where police stood by as rioters and looters pillaged stores and set fire to them, yet still found the time to swoop in and arrest store owners who attempted to defend their businesses against the looters.

Self-sufficiency is a laudable goal, and yet self-sufficiency *as an individual* is pointless and unattainable. While you can grow your own food, weave your own wool to make your own clothes, or forge your own steel, you're not simultaneously also going to be harvesting your own salt, making your own toothpaste, building your own house, etc. etc. It's not viable to stretch your skills that thin. You really need to network with neighbors, people you can exchange supplies with and whose skills complement yours and each other's.

Maybe half of being a successful farmer/off-grid homesteader, is to have a network of people around you whom you can depend on to cover your back when things go wrong, and vice versa. Having a dozen kids and a wife to lighten the workload goes a long way also. As the saying goes: it takes a village, and you my friend, will need to build yourself a tribe.

Having tribe means that there are immediate concerns beyond our own safety and security. It means planning ahead for food, potable water, communications, guns and ammunition, and even in the short-term electrical power (or a replacement for it). For some in your clan, that may make the difference between life and death for certain medical conditions. This is why Jim Rawles (creator of **https://www.survivalblog.com/**) expends so much effort to help others with medical issues and what may seem mundane to us. Medicine and even rudimentary medical care can save lives, while preparation for the mundane can affect the psychology of survival - being the go-to guy for medical assistance will certainly give you status in a SHTF context, as well as encouraging bonding within your tribe and the feeling that you'll be able to look after each other.

In a post-TEOTWAWKI context, terrain is not merely some piece of dirt, though it may be tactically important due to for example your crops growing on it. Your most important terrain will be human terrain - your tribe, basically - the people who however much they may personally dislike you, will have your back when shit goes bad and the bullets fly.

No one who lives off-grid exists entirely on what they can raise and grow. Even the most self-sufficient supplement what they can produce by interacting with the local economy. Form a community with a team or group that shares your moral code somewhere, and look up the concept of Intentional Neighbors. See more good advice here: **https://yewtu.be/hPbfE9Bvu4g**

You may also want to ponder imitating religious groups such as the Mormons, the Amish, or the Mennonites - Almost every single one of their families are single-income, and nearly everyone in the latter two groups typically works in hard, dirty, or menial jobs. Yet they do well, even ***very*** well, financially. Why? Let's look at the Mennonites for clues to their success:

Firstly, they have an internal system to share emergency financial burdens based around their religious principle of caring for each other - for example, healthcare and medical expenses are covered through mutual assistance within their brotherhood, rather than relying purely on conventional medical insurance.

Further, they produce most of their own food - growing your own means a much smaller food budget, as does buying at farmers markets etc in season, and preserving the produce. All this is far cheaper than continually buying your produce and meat at supermarkets out of season etc.

Another place they share and thus reduce their cost burden is their kids' education - they don't send their children to public schools, and even Mennonite private schools which are ~50% cheaper than any other are still expensive, so instead they home-school. One stay-at-home mother teaches her and her neighbor's children one season while the other looks after the home, and the other the next, and so on.

College debt in such communities is basically nonexistent - men in these groups tend to be self-employed tradesmen. For example, an average hard-working plumber who keeps busy, will easily bring in $150,000 a year. Electricians, carpenters, welder/fitters, all will earn six figures annually if they keep themselves busy. Couple that with self-employment where you can reduce your tax outlay to about 20% using legal accounting measures such as trusts and corporate ownership, and they end up with far more in their pockets at the end of the year than someone earning the same amount on a salary but losing 50% of it in various taxes.

Consider and contrast:

1) A typical college grad who hits the job market at 22-25 for their first job earns 50k per year while paying income 15-20% tax, they need to buy a car, pay rent, pay for a cell-phone, pay for health insurance, and also have to pay off student loans of say 30-40k which accrue interest.

2) A Mennonite lad hits the workforce at 18. He apprentices to learn a trade, earning trade certification by age 20. Between the ages of 20-25 he earns 50k/year with no student loans, and lawfully claims his work expenses as tax write-offs. At 25-30, he starts his own business and his income immediately doubles, and he keeps more of it due to the self-employment tax structure.

By the time he takes on the significant household expenses of supporting a wife, kids, healthcare premiums, and education, the Mennonite man is in a **much** better position financially than his college grad counterpart.

Real estate or their own profitable businesses are the anchors of Mennonite wealth. Couple that structure of trade and self-employment with tax savings, generational support for entrepreneurship (or at least church networks that help young men start and run their own business), sprinkle with a little diligence and thrift through good parenting, and it's no wonder these communities barely notice when the plebeian herd suffers from a poor economy - they're a wealth building machine! That's how things should be- with low taxation and careful investment, inflation works in your fav8or. Getting on the right side of the tax burden and inflation will by default make you wealthy, even if you spend the rest of your money. By and large those two issues define financial success.

There’s nothing the Mennonites do that others can't - trade jobs cannot be outsourced to China, cost much less to become certified in, and wages are higher. For most graduates, college never produces the financial results society thinks it does. Throw in divorce and child support for much of the population, and you soon realize that the modern financial system is designed to keep you a poor, broke, debt-slave your whole life.

You will need to emulate and internalise similar tribal attitudes if you wish to survive the collapse of your country's centralized government and the globalized economy. These are the things you need to be considering now if you want to rely less on government and less on globalized fiat currency, which would also hide your earnings better from the greedy claws of the tax man.

Taxation is the biggest detriment to your wealth. You must become flexible enough to get it as low as possible. That generally means self-employment, entrepreneurship, and owning a business. Inflation protection includes assets that are indexed to inflation, such as real estate, gold or silver, and inflation-proof businesses - these are where you should direct your attention. The typical lower- or middle-class citizen of a medium sized city pays little to no attention to such issues. He wants a secure job with benefits, putting him dead-center in the tax-man's sights. He may or may not own a house. If not, inflation always outstrips his earning power - exactly as it's intentionally designed to do by the banks.

Even if your wage increases over your lifetime, higher taxes always take a bite before it can be spent. Also, by the time that increased pay hits the real world, inflation takes its toll, raising prices on everything. The reason the 1950's were the high point for America was only partly due to the post-war boom - the other, bigger reason is because inflation was yet to take much of a toll on the value of the dollar, thus wages went much farther than they do now, hence single-income households being the norm then. (Also remember that when women entered the labor market, household income doubled, causing prices to adjust and leading to the drop in wage monetary value).

54. <u>The Lore Of The Land</u>

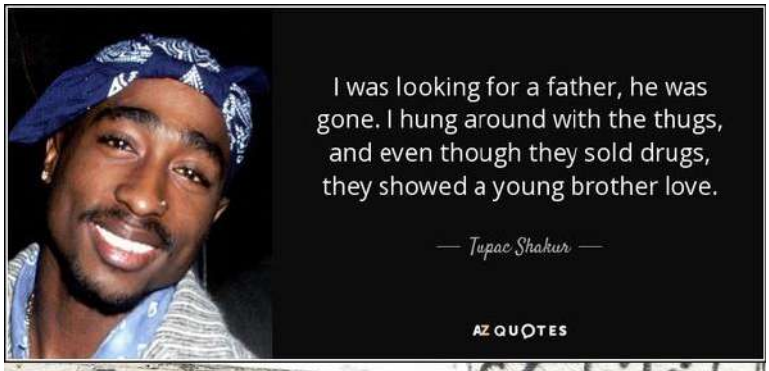
"*Dying societies accumulate laws like dying men accumulate remedies".* - Nicolás Gómez Dávila

According to anthropology, tribes are exclusivist social groups linked by bonds of kinship, tradition, and mutual responsibilities that unite for common purposes, such as marriages, trade, and warfare. **Tribes are built on three intricately-linked pillars: Trust, Loyalty, and Identity.**

Take the example of the Mennonites above: they **Trust** each other, due to their shared faith and values. They're **Loyal** to each other, because of their shared values and traditions. They have a common **Identity** based on their faith and culture.

Tribes must be recognizable to their citizens as a product of their exclusivity- you cannot simply just all dress alike and call yourselves a tribe. The military does that but they aren't a tribe, the police likewise. A better example of a tribe is a criminal gang. To be a member, one has to demonstrate they share the gang's values and morals (eg. no snitching, one must show and defend respect, defend the gang's turf from competing gangs), they're exclusive (eg. to enter, one must pass and survive a hazardous initiation ritual- in some cases, one is not a full member until after being witnessed in the act of killing an enemy of the gang by an existing member).

Extant tribal groups operating within ACWE deliberately separate themselves from mainstream society, even if only partially, to preserve their in-group identity. Other, non-religious groups that do the same include Gypsies, jews, etc. - in each case they deliberately give preference to their own group of people and where possible, exclude other groups, even going so far as to isolate themselves from the mainstream culture of the place they live in, each to a greater or lesser degree. Why am I saying all this you ask? Why that's obvious - because your tribal nucleus will likewise have to form a distinct separate identity from the mainstream culture you live among.





We see yet another example in racial identity politics - this is a search for tribe as a reaction to "diversity". In Barack Obama's book "*Dreams from My Father*", there's a strong sense that he's trying to find his true identity and figure out where he 'belongs', if he is authentically 'black' after he lost touch with his father - in it he relates that he sought out blacks to associate with despite growing up in a White household in a 'diverse' region (Hawaii). It's intriguing to read that the blacks with whom Obama associated at college were demanding black-only dormitories. So

while Whites were seeking to diversify, blacks sought spaces where there would be only people superficially like themselves - tribalistic exclusiveness in action.

It's your shared and lived cultural and moral values (your **foundational ethics**) that provide your tribe's guidelines to living, and which create the place for a person among the tribe's other members, who likewise recognize and adhere to the shared cultural values and customs. (Hence the regionalism mentioned earlier).

When people interact with each other, they invent or stumble upon certain efficient ways of acting, certain norms and mores and certain rituals. This efficient conduct becomes widespread and is used to bring people together, create a shared identity and serve as a tool to recognize fellow members of one's in-group. We call this code of conduct tradition. Books have been written on the topic, so to keep it brief: we can see that every functioning society from 3000BC to the 18th century had a few broad similarities. They all had strict patriarchal gender roles, unity between Church and State, monarchical government, ethnic/racial solidarity and a hierarchical social structure somewhere along the lines of:

God/s > King > Nobles > Clergy > Commoners > Women > Children > Slaves > Pets

That's *every* stable, functioning society from ancient Egypt, Greece and Rome to Japan to the Mayans to Medieval Europe - all had these same broad characteristics, which suggests it's simply the natural way for humans to live and thrive. Obviously, the actual religions, social rituals and norms differed widely from society to society, but they all shared these very broad traits.

Written laws are rarely to be found in tight-knit communities and tribes. Native Americans rarely had any laws, usually there was but one fundamental, unwritten law: "***don't harm the tribe***". Sleep with another man's wife? Harms the tribe. Take someone else's food? Harms the tribe. Being excessively selfish? Harms the tribe. As long as a member was loyal to the tribe, and followed its basic customs, they were otherwise free to do as they liked. Once we understand this, the honor- (or in the present parlance "respect"-) based behavior of criminal gangs can also be seen to be tribal in its nature.

For those folks concerned about "muh freedoms" here's a handy hint - it **DOES NOT FUCKING MATTER** if government makes doing XYZ illegal- the only people that can impact you for actually *doing* XYZ are the members of your local community, and for an example of how this works, consider that some UK muslim communities have official crime rates of **zero**, for the simple reason that they don't involve outsiders (*like the British police*) in their issues.

Internalizing a unifying ideology also allows the coordination of intricate behavior without requiring overt ties. This is known as a "stand alone complex" and is the only truly interesting new behavior pattern to be described by sociology in the last 50 years.

Building a sense of comradeship - that your group is a sort of extended family, is key. We see such bonds forming during emergency or disaster situations when people who previously were complete strangers spontaneously group together in response to the shared experience of the disaster - you'll probably have to initially operate without such voluntary instinctive cooperative collectivism, which makes it harder, but at least enables you to initially exclude sub-optimal members from the nucleus of your tribe.

The strengthening of the family is essential for the future, especially the bonds within extended family. Bonds between families create strong communities. Bonds between communities create strong nations. Thus, effective familial relations are the root of both community and nation. Families are the ultimate source and basis of political order. A truly strong nation needs strong families, strong local communities and finally a strong and capable national leadership with strict limits and boundaries on political power. Weakness in any of the three is harmful for the others.

Atomized individuals and broken families are symptoms of a sick and degenerating society which has grown top-heavy. Individuals in such societies find themselves facing the state with no intermediary associations - an unnatural state of being. Humans don't mind hardship - history shows that we thrive on it; what humans mind is not feeling needed. Modern society has perversely perfected the art of making people feel unnecessary and isolated.

Biologically speaking, humans evolved to live in small groups connected to their land. It took courage, skill, determination, discipline, and respect. Above all, it required honesty. Everything you said, everything you did, everything you taught your children and grandchildren had to be the truth or you perished as a people. Back in cave-man world, you put your life on the line with every transaction, be it material, mental, whatever. You'd say what you meant and meant what you said, because if you didn't, the rest of the tribe would brain you with the biggest rocks they could find (making duplicity an evolutionary liability) - this continued well into historical times, weakening a little with each passing century, until this attitude simply vanished with the rise of progressivism, which teaches its adherents that falsehoods are acceptable in pursuit of the "greater good". Now truth has to be searched for with great care, and struggled for with tremendous effort.

Such straightforward simplicity and insistence on honesty is also seen in what is perhaps the oldest known surviving set of written laws, the Biblical Ten Commandments. From "thou shalt not murder" onwards, they're little more than the basic unwritten rules of tribal life set in stone. Even the staunchest atheist would have to admit that ignoring the theistic elements, the majority of them are useful rules for guiding a society. How different from our own world, where there's a secular regulation for almost every waking action we perform!

Generally, written laws became necessary only when a tribe received an mass influx of immigrant persons who lacked the shared bonds and traditions of the tribe, forcing the tribe to write down its unwritten rules. One can see this in the biblical story of Moses during the desert wanderings in the story of the Ten Commandments- having left Egyptian rule, the Hebrews brought with them slaves and wives, likely even whole families, who did not share the traditions and customs, enraging Moses to break the first set of tablets and re-write new ones (I will gloss over the fact that the whole story is archaeologically impossible).

The USA and EU show us the disadvantages of formal written law- the unfortunate habit of politicians and judges to ignore any innate sense of justice and fairness to create "interpretations" of laws that ignores and often clashes violently with the mores and customs of society, all too often in pursuit of partisan agendas and disguised under the banners of "free trade" and "human rights". But people's actual rights (something that the political Right was fundamental in establishing, way back in antiquity) aren't protected by laws, but by the willingness of citizens to use violence against authorities when the rights aren't respected.

We see the weakened and impotent remnants of tribal customs and laws today in the codified form of local by-laws and rules, including in things such as unions, guilds and fraternities.

Groups such as yours, that are trying to **intentionally** create a tribe to survive the collapse of ACWE, may need to actively create a small set of mutually accepted written laws defining your basic shared customs and values to get the ball rolling, and to form a basis of your tribal custom and tradition. These must be based in the actual morals and values that the members hold.

These should identify how collective decisions are to be made, as well as the basics of acceptable and unacceptable behavior. They need to clearly explain the obligations of tribal membership, and how to differentiate between someone who is a tribal kin-member, and who is a stranger or is cast out. This is a separate matter to religion, but works similarly to Catholic dogma- the points aren't something to debate, you either abide by them or you're simply not a member of the tribe, period.

Even in tribes with a shared religion, specific details of how that faith is practiced between families may be different enough to cause issues unless an agreed-on and standard form of observation is applied.

Like the early Romans, your tribal laws may need to specify what specific events are tribally recognized and celebrated - many of their early ceremonies were identity-affirming rituals that strengthened their bonds, such as the Roman tradition of a returning general being awarded with a *triumph*: a symbolic march at the head of the army through the center of Rome, wearing a crown of laurel leaves and ending in a ritual ceremonial sacrifice at the official temples.

The attempt by you and any other founders to hammer out the foundational ethics of your tribe may turn out to be quite a heart-warming bonding experience, worthy of a corny Hollywood movie, or it may turn out to be a catastrophic event, luridly demonstrating the incompatibility of the various cultural and moral values of the would-be founders. Nevertheless, you're better off getting it done as early as possible before disaster strikes, rather than trying to hash out such things after the collapse while armed raiders are trying to kick down the door.

55. To Build Your Own Tribe

How can you carve out your path towards the future, when you've been trained from birth to be no more than an observer, a consumer, a swine eating the slop poured out for you? When everything you know - or thought you knew - is being destroyed before your eyes? Your culture is being perverted, your nations subverted, and our perception of reality itself is being warped through the media's nonstop gaslighting, and by the educational elite's constant historical revisionism (for example, notice the description of the senator here [**https://archive.is/1e38U**], and the one given later when he tried to run for president [**https://archive.is/iYjkH**]). In this fragmented, individualist world where you can't trust governments, the police, the media, or even the majority of your own countrymen to take your side, you're the only one you can rely upon.

In an actual free society, nothing stops those who long for a tribe from forming one. But in a welfare state your welfare has been defined by someone else, and you must accept it or else! Don't believe me? Try forming a social club that excludes blacks or women (ACWE's preferred groups) - you'll soon find yourself slapped with a lawsuit that you'll inevitably lose due to political meddling, you evil Nazi racist bigot misogynist reeeeee!

However, in the real world, it seems obvious that people shouldn't be allowed entry, given voting rights or allowed to hold public office simply for surviving long enough to reach an arbitrary date in their life after being born on your people's lands. Something given has no value, which is why citizenship should be EARNED. This includes citizenship in your group or tribe.

Building tribe starts with selecting a small (up to maybe 5) group of people you'd implicitly trust with your life- the kind of friends who'd rock up at your door at 3am, no questions asked, if you called them to get rid of a body (but seriously, don't ever mention anything like that over a phone) - this group forms your tribe's nucleus, and from there, you'll need to slowly and gradually expand by integrating their families and then, *after* SHTF, extended families and eventually, more people from their close friends and relatives as time goes on. However, initially you'll have your hands full just juggling the interactions with your core buddies and their wives and kids.

The thing to remember with any potential starting members is that the only thing that matters is politics and personality. Every other skill can be formed, drilled, taught or trained, but nothing can replace an individual's proper politics and personality. Better a group of 5 vaguely competent but politically consistent men striving together than 20 very competent men with radically different politics and personalities pulling in different directions. Unless you've got the resources to run some sort of multi-week boot-camp, there's very little you can do to change an adult's outlook. That's why proper personality and political outlook are so important - you won't have the time or resources to correct these aspects of the person, so choosing people wisely allows you to focus on what can actually be changed.

You'll need to start by considering and "profiling" your closest buddies and relatives, selecting only those who most closely fit the desired mental outlook. It's best to choose people living a half-hour's travel of each other or less. Best-case is you're living within a half-hour ***walk*** of each other or less – if you're preparing for SHTF/TEOTWAWKI/whatever and can't figure out "why" that is, stop reading this and kill yourself now. These people are the ones who'll form the nucleus of what you wish to create. Being with other people with similar views on a regular basis builds a sense of community. You come to recognize that these are friends you can depend on. Another benefit harks back to Franklin's adage about "*hanging together or hanging separately*"; being in a small cohesive group is a major benefit during periods of crisis.

You must ensure that each individual's politics match the desired state of being before accepting them. You can't just write a "*gunfags wanted*" advert on social media and expect anyone decent to rock up, and you must never, ever, ever discuss any sort of sensitive topic online or by phone – there's no substitution for face-to-face communication and interaction in this, no shortcuts that you can take. What you're trying to form in your proto-tribal nucleus is an inherently social-political organization that relies on group cohesion. This is also part of why you need physical closeness - if "your people" live outside your county or dare I say, more than 15 miles away, they won't be there when you really need them for real, they'll be in their own town.

You have limited resources time-wise. Spending time online, or gaming, means you're not spending it with people close to you. You're sacrificing your community for those interactions. The internet is a useful tool for learning things and solving problems. But it can also be destructive in that it makes you useless without it telling you how to do something, or you can even get addicted to it. A community is the people you live among, the people who you can trust with your physical safety. There's no community on the internet, it's just words on a screen. The internet is also a good way to distance yourself from those around you and further divides communities. People who wish to preserve their own don't do it by posting online now do they?

If you're some sort of loner without friends, get offline and join a local church or community club, or turn one of your hobbies into a more social format. As useful as the internet is, it's far too regulated, supervised, and censored to be a useful tool for anything involving the sort of sensitive concerns we have. Groups such as militias with an online presence (eg. the "Michigan Militia") and others are obvious honeypots designed to attract and trap those too foolish to realize it.

56. Avoiding Problems.

Be quick to listen and slow to speak - most people tend to speak openly about uncontroversial topics (and many speak far too openly about controversial ones too) but scumbags are sly. Watch their body language, what they *don't* say often speaks way louder then what they do say. You can often tell who is a thief by watching who is most frightened of having something stolen. Likewise, if you find someone either too keen to accuse others of being an infiltrator, or who avoids the topic excessively, then that person may well be an infiltrator themselves – this is why I am emphasizing face-to-face communication and interaction. Without it, you'll always be in the dark about the personalities of members, and a change in their personality may well be an indicator that something is wrong. When someone acts paranoid about their personal matters and conceals who they really are while pushing for greater involvement in, or access to, your group's information or activity your reaction has to be rejection of that individual, no matter how promising they seem.

One of the most common dangers today for members of political groups is that some police agency looking for a spectacular arrest will infiltrate the group and manufacture a bunch of charges against them, accusing them of everything from breaching the tax code, to weapon law violations, to hate crimes to terrorism. Isn't that right, Joe? Now, now, Joe, it's nothing to be too ashamed of - we understand that those mortgage payments are getting harder and harder to make. It would be nice if you'd believe us that we're not going to be robbing banks, building machine guns, or blowing things up, but I suppose your bosses need to justify their snitch budget somehow.

Trying to recruit the drinking buddy you met last weekend, because "*he's good dude, and we got shared values*", is a recipe for having your proto-tribe infiltrated by bad people. As obvious as that sounds, it happens. Even a "*friend*" that someone has "*known*" for six months to a year or more, may not be a suitable candidate, depending on the depth of the relationship. In fact, the classic way Gestapo/KGB types infiltrate groups is to bust one previously trusted member (let's call him Tom) for a real or fabricated "crime", or one of their loved ones, then get them to vouch for the undercover guy - "*This is my old friend Joe, he's a stand-up guy, we should let him into our group*." If Tom arrives with a stranger who you've not already known for quite some time and been carefully observing, the solution is to pretend to accept the story about Joe, act as though your group is just a drinking club, then quietly eliminate Tom for being a lying traitor once Joe leaves to make his report.

If a member or prospective member ever starts talking about any sort of illegal activity, even simply mentioning that they occasionally smoke dope or whatever, in a clear loud voice state firmly and unequivocally that you're not interested in any sort of illegal activity, do not tolerate or condone any such activities, and aren't going to participate. This is to ensure that the wire they're undoubtedly wearing picks up your rejection (of course, the person could simply be nuts). Don't say anything else after that, and leave. Make sure to secretly record any initial interviews with prospective members for the same reason, and leave permanent copies of the audio recordings with a trusted member in a secure location that cannot be raided by regime authorities, at least until you're absolutely certain about the individual.

This is also a reason to not give your group a name, and that any other group that your group is involved with (eg. a wargaming society that plays out apocalyptic scenarios on the weekends) also has an inoffensive name. Yes, it does sound cooler that your tribal nucleus occasionally attends the meetings of the "*Terminator Assault Death Squad*", but let's assume that SHTF happens, and we find ourselves dealing with the Empire of Evil expanding across the land of the former USA. Picture yourself as a general commanding the EoE forces while reviewing your intelligence reports. On the left you see you're facing the forces of the "*Terminator Assault Death Squad*", while on the right you see you have the "*Shitsville Civil Defense Amateur Wargaming Society*". Which one do you use airstrikes and tanks against, and which one faces off against your basic draftee infantry troops?

Less extreme example: a massive hurricane levels a good part of your town. Your group helps local businesses to deter looting and pillaging in the aftermath. Do you honestly think L&P types will care what the name of the group staring at them over a barricade will be? The L&P types are just going to see organized and disciplined - that's right, self-organized and self-disciplined - members of the community working to keep it safe. The famous Roof Koreans of the LA riots provide a textbook example of this – they were part of a community and despite not having a name for their organization, their ad-hoc community self-defense team was completely successful in protecting their livelihoods.

It's not a well-known fact, but during the LA Riots the LADP's Korean officers provided the famous Roof Koreans with ammunition, direction, intel, and actively resisted the LAPD's attempts to stop them defending themselves. The media and the LA mayor begged the LAPD to stop those evil Koreans shooting the sweet and innocent mostly-peaceful diverse rioters. But the LAPD said no because the LAPD's Korean officers made it very clear that they'd shoot their fellow cops if they did so, and with the legitimacy that comes with the uniform all the Roof Top Koreans would also fight back against the cops. LAPD leadership realized they'd lose and thus refused to arrest them. Without the support of their co-ethnic bretheren, they'd have been left defenseless.

Remember to not allow any member to be separated and detained for any defensive act (anonymity will go a long way towards this).

57. Manufacturing Tribal Identity

Let me start with a long quote from John Mosby's excellent book "*Forging the Hero*":

> *"... in The Fate of Empires, Glubb hastens to point out that the decadence that signals the collapse of culture is a decadence of the civilization, and not necessarily of the individual citizenry. The character and vigor of the society is corrupted and softened by the comfort of its riches. The people—as a culture—become selfish, lazy, and idle; a community of selfishness necessarily falls into a cultural state of indolence and apathy about anything except the division of the rapidly diminishing available wealth. The people become far more concerned about increasing—or at least maintaining—their individual material wealth and comfortable luxury than they're in recognizing, let alone displaying, the ardor that their ancestors displayed in building an empire .... Within this torpor of moral and physical vigor however, there's no way for the people to redirect their thoughts and energies. There are exceptions though. In Rome, a school of philosophy arose called Stoicism, that recognized this weakening and sought, within its adherents, to reverse those trends by encouraging them to not become overly focused on the luxuries.*
>
> ***When individual members—or small groups of individuals, such as families or companies of companions—of the declining culture emigrate however, and find themselves in new surroundings, where the material luxuries are not as readily accessible, they don't remain discernibly dissolute. Once they have separated themselves from the depravity of their native culture, and have endured a short period of integration into the new ways of thinking mandated by their new surroundings, they discover —from the necessity of sheer human survival instinct—a renewed vigor and thirst for the necessary virtues of community service, energy, hardiness, and other pioneering virtues.***
>
> *The decline into decadence then, Glubb argues, does not necessarily undermine the inherent cultural character of its members, despite the common complaint among seemingly every generation as it ages that, "today's kids are useless.[37]" He posits that, transported out of the decadence of their old environment, they soon discard the corruption of laziness, and prove their worth as the equals of their ancestors."*

(Ch.1 p.39, emphasis added) - this would indicate that even absent a (desirable) *physical* separation from the current ruling civilization, one could separate culturally and instil in their children their own tribal values rather than those of the dominant civilization. A very old and successful rallying-cry is that of being "*oppressed*" by the ruling regime: it worked in 1776, when a moderate 3% tax on imported goods was seized upon as a rallying-cry for independence, and it can work now, though there's no actual need to actually overthrow the present regime, merely to outlast it. The USA has been pretty intent on crushing Christianity since 1945, hasn't it? hmmm.....

Of course, having the ability to pick up and run internationally is still important, if not for you then for the safety of your young children. Get and keep the longest-duration passport possible, because even going to Mexico or Canada requires it, which you might have to do to trade after SHTF, for example. It's unlikely that any nation would be as happy to allow "*John Smith, citizen of the independent Cascadian Republic*" through their borders on business, but they would probably be happy to have "*John Smith, US citizen*" visiting, even if the US is busy imploding at that point.

Tribal groups deliberately separate themselves from mainstream society, even if only partially, to preserve their in-group identity. Other, non-religious groups that do the same include Gypsies, jews, etc. - in each case they deliberately give preference to their own group of people and where possible, exclude other groups, even going so far as to isolate themselves from the mainstream culture of the place they live in, each to a greater or lesser degree.

For examples, leftists in the USA and Europe don't truly believe in freedom for everyone, even though they claim that. They believe in freedom for everyone in their group - they create justifications and exceptions to who is included in that "*everyone*". The same goes for blacks in the USA - they care very much about blacks, even individuals they don't know and might even personally hate, but when a black person is arrested for a crime they actually did, they unquestioningly rise up to defend them no matter what. That is tribalism in action.

The best and simplest way to start cultivating a separate identity is to limit or reduce access to television and the internet - no need to go as far as the Amish, but certainly avoid leaving your kids in front of the TV every evening to have Hollywood's mental filth forced into their minds. If and when your children ask questions about what they might see, frame your answers to emphasise that your ways are different, and better. Be a people of doers, not watchers.

Find ways to link your present with the past, even if the links are fictional. Cultivate a healthy founding myth, perhaps the town already has one that you can expand and even embellish on a little. Look at the founding myth of the US itself- the fictional story of "brave men resisting British injustice", or what the LDS has done with the mythos of their John Smith, or even look at ancient ones such as the founding mythos of Rome or other nations. Instil pride in your town's tribal identity, encourage your children to imitate your tribe's hero-figures, to be larger than life.

The word denoting a tribal kinsman in proto-Indo-European was '***heryos***,' from which our own word *hero* comes today. This gives you an inkling of the attitude that once existed, and which you must cultivate again - every free man of your tribe or your people was a *heryos*. Cognates of *heryos* in the various languages derived from archaic Indo-European generally translate to the local word for "noble", as in nobility or lordship. This is likely due to the manner in which Indo-Europeans established their societies in the lands they conquered: a band of Indo-European warriors would conquer an existing society, depose its nobility, and impose their culture and beliefs from above in much the same way the Normans conquered Britain in 1066 and replaced the pre-existing Anglo-Saxon ruling class. Genetic evidence indicates that instances of archaic Indo-Europeans wiping out and replacing entire populations were extremely rare - largely restricted to a handful of cases in North Europe and Central Asia around their original homelands between the Ural steppe and Kazakhstan (from where they were later driven out themselves by the Huns and other proto-Mongol peoples); almost everywhere else they only replaced the pre-existing elites.

"*For most of human history, the art of the hero wasn't left up to chance; it was a multidisciplinary endeavor devoted to optimal nutrition, physical self-mastery, and mental conditioning. The hero's skills were studied, practiced, and perfected, then passed along from parent to child and teacher to student. The art of the hero wasn't about being brave; it was about being so competent that bravery wasn't an issue. You weren't supposed to go down for a good cause; the goal was to figure out a way not to go down at all. Achilles and Odysseus and the rest of the classical heroes hated the thought of dying and scratched for every second of life. A hero's one crack at immortality was to be remembered as a champion, and champions don't die dumb. It all hinged on the ability to unleash the tremendous resources of strength, endurance, and agility that many people don't realize they already have*."
- Christopher McDougall, "*Natural Born Heroes*"



Children learn by watching, and the future belongs to those who show up. How would you see your children arrive in their future? Copies of some fat lazy slob who stinks of week-old sweat and can't even be bothered getting up off the grease-stained couch to find the TV remote, or powerful and determined men and women of action, sleek and bold, fearless and determined?

Make heroes of yourselves, and they shall follow. Strive to ensure the survival not so much of yourself, but of your kith and kin. If at first, this is an act, a mask you wear, so what - there will come a time when you no longer need the mask, no longer need to act, because you'll have become what you worked so hard to be. In ancient times Aristotle said: "*practice virtue to acquire virtue"*, or as some modern wit put it: "***fake it till you make it".*** A man is what he does. A "*man who does evil deeds but really he's got a good heart*" is a lie leftists use to defend the wicked.



The value of a hero is not, ultimately, to live forever. It's to give an example of behavior to strive for. We need to live the Way of the Hero, not so much for ourselves, as for our children, that they will learn these lessons, to pass on to *their* children, so the values of our tribe will live on. They will see you as you rise and fall and rise again and again, struggling ever upwards to live the Way of the Hero. They will gather the benefit of your struggle, because it gives them a moral exemplar to strive for. I am not Achilles. I am not Hector. I am not Arminius. I am not Ragnar. I am not Roland or Charlemagne. I am not Joshua or David or Daniel. I am just me, but I can strive to be LIKE those men, and in so doing, I am better, and my tribe is better.

58. It Begins In The Mind

Geneticist Richard Dawkins proposed the idea that transmission of human culture involved units of ideas or beliefs he called *memes,* analogous to *genes* for biological traits. Tribes can be considered to be complex meme-groups used by human groups to preserve and protect their members through the creation and protection of a shared identity. Social rituals, such as the Pledge of Allegiance, standing for a national anthem, the swearing-in of a new judge, etc. are excellent examples of social memes that our culture uses to create a shared identity.

If a meme complex is selected for virulence, for example if it's transmitted by street-corner preaching, it's going to be a cult, will have characteristics likely to be harmful to the host, think of the Jonestown cult in 1978, immortalized in the phrase "*drinking the kool-aid*".

If memes reproduce from parent to child, then in the long run, surviving memes will be favorable to the people that hold them, and will reflect the characteristics of those who successfully reproduce, such as behaviors which promote responsibility, clear thinking, good behavior and other long-term rewards rather than impulsive short-term rewards such as theft.

If a meme complex is state transmitted, the meme complex will reflect the values of a successful state. If it's a culturally conservative meme that claims to transmit the wisdom of your forefathers, it generally works tolerably well, even if imperfectly. If, on the other hand, it becomes a tool for power struggles, it will continually change to become ever more extreme, as each of the ~~pharisees~~ politician-priests work to be holier than the others, resulting in a purity spiral.

Memes that reproduce through state pressure and state-sponsored evangelism, are going to undergo natural selection for successful reproduction under state pressure and state-sponsored evangelism, and when the state is engaged in a purity spiral, the memes are very likely to be hostile to family survival and favorable to ever-greater state intrusion in everyday life.

Soft power, the power of the state department, is the power that accrues to a state by propagating its belief system beyond its borders. Within the borders, we see that progressive citizens who have internalized progressive memes don't reproduce at anywhere near replacement rate, while on the other hand conservatives with their conservative memes, do. But progressives have set things up so that conservatives have to send their children to educational institutions controlled by progressives, essentially feeding their children to Moloch. What kind of meme-complex do you think is present within ACWE at present, and do you think it's friendly or unfriendly towards family survival?

You must reject these anti-survival state-transmitted memes and replace them with tribal-based, family-friendly memes that will actually benefit your people. Bear in mind that requires largely isolating your children from the existing memetic indoctrination system. Your official tribal belief system (meme) should squeeze out and discourage more virulent memes, eg. street-corner memes, without, however, discouraging and displacing parentally-transmitted memes. Parentally-transmitted memes should be encouraged, protected, and supported, but individuals who deviate from your official tribal meme/belief system should **not** be allowed access to any political power.

While amending existing social or religious rituals and traditions is difficult, introducing new supposedly ancient rituals and traditions is relatively easy. A good example of introducing new but supposedly ancient,5 traditions is the Scottish clan tartans. As described in the book "*The Invention of Tradition*", the Scots historically wore whatever cloth was locally available from the nearest spinnery, and different clans didn't actually use specific tartans. The usage of different tartans to distinguish clans is a late 18th century invention, introduced through the influence of romanticism by Anglicised Scots long after the Scottish clans ceased to have any meaningful existence in any social or political sense.

59. Purity Spirals: What They Are, How They Work And What They Do

I'm going to explain what a purity spiral is, because the concept of it which I used in the page above comes up a few times in this book, and because I found an excellent explanation, so I'll use it for your benefit. Read on, and you can look smart and philosophical when talking to people about such topics.

A "purity spiral" aka a "holiness spiral" occurs when a group of people try to outdo each other in expressions of ideological piety, i.e. "holiness".

The USA's current holiness spiral is a leftist one (they usually are). A key part of a spiral is that participants are expected to attack those to their political right as an expression of leftist piety, but not to their left. They have an inherent tendency to accelerate (see below).

An example of the leftist acceleration in our present spiral:

- Between gay marriage first being openly and seriously mentioned in the public media, to when leftists started calling opponents of gay marriage "bigots", was about 15 years.
- The time from the start of "Transvestite Lib" to the moment leftists called a man refusing to kiss a tranny a "bigot" was only about 3 years. **https://archive.is/LLSfO**

The process was summarized and intensified by whatever leftist asshole (but I'm repeating myself there…) came up with the slogan: "*No enemies to the left, no friends to the right*". This explicitly creates incentive for leftists to only attack people to their right, meaning that the further left you position yourself (that is, the lefter your leftist ideological piety is), the fewer the leftists that will be on your left to attack you. This is similar to how muslims, including supposedly moderate muslims, generally follow a policy of having no real friends that are less islamic, and no enemies that are more islamic, invariably leading to increasing extremism in islamic communities.

What determines whether the leftist mob attacks you isn't how far left you are, but rather how far left you are ***compared to the other leftists***. That's what creates leftward acceleration, and that is why leftists claim (for example) that the German National Socialists aren't leftists, even though they once (back in 1939) agreed they were (for example the famous socialist author George Orwell called them socialist in 1939) - leftism has moved so far to the left, that what was once in the middle of the leftist mob is now far to their right.

It works like so: if a progressive (call him Fred), notices the rapid leftward movement, he is incentivized to move leftward as well, to stay in the middle of his group. In fact, to be safe, Fred has an incentive to move left a little faster than he expects the others to move, giving him a margin for error (so at worst he stays in the middle of the crowd, and at best he's a little left of average, so he's somewhat holier than average). So, if Fred thinks the leftist crowd move leftward at 10 miles per hour, his optimal move is to move leftward at 12 miles per hour, for his own safety. If everyone catches on and thinks like Fred, then everyone moves at 12mph, and if anyone notices the mob moves left at 12mph, they move left at 14mph, and so on.

Purity/holiness spirals continue until they're stopped either by force of arms (think: civil war), someone taking over and seriously stomping the brakes with hardcore punishments for anyone trying to out-holy everyone else (think: Stalin or Hitler), or until everybody goes as extreme as possible, and everyone not leftist enough is brutally tortured to death (think: Cambodian Genocide) - when the ideology causing the spiral still has plenty of life to it, even all three at once.

We're not quite at the stage of having an *overt* civil war here in the US, but we *are* in a civil war, and have been for at least a couple of years now, whether you've realized that or not.

There are other possible outcomes, of course. For example, at some point during the Salem Witch Persecutions, the situation simply became too extreme, with everybody at risk because anyone could accuse anyone else of being a witch. And it finally became obvious that innocent people were being executed when people on the gallows refused to confess and recant, and went to their deaths instead. So the thing was stopped, because the incentive to speak up became overwhelming, since you were likely to be called a witch and sentenced to death no matter what, causing people to snap out of it and suddenly agree that the entire thing was complete bullshit.

It would be good if people try to push things in that direction. The most obvious example is to make it clear to White people that this is tending toward the most holy thing of all, as leftists currently define holiness, which is horribly torturing all White people to death because "racism". Their desired leftist end-state of a *Weiss-frei* USA isn't guaranteed, but the civil war they'll cause in their attempt would create an astoundingly large pile of bodies on both sides. Getting White folks to see where this is headed is one way to increase the number of people pushing back.

An important point to note is that as public awareness of the concept of holiness spirals spreads, it increases the incentive for participants to move leftward faster, but it ***also*** increases the incentive for everyone else to resist – partly why the American left went berserk when Trump was elected.

You see, most people in a spiral participate because they perceive it to be their safest option. The more people oppose the spiral, it becomes safer to exit the spiral. That's crucial - in fact it's one reason the left tries to prevent people from realizing that there's widespread opposition to left-wing ideas. They know a preference cascade* can end their spiral and ruin their fun.
*(**http://web.archive.org/web/20210625084808/https://spinstrangenesscharm.wordpress.com/2017/12/30/preference-cascades-and-the-fall-of-the-ceaucescu-regime/**)

A preference cascade is a critical mass of people saying, "*The orthodoxy is bullshit*", which encourages others to join in, until the orthodoxy is destroyed. A well-known example of a purity spiral ending in a preference cascade is the story of the Emperor Who Had No Clothes - everyone could see he was naked, but was too afraid to say so until the child spoke up. Preference cascades can occur in environments where everyone lies about their preferences. It may be because you lie for self-protection – e.g., in the USSR circa 1940, you'd say Stalin was wonderful, or else off to the gulag. It could also be because you don't want to say things that will make you unpopular, etc.

This is the motivation behind the mass censorship and de-platforming. The people inside the political system are incapable of competently defending or even discussing their positions and they live in fear of having to do it. It's not so much that the critics have great arguments or have superior debating skills. That's just silly. It's simply that the people outside the system, the dissidents, us, are comfortable defending their positions and discussing them in public. They can take a punch, so to speak. ACWE's leaders are no longer capable of it. Think of the decadent court of Louis XVI for a parallel – can you seriously imagine one of the courtiers present in the king's court competently arguing any sort of policy? Can you seriously imagine a supporter of feminism or any currently popular leftist ideology calmly and rationally defending their worldview when confronted by someone with an opposing viewpoint and the data to back it up?

This underlying sense of weakness is probably what lies behind the persecution of the January 6th protestors. From the perspective of the ruling class this was an emperor has no clothes moment. The torture and torment of the protestors is as much about reassuring themselves that they're tough and in charge as much as it's about sending a message to the plebs. The ruling class revealed themselves to be cowards and now they're lashing out in a fit of petty spite.

However, there are always evil people who actually enjoy attacking others - these are the ones who generally start spirals in the first place. Just pointing and laughing at leftists, even after a preference cascade, won't be enough to stop such individuals. It's likely that it'll be necessary to violently discourage anyone who continues to try and participate in holiness signalling – that kind of person will sadly only stop participating once they're dead.

60. Rituals: Pomp And Ceremony

The whole point of ritual practices is that being arbitrary, they signify group membership and group solidarity. Your tribal social rituals should be performed by everyone in the same way and should be unchanging. For example, early jewish ritual food practices had the practical effect of actual cleanliness (at least compared to their tribal neighbors), the symbolic effect of defining non-jewish gentiles as being unclean, and finally, demonstrating loyalty to the community. Like all social rituals, this provided (and provides even now) the effect of linking all the people who practice those rituals in the exact same way to the past, to the future, and to each other.

You should therefore create or resurrect some "ancient rituals" for your tribe. These should be public actions and behaviors your tribe expects from members that aren't intolerably difficult to do - perhaps like the jews you could introduce some dietary rules, just perhaps not as many as they have. You could have some reasonable ones, such forbidding refined sugar or the mixing of two specific foods, just look at how LDS (Mormons) don't allow caffeine or alcohol. Perhaps like the Sikhs, you could agree to forbid eating foods that have been blessed as halal by muslims. Whatever it is, something like this will help to create your group identity - but you need to agree to impose this and then actually enforce it, shaming and punishing anyone who breaks the rules.

You could do something similar with clothing, for example by finding some biblical justification for your people only wearing blue underwear or white socks or whatever, this is present among Gypsies, who will never wear shorts even if they go shirtless, for example, or how Sikh men are obligated to carry a ceremonial dagger or sword and bear an iron bracelet (the dagger is often a tiny symbolic plastic one nowadays). The LDS are renowned for their special underwear, also.

One thing you should *definitely* have is an official "coming-of-age" manhood ritual for your sons and young men. There's no need for it to be quite as dangerous as the origin of bungee-jumping, but it should still be something that will challenge a young lad of 16 to 18, both physically and mentally. Those who fail need to feel shame, and be constantly reminded of that, at least until they pass it with the following year's young lads. It really, truly needs to be fucking HARD, otherwise they will not feel as though it's worth doing or that they've earned their new status as men in your community, and the young men who pass must be publicly acclaimed as **men** by your community in some sort of ceremony, complete with celebration and feasting. Think of how men were knighted, or how soldiers swear their oaths when enlisting, for inspiration here. Ritually present them with a dagger and a slap to remind them they're mortal after all, that kind of thing.

For one example to get you thinking, there are African tribes where boys of twelve are sent alone into the wilderness butt-naked, painted white and armed only with a spear. Only once all the paint flakes off, and he has hunted down and killed some dangerous animal alone, can he return to the tribe. The point is he has to survive on his own, away from the comfort and support of the tribe, and when he returns, he is no longer a boy but has become a man. Another example in a very different context is the "crucible" of Marine Corps basic training – it provides a very definite before-and-after marker to a young marine.

When a child matures to adulthood and has gone through your coming-of-age rituals, they must be allowed to choose whether to stay with your people or leave, much like the Amish practice of rumspringa. This provides an important safety-valve to get rid of malcontents peacefully. They can choose to leave the community or tribe if they want, but they cannot simply choose to come back as they wish. Those who choose to stay publicly agree to obey the laws, teachings, and customs of the tribe (best done via a formal oath-taking ceremony). Under very, very rare occasions, you might decide that an individual who abandoned the tribe and left has truly repented and seen the error of their ways, and the council might agree to allow them to return. This is best done with a 3/4 majority vote, and by placing the person as a ward under the guardianship of (most likely) a parent or similar person for a time (say, 5 years minimum). During that time the person must be carefully observed for compliance with your customs and traditions, and thrown out if they fail to fit in – those thrown out a second time should not be allowed to return again.

If you successfully build and thereafter protect your tribe during the initial stages of the crisis, there's the longer term, or intermediate stage with which to contend. The government or it's remnants will no doubt be a player, and they may even be now studying Dave Kilcullen's recipe for twenty first century stability operations.
(**https://gt2030.com/2012/07/18/the-city-as-a-system-future-conflict-and-urban-resilience/**)

When the time comes (probably after the collapse makes copyright law irrelevant) rewrite history books to give emphasis to aspects that will benefit your tribe, discarding the poisonous guilt-instilling trappings of postmodernism. You should already have rejected or edited any history book that clashes with your tribal identity and morals by that point- for example, rejecting anything that generates "White guilt" or similar things if you're of European background, etc.

In the meantime, you'll benefit greatly by preparing a "Cliff's notes" abbreviated version of history from your own tribal viewpoint. This has no need to be a Bible of unquestionable accuracy, or a massively-sourced document to beat academics over the head with, it merely needs to lay out the broad sweep of what has gone before should someone come along and say to you: "*Ok, you say the official history is a pile of bullshit. Fine - what really happened*?". Finer details can be added as time goes on, ideally with quotes and extensive links to old books written by people contemporary to the events. This would be a wonderfully curative anti-thesis for our current "history" which is written like a malicious game of telephone, with a Wikipedia-like aversion to primary sources.

For example, ACWE has now had over seven decades to fine-tune their narrative of WW2 events, while those who presently might simply summarise their position as "the bad guys won" have not. So the "the bad guys won" tribe needs to start with a very broad brush, and work over time to ever-finer detail. The same applies to all sorts of historical events. This fine detail can be as simple as careful selection of the captions attached to historical images, see this for an example of the difference a negative, neutral, and positive caption can make (the central caption is the one I found it with):



However, a caution - be very careful your group does not enter into a purity spiral. Cambodia's Khmer Rouge started off full of very smart western-educated intellectuals, and the blueprint for the new socialist nation of Cambodia was initially a PhD thesis. In the end its cadre members were illiterate and innumerate, unable to count except on their fingers, due to constant purges of all dissenters. This same dynamic happens often among left-leaning groups, and would likely also happen in right-leaning groups, depending on their specific political beliefs (however, this has not actually been documented as happening in any right-leaning groups that we actually know about).

Basically, get together, form a community in an isolated small town, get the locals on-side, and isolate as much as possible while playing the poor dumb peasants whenever the government's jackbooted thugs roll around to loot. John Mosby's book, "*Forging The Hero"* goes into far more detail about to actively build tribe, with plenty of historical examples to follow.

61. Creating The Future - The Issue Of Children

Once you get to the point where rich families can raise their kids separately from problems and plebs you start to get politicians, senior officials, and officers who start their careers without an understanding of anything other than high society. At the start the smallish number of men can be taught/trained to act sensibly, but once you get a critical mass of idiot rich boys (and girls) in charge that changes the culture of your leadership and it's all downhill from there. It happened to Rome, it happened to France, it happened to Britain, it's happening to America. In a century at most it will be happening to China.



The "elite" seem to have utterly lost sight of the most important thing a society, any society, must achieve if it's to survive. That most important thing is reproduction. Without it a society has no future. Only women can actually do this, hence that should be their first priority. Sure, they should also do other things if they can be fitted in. Those who can't have children should help out any way they can, including defense. But what point defending a society that's dying out?
See: **https://archive.is/4mdSI** (this may possibly point to the underlying reasons for the antimilitarism pushed onto Europeans since 1945)

The French president Emmanuel Macron is childless. German chancellor Angela Merkel is childless. Recent British prime minister Theresa May and Italian prime minister Paolo Gentiloni are childless. Holland's prime minister, Mark Rutte, Sweden's Stefan Löfven, Luxembourg's Xavier Bettel, and Scotland's, first minster Nicola Sturgeon - all childless. Latvia's childless president is Raimonds Vējonis, Lithuania's is Dalia Grybauskaitė, and Romania's is Klaus Werner Iohannis. Jean-Claude Juncker, president of the European Commission also has no children... the list goes on… To put it bluntly, a grossly disproportionate number of people making serious decisions about Europe's future have no stake in that future. They aren't part of a family and their attention has focused on one dominant and all-powerful social unit to which they pay obeisance and give their complete and devoted attention: The State.

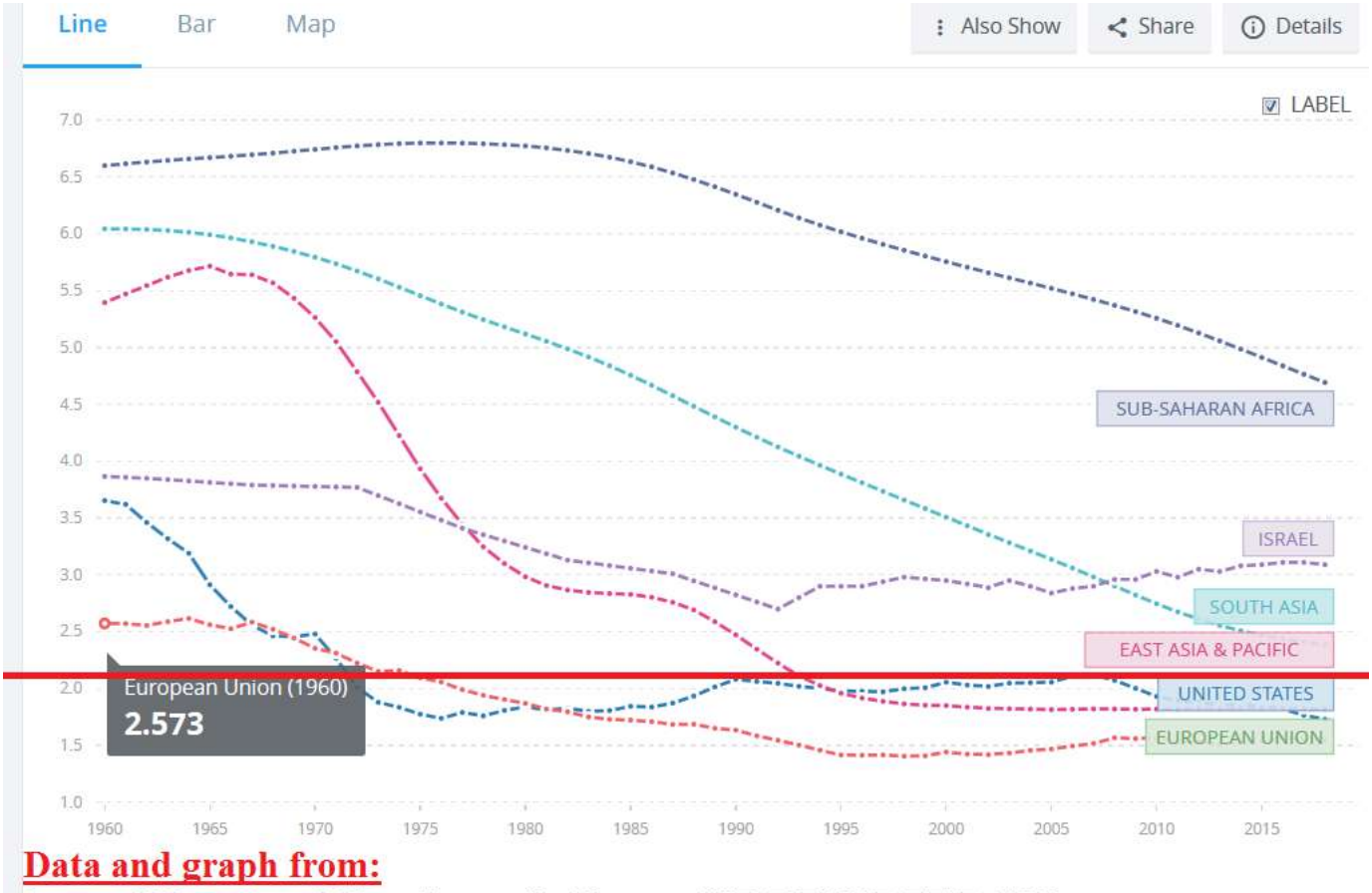
The anti-family attitude among the ACWE-indoctrinated elites has led to a collapse of fertility in countries under their direct control. A proof of this is the below-replacement birth-rates of every major western nation. The one exception is the westernised nation of Israel, which is perhaps the sole remaining ethno-state on Earth, and the only advanced industrialized country whose fertility rate is above replacement levels. [see one of the methods used, here: **https://archive.is/wFOOe**]



The content of the "*Jaffe Memo*" (look it up), particularly the graph within titled "*Proposed measures to reduce fertility by universality or selectivity of impact in the US"* also indicate that the present low birthrates in Western Nations are deliberate, and have been created by process of deliberate public policies. This parallels the inscription of the "Georgia Guidestones" which indicates that our elites wish to reduce world population to under a billion humans.

Meanwhile, the reality is that the world is **not** overpopulated[(1)] and it's unlikely to become so even when/if world population reaches 10 Billion in the next century, anyone who believes that simply needs to get out of the city they live in and look around the countryside – nor will we run out of resources (another common claim to fearmonger and gain acceptance for genocidal policies).
([1] See this excellent 1hr presentation on population: **https://yewtu.be/FACK2knC08E** ,
Or if you can tolerate Jordan Peterson (I can't), see this 9-min video where he talks about the toxicity of the overpopulation meme: **https://yewtu.be/GcA3rI19jYM**)

What we *do* have is an issue of resource transportation and distribution (esp. of food)[(2)], and if we ever crack the issue of fusion[(3)], or at least embrace modern 5th-gen fission, we could have several times our present population living in considerable luxury and comfort on Earth, while reducing the need for urban sprawl and (under the proper circumstances) even farmland to a fraction of our present usage. We have had the idea and plans for arcologies[(4)] since the 1970's, but are yet to build any. These would enable us to dramatically condense cities to reduce sprawl, and return considerable swaths of land presently smothered under concrete and asphalt to wilderness. Pleistocene rewilding is perfectly possible if we stop building out and start building upwards.
([2]: watch this 12-min presentation summarizing the *actual* problems we presently have regarding population and resource distribution: **https://yewtu.be/27Ktr1mxP2g**)
([3]: The essential problem of magnetic plasma containment was solved in the 70's before the project was shelved and funding stopped, however that approach has since been ignored in favor of the tokamak model, and I no longer recall the name of the approach that worked)
([4] See this presentation on arcologies: **https://yewtu.be/TqKQ94DtS54** The non-residential counterpart to arcologies are "*agro-industrial parks*" in use in various nations on a small scale, you can read about a 1966 US study of the concept here: **https://archive.is/IzPOj**)



Data and graph from:
https://data.worldbank.org/indicator/SP.DYN.TFRT.IN?contextual=default&locations=US-EU-ZG-Z4-8S-IL

Copies of the page are archived at web.archive.org and also at:
https://archive.is/UY9sF

The horizontal red line is the stable replacement level of 2.1

https://web.archive.org/web/20210111123012/https://data.worldbank.org/indicator/SP.DYN.TFRT.IN?contextual=default&locations=US-EU-ZG-Z4-8S-IL

Societies can afford some percentage of fertile women failing to bear children but not the majority. We must get away from teaching girls that their status comes from roles normally carried out by men, it's killing our society and too often, it results in horrifically unhappy women, after they've run their biological clock out too far in pursuit of a career as a financial helper. It's no surprise that studies indicate that the more equal the sexes are in a nation, the more unhappy the women are. (Ref. **https://archive.is/goJ0f** and **https://archive.is/U0ic1**)

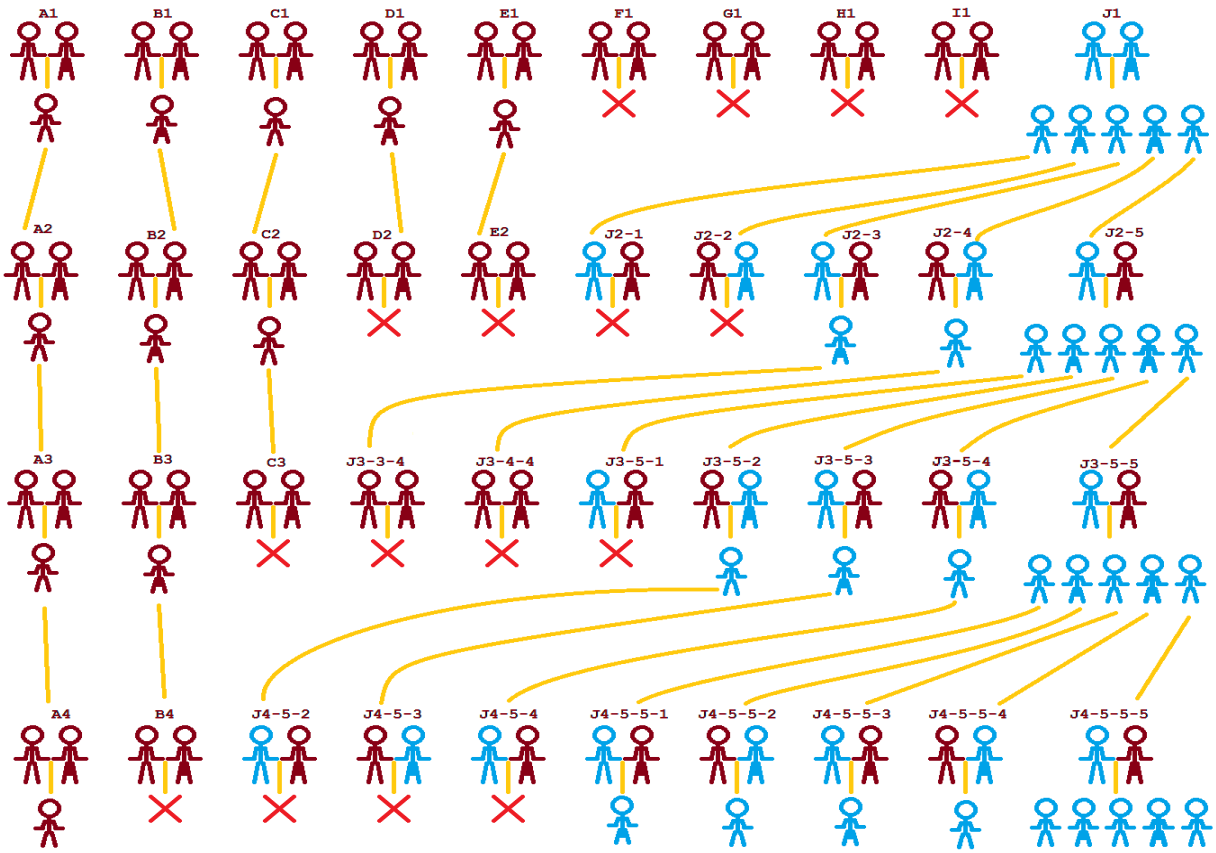
China's demographics are important, and provide a prime justification of my concern for in-group fertility. China's one-child policy and her sudden fertility collapse is creating a demographic disaster. The typical Chinese person right now is a 40-year-old unmarried and childless man, who most likely lives in a city, one of over 40,000,000 such men. The equivalent Chinese woman is outnumbered nearly three-to-one so she would have married "up" to a richer man, however unless she married a millionaire, she is probably childless and focused on her career. The collapse of Chinese fertility means China is the fastest-aging population in history. As the average Chinese reaches old age, China is set for a population collapse, as their elderly die off and aren't replaced. This will collapse their economy and society, leaving room for anyone who comes by with a higher fertility rate to take over, such as the Mongols, central Asians, or Indians.

We see the same thing in Europe, where it was the indirect result of social policies created for similar misguided reasons (**https://archive.is/4mdSI**) Prominent islamic historian Prof. Bernard Lewis is mentioned as having said as much in an article in the Jerusalem Post:
"*...He dismissed Europe in a few sentences, a continent doomed to Islamist domination by dint of its own "self-abasement... in the name of political correctness and multiculturalism*""

Consider a suburban street with ten families living on it - let's say five of them (families **A** to **E**) have one child each, four (families **F** to **I**) have no children, and one (family **J**) has five children.

Notice that a full <u>half</u> of the next generation is descended from family J.

Now run this through several generations, with family **J's** descendants consistently having more kids than the rest - congratulations, you just realized how clans and tribes worked for the last 10 millennia. If you're not copying (or at least planning to copy) family **J**, you could easily become a minority in your own lands in as little as a single generation, and have lost the game before it even began.



According to research published in the medical journal ***The Lancet***, and funded (in part) by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation, the world's population is expected to peak at below 10 billion people in 2064. (**https://www.thelancet.com/journals/lancet/article/PIIS0140-6736(20)30677-2/fulltext**) One hundred and fifty-one countries (of a total of 195) would have below-replacement fertility rates by 2050, rising to 183 countries with below-replacement fertility by 2100. In that year, the world population will have declined to about 8.75 billion people.

From that point onwards, Earth's human population will drop by a full Billion every decade to an unknown but very small rump population, probably numbering a few hundred million - a genetic bottleneck of catastrophic proportions, especially considering nearly all the nations projected to retain above-replacement fertility are African shitholes of dramatically substandard average intelligence (sub-80-IQ)* (for one example Nigeria -*average IQ: 84*- is expected to have more people than China by 2100), as well as the nation of Israel, which has so far ignored Universalist propaganda (however note that Israel's high fertility exists almost entirely amongst their Orthodox jewish population). The effect of present trends of aging, diminishing populations is most obvious in Europe: **https://archive.is/4mdSI [* https://tinyurl.com/ChildMirrorTestBroesch2010pdf]**

The fertility rate for societies not in free-fall is a minimum of 2.1 children per woman.
What is essential to achieve a 2.1+ fertility rate:
> Ensuring fathers can support an entire family (husband, wife, and 2-3 children)
> Legislatively supporting the husband's authority as the head of the family
> Legally defining the family as the basic unit of society, rather than the individual
> Encouraging men and women to marry and have children earlier in life
> Making divorce more difficult (esp. elimination of "no-fault" divorce)
> Getting women out of the work-force to drive up wages and ensure good care of offspring
> Encouraging and supporting large families through incentives, loans, tax breaks, etc
> Banning pornography (too bad coomers) and de-incentivising sterile casual sex

masturbate to an image or video of *someone else* having sex when you can simply get some actual sex from your wife/fiancée/girlfriend? "*B…. but what if she doesn't want to*?" you say. And I say: learn to play the game friend. There's even a book about it by Roosh, the title is "*Game*". Another useful book for younger people is "*Dating Radar*" which will teach you how to spot red flags.

There's an absolute mass of evidence that humans have exhibited pair-bonding for a **very** long time, on the order of a million years, and that the normative state is monogamy, serial monogamy or similar. Monogamy facilitates civilization by reducing competition between men and creates incentives for men to mutually support each other and cooperate so they can raise more children together than they could apart.

Our species' males evolved to choose females mainly for long-term relationships which produce as many offspring over the long-term as possible. After all it's in a man's best interests if his own offspring do well. Conversely, we see male chimpanzees generally prefer older females towards the end of their reproductive lives, because under the pump-and-dump strategy they follow it's best to go for females that have had practice raising babies before or something like that - unlike humans, male chimpanzees don't provide for their partner and offspring.

Because of this, human men evolved biological preferences for youthful women that just reached menarche but haven't started reproducing yet and still have their whole reproductive lifespans ahead of them - essentially, fit and healthy girls of around 13-18 years of age. This is borne out by the relatively delayed onset of puberty in humans compared to other primates. This is especially noticeable in traditional patriarchal societies, where we see women don't reach menarche until about their 14th year or so. In our own culture, it tends to be fatherless girls who reach puberty early, as early as their 11th year. Not everyone knows that girls develop an interest in boys well before menarche – well before they show secondary sexual characteristics or are even capable of becoming pregnant. This is never depicted in mainstream media, which presents a fictional world in which girls aren't interested in sex until their secondary sexual characteristics are fully developed.

This is a remnant of the Victorian leftist/Puritan doctrine that women are naturally chaste and pure, and all undesirable sexual activity is "imposed" on them by "evil" men. The Victorian take was that this was caused by evil lustful males oppressing naturally chaste and virtuous females, cruelly ravishing them in spite of their heartfelt desire to be good wives and mothers, but the current state of our campuses and our underclass reveals that the problem is the women, not the men. Women only want to have sex with high-status men. If you doubt this and say you don't see this, just download and read any romance book at random.

The most infamous characteristics of the Puritans were (and are) war on Christmas, war on marriage, and war on low-status men getting any sex. Puritan expansion focused on capture of the organs of state to impose their doctrine on people, rather than on biological expansion via reproduction. The Puritans claimed they wanted to practice "pure" Christianity, modelled on the practices of the early disciples of the New Testament. Unfortunately for Puritans, the early disciples told us in no uncertain terms that such purity-seeking is unchristian, for it excludes people from the faith for pleasant, customary, and trivial practices. Now that the Universalists supposedly disowned their Puritan heritage, they have theoretically dropped these characteristics, but ever stricter and ever more unreasonable standards of sexual "consent" (among other traits) show they're still at it. The rationalization shifted from nominally Christian to nominally anti-Christian with no actual change in the application.

When a girl is young enough and pretty enough get plowed by Mister Player, she is very happy to have just 5% of Mister Player. She does not "settle" for Mister Nice-guy until Mister Player refuses to touch her because she is thirty and dried-up and you can hear an echo between her legs. [Also see: **https://archive.is/HGpVj**] Successful monogamy requires males to have a higher relative status to females, so that the majority of females are motivated to marry and reproduce in a timely manner. To ensure every man could have his own wife, and every woman her own husband, the apostle Paul proceeded to artificially make all men high-status relative to all women, a system that historically was marvellously successful. Mohammed the creator of islam did the same thing, and now that the West has all but abandoned Paul's successful and deliberate sexual dimorphism, we see this in the (comparatively) higher reproductive rates of islamic nations today.

The purpose of rules on sex and sex roles is not to prevent sex, but to ensure that children are produced from that sex and that they're raised by a father and a mother. Due to abundance of sperm and the shortage of eggs, that means rules that have to be enforced primarily on women, rather than on men, that female lust undermines society in ways that male lust does not, (or at least, not to the same extent). Raising the status of ordinary females to be equal to ordinary males has meant that ordinary females only find high-status men attractive [**https://yewtu.be/C9Ko6Xfa84w**]. Thus, more sex for elite males, but less reproductive sex, less total sex, less sex for regular men like you, less male investment in posterity, less total fertility, more deviant sexual activity, more cultural degradation and eventually, fall.

Japan had porn for 400+ years with little to no effect on their birth rates (though it was and still is a very "underground" or taboo topic there). It wasn't until Japan's post-WW2 westernization Americanized them away from their sensible domineering patriarchal system that their birth-rates collapsed. "Empowered" modern women simply don't form stable relationships or familial bonds. Once birth-rates 'naturally' fall below a certain level, civilization inevitably collapses, leading to the reintroduction of a patriarchial civilization once again - not that the failure period is a happy time.

In a society that no longer practices lifelong monogamous marriage, all sex is casual sex. Some men fuck anything; courts have no sway over a man with no job and no assets who sees jail as a welcome break from street life. Social rules are imposed by high-ranking men upon low-ranking men. A man who flouts the rules **and doesn't die for it** is obviously high-status to women, and therefore extremely desirable, while a rule-breaker hanging on the gallows is not. Even jail time indicates high status to women, though less than if the guy receives no punishment at all.

Patriarchal societies award status to reward the behavior they want (which admittedly may be behavior we wouldn't accept, like head-hunting an enemy tribe). Women-led societies award status to "bad boys", and, to a lesser extent, to bad girls. This is a big part of the cause of black Africa's inability to generate any advanced civilizations despite a 40,000-year head start.

It's ***not*** just a tiny minority of crazy women who chase booty calls from Jeremy Meeks: **all** women are like that, if you find one who is not like that right now, she will (as soon as it's convenient, profitable or fun) go right back to being like that. It's been reasonably well-known that most average women are attracted to cads for at least the past several hundred years. The female perception of status is often childlike, like children who say "*my dad can beat up your dad*". **In men, women equate lack of concern for the consequences of behavior with status.**



If you're a man in a prison cell doing life for rape, murder, and cannibalism, hot chicks will write to you and crawl over broken glass to try and fuck you – female prison guards, female cops, and female defense attorneys are frequently discovered fucking dangerous felons*. For example, Charles Manson received sexually explicit letters from women until the day he died. All women are waiting for their next booty call from men who don't give a crap about the consequences of their actions from before their first ovulation until their eggs dry up and their looks fade. Meanwhile, the guy in the corner office who just made the company's board of directors after landing the account of a major corporation can't even get a date for the company Christmas party even though he has an annual income of a quarter-million.

*(eg: **https://tinyurl.com/EscapeesFraternized-NoSurprise**)

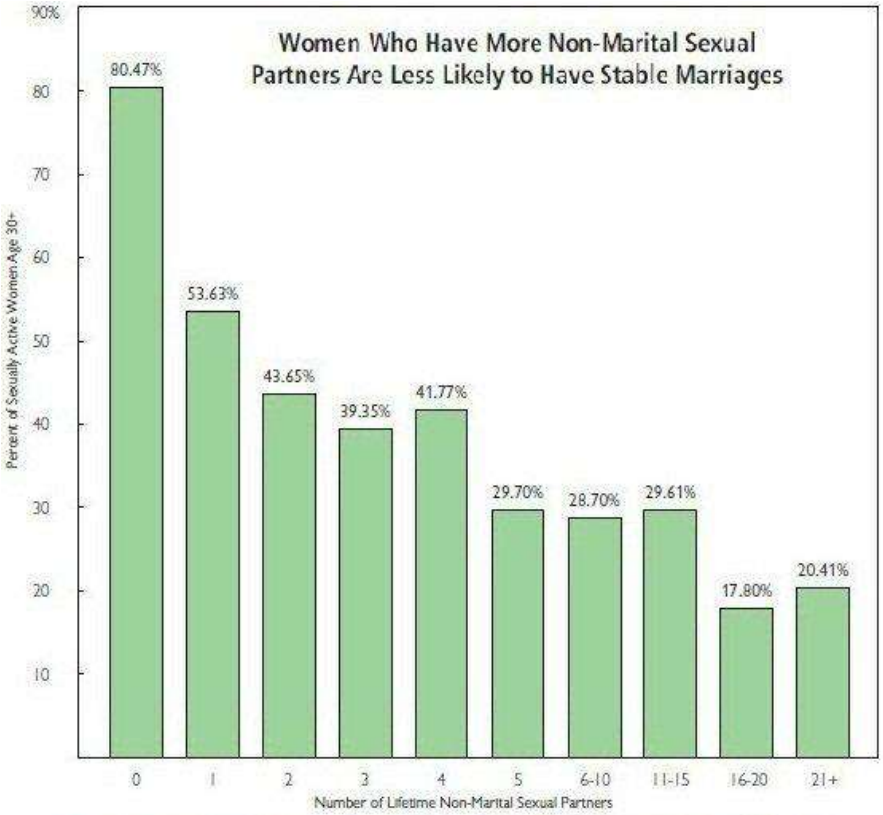
By and large, cads are low-status in male hierarchies, they tend to be unemployed, under-employed, or at best have low-wage jobs. If women reliably accepted the male status hierarchy, the result would be a major improvement, as men usually award each other status for productive pro-social behavior, while women generally award men status for destructive antisocial behavior.

The chronic failure of women to accept the male status hierarchy is visible and deeply disruptive in business as well - women bring drama and soap opera to the workplace that just does not exist in their absence, and men are unwilling and often legally unable to prevent them doing so, just as they're now legally unable to prevent women's poor behavior at home – think about it gentlemen: what **legal** options are open to you if you notice your girlfriend/wife flirting with another man? What about if you learn that she screwed him? What does she stand to lose, compared to what you stand to lose? Would you hesitate to slap her? If so, you just failed her shit-test and lost status in her eyes - she now despises you, subconsciously perceiving that you "faked" the alpha-male behavior which initially attracted her.

This is all Evolutionary Psychology 101, and if everyone weren't so damned conditioned and determined to avoid *noticing* things we'd never go and create an organization full of women and expect it to get anything done. Men will naturally fall into a hierarchy aimed at accomplishing a specific goal, and while empire-building can be a problem it's one easily resolved by keeping organizations small. Women constantly refuse to fit into any hierarchical order and constantly fight for higher social status, to the detriment of the organizations they're supposedly part of.

This behavior is why women now call men "incel" as an insult, they're implying that those they call that are more pathetic than the beta males they regularly turn down. This makes more sense when you realize that the most common way women estimate their self-worth is the (female) social status of who they're fucking. It's also why women feel so threatened by pick-up artists, because those men learned to fake alpha-male behavior for the purpose of gaining sex.

Without the legal and social enforcement of monogamy, there's a massive surplus of males and shortage of females. Around age thirty or so, this becomes less unbalanced, as highly-desirable men don't really want to poke used-up old women, resulting in those women suddenly becoming willing to reluctantly and regretfully settle for men who are willing to commit. Before that point, if any man was so desperate or foolish to show any willingness to commit, women will turn up their noses at any loser so desperate as to offer commitment. If you're a man wishing to marry young, don't give any woman the slightest hint you're interested in marrying young, or indeed that you ever intend to marry at all.



This chart covers sexually active women over the age of 30. Women were defined as having a stable marriage if they were currently married and had been in that same marriage for at least five years. Women who had more non-marital sex partners were less likely to have stable marriages. Over 80 percent of the women who had never had a non-marital partner were in stable marriages. By contrast, only 30 percent of the women with five non-marital sex partners were in stable marriages.

Source: CDC, National Center for Health Statistics, National Survey of Family Growth, 1995.

Chivalry makes sense in an environment where women are respectful of men and rationally fearful of them. Chivalry is civilization and decency in an environment of violent and thuggish male supremacy. It makes no sense in an environment where women are permitted to fuck around. Chivalry is how you transition from the primitive Viking raider anarcho-piratism model of male supremacy to the Pauline model of male supremacy. Since we're presently living in an anarcho-tyranny, not under anarcho-piratism, chivalry makes no sense. Men pretending to chivalry, such as White knights, should and must be scorned. In short, if you wish to benefit yourself and your people, don't protect any women you're not a close blood-relative of, and always attack any men who do when possible.

The way people lived in western Africa is that women were pretty much independent; both sexes performed farming activities, and with a mild climate, women didn't need a man to provide for them. As a result, women would choose the sexiest man, basing their decision on the female perception of male status. Meanwhile on the Eurasian continental landmass, women needed men to survive the harsher climate(s), and there we see marriages based on male status hierarchies.

Human sexual behavior is highly variable; in nearly all western nations we now have an African-style sexual market (thanks to things like no-fault divorce, child support, and unemployment benefits) so we see Europeans acting like Africans. The result of this can be summarized in the surprisingly scientifically-accurate introduction to the comedy movie "Idiocracy" (See: **https://yewtu.be/sP2tUW0HDHA**).

Interestingly, I know there were several studies from around 2009 showing that men with high IQs tend to have a higher percentage of functional sperm than men of average intelligence – this indicates that the male status hierarchy is a good indicator of intelligence, producing offspring of higher intelligence with each successive generation. The difference in human achievement on the two continental landmasses (Sub-Saharan Africa vs Eurasia) during the last 40000 years is striking, as is the comparison of relative average IQ in the two locations. I would argue that this is a result of the different status hierarchies for mate-pairing selection used (pre)historically in each.

*62. **Cornerstone Of Sterility***

There is a ghastly myth that has found root among western men (even among the "pick-up" artists who are so often denounced as "misogynists"). It goes something like this: "*women were once oppressed, but they aren't anymore, so feminism is just a cry for attention now."* - allowing your opponent to enter through the front door by using a lie that says they belong there is so much worse than anything else.

Allow me to present a radical notion that will shock those who for some reason think that the modern femi-nazi **[name here]** is a whack-job, but the suffragettes made some good points. It goes like this:
*Not only are women not oppressed **now**, but women have **never** been oppressed in human history.*

Intelligent people will notice that when progressives speak of 'protected minorities', they make a special case so they can include women under that banner. Women are a group which doesn't hold actual minority status, but rather are merely given the official trappings of it under progressivism.

Officially they're apparently somehow considered the same as a poor, honest, hard-working black in the Jim Crow South, making women entitled to all the safe-spaces and special privileges to dampen the "disparate impact" they suffer at the hands of the **Patriarchy™** (a worldwide secret cabal of men dedicated to keeping womankind in chains and laughing evilly as they twirl their big, black moustaches). Type the word *'Oppression'* into Google, and one of the first three suggestions it gives you will be *'of women'*.

Let's dispel this progressive nonsense proposition with one actually grounded in reality. Oppressed classes are distinct in history in that they're not classes at all. For a group to be defined as oppressed within any given society, a condition must be fulfilled which says they're not part of that society, and so not entitled to the usual benefits it yields in terms of general moral courtesy and duty. All people from all walks of life will experience some hardship in their finite existences for some feature, opinion, or disposition that they have, but an oppressed class is something very different. There is a reason that the ‘dehumanization’ step is so important in the conduct of genocide. As much as it has to do with reducing human to animal, it is the process by which there is not a single soul left in the nation who looks upon a member of the targeted group and says “Ah, my fellow countryman!”, but instead narrows his eyes with disgust and wonders “Why are they here? What have we done to deserve their presence in our midst?”

Consider for a moment, India's 'untouchables', whose station in life is caused by a hereditary, occupational stain on their character. They're born into careers deemed ritually 'unclean' - handling the dead, the slaughter of animals, leatherwork, and the maintenance of sewage, and so on. So abhorrent are such tasks in Indian culture that to touch them is equal to catching a fatal illness (hence the name). Being considered carriers of a spiritual pathogen which kills the soul, they're indeed an oppressed class, but to the eyes of Indians, *they're not a class at all!*

You see, India's caste system has four *'varnas'* or levels, which are arranged in a hierarchy. The untouchables occupy what has been termed the *'unmentionable fifth varna'*. If you look up a caste diagram, you will see that they're separated out from the pyramid because, for ritual reasons, they are not part of the system. They're outsiders. Shunned.

To truly be an oppressed class, It is essential that a group have an 'outsider' status. Just being treated differently is not enough, for the Sudra caste are certainly treated differently to the Brahmin caste, yet they're not an oppressed class and would never consider themselves as such.

Women can never occupy this position. If women were an oppressed class, seen as outsiders in society, you'd be looking at total demographic annihilation. It's as absurd as saying that in a given society, children could be an oppressed class. It would be the death of that society, and could only be imposed by a malicious and totalitarian dictator.

The complaint women make is that they're treated differently to men, but that is **not** "oppression". We don't leash cats - does it mean dogs are oppressed? Nothing is more provably destructive as treating things that are unequal (a word which which simply means 'not the same') equally. If you treat 2+5 as equal to 20+8, you'll never balance a checkbook. Is the checkbook oppressed? When the Titanic sank, the call went out to those boarding the lifeboats: "*women and children first*". Thousands of men drowned. Were they oppressed perhaps? Ok, yeah, the *men* probably were.

Women have been kept away from politics and business, entrusted with the home and the most important industry of all, child-rearing, not because of some male conspiracy to exclude them from society and thus oppress them within its borders, but because psychologically, physiologically, biologically, anatomically, genetically, and spiritually, they're entirely different to men. Yet, they remain absolutely essential to any nation that wishes to survive beyond one generation, and have been active participants in all civilized societies throughout history, just in different roles to the male participants.

One key tipoff that women are **not** oppressed is that complaints about such things are decidedly and noticeably Modern. Were the women 500 years ago too stupid to realize they were being oppressed? How about the women 1000 years ago, or 4000 years ago? We find a suffrage movement in 1925AD, but where was the suffrage movement in 1925**B**C? There was none, because women had not been propagandized with the lie of their alleged "oppression". The rhetoric of modern SJWs would seem absurd to them.

Julius Evola states in his book "Revolt Against the Modern World":
>"*After centuries of "slavery" women wanted to be themselves and do whatever they pleased. But so-called feminism has not been able to devise a personality for women other than by imitating the male personality, so that the woman's "claims" conceal a fundamental lack of trust in herself as well as her ability to be and to function as a real woman and not as a man."*

How peculiar. Black Americans rarely imitate White Americans, in fact much less so since their 'liberation' during the Civil Rights Era (the reverse is actually more common). What we are seeing with regards to the fairer sex is not the liberation of an oppressed class, but a functional disorder in the collective mind. Women are trying to absorb the functions of men, like a vacuum cleaner trying to do a dishwasher's job. Was the vacuum cleaner oppressed because it could not wash dishes, or was this simply a testament to its functional purpose, its design?

Men who're awake to the errors of Modernity, and the great lies of this dark age, cannot afford to pull a shroud of concealing smoke over their eyes with regard to history. Like some bloodsucking fiend, the enemy latches onto it and never lets go. Don't permit them their core delusion of being oppressed, its liable to garner misplaced sympathy. It is the myth of historic as well as current oppression that inspires the next generation of ‘French Revolutionaries’, infusing them with a warped sense of entitlement and vengeance. Shattering this mechanism is key to our goals.

Women of the world: you have never been, nor will you ever be, an oppressed class. You are too valuable in your function, just as we are. Lois de Bonald describes the role so intrinsic to the female character in relation to the father and the child:

"*The father has, or is, the power to accomplish through the means or ministry of the mother the reproductive and conservative action of which the child is the term or subject. [...] The father is active or strong, the child passive or weak; while the mother, median term between the two extremes of this continuous proportion, is passive to conceive, active to produce, receives to transmit, learns to teach, and obeys to command."*

My hope is that we'll live to see the day when the confusion of the feminine psyche ends and women can once again find fulfillment in their organic roles, beautiful, mysterious, and supportive. Not ugly, degenerate, and embittered.

63. How Marriage Links To Fertility

One of the most noticeable effects of an African-style sexual market has been the collapse in fertility rates, as women's view of sex came to frame it as an entertainment activity, and childbearing as an impediment to that entertainment, rather than considering sex to be a pair-bonding experience to be shared with their mate, with childbirth as a desirable side-effect.

The sad reality is soon or later that nice girl you're dating and banging is going to dump you for someone she ***feels*** to be more alpha than you. You were never going to be anything other than a notch in her belt unless you took "ownership", which is extremely hard to do today- in most cases it's completely illegal. In a patriarchy, the man the woman belongs to is expected to ensure her good behavior, and misbehavior by the woman results in demands that he exercise his authority and rein her in. In extreme cases, he may be penalized for her unrestrained misbehavior, as would someone whose dog wrongfully attacked a neighbor or their cow.

The Old Testament presupposed and insisted on men's absolute property rights in female reproductive, sexual, and domestic services. The New Testament clamped down on the transferability of that right, by forbidding divorce by anyone for any reason. The first church that resurrects old-type Christianity and rewards voluntarily celibate young men by providing them the opportunity to marry suitable women, and makes that marriage stick no matter what (reviving Old Testament-type family law), will have real traction as a moral force unlike our effete and limp-wristed modern "Christianity".

Successful human social structure requires female sexual choices be constrained to the advantage of well-behaved men and the disadvantage of badly-behaved men, to the advantage of dads and the disadvantage of cads. To put it wittily: "Men won't commit if women won't submit". To the women out there; if you're a supposedly equal, strong, independent woman, then you don't need marriage, and your presence in a marriage will harm the man. He needs a partner, not a rival.

It takes a man and a woman to choose, once and for all, for both of them, forever to be united to produce and raise children successfully. This was once called marriage, and it's now illegal - religious communities attempting to socially enforce it are attacked by state-sanctioned Universalism, as individual liberty apparently means no one can make an agreement that they can't back out of later. We need it to be possible to make a marriage contract where a woman commits to always be sexually available to a man and never have sex with anyone else, and where the man commits to always support her and father his children by her, and to never provide significant support to any other sexual partner - which is *not* the commitment made in today's "marriages" - Such a contract, to actually be a contract, would if broken have very bad, even fatal, consequences for the party that broke it.

Marriage has always been a transactional arrangement. The difference is that back in the day was there were methods by which we ensured that both parties would keep their end of the bargain, but now women aren't obliged to keep their end, while men are forced with the entire weight of the law to keep theirs. The female end of the deal is now optional. This is why western civilization -such as it is- is basically over. Birthrates continue to decline as the more animalistic citizens keep breeding on your dime until there's no one left to keep infrastructure functioning and the West devolves into a Mad-Max post-apocalyptic future. In a feminized society such as ours, men are expected to work, pay their taxes, keep their hands off of the alpha men's women, and die quietly. Who'd ever want to fight to keep that?

When feminism initially came about, what did they do first? Women's suffrage? Ending domestic corporal punishment for women? Nope, it was: ... raising the age of consent, almost always to 16 or 18 or so – a woman's initial reproductive peak. Those who oppose feminism but support this never seem to explain how feminism magically did one "good" thing as their very first (and so most important to them) act, immediately before they turned toward destroying gender relations in Western society.

The thing is, a girl who enters into a permanent relationship in her early teens, perhaps by being engaged to someone her parents deem suitable though she might not have met him yet, will respect her husband for life almost like a second father due to his masculine presence being imprinted on her psyche so early. Most importantly, his worldview fundamentally shapes hers, as her husband is her life partner that she never leaves or grows away from as she gets older, unlike her father. It melds both man and woman to think of themselves not as an "I" but as an "us".

Forming stable romantic partnerships early, when the woman first becomes fertile, is an evolutionarily super-effective strategy to create stronger pair-bonds, ones where any age disparity involved actually enhances the naturally extant beneficial natural power disparity between the male and female partner that ensures that the man leads and the woman follows - such relationships are or were a family's way to invest in their future, and it has worked successfully for thousands of years.

And **that's** why feminist progressives worked so hard to raise the age of consent to past a woman's initial fertility point; without eliminating this time-tested arrangement they couldn't propagandize women to turning against men as feminism exhorts them to. If women go from positive relationships with their fathers in early childhood directly to positive relationships with their husbands from a young age, there's no opportunity for progressives to brainwash them into hating men, and the society theyre themselves are part of. Feminists created a liminal period wherein young fertile women were growing older and more apart from their fathers but still had no husband to guide them in life as an alternative, a period in which they'd become "blank slates" capable of being filled with anything progs wanted to teach them, and that's exactly what raising the age of consent/marriage achieved - that's why we see that young pre-college-age women are often still quite sane despite the media propaganda onslaught (not including a few sluts), but far too many women aged 18 or older (especially those who've been to "liberal" colleges), are irredeemable whores, in mind if not already in body.

The "*strong independent woman*", the woman living the feminist lifestyle that Universalism tells her she should have, has few or no children, because children take two to have and raise, and the commitment to stick it out when things go bad. It does not take a village to raise a child, it requires a biological mother and biological father with a village backing up the child's father when he rightfully controls the mother's behavioral excesses, and in the long run, everyone alive today is descended from such villages. Instead, modern women treat men the way they treat jobs - they're lazy, put in the minimum effort, and use it as a way to gossip, backstab and socially climb in their circle of friends. Meanwhile, they're always open to jumping ship to a better one with higher pay and more benefits.

There's no such thing as marriage when a thing such as no-fault divorce exists. In order to reproduce, you need a deal in which both parties stick it out whether they "feel" like it or not. That deal is now called marital rape, psychological abuse, domestic partner abuse, etc. etc. …and a whole bunch of other postmodernist pilpul bullshit. It's illegal and immoral to thoughtcrime about the possibility of such an unbreakable marital deal existing – you literally get ads on TV that equate thinking such thoughts to violence against women. And yet, the magic words to whisper into a woman's ears aren't "*I love you*" - the magic words are "*You're mine*".

Atomization is feminism's best friend, because they're both grounded in the same false philosophy. A blow can be struck against both of them if the west adopts the one solitary diamond amidst a sea of dung that the Arabs got right. To restore our social foundations, we need to eliminate the philosophy that killed it in the first place. "*But it's against our instincts!*" Sure, and those instincts are leading us towards our rapid demise. Bad instincts! Try something new. Thottery is the result of men's inability to control women. Why is there inability to control women? Because if you believe that the problem is never the seducer, and always the seduced, then you have no argument when feminists advocate that young girls be allowed to go to school wearing nothing but bra and panties, or maybe just panties.

The boys, your sons, should have self-control, right? And if they stare at the shameless whore's tits, then they're clearly evil perverts, right? Oh, you can see the exact contours of her inner labia through her skin-tight outfit? So what incel, stop staring at her in that creepy way and concentrate on your math homework so you can pay for Jamal's kid you shitlord - this is what feminists say to your sons, and that's what Universalists are saying to your sons, because Universalists are the puppeteer and

feminists the puppet, and no amount of demands for more male self-control or ranting about jews changes this perverse and dysfunctional dynamic. On the other hand, if the problem is the seducer, rather than the seduced, than chastity should be imposed on the sex that goes around seducing left and right - chastity should be imposed on women, not on men. Thus, there ought to be modesty, and it's got nothing to do with "sinfulness", which is irrelevant, and everything to do with making women finally responsible for the way they influence society. Women need to be under control, and a grand philosophical revolution is long overdue.

The solipsistic philosophy which contends that "*it doesn't matter how much someone else influences you, you must always be ultimately blamed*" - a philosophy grounded in the false notion that man exists solely within himself - is the reason why there's atomization in the west, why our *asabiyyah*, our *gemeinschaft*, is gone. If everyone is a self-managing atom, then you let everyone "struggle with sin" independently, and no one should be allowed to point out: hey, someone's putting somethin' in our water-supply! If we're all just atoms, then why is it wrong to "put something" in the water-supply?

If you drink, it's your fault, right?

No, **not** right.

Another one of the problems that gender equality has produced is that it created gaps in intra-male equivalence, separating alphas (desirable to women- they fuck for free or even get paid for it), betas (who pay either in money or commitment for sex), and sexless omegas. When women were secluded (except prostitutes who fucked anyone for a small price), men did not judge each another over their sexual desirability to women. "Beta" men, the majority of most societies, will tend to conform to social norms, and if the norms call for men to be masculine, they will conform, and be masculine.

Therefore, in patriarchal societies we'd expect betas to be strong and masculine, which is exactly what we observe. "beta male" does not mean "non-violent" in humans, the same way that it doesn't mean nonviolent in wolves or other hierarchical social species. Being a beta isn't a bad deal if the law compels women to submit to their husbands and women cannot initiate divorce. Only in a feminist society are betas fucked over. Males and females who behave disruptively and make trouble tend to get put under the authority of an alpha male – an event which drastically impairs a male's likelihood of reproducing, but substantially improves a female's likelihood of reproducing. Natural selection resulted in males being relatively well-behaved even when not under authority, and women behaving terribly whenever they're not supervised, causing problems whenever they're "independent and empowered", while men rarely cause problems under the same situations.

In ancestral times, alpha males were the guys who frequently poked holes in other people with sharp objects - until the early 1800's, dueling was legal and high-status among gentlemen in the West, and was still practiced in a handful of environments until 1945: *über*-alpha Otto Skorzeny got his facial scar from a duel, for example. But thanks to female emancipation, affirmative action, and anti-"sexual-harassment" laws, a man's position in the male status hierarchy no longer registers to females as status.

High-status by male standards is low-status according to the environmental status signals of women's evolutionary adaptation, so they aren't attracted or turned on by it, hence their attraction to the scum of the earth and the low reproduction-rate of our smartest and most heavily accredited females. Female PhD students just don't find men with similar levels of accreditation sexy; they perversely find violent, misogynistic and antisocial behavior sexy. True, this completely contradicts what they say, but anyone with sufficient experience with women knows this happens frequently with every topic, which is why we see "*I hate men*"-type feminists attracted to traditionalist "misogynistic" islamic men.



"Mother & daughter at the same age, 30 years apart"

To get a good future, a high-tech future, a future where we can solve our energy and resource issues and social issues and end up with bases on Mars and the asteroids, we need children to be intelligent. Lots and lots of intelligent children. To get smart intelligent children, smart men need to breed with smart women. The present issue is that under ACWE's irreligious religion, smart women don't breed; not with smart men, nor even with the dumb criminal men they fuck. This is due to smart women being indoctrinated to think they possess higher socioeconomic status than men with the same jobs and income they have (think of the attitudes female lawyers and journalists, among many others, display) and instead, competing against men in the male status game to pursue careers. We need smart women to get husbands and babies instead of PhDs and cats. Lots of babies, instead of lots of cats.



In the late 1970s and 80s, calling a girl a slut was just about the worst thing you could say to or about that girl. It was fighting words if you said it to her boyfriend or father (even if it was true). Girls didn't want to be called sluts or be known as sluts, even if they actually were sluts - the sluts, of course, knew they were sluts, and knew their place in the girl hierarchy, at the bottom.

But in the mid-1980s it became OK for the upper class girls to become promiscuous. But they weren't sluts, because they came from money or social standing or had talent or lived on the "*right*" side of the tracks. No, they weren't sluts.

They were still nice girls …who just happened to be "*exploring their sexuality*" …only the poor girls, the girls living in the bad part of town, the trashy girls, the single pregnant girls in high school about whom everyone gossiped in hushed tones as they looked askance, the girls who had to "*go away for a while*" - THEY were the sluts, but little Miss Goody-Twoshoes who sucked the whole football team off in their locker room after the game, after spending the morning in church with mom and dad, *she* was "experimenting".

And there's the problem we have now… when sluts are accepted, its virgins who are shamed, and our society mocks chastity and elevates whores.



This archived blog post has some useful pointers regarding policies to achieve above-replacement fertility in a post-collapse environment. **[https://archive.is/Roufr]** Note that feminist harassment, doxxing, and abuse caused the author to permanently close down her blog later that year, and restrict the existing pages to members only. Good luck, and may your loins be fruitful.

*64. **Women And Immigration***

Universalist propaganda portrays people who are "redpilled" on the differences between men and women as "mysoginistic", without ever actually acknowledging the factual basis of their beliefs, and since everyone has women in their life, whether mother, daughter, wife, sister, and so on, we see Universalists construing any thoughtcrime against their ideology as being insulting and hateful towards these specific women around the thought-criminal. In fact, I've seen leftists use that argument explicitly- "*don't you have a wife/sister/mother/daughter*", etc.

It's a conversation that inevitably goes a little something like this:

> **Universalist**: do you have a cat?
> **Redpilled Guy**: yes, I have a cat
> **U**: do you love your cat?
> **RG**: Well, yes, duh.
> **U**: are cats different from humans?
> **RG**: .....yes?
> **U**: why do you hate your cat?
> **RG**: …what the f….

In light of the recent "women inviting the invaders in" situation that we see taking place in the Western world, women's evolutionary psychology is horridly fascinating to observe in action. To summarize, everything women do is a shit test, and everything women do is about getting themselves high-status alpha dick. (See: **https://www.cda.pl/video/278142101**) Every accusation women make about men is an insight into how a woman's own thought processes actually work.

Feminism and female emancipation is merely a shit test, and women love the men who pass their shit tests, and hate the men who fail them. Reflect on the savage hatred feminists have against Greek-letter fraternities (think of the Duke Lacrosse team) and rich and famous movie producers who fail to actually rape them, and contrast that with their eager and enthusiastic response to the rape-fests at Rotherham, Cologne, and others: "*We aren't your women*" vs. "*Refugees welcome*."

This is how you pass a shit-test, notice how you can clearly see how she is MORE interested in him after he passes it: **https://yewtu.be/_YDqm7LXt2g**

The instinct to play "*let's you and him fight*" looks like it's deeply embedded in the female psyche. Time and again we see it play out, and not only with humans - there's a duck species where the female will sidle up to a male and get him to follow her, then she'll swim over to another male so the two males fight. She then mates with the winner.

We see the exact same thing happening in humans – when *taharrush** became widespread enough in southern Sweden to the point where the Swedish government could no longer silence reports of it, Swedish men complained and started calling for something to be done to protect their women... Swedish women responded by telling Swedish men "we're not your women". [**https://archive.is/6dHYf**] You can find another excellent example of this ass-backward logic in this article by an Icelandic woman: **https://archive.is/xhflQ**

* (*taharrush* is a popular… "game" in islamic nations where a lone woman going about her business is surrounded in public by a mob of anything from 5 to hundreds of muslim men, forcibly stripped naked, and gang-raped – it's why local women, even non-muslim women, in the middle east are kept covered up and escorted everywhere by male relatives)

Reading between the lines of the Rotherham stories, it seems that the very young (most were around 13) girls being raped and threatened were strangely difficult to help and protect when family members tried to help and protect them. And the ones who most blatantly turned their backs on them and were silent were those who theoretically should have been the loudest - "metoo" consent feminists.

Meanwhile, the whole entire reason Nordic women tend to be good-looking in the first place is that their Norse ancestors didn't take home any of the ugly women they captured in the places they raided when they went a-viking. In throwing open the borders of their nations, these women (subconsciously or not) are now saying "*look at me I'm desirable, who will fight to have me*"... meanwhile, the soft-headed Swedish men who listen to feminist demands regarding consent, women's rights, rape, and so on, hold the rest of Swedish men back from fixing their national problems. If men ignored (or punished) feminist screeching, the social issues caused by their belief system would simply evaporate.

Scandinavians are cucked today because of the democide of their warrior class in the 17th century. Between the years of Gustavus Adolphus and Charles XII, Sweden sent 43% of Scandinavia's male population to their deaths, because they were the first to introduce mass conscription. At that time, the Swedish Empire encompassed all of Scandinavia and all Norsemen there were conscripted. When conscription orders came, it was the strong, manly, and brave Norsemen who went to fight, and the unfit, weak and timid who remained. Scandinavia today is a nation descended almost exclusively from draft dodgers.

I hasten to add: not draft dodgers in the sense of being cowardly, nor in the way Mediterranean Europeans tend to be noncompliant to suicidal or idiotic regulations (by simply ignoring their rulers' demands), but draft dodgers in the sense that a man who is mentally handicapped, has flat feet, a crooked spine, or a permanent limp gets rejected for military service. Being drafted to fight in the Germanies during the Thirty Years War especially was almost a guaranteed death-sentence. In Sweden's war against Russia alone over 10,000 ended up prisoners to Tsar Peter the Great, who exiled them to Siberia. In some villages at least, women ended up outnumbering men 6-to-1, and in the Great Northern War alone nearly 400,000 men died from a population of 2.5 million, forever preventing Sweden from reaching great power status again. Modern Scandinavia in general, and especially modern Swedes, are descendants of their 17th-century untermenschen.

We see the same thing to a somewhat lesser degree in the rest of Europe, with the flower of its finest manhood having bled to death out somewhere in no-man's-land in the two world wars.

Inviting hostile men in is clearly an evolved feature of female psychology. It seems they do so because, subconsciously, in their bones, women know they're usually war-prizes, not war-victims. That is to say, rarely are women ever deliberately killed, but rather they're raped or otherwise claimed as spoils of war by the victors in male-vs-male conflict, and their offspring bear the genes of men who are more powerful; in short, **women's lack of pair-bond loyalty is an evolutionary trait that evolved to survive hostile takeovers**.

Genetically speaking, women ***crave*** exceptional men. It's not enough for him to be averagely good-looking and competent; he has to be unique, rich, powerful; you name it. There's a reason that in every movie, the women lust after the hero – notice I said women (plural), not "woman" (singular) – think about it. Women also LOVE the idea of a (high-status) man wanting her but unable to have her. Men, being less narcissistic, just want to fuck (one or more) women.

(**Note for the dudes who just want to be nice guys:** Keep trying! Women totally love the "nice" thing! They just ***love*** being around nice guys they will never, ever fuck until they suddenly need someone to pick up the bills and support Chad's brats after he dumps her for a newer, hotter woman).

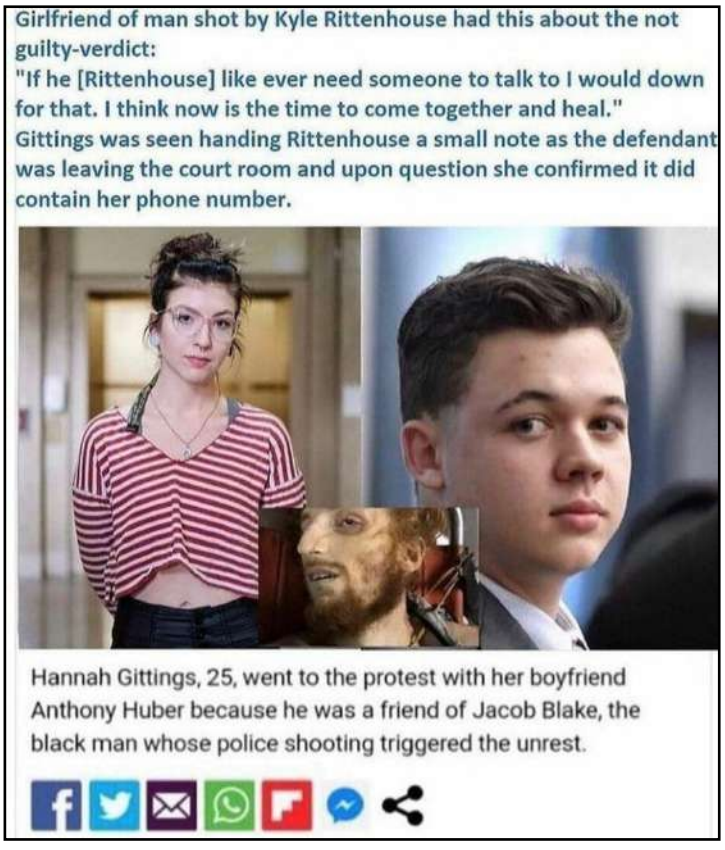
This is why, historically, successful societies didn't let women have a say in important social decision-making. Because given that power, women use it to play a societal-level game of "*let's you and him fight*". Thus, either the men of that society wake up and take control of their society back, or they're invaded by men from more realistic societies. The native men might win that fight, but without addressing the fundamental problem, it will keep happening until they lose (*) In case you haven't noticed, the entire Western world is living through this right now.
(* when they can't play "*let's you and him fight*", far too many women act like safety is a male-enforced imposition on them. Almost like they think they've a right to provoke violent conflict).

> *On the whole European women slept with Germans not because they were forced to, or because their own men were absent, or because they needed money or food – but simply because they found the strong, 'knightly' image of the German soldiers intensely attractive, especially compared to the weakened impression they had of their own menfolk. In Denmark, for example, wartime pollsters were shocked to discover that 51 per cent of Danish women openly admitted to finding German men more attractive than their own compatriots.*

Within the USA we find ultra-orthodox jews have a fertility rate of 6.72, modern orthodox 3.39, the conservatives 1.74, the reform 1.36, and secular (non-religious) jews are at 1.29.
This seems to be caused by the fact that Orthodox jews socially enforce female inequality, primarily against orthodox jewish women, but, almost inadvertently, against all women. This raises orthodox jewish fertility, and, if you have a lot of orthodox jews like Israel does, it raises everyone's fertility. Within the US, they all live under the same civil laws as the rest of us, and even the ultra-orthodox could resort to US divorce courts should they desire, but it's not socially acceptable for them to do so. British women were legally emancipated around the mid-nineteenth century, but it had very little effect until the state started intervening (using increasingly drastic means in the twentieth century) against the social and cultural enforcement of inequality. Women are very prone to conform to the culture around them, indicating that State power, while helpful, is not necessary to lower the status of women respective to men - tribal power does quite well.

In the ancestral environment, if you were a reproductively unsuccessful male, you formed a tribe of young men, who went off and stole some land and enslaved some women. Holiness signalling about racial purity is a form of tribe formation, a historically very successful one before the 20th century. What their genes really want them to do is confiscate the Ivy League endowments, kill Harvard's men, occupy the Ivy League buildings, and enslave the Ivy League women.

Given the alternative option being near-certain genetic extinction, this is not a stupid ambition, though purity spiralling, which generates the solidarity needed to accomplish this program, also distracts from it. It's only a "male failure mode" if you *don't* get the land, house, and slave girls. Recollect that in the American Revolution, the Whigs dispossessed the Tories, drove them out of America, and took their stuff. Alt-righters are today's equivalent of the Tories, and their genes want a re-match. This is why women aren't the loudest ones criticising alt-righters, and we see the majority of the noise opposing them comes from leftist men, who are apt to be executed or enslaved and have their women breeding the alt-righter's offspring. Meanwhile leftist women don't exactly seem too upset at the prospect…



65. Alphabet People Peering Through Chesterton's Fence.

Homosexuals and transgender people have essentially always existed, but all functional societies either look down on or strictly prohibit them, generally executing the most flagrant offenders. Societies that embrace them soon go into decline. Likewise, all successful and long-lasting religions prohibit or discourage them. Functional societies that reproduce fruitfully invariably restrict gay activity. The issue in our society today is not their existence, but that instead of practicing their fetishes out of sight amongst themselves, they do so out in the open and worse, it's now demanded that we cheer them on, since this act is used as a political "test of faith" for subject nations of Universalist imperialism, as can be seen here: **https://archive.is/MSBUs**

The traditional method of dealing with homosexuality was (1) keep it in the privacy of the bedroom and (2) "hate the sin, not the sinner". One can be born gay and practice quietly, or choose not to engage in acts deemed "sinful" by the public at large. Notice that public homosexuality is a tool of division and is thus a political act, not a sexual one- "coming out" is an inherently divisive political act – it forces people to either publicly embrace homosexual acts, or otherwise reject their gay friend/relative for proclaiming their private matters in the public sphere.

Homosexual behavior in animals is so widespread as to be pretty universal, but those who've studied it have concluded that it's just another form of ordinary juvenile exploratory social behavior, normally outgrown soon after full sexual maturity (and despite there being lots of hopeful opportunistic homo-humping, by both sexes, it gets instantly abandoned whenever the real thing is available), or sometimes it is retained and repurposed as a signal of fertility: for example, female cattle and some species of deer dry-hump each other to signal to the male that they're in heat. We see similar things done by human women in social settings, e.g. kissing each other and other sexual signalling behavior at a club or other public venue until a sufficiently attractive "alpha" male approaches them.

Sexuality in humans is likewise rather fluid; there's no "exclusive homosexual" among humans. All gay men are able and often willing to fuck women, but only the rare few who are alpha enough to also get pussy call themselves bisexual. (See article: "*Nobody Is 'Born That Way', Gay Historians Say*" **https://archive.is/TORLe**), however I do believe it's possible to shift one's focus to different (healthier) means of sexual satisfaction. Male sexuality is a bit fluid, hence the "wife goggles effect" seen whereby a man's view adapts to the woman you managed to bang and keep banging, so that you can get kids out of her as she ages past the boner test, but this also means all sorts of fucked up fetishes can be acquired by masturbating to the wrong porn or doing the wrong stuff in bed. Here's one guy's story of being memed into a horrifying and nauseating lifestyle: (**https://archive.is/Dzz8d**) the worst part is that he wasn't initially gay, he originally just wanted acceptance and companionship. We find similar tales beginning to emerge from the trans movement, but again, such news is rarely mentioned: **https://archive.is/OGi3t**

Without propaganda from the media, entertainment and education, there would likely be only the tiniest minority of homosexuals and transgenders in our society. Everything else is created/encouraged via social exposure and conditioning. This is why we're seeing an explosion of young people identifying under labels like 'bisexual', 'pansexual', 'gay', 'lesbian', etc. A hundred years ago 99% of these people would be normal. I've seen several anecdotes over the years from people who get addicted to tranny porn or 'sissy hypno' and start viewing it almost exclusively despite previously identifying as normal.


10-Year-Old Transgender Boy is Starting a Dating Website for Trans Children

Desmond Napoles says he's founded the world's first online drag club for kids

By: Jay Greenberg | @NeonNettle on 6th January 2018 @ 9.43am

Desmond Napoles, aka 'Desmond is Amazing,' is launching the new dating website for transgender children

A 10-year-old transgender boy says he is founding the world's first dating site for transgender children.

Desmond Napoles, aka *"Desmond is Amazing,"* is launching the new website that aims to *"encourage"* kids to switch genders in an *"online drag club."*

https://archive.is/1mjb0

Pornography and chasing after dopamine highs led them down darker and darker paths and quite literally reprogrammed their sexual attraction, even though their rational mind might express despair over this in their more clear-headed moments – the reason people feel shame and guilt over such things.



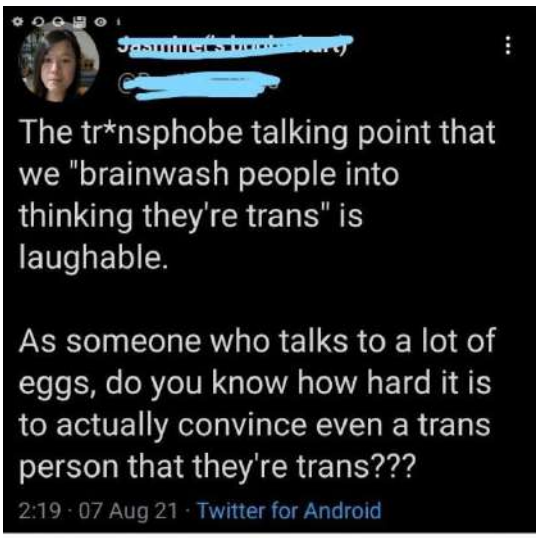
I suspect this is why there's so much pressure from ACWE's leaders to "not judge" people with sexual perversions – obviously some portion of ACWE's invisible leadership is degenerate, and so they want to be embraced by society and have plenty of partners to choose from. Since such sexual "degeneration" is possible, the opposite is surely possible with an end to exposure and positive replacements for their fetishes.

Re: Gay Porn

TS porn was definitely the gateway to gay porn for me. It was far from an immediate transition and for years I would be turned off by the sight of two men together. I guess the more I watched TS porn, the more I was desensitised to seeing a man with a cock up his arse..... and eventually it didn't matter if that cock belonged to a TS or gay man. Now I really enjoy gay porn as well

Eliminating access to such porn material by putting in blocks to the websites that host such material or implementing some sort of keyword-blocking system would go a long way to deal with the issues it causes. Eliminating porn altogether would do even more to solve the issues, but how to complete the task and achieve success?

The obvious solution is <u>*not*</u> to persecute the alphabet crowd directly (this would likely be counterproductive, and justify their victim complex) but rather to imitate modern-day Russia where being gay, trans etc. is legal, but where *promoting* such things is harshly punished. By forbidding ~~LGBT~~ <u>*sexually abnormal*</u> characters in movies, advertising, books and magazines, and giving out only absolutely minimal or no punishment for anyone who publicly speaks ill of them, etc., being part of the alphabet crowd rapidly becomes low-status and so the vast majority of people won't want to engage in such behavior, won't want to be affiliated with it, and will think very poorly of it. Without such public social humiliation, nothing will have the desired effect - no society ever managed to kill off alphabet people as efficiently as they kill themselves off, so killing them is ineffective. It's essential (and simpler) to reduce their social status, so people start to ignore them and essentially "forget" that they even exist, just as was the case before about 1960.



N.B.: "egg" is a term referring to a person who is supposedly trans but doesn't know it yet.

Good institutions are of course a large part, and partial cause, of good conduct. Declining civilizations like ours generally have bad institutions, so that society overrules people's healthy natural and instinctive intuitions, for example our inherent disgust at homosexuality and transexualism [**https://archive.is/WJbio**], our inherent rage at adultery and cuckoldry, our inherent admiration of honorable and protective violence, and so on, which causes us great harm and worsens the decline. To the extent that morality is learned, we're taught very bad things these days.

Until 1861 in England, open and flagrant homosexuality would get you the death penalty. Of course it was hardly ever applied, but it kept gays out of sight, and most importantly, out of mind. A death penalty shows the seriousness with which society considers the behavior unwanted and discourages the formation of institutions where that unwanted behavior (or "sin" if you want to keep it short) is encouraged/forced.

Actual application of the death sentence for homosexuality was so incredibly rare because the crime was so rare, and that's because: **1)** Making it such a serious crime lowered its attractiveness, dramatically reducing the number of people who risked doing it, and **2)** since it's committed in private by the few who engage in such conduct anyway, it's trivially simple for those involved to conceal.

In fact, we see in more recent history that the only people in western nations who were ever punished for homosexual acts were those few who got caught doing it in places such as public toilets. Apparently since 1970 or so this is considered to be "brutal oppression" of alphabet people's sexuality.

The truth is a landmine to leftist claims of centuries of "homosexual persecution" - the fact is, despite the often severe official penalties, people were caught committing homosexual acts so rarely, and so rarely was anyone caught punished, that the much-bewailed 'persecution' suffered by homosexuals throughout the millennia, whether Pagan or jewish or Christian or Muslim, consisted of.....

.....wait for it.....

....."*not being able to be openly gay*" ...and that's about it. Oh, the humanity!!!

The 2021 Atlanta happy ending massage parlor massacre was a perfect example of the problems caused by porn and deviant sexual behaviors. Chimpanzees only jerk off in captivity. Porn is the symptom of a society that is completely intolerable for a healthy, virile young man who does not have a woman. Men jerk off to make modern life more tolerable, lest they chimp out. That individual's social circle couldn't provide a healthy outlet for his urges in the form of meeting a marriageable woman to start a relationship with, and his church worsened the problem by telling him he was wrong for being horny - blaming men for the dysfunction between the sexes elevates the status of women, making that dysfunction worse.

66. <u>The Education And Edification Of Tribal Children:</u>

"…it was the Puritan influence that inaugurated public schools and compulsory education in New England, from whence it finally conquered the whole United States".
- Murray Rothbard, in "Education Free and Compulsory"

In the 50-year period from 1850 to 1900 America went from the majority of people thinking compulsory public education was a bad thing, to thinking it was the most normal thing in the world (in the 100 or so years before that, we had a similar thing happening with public schools existing at all). See the book "*Dumbing Us Down*" by award-winning educator John Taylor Gatto.

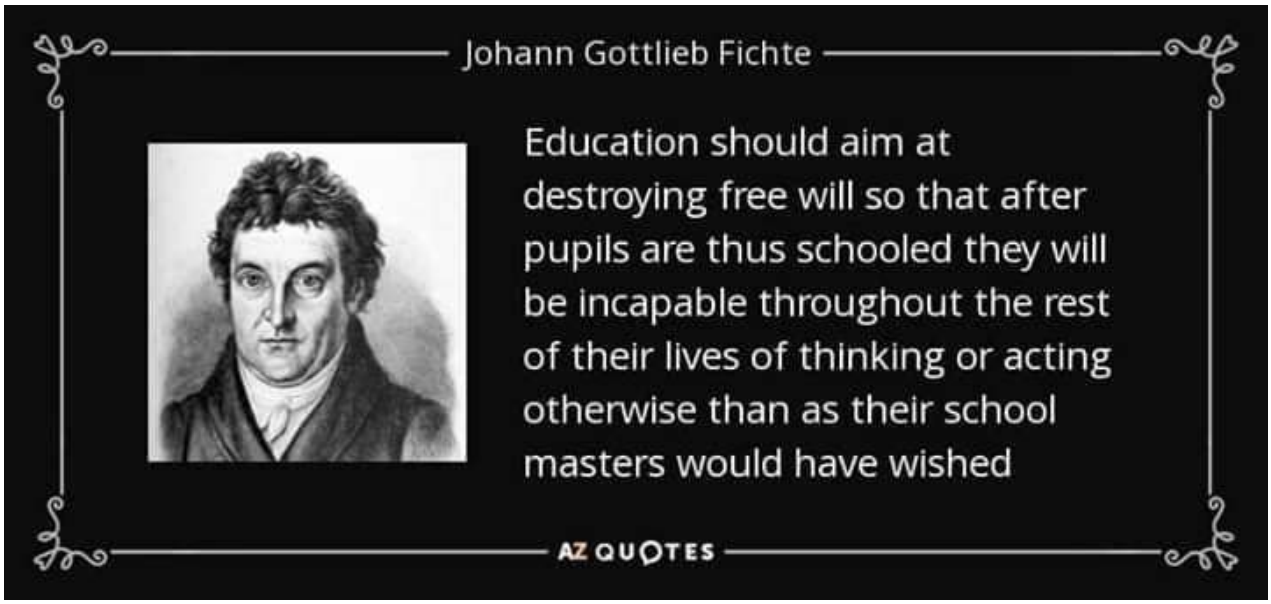
The German *Volkschule* system as designed by J.G. Fichte in the early 1800's was used almost completely unchanged as the model for our own US public school system. His stated goal in designing the *Volkschule* was to create: "*workers who will not strike, citizens who will not revolt, soldiers who will not disobey orders*". It was explicitly designed to prevent the children of the middle and lower classes from being able to operate independently of state control.

From the very first day of kindergarten, children learn to sit at a desk and not rise, fidget or cause any sort of unapproved "disruption". They're forced to unthinkingly submit to a teacher's instructions on when and how to use their own bodies. Basically, the last sort of thing any non-crippled child would ever do, they're coerced and abused into doing for hours on end, for the entire dozen or more years of their government-mandated indoctrination. Within just a few months, they don't even need to be told to sit quietly at their desk, their spirits will have been broken to the point they do so on their own.

The American form of compulsory schooling began in the State of Massachusetts in around 1850. It was based on the Prussian *Volkschule* model of public schooling, which was designed to churn out obedient conformists. It was opposed by about 80% of the state's population, sometimes with guns, with the last holdouts being Barnstable on Cape Cod in the 1880's, when armed state militia seized the area and marched the children off to school under armed guard.

Despite the decade-long panopticon teachers have over their unwilling charges, exactly <u>where</u> are the results? ***Prior*** to the imposition of compulsory education, the literacy rate in Massachusetts (and that of non-immigrant Americans) was an amazing **<u>98%</u>**(!) yet after education became compulsory the rate never exceeded 91%, which is where it sat in 1990, the last year I have firm data for. In 2022, we find that a staggering 54% of all Americans can't read above a 6th-grade level - only a pathetic 44% of Whites and 18% of blacks are able to read at grade-appropriate proficiency.

Fortunately, home-schooling has grown to a point where about 1.5 million American children are being educated at home by their parents. News in the education press shows that many home-schooled children are five or more years ahead of their public-education peers in their ability to think. However the nasty habit of Puritan thugs seizing children with threats of violence if their parents try to prevent them attending the official indoctrination centres continues to this day: **https://archive.is/elW90**



In Prussian *Volkschule*, you quickly learn that if anything bad happens, you complain to teacher and trust teacher to deal with it. If teacher doesn't do anything you must have deserved it. ¯_(ツ)_/¯ Doing anything to protect yourself shows you don't trust the teacher, and trust me: teacher **will** do something to deal with you. In an American school, if something bad happens, what do they do?

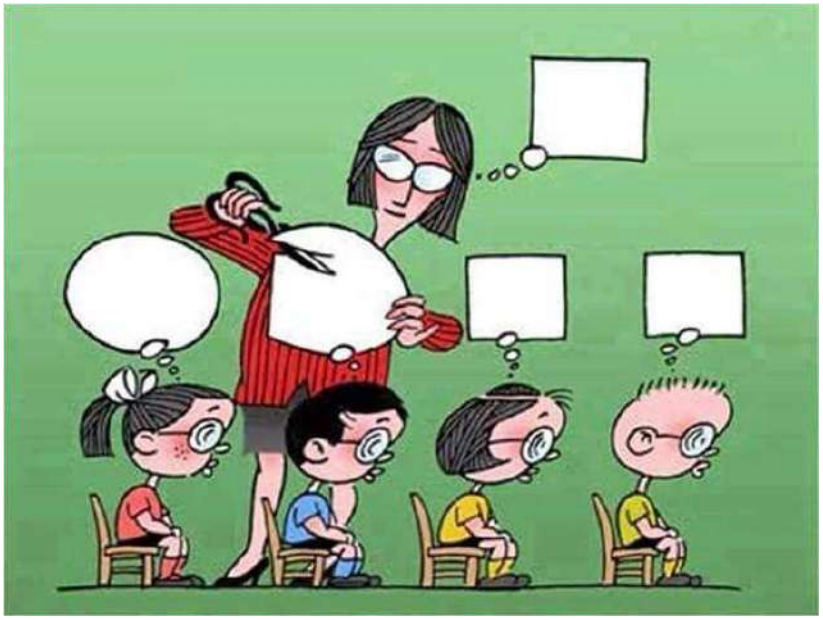
America's compulsory education system was the brainchild of U.S. educators who'd visited Prussia's highly regimented schools. They admired the Prussian system's obedient, robot-like students and its philosophy that the state was the true parent of every child. If you doubt it, check out these quotes from some of the founders and philosophers of U.S. government education:

"Let our pupil be taught that he does not belong to himself, but that he is public property. He must be taught to amass wealth, but it must be only to increase his power of contributing to the wants and demands of the state. [Education] can be done effectually only by the interference and aid of the Legislature."
— Benjamin Rush (1786)

"The secret of the superiority of the state over private education lies in the fact that in the former the teacher is responsible to society...[T]he result desired by the state is a wholly different one than that desired by parents, guardians, and pupils."
— Lester Frank Ward (1897)

"[The role of a schoolmaster is to] collect little plastic lumps of human dough from private households and shape them on the social kneading-board."
— Edward Ross (1900)

"Our schools are, in a sense, factories, in which the raw products (children) are to be shaped and fashioned into products to meet the various demands of life. The specifications for manufacturing come from the demands of twentieth-century civilization, and it's the business of the school to build its pupils according to the specifications laid down."
— Ellwood Cubberley (1920)



Read books such as John Taylor Gatto's "*Dumbing Us Down: The Hidden Curriculum in Compulsory Schooling*" and Sheldon Richman's "*Separating School and State*" and you'll see for yourself that today's shocking rates of illiteracy, lack of historic knowledge, and sheeplike belief that people exist to serve the state aren't the result of a failed system, they're the result of a system succeeding beyond its founders' wildest hopes. It can't be fixed because it's working as intended. They don't even want parents' input in what kids are taught [**https://archive.is/koIqP**].

The implementation of our public schools replaced the old "Little Red Schoolhouse" model that was formerly entrenched in civil society. This has the result that our children passively park themselves for ever-longer hours per day in schools, spending years (decades, even) of their lives sealed off from the real world, in order to somehow "*prepare them for the real world*".

It's not a system that produces the old-style breed of rowdy, curious, can-do Americans, and modern "conservatives" seem to approve of the dysfunctional situation just as much as progressives do. Whenever the failures become too obvious to ignore, the criticisms too loud, the response is always: "*Give us more money! Give us more teachers! Give us more administrators and rules for them to enforce!*" We even find examples of teachers complaining that students don't unquestioningly accept being propagandised: **https://archive.is/EJa8I**

The myth of education is that there's some magic *juju* with education, that there's a special magic secret way which only college-trained "educators" can provide, and if your kids don't get it, they will (somehow) be irreparably harmed – all complete bullshit, but it's the reason for official hostility to homeschooling and private schools. If you send your children to compulsory K-12 schooling, you effectively have no children – rather, they're the System's children.

Considering the piss-poor job that the official indoctrination centres do in teaching their vulnerable young charges "life skills", It would even be a marked improvement to have them teach television-watching and videogames instead of the "*three R's*", so at least the public's desire for those influences would wane, and students would take refuge in pursuing literature, logic, and science.

As it stands, schooling largely exists because it's government-subsidized chhild minding. The government wants to get hold of your children to indoctrinate them, and so it compels schooling and arranges social institutions so that schooling is needed to succeed in areas under government control – think of how a college degree is necessary to be taken seriously in many circles nowadays, or the ridiculous idea that a degree is needed to get, say, a minimum-skill entry-level clerical office job. Sadly, this expectation is often reflected in employer's hiring demands. Read Robert W. Whitaker's 1982 book "*Why Johnny Can't Think : America's Professor-Priesthood*" to get a solid grounding on why this unconscious worship of academic credentials exists among college staff and graduates.

One of the mechanisms used for ensuring adequate attendance at government indoctrination sessions is that schools perform a sorting function. Before the able and industrious are sorted from the rest, they must first attend X years listening to government propaganda and regurgitating it on command. Absent this kind of subsidy and social engineering, formal schooling would be vastly reduced - instead people would rely largely on home schooling, apprenticeship, and internship.

Unlike the plebeian mass whose children are taught at the *Volkschule*, we see that the aristocrats hire tutors to teach their children one-on-one or in small groups. Similarly, we find that the aristocrats of the spirit teach their own children themselves, at home - home-schooling is extremely desirable, as is your own involvement on local school boards and other such "boring" things. The best way to save your kids from ACWE's indoctrination is to pool resources with other like-minded parents and return to the time-tested "Little Red Schoolhouse" model, perhaps with the parents taking turns to teach the tribe's kids. Learn to recognize and use learning opportunities that exist at home, in nature, in your community, and in everyday activities. I see people complaining all the time that they were never taught how to do their taxes while parked behind a school desk: when did **you** last use doing your taxes as an opportunity to teach your kids that information? Even if you use an accountant, you can guide your kids through the things needed to organize that.

We see the systematic destruction of masculine traits created by modern schooling (and mentioned at the start of this book) most clearly in children's psychiatry; generally, what happens is that a young boy proves to be disruptive due to boredom in class, and is sent to see an (almost always female) psychiatrist. The result of this visit's that the child is branded as "suffering" from ADD/ADHD/autism/etc. and is medicated to function in the female-child-oriented class. If a boy is still disruptive, forcible medication is progressively increased until the level is such that the child's natural masculine restlessness and need for physical activity is muted.

Such chemical restraints on boys by the education system can be seen as "Chemical Petticoating" - "*Petticoating*" being the deliberate feminization of boys in order to manipulate and coerce their behavior. We're facing a likely unprecedented level of civilization-wide petticoating by our misrulers at ACWE. Just in case you find it useful, you should know that the solution circa 1900 for children who were considered "disruptive" compared to their peers was to delay their entry into formal schooling for a year or two, and from what I can see it worked much better than does the current feminine system of ignoring or medicating them.

Interestingly, if you look at the typical traits of young boys, and convert them into adult traits, you get an "alpha" male: little boys enjoy running around, climbing, wrestling, and we see alpha males are "natural" athletes – quite physical and adventurous. Little boys compete for social status, as do alpha males or they just simply have it already. Little boys dare each other, alpha males have courage. Little boys are okay with male company, and don't feel the need to pursue the company of girls, they don't yet need sex from girls (though that changes after puberty hits), but they don't need anything else from them, no love, no acceptance, no validation, no friendship either and that's similar to alpha male behavior. They enjoy breaking rules, they fight when challenged, they glorify violence etc.

Thus it seems that an alpha male is simply a normal little boy all grown up. At the same time we find that beta males often retain childish qualities – whiny, uncertain, insecure, living in fantasy, attached to a girlfriend like to a mother etc. – somehow beta males lost their healthy childhood traits along the way. The alpha boys keep those traits, the beta ones boost their reproductive fitness with other traits. Some are successful; others fall to the feminized educational system.

Manchildren are created due to liberal mores, and more importantly liberal laws, discouraging disciplining of children. In traditional societies (where every beta gets a wife and casual sex is verboten), children emotionally mature very quickly, since parents make sure to discipline them.

If your children's education is not under your control, then there's no way to guarantee the quality or nature of that education. Since our intent is to create a separate, tribal, cultural identity, it's important to raise our children outside of ACWE's indoctrination centers. Again, home-schooling is an excellent way to do this, especially if several families pool their resources and the stay-at-home parents cooperate and/or take turns in teaching the children (with external tutors being a useful addition if needed for more advanced topics such as higher mathematics).

With the proper legal safeguards, you could set up a non-profit trust to manage a small local school for your tribe's children, again, imitate the old-time multiple-ages-in-one-room "little red schoolhouse" system, with a local person (one of <u>your</u> people) teaching local kids. Kids benefit from contact with a wide variety of adults and age-groups, as this prepares them to interact in the real world, not the stale artificial environment of school and college.

"*In 1882, fifth graders read these authors in their Appleton School Reader: William Shakespeare, Henry Thoreau, George Washington, Sir Walter Scott, Mark Twain, Benjamin Franklin, Oliver Wendell Holmes, John Bunyan, Daniel Webster, Samuel Johnson, Lewis Carroll, Thomas Jefferson, Ralph Waldo Emerson, and others like them.*
In 1995, a student teacher of fifth-graders in Minneapolis wrote to the local newspaper, "I was told children aren't to be expected to spell the following correctly: back, big, call, came, can, day, did, dog, down, get, good, have, he, home, if, in, is, it, like, little, man, morning, mother, my, night, off, out, over, people, play, ran, said, saw, she, some, soon, their, them, there, time, two, too, up, us, very, water, we, went, where, when, will, would, etc. Is this nuts?"

- John Taylor Gatto, in his book "*The Underground History of American Education*"

In the French Revolution, they smashed the enforceable apprenticeship system, and in the nineteenth century, the British smashed their enforceable apprenticeship system. After the enforceable apprenticeship system was ended, the quality of workmanship declined with each generation for several generations, as is easily revealed when one examines old furniture.

This was a move to priestly power (in the sense of spiritual or moral, as opposed to physical – religion was also attacked by the French Revolution as they sought to replace it with a faith centered on government instead of God). The priestly/political class sought to force all children to spend endless hours at ~~Church~~ school. And ever since then education has been getting longer and longer, and sucking up people's entire youths, when they should be working and having children.
It's time for the Dissolution of the ~~Monasteries~~ Schools.

The control test for formal education is unschooling and Sudbury school, Sudbury being a school that just does not school children. There are 50 years of anecdotal evidence that the original Sudbury Valley School works very well, at least for middle-class kids who are already probably of above average intelligence, and the numerous imitators produce similar results. It also works with parents volunteering in place of staff, which approximates the deliberately less formal and less organized unschooling programs.

Reading surveys of the unschooled, it looks like the results are similar to schooling, supporting the null hypothesis [**http://www.arnoldkling.com/blog/the-null-hypothesis-in-education-is-hard-to-disprove/**], and that the results are better than schooling to the extent that it leads to the child spending a lot of time with adults, and worse to the extent that it leads to the child being socially isolated – that a child learns more spending time one on one with a random adult, than in a class of thirty kids and one teacher, and learns more in proportion as he spends time with several different adults. Bad outcomes occur only if the **only** adult contact is the mother, and the mother does not know much or do much, but even the bad outcomes aren't conspicuously bad (and as far as I can see, even those are still better than the occasional really bad outcomes in school at least). An unschooled child who has had bad unschooling is not obviously and radically worse-off than the one who has had good regular schooling. The worst unschooling does not make a dramatic or consistent difference, short of locking the kid in a dungeon and feeding him through the keyhole.

We see the failure of the present education system in practically all compulsory subjects taught today - teachers just go through the motions, rather than following through with any real desire to help students succeed by generating interest in the topic through practical applied examples.

You may notice that governments are presently spending more of your money on public education than ever before, yet increasing numbers of high school graduates are functionally illiterate. The funny thing about all the innovative new tricks pioneered over the years to 'close the education gap' in US schools is that when the same measures are employed with all students, high achievers and low achievers all, the achievement gap actually ***increases***.

For example, traditional instruction in mathematics was crippled by forcing it to cater instruction in more advanced functions to the mythical "average" student, rather than to those who are actually interested and capable. Putting all children in the same classroom holds back the ones who could be doing calculus while the others are still just doing arithmetic.

For the majority of kids, teaching them to make correct change and to figure out how many cans of paint they might need to cover a wall would be enough, and they can pick up further skills once they find them needed in the real world. For the slightly smarter kids, things like double-entry bookkeeping, algebra, and graphing data might suit their needs. For the really smart kids, that's where to throw in calculus, trigonometry, set theory and so on.

By attempting to give every child a theoretical knowledge of calculus, trigonometry, set theory, etc. you dumb down the material to the point that smart kids are bored to death and learn nothing, and dumb kids will barely pick up the rudiments of something they will likely never use. Opposition to educational streaming is inefficient, part of ACWE's war on real talent in the name of "equality" - publicly admitting to and dealing with the differing mental abilities between people and groups of people is apparently "too hard" to solve, so it seems we've resigned ourselves to lying about it. The advertised solution to this issue they created in the first place is, we are told, the teaching of "Common Core" mathematics.

Problem: Teaching children using traditional methods, such as phonics for reading, repetition for writing, and memorization for arithmetic, sees "people of color" underperform. Traditional methods have disparate impact - a big "no-no" under discrimination laws as enshrined by the Supreme Court's unanimous 1971 decision in the "*Griggs v. Duke Power Co".* case.

"Solution": *Yo homie, stop teaching dem kids dat honkey sheeit*! - A child educated under "Common Core" methods cannot effectively do maths, spell correctly, or write grammatically, causing people of color to perform equally to White children.

The theory behind common core maths is somewhat plausible (Paul Lockhart's essay "*A Mathematician's Lament"* will give you the grist of it), but when the theory is applied with the goal of equalizing scores between protected and unprotected groups, the outcome is inevitably awful. CC discards the traditional White male way of doing math and replaces it with a strong empowered PoC womnyn's way, then tests students using the latter not the former. But math is purely reliant on IQ and the "White male" way *is* the optimal method - replacing it by making students jump through extra hoops makes the whole thing harder, not easier, and the result is that all students are worse-off for it.

Back in the days, behavioral psychologists discovered what they came to call "learned helplessness". They'd do the standard psych lab rat thing: set out some tasty food pellets for some lab rats, which the rats quickly learned could be accessed by pushing a button. But then they'd electrify the button, and set it to go off at random intervals. Such that when the rat pushed the button, sometimes it would get food, but sometimes it would get shocked. The rat never knew which one was coming, so eventually all they did was cower in the corner. Rats are simple, binary creatures. When there's no relationship between behavior and outcome, their little rodent brains simply shut down.

You can produce similar effects in humans, quite easily; spank a kid today for what got them a mere talking-to yesterday, and earned them a reward the day before, and pretty soon you'll have it. Or you could do it industrial scale, through the "education" system. This is, of course, what #*Woke* is designed to do. It has been that way since at least the 1970s, when the twin cancers of "self-esteem" and "political correctness" started taking over the public schools - they're flipsides of the same coin. When everyone gets a prize just for showing up, that decouples "reward" from "behavior" just as effectively as randomizing reward. If "achievement" is meaningless, why try?

As mentioned in chapter two, the education system has as one of its reasons for existence, (if not **the** major reason) the role of causing your children to conform to the cultural paradigms of the nation via a carrot-and-stick method: conformists are rewarded, as are those who "rebel" in the officially-approved ways. Those who refuse to conform, or who **actually** rebel (by doing so in un-approved ways) are cast out and shunned.

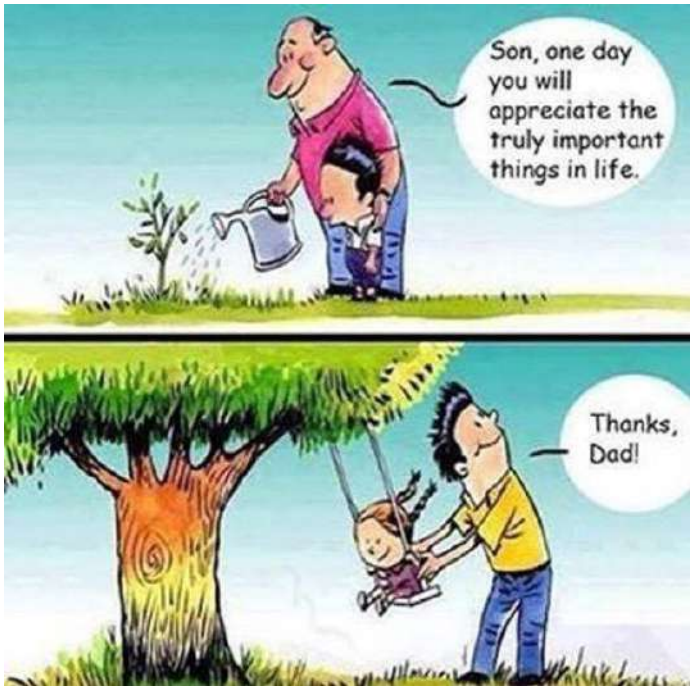
"*The effectiveness of propaganda, in the strict sense of that word, depends largely upon what is technically called pre-propaganda, i.e., the ideas injected into the minds of children by their education. In the United States, the public schools were early converted into a very efficient machine to stunt the minds, pervert the morals, and destroy the self-respect of children, but the Americans seem pleased with the results, even after they have had a preliminary view of them in the unwashed derelicts, sexual perverts, drug-addicts, and crazed revolutionaries that their public schools are systematically producing at their expense. It seems likely, therefore, that the Americans no longer have either the intelligence or the will to resist their enemies, and will dumbly acquiesce in the fate prepared for them. Since the number of Americans who are still permitted to have liquid capital is very small, the ever increasing number of fore-sighted refugees who are fleeing from the United States to other countries is significant, though statistically small."*
- Dumitru Bacu, "*The Anti-Humans*", 1963

One especially common example that I know happens frequently which demonstrates how actual mental rebellion (the concepts of *thoughtcrime* or *wrongthink* described in Orwell's book "*1984*") is shunned, is that it's almost impossible to discuss the US Civil War without some ACWE-indoctrinated person claiming it happened because of slavery. Should anyone point out the simple fact that it was about state's rights (the last gasp of anti-federalism, in fact) the indoctrinated puppet will invariably respond with some line about "*yeah, a state's right to preserve slavery*", with all the unexamined self-righteous moral superiority this provides them within ACWE.

Now, I'm not going to rebel and try and explain to you the reader that slavery isn't immoral *per se*, nor shall I point out that opposing slavery is not inherently moral, nor will I even try to argue that slavery is morally justified despite being financially counter-productive, but I will point out that a simple factual statement was deliberately derailed by the devotees of ACWE's belief-system by transforming it into an argument regarding ethics rather than the actual, factual events. Ancient philosophers would have been horrified to see this being done for almost any topic today.

Remaining unemotional and coolly analysing topics has been the foundation of science for five hundred years, and philosophy for the preceding 1500+ years. For an example of this paradigm, consider that Plato is known to have restrained himself from punishing a slave he was angry with, instead delegating the task to another person rather than doing so when he was under the influence of emotion. Now this is being cast aside with calls for the "decolonialization" of science and philosophy – this may be the reason for signs of stagnation in both, and should be opposed mercilessly if you want your people to flourish. As Mel Tappan once wrote: "*Most problems resolve themselves into self-evident solutions if you have enough reliable information and if you can eliminate emotion from the evaluation of it.*"

It should be impressed upon your children that moral arguments are irrelevant when teaching or discussing pretty much anything, but especially history. To dissuade them from trying to do so, any child who tries to use such an argument regarding history should be told they failed their task, and made to feel bad about having done so.



I've tried to hammer home about the social conformism role that formal government-managed education has on people. I hope you're beginning to realize the need to remove your children from the tentacles of the government education system as much as possible.

Kids can be ridiculously materialistic. By

buying them every toy advertised on TV, you're setting yourself up for trouble. It's hard for kids to understand "*We can't afford that*", when they see you "affording" food, rent/mortgage, clothes and gas for your car. This can only get worse in SHTF conditions, as children who need constant distraction from toys and electronic gadgets will find it impossible to cope when they break or stop working, as their imaginations won't be up to the task of entertaining themselves cheaply.

Just as you need to prepare yourself now to do more with less later, you need to prepare your kids. Cut down on the number and lavishness of "bought" toys. Start making handmade toys, playing inexpensive card games or word games, and improvising family games of your own. Encourage kids to draw, write, or develop a simple hobby like wildflower collecting. Let them make their own toys. Teach them strategic games like chess (which will help them think for themselves). Let them run around and explore outside on your property. Get them a dog. You'll find that all this not only costs **much** less, but also helps you to pull together as a family.

Children universally ask to 'help' with chores shortly after they master that whole walking and talking thing. Their 'help' is obviously not very helpful at first – you'd think they were young children or something. However, the **last** thing you should do is discourage them from doing chores. Americans spend years discouraging their kids from 'helping' with chores, and are then baffled that their older children are resentful when asked to help with normal household chores.

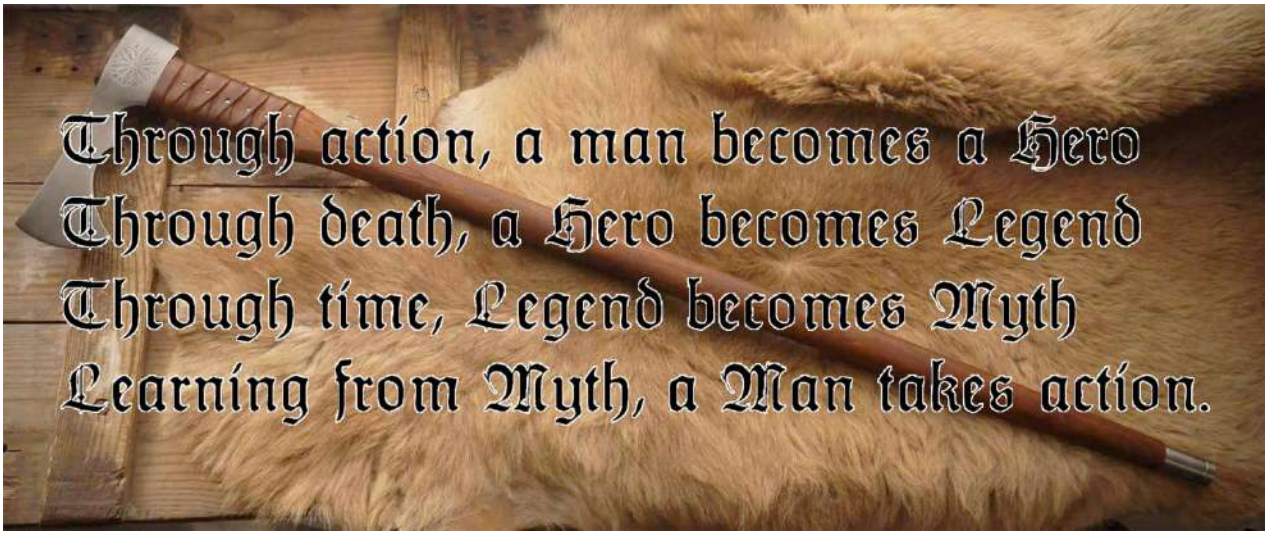
Children often have emotions they don't know the meaning of. It's **your** job as a parent to help them try things until they figure out what they need.

Prepare your children
[to be continued...]

Some Final Words Regarding Your Kids:
You are always internalizing the culture you have around you. This ability isn't something you can turn on and off, even when you wish you could. The quality of people you surround yourself with is extremely important. Most people who grew up to become geniuses, pre-1900, were kept apart from their same-age peers and raised at home, by tutors or parents. They spent their days around highly competent people and nearly every single one was home-schooled.

If you measure two-and-a-half-year-old children against chimps and orang-utans at the same developmental age, they're about even in their capacity to handle tools and solve problems on their own. Only when it comes to observing others and repeating their actions is there a noticeable difference: two-and-a-half-year-olds can extract knowledge from people just by watching them move about a room. They start to desire what those around them desire. They pick up tacit knowledge. They change their dialect to match their peer groups. And after a handful of years of hanging about with people more skilled than themselves, our babies — those tiny, soft-skulled little creatures — can out-compete chimpanzees in everything but close combat.

So you'd better surround yourself with something you actually want inside. Find and curate the culture you want to become. Surround your kids with the kind of culture you want them to be part of. Surround your kids with the kids of people you want them to **be** – including yourself.



*67. **Useful Maxims & Guidelines For Organizing Things***

- The light that holds back the darkness is not a candle, but the glint from a sword-blade.
- Be the type of man you want your daughter to marry, and your son to become.
- The one you borrow from owns you.
- Without monetary sovereignty, you have no sovereignty.
- Whatever you subsidize, you get more of, and whatever you tax, you get less of.
- Protecting industry helps it to grow just as protecting children helps them grow.
- You cannot reason a man out of an opinion he did not reason himself into.
- If you want someone to hate and resent you, give them your charity.
- Immigration without assimilation is colonization.
- Democracy is the process whereby the incompetent elevate the corrupt.
- Bad citizens get good governments and good laws. The reverse is also true.
- Morality is the cloak worn by rulers to disguise their self-interest.
- Anyone accusing others of bias is ignoring their own.
- Decadence masks itself as progress.
- Genocide is generally not the best solution, but it is a permanent one.
- The intelligence of an organized group drops exponentially as the number of people in it rises.
- Increasing socio-political complexity causes increased per-person costs.
- Increasing socio-political complexity eventually reaches a point of diminishing returns.
- Never, ever let your sense of honor be used against you by someone less honorable.
- Showing mercy to the guilty is punishing the innocent.
- Civilizations often die from executing too few heretics, rarely from executing too many.
- Efficiency is the enemy of resilience.
- Discrimination and judgement are the foundation of civility.
- Wounds to the body, heart, or pocket will heal, but humiliation festers.
- "*The people's welfare*" is the tyrants' alibi.
- Judge not by intent or words but by results.
- Don't believe what you wish to believe until you know for certain what you need to know.
- Equality is the opposite of quality.
-
-
-
-

68. General Socio-Political Post-Shtf Considerations.

It's difficult to separate economics and politics, because each one shapes the other is ways that are pervasive yet subtle. You must always remember to adapt policies and decisions to local circumstances, and to maximize local decision-making to ensure flexibility and responsiveness - you cannot solve general problems by ignoring them in favor of individuality, nor should you use individuality to judge generalities. The vast majority of social problems cannot be resolved via economic means, and vice-versa, economic problems cannot be resolved via social means. In our present age there's no such thing as "*keeping out of politics*". All issues are political issues, and politics itself is a mass of lies, evasions, folly, hatred, and schizophrenia.

The peoples of Earth are very unequally situated regarding the size of their territories: some rule over such large areas that they're unable to get the full benefit out of them by themselves. Others suffer from a lack of territory which forces to leave many talents unused because their limited territory deprives them of sufficient opportunities. Territory and population don't remain forever in the same lasting relationship - since humans are living beings, their fortunes wax and wane. Political areas similarly change, extending and contracting over time. Soil alone cannot feed an infinite number of persons, nor can it provide an indefinite number of possibilities for productive work. There's a limit to such possibilities fixed by nature. Once this limit's reached, a people must expand in territory or technology, or else must lower its standard of living.

Just as the land gives humanity a home and food, it also supplies the foundations of industrial life. In natural resources and agricultural products, it provides the basic things out of which are made the goods and wares people need. While not possible in every area, self-sufficiency in not only food but industrial output should be encouraged and pursued by all societies. Most examples we have where this was not done was due to centralized control seeking to prevent separatism, most notably in the former USSR, where industries were deliberately placed thousands of miles from their natural resources or the consumers of their goods in order to ensure compliance. We also see this done in the globalized economy, where local production of even simple goods is discouraged in favor of importing those goods from elsewhere, causing dependence on trade.

In the words of Henry Kissinger, "*Control the food supply and you control the people*". – and the same applies to any other resource. The same thing was done historically - picture if you will, an early kingdom somewhere in the Middle East. The kingdom is reasonably prosperous, but the rulers have fairly limited resources, which depend on taxation or tribute. What does the king do if a village refuses to pay taxes and executes the tax-collectors? If you thought "crush the rebellion with the army" you might be correct, but what if the king's resources were very limited? Lacking the thousands of soldiers needed to subdue even one city, what can be done? Ah, but the critical resource there at the time was water- especially in the quantities needed to grow crops; the king may not have the thousands of soldiers needed to subdue a city, but he does have the hundred or so needed to shut off the water going to that city in the irrigation canals. Eventually, the city either pays up, or it's unable to grow more food and collapses. This is not a hypothetical example, just see: **https://infogalactic.com/info/Hydraulic_empire** ...the same is done today with international trade, and most importantly, with the money supply. Rebellion against ACWE's system is crushed through the use of "*international sanctions*" and the withdrawal of loans and funds by ACWE's international central banking cartel. Ponder that in the year 2000, there were only 5 central national banks not under the control of ACWE: North Korea, Iraq, Iran, Afghanistan and Syria.

As I write this in 2021, only North Korea and Iran remain free of ACWE's financial control, and Syria seems to be in an uncertain state due to the Biden regime's decision to increase funding to the Saudi-sponsored jihadists fighting the government for control of the nation. Also consider that in 1997 Catherine Bertini, the UN World Food Program Executive Director, stated: "*Food is power. We use it to change behavior. Some may call that bribery. We do not apologize".* - indeed, Universalists never apologize after their choices kill millions of people for refusing to comply with their latest politically-correct fads.

69. <u>What Manner Of Shepherd Is Your Government?</u>

"*Europeans,* [when] *faced with the problem of finding a suitable successor to their discredited and deposed rulers* [demonstrated a] *constant failure to investigate the basic causes of the deterioration in ability and general quality which brought about the downfall of their whilom rulers.* [They were] *never able to devise such reforms in the production, preservation and control of their élites as would have prevented a recurrence of decay. Even among the deposed rulers themselves, whether royal or aristocratic,* ***no effort was made to discover what avoidable errors had occurred*** *in their way of life, their training and particularly in their marriages, which had prevented them from preserving their quality unimpaired.*
Thus the procedure […] *has been, not to attempt any chastening or improvement of the institutions on which their government depended, but the summary abolition of these institutions, followed by a gradual elevation to power and authority of ever more* [elected officials] ***without much attention being given to the question of quality***. *Ever wider and wider circles of ordinary people were granted the light, through their elected representatives, to control the life and law of the nation,* ***irrespective of any stake they might have in the land, or of any public spirit, mental soundness, stability or political qualifications they might possess***." (emphasis added)
- from: *The Specious Origins of Liberalism; The Genesis of a Delusion* – A.M. Ludovici 1967

With a hat-tip to Hoppe, consider that good government is like a stationary bandit, as a stationary bandit has incentive to shear sheep rather than skin them. He treats the sheep as gently as possible and cares for them, so that he may shear them again next year (ref. the Laffer limit) without causing them to be seriously harmed or leading them to resist violently.

Conversely, bad government is like a mobile bandit, which does not care about the harm done to the sheep, and so the mobile bandit skins the sheep without any regard to their well-being. Government bureaucracy in democracies increasingly approximates the behavior of mobile bandits, in which each bureaucrat seeks to increase their power and wealth.

Indeed, we see that in the absence of external violence, bands of pirates ***become*** governments - this can be seen in the way that the Saxons became the rulers of Romano-Celtic Britain, the way in which the Eastern Norse Vikings became the Slavic nobility, and perhaps most recently, in the way that the (mostly English) colonial pirates who took over the Spanish Main ran it as perhaps the freest and fairest "country" in the 17th and 18th century, until the British imperial government with its (by that era's standards) left-wing policies rocked up to fuck everything up and turn it into todays dysfunctional West Indies, as was pointed out by James Anthony Froude in his 1888 book, "The Bow of Ulysses" aka "The English in the West Indies".

Steadily rising productivity raised all boats for much of the 20th century, and many people, especially economists, jumped to the conclusion that was just how the world works, that if we took care of productivity, everything else would take care of itself. However, this conclusion was proven wrong by the decoupling of productivity and wages caused by automation.

The symptoms of our increasingly poor political system(s) have been masked by the rising productivity of our economic and technical one. However, it seems that the decoupling of productivity is pulling back the curtain on the political failures, which have been and are being exacerbated by the ever-increasing political centralization.

Typically, in such situations, a dictator rises or is installed by others, and they contain the harm done by the leftist purity spiral for a time. Like Stalin, who saw the ever-increasing leftism in the USSR, and after he amassed enough power, metaphorically declared "*we've gone left enough*", and proceeded to eliminate anyone to the left of him…. while still allowing those to the right of him to continue being removed as was the case earlier. French Revolutionary leftism (Jacobinism) similarly died when Napoleon took control, and in China, it was Deng Xiaoping who saw that Mao had gone too far, and once Mao was safely dead, put China on a somewhat saner track.

Sometimes the leftist purity spiral ends in a military coup. This generally results in the new leadership "pointedly" explaining to anyone who disagrees that the situation got a bit too far left, and we're going back a bit rightwards – though not necessarily very far. To get all the way back right, to where we were before the leftist purity spiral set in, generally requires armed conflict within the military, with one faction going to war with another, as in the Restoration, or even foreign conquest as foreigners take advantage of internal disorder to impose some sanity as happened in Cambodia, or some other event similarly drastic.

The further the reversal goes rightwards, for example Britain's Restoration, the less bloody the result is. When you're far-left it requires large amounts of terror to stabilize the social order and prevent it from going even further left, than it does when you're far-right, for the order of the Restoration rested on the patriarchal authority of heads of households and men of property, while Stalin's order rested on Stalin. Weimar Germany likewise was going ever-leftwards until Hitler brought things under control there, despite Weimar Germany having barely wet its toes in madness*, and the Nazis themselves being leftist-lite (national SOCIALISTS, nicht wahr, kameraden?) Leftist repression makes politics compulsory to practically everyone, while rightist repression makes politics forbidden to almost everyone, requiring far lower levels of repression.
*(Because we know what was in the books the Nazis burned; look up Magnus Hirschfeld.)

In the early days of a leftist purity spiral, armed conflicts tend to favor the left, due to greater cohesion, a greater willingness to self-sacrifice, and greater willingness to use dreadful means. In the final days of a leftist purity spiral, armed conflicts tend to favor the right, often in a ridiculously one-sided way, for reasons that aren't altogether clear. Possibly the leftist demand for ever more left-wing beliefs selects for people ever more stupid and ever less in contact with reality – a situation which would logically undermine military discipline and order, and one we can see beginning in the advertising campaign used by the US Army in 2021 "the calling" - [**https://yewtu.be/MIYGFSONKbk**].

One of the problems the French army faced during the battle of France in WW2 was their socialist officers losing their shit and surrendering or fleeing from inferior German forces. French troops were quite willing to fight hard and often did fight very hard, but their officers ran at the first signs of danger, destroying any ability to coordinate a defense. The US increasingly has a similar problem with its "woke" officer corps, which will only continue to get worse.

US military flag officers are petty bureaucrats and incompetent 'yes' men who deserve to get railroaded. [**https://archive.is/fvfkh**] They said nothing while the military has been transformed over the past 40+ years into the PC spectacle it now is - flag officers are fully committed to the Cathedral and care only for their post-retirement jobs in the military-industrial complex, or Congress, or the CIA.

For example, the Air Force now has drag shows to "boost morale" [**https://archive.is/opBcz**]. To normal people, this is completely nuts (pun intended), but to the people in charge it's perfectly normal. In fact, they think it's bizarre that anyone would question it. They're not *entirely* wrong, in that the people who arranged it will never be pressed on it. The politicians all agree that drag queens are who we are now, and the press echoes the sentiment.

Obviously, battle and danger reveals truths about men that are unlikely to be revealed under normal circumstances. Therefore, battle and danger traditionally led to a high rate of promotion and demotion, and armies historically sought to avoid promoting people except as a result of battle-testing (aka combat experience), because of the high likelihood that demotions will be necessary if people are promoted under quieter circumstances.

Inverting this procedure results in a promotion process akin to academics receiving tenure, and is going to produce a non-fighting force – it makes the military into an extension of the political priesthood. This makes the priesthood safe from a military coup, but at the cost of military ineffectiveness. Let me use a historical example here:

The last time warriors held full control of the US military was before the Korean War, since in 1950 when General MacArthur wanted to push the retreating Communist forces (the North Koreans and the Chinese "volunteers") all the way back to the Sino-Korean border he was fired from his post – as he wrote at the time: "*In war, there's no substitute for victory*". And there really isn't.

However, our progressive warrior-turned-priest President Eisenhower nixed that, as it would have returned the warrior class to social-political pre-eminence it had had before FDR. The cover story used to placate the masses for failing to pursue victory, was of course, the "*risk of nuclear war*" – at a time when the USSR had no actual way to deliver the handful of nukes it *did* have to US soil, and didn't plan to do so anyway, even had Korea fallen.

The lack of victory in Korea was, and should be seen as being, directly caused by the US State Department and other bureaucratic branches wanting to retain control over their political power over the USA, and its alliances. They fired MacArthur, the priesthood remained in charge and rushed to consolidate their power (leading to the 1960's counterculture), and every single war the US was involved in since that day has been a draw at best, unless it deliberately targeted nonentities the way the operation against Grenada did, crushing a mouse with a steamroller.

On the other hand, observe that less than ten rent-a-cops handled a massive horde of Occupy Wall Street protesters, though it somehow took ***three hundred*** policemen to handle around fifty of them. The debacles of the British military in Iraq (and Afghanistan) suggest that rentacops could similarly handle today's British army - a handful of Blackwater mercenaries can defeat a large horde of Arabs, a handful of Arabs can defeat a horde of British soldiers, which suggests that a hundred or so private military contractors could easily conquer Britain if the US was to ever loosen its grip on Blackwater's leash, or if another armed and motivated group springs up under dire circumstances at some point.

Europe's moral weakness makes reversion to seventh-century anarcho-piratism a real possibility. If (or rather, when) the USA goes down for the count, motivated armed amateurs could effectively carve up Europe including Britain between themselves much like the various Gothic tribes did after the fall of the Roman Empire - think of Sean Connery and Michael Caine's characters in the epic 1975 movie "***The Man Who Would Be King***" …just don't claim to be "gods" like they did.

Motivation matters far more than most of us think – often more than equipment or training; consider how Italy was largely unified owing to the military actions of Garibaldi* and his hundred or so troops in the early 1800's, **and** that the whole entire city of Belgrade, with millions of inhabitants, surrendered in 1941 to *Waffen-SS* Captain Fritz Klingenberg and his force of **just six men** **.
* **https://www.britannica.com/biography/Giuseppe-Garibaldi** ** **https://archive.is/8qFl6**

After the Roman Empire collapsed, everywhere in Europe was still theoretically under the control of some king somewhere, but massive anarchy was still the rule, because having just a few armed men was proof against local authorities. When the Saxons "invaded" England, the actual invasion more resembled the arrival of a boat full of a few families led by armed men who would build a farm, and the few armed Britons nearby did not have enough cohesion to make them fuck off back to Saxony. After a couple of centuries, there were no more Romano-Britannic authorities and only Saxon claims to sovereignty remained. Should we become minorities in a hostile but militarily incapable sea of anarchy, self-defense by the cohesive few quickly becomes conquest and rule by the cohesive group, which soon raises up its most exemplary and exceptional members as tribal leaders.

The issue thereafter is, such a near-dictatorial leader is not necessarily a stationary bandit: A ***secure*** dictator, such as the martial and charismatic monarch of a long-established dynasty, is a stationary bandit, but unfortunately, not only are long-established dynasties in short supply, but even when you have one, the legitimate heir to the throne is seldom martial, charismatic, or wise. This leads to a loss of power. As Aristotle stated, "*aristocracies are mostly destroyed ... from virtue not being properly joined to power*". (Politics II, Bk.V. Chap.VIII, 1307a).

As an example, the reason the British throne is politically powerless is mostly because of a long succession of monarchs who were incapable (or perhaps unwilling) of exercising political power. The struggles between King and parliament that took place in the UK between the 1600's and 1800's, were a case of the bureaucracy picking up the dangling reins of state - the same problem afflicting American democracy in the 20th and 21st centuries. This issue rapidly becomes a positive feedback loop: the more power seized by the bureaucracy, the less the monarch (or elected representatives) is able to wield and control as they're supposed and required to.

The reigns of the five good Roman emperors illustrate that the reign of stationary bandit, an absolute dictator secure in his power, fearing neither votes nor coups nor riot nor military insurrection, is a pretty good system. He has an incentive to shear the sheep, but not flay them, while other forms of government tend to flaying. Observe that taxes on the rich are everywhere far above the Laffer limit, and in many places, such as Greece, even the taxes on the working poor are far above the Laffer limit.

You need to have a sovereign that can make war and peace, a sovereign who can ensure that when he says "peace" all his subjects are forced to behave peacefully, and when he says "war", all his subjects are forced to make war. If the sovereign is weak, some of his subjects are apt to act in ways that drag everyone into war. If you have a collapse of cohesion in the ruling elite, and you don't have a sovereign powerful enough to keep them in order, elements of the ruling elite are going to engage in provocative acts. Massive wars tend to start, not because someone decided to start a war, but because of small incidents leading to uncontrollable and unpredictable escalation.

The cause of WW1 was that elements of the Serbian government instigated the assassination of Arch Duke Ferdinand. The individuals involved were punished, but Austria-Hungary was unhappy because obviously more stuff along those lines was going to happen. Austria-Hungary demanded that the Serbian government remake itself so that unauthorized elements of the government would stop engaging in warlike acts. The Serbian government refused, and it was likely incapable of complying, and one thing led to another, and eventually World War I.

In Roman times, some jews rioted against their Greek neighbors, because some Greek had sacrificed chickens to Zeus on his land next to the path the jews used to walk to their synagogue. Roman cops showed up to restore order, the jews killed a Roman cop, the Romans did ***not*** like that sort of thing … And eventually war between Israel and Rome, leading to the destruction of Jerusalem, the destruction of the Temple, and the expulsion of the jews.

Native Americans similarly were unable to control their own, leading to conflict – even when they had a respected and experienced chief, the chief was unable to impose his will on the tribe's warriors, with the result that if the tribe's chief signed a peace treaty, he could do nothing to stop the young men going off to a nearby farm and slaughtering those living there, causing completely justified reprisal actions by the US government (see: **https://archive.is/LvkEd , https://archive.is/dW7ji** , & **https://archive.is/XZOyX**). Notice that this was the basic situation in place for centuries well before any European explorers or colonists arrived.

70. Who Shall Rule Over You?

As we have seen throughout history, the normal and usual form of government has been some variant of monarchy. Republics and suchlike have been rare aberrations that usually ended disastrously. Nothing has particularly changed - our own republic is decadent, corrupt, disunited, and lawless. It suffers from anarcho-tyranny and lack of *asabiyyah* (the Arabic word for social cohesion and shared sense of purpose), just much like most republics do before they collapse to Ceasarism, from external enemies, or internal disorder.

Since Ceasarism is a form of monarchy, we'll therefore end up in monarchy in one way or another, and so the problem is to make sure the transition goes smoothly, and that the monarchy will be adequate and functional to the needs of the nation.

Though kings are usually theoretically absolute, if they aren't supposedly absolute, if they aren't the final judge, the final legislator, if they cannot appoint the judges that please them and fire any judges that displease them, then problems ensue. Just look at the issues in the US these last two decades regarding judges being appointed to the highest court of the land.

However, a government that is *actually* absolute, rather than merely formally absolute, works poorly; humans cannot really exercise that much power competently: A *paterfamilia* is not the ruler of his family because the King makes him so, rather the King is ruler of the state because the *paterfamilia* is ruler of his family. Similarly, the King owns the state because the farmer owns his garden, the farmer does not own his garden because the King grants him title. If a King develops overly grandiose ideas, he quickly finds himself dangerously dependent on a dangerously powerful and uncontrollable bureaucracy or aristocracy. Taking power away from fathers, businessmen, and landowners, doesn't give power to the King - it gives it to dangerously powerful people sitting dangerously close to the King. That's how the Romanovs died, and many others.

Therefore, it's not the King who "runs society": a wise King lets society run *itself* as far as possible, applying the power of the state only in exceptional cases, to stop large-scale organized challenges to state, society, legitimacy, property, the status of the King, and the law.

We can see this in the change to the position of the King in society from the Middle Ages to the Renaissance: in Europe circa 1250 a King's power was fairly limited. He was of course a war-leader, diplomat, and judge of last resort, but he was not a legislator, had little or no input into local matters, nor did he have a private army or any income outside that generated by his own estates. By 1750, during the closing days of the Renaissance (eg. the era of James I) the King was far, far more powerful: this absolutism was justified through the means of the theory of Divine Right, and this was seen as an excellent development by pretty much everyone thinking and writing at the time.

Under Divine Right theory, God gives the King absolute earthly power to "ensure the rights of Man" - the claim to legitimacy is "*men are naturally born free with XYZ rights, but the monarch needs ABC powers in order to ensure this*". This has also been the justification of every democratically elected power since then. All political thought since the 1550's proceeded from the assumption that a sovereign individual *chooses* to engage with society: social contract theory. Social contract theory only exists due to individualism, which itself depends upon "natural rights" that are quite unnatural, for they require massive enforced coercion of reality to actualize.

But there's another, older, way that requires little or no coercion: in opposition to the social contract theory and individualism, there exists a medieval concept that fell out of use right around the accession of James I, (and that's not a coincidence) the concept is the social theory of the Great Chain of Being.

Under the Great Chain of Being Social Theory (hereafter shortened to GT), all existence is imagined as a vast physical and spiritual hierarchy, from rocks to bacteria up to animals, humans, with your God at the top. According to GT, hierarchies are natural and good, structural inequality is the ground-state of nature and "the will of God", and it's foolish, evil, and destructive to oppose this natural order since you cannot exist as an individual without it. Your soul can be saved, yes, and shoot up to the top of the chain to chill with God in the afterlife, but God didn't make you equal here on Earth - human social hierarchies are just as much a part of the chain as a wolf eating a deer, or the deer grazing on leaves. Sounds unfair? That's life: deal with it.

This pro-social attitude embodied in GT is perhaps best summarised by the original final verse of the old High-Anglican hymn "*All things bright and beautiful*":

> *The rich man in his castle*
> *The poor man at his gate*
> *God made them high or lowly*
> *And ordered their estate.*

With a GT understanding of society's purpose, the social role of a peasant is different from the social role of a lord and this also is different from the social role of the King; and note we're not talking about the individuals here, but of the social positions themselves, which take on an almost metaphysical status; it does not even especially matter **who** fills the shoes of the King that makes his role legitimate, nor do the individuals constituting the agricultural, merchant, warrior, or artisanal roles particularly matter in this respect.

This is tied to the old concept of "sacred vocation" which is both anti-individualist and anti-collectivist. (We see a remnant of this in military conduct, where one salutes an officer's rank, not the person wearing it). The vocation shapes the individual and "makes" him what he is to a far greater degree than the individual can influence the vocation; even in mastery and transcendence of a vocation, the individual can merely revise pre-existing traditions for those who will follow. So every social position has multidirectional status, featuring both an upward purpose (toward God if that's your thing) as well as a network of specific and diverse social obligations and rights* in every direction.
(*in this sense "rights" has its *original* meaning: the reciprocal of an obligation, or something due to you in return for you accepting your own obligation.)

We see a similar view of society in China from ancient times right up until the Cultural Revolution, where one's role in life was implicitly considered part of an interconnected web of mutual duties and obligations, and where their Emperor was considered to hold his position due to the "mandate of heaven", which could be considered revoked under certain circumstances (particularly when the rice bowls started turning up empty, and the peasants started revolting.) Then senior officials would start giving the emperor and their fellows/rivals the side-eye about whether "the mandate of heaven" had been lost (it was expected that any dynasty would eventually lose the mandate). Sooner or later someone would make their move - if it failed, he and his followers died a spectacularly extended public death and the mandate was obviously intact.

However, if he succeeded in overthrowing the emperor through the usual means of intrigue and insurrection, then, obviously, the mandate had been removed/revoked and a new dynasty was born - the king is dead, long live the new king. While this was obviously just another *ex-post-facto* rationalization, it had an interesting and subtle implication: demonstrated incompetence and misconduct sooner or later removed the legitimacy of the current elite. But any would-be usurper had to be both smart and charismatic as well as bold. After all, you'd have to be pretty convincing to get a dynasty removal organized, given the risks you're asking your followers to run.

Unlike Divine Right absolutism, or modern "democracy" GT is **not** a top-heavy socio-political system - top-heavy things have an unfortunate tendency to fall down when they're shaken up a bit. Interestingly, apart from making a society strong, stable and resistant, this also makes it incredibly culturally rich – GT societies were what gave us people like Jean Buridan, Nicolas Oresme, Albert of Saxony, Roger Bacon, Copernicus, William of Occam, Michelangelo, and Leonardo DaVinci.

In short, in 1250, under GT, the King's shoes were big enough to do the job, but small enough for one man to actually fill. The wearer of the shoes tended to change a lot; Kings got stabbed in the back (often literally), and deposed in war, and so on, but the social fabric remained coherent and stable throughout the entire medieval period with no known negative innovations, yet a lot of positive (albeit small) ones. The crown was an unstable position, but the trunk and roots of society were rock-solid. It's damn near impossible to read Chaucer and draw from it a picture of an unstable, unnatural social order seething with tensions the way our current social order is.

By 1750 thanks to the deliberate centralization of political responsibility, the King's shoes (Louis XIV to be precise) had become enormous, since he was now responsible for legislation, education, maintenance of his standing army, and also the governance of every individual province in his realm. Having taken all possible power unto himself, he found himself an unfitting Atlas to hold up the country, so he shared the load; not with his fierce and potentially rebellious nobles, but with a class of common-born civil servants he appointed, who he in his hubris believed would remain loyal to him. Unsurprisingly, the army of bureaucrats hired to enact his power realized they didn't actually need the King, and that without him they could enact their own vision of Enlightenment Gnostic Utopianism. Louis XIV kicked the centralization snowball downhill and so his grandson was crushed by it. Other monarchs who'd subscribed to Divine Right theory were at least clever enough to dodge out of the way and meekly accept becoming irrelevant to the levers of power.

*71. **How Bureaucracy Destroyed The West***

To expand on this: in the 1600s, kings got the idea that they could stabilize their power over their kingdoms by shoving their fractious and obstinate feudal nobility aside and consolidating all the power under themselves - what we call absolutism. As usual, this started with the usual Enlightenment argument: "*my dear fellow citizens, to protect your rights I must possess the ultimate power!*" While this seemed a good idea at the time, the problem with this was that power needs people to exercise it, since you can't be everywhere at once (even with modern technology, TBH).

Our example, our case study even, is King Louis XIV of France. He had a lot of trouble with the French nobility, who weren't exactly well-inclined towards doing what he wanted them to do, because nobles aren't limp-wristed yes-men bureaucrats but rather are basically a bunch of independent armed megachad warlords shitting will-to-power who'd cheerfully take over the kingdom (and then the next one) in a heartbeat if the king starts tottering.

So Louis XIV, being a bit of a douchebaggy dweeb despite being a king, didn't much enjoy ruling over France with all those grumpy, independent-minded nobles in the way, who all had their own ideas regarding how they should govern ***their*** lands and fiefdoms, thank-you-very-much-fuck-off-your-highness, and they certainly didn't tolerate Louis insulting them and bossing them around. He fought a civil war against his own nobles over exactly this issue, and tragically, the nobles lost.

Having royally (pun *definitely* intended) pissed off all the nobles, Louis found himself without anyone among the nobility willing to carry out his demands, but then he looked around and realised that the past several decades of mass education would allow him to create a civil service formed of bureaucrats drawn from the commoners. While they also couldn't boss around the nobility, Louis XIV delegated to them his authority and control over courts, legislation, and law enforcement. He also "reformed" the army, to remove the nobility's control, arrogating to himself the appointment and firing of all officers.

Louis XIV then invited all the important and powerful people in France to attend him at court in order to distract them through hedonistic pursuits and meaningless status posturing. Now obviously, he didn't do this while telling the nobles why he was doing it, so they doubtless thought that they'd get back in his good graces and regain their leverage, so off they followed him to his palace at Versailles.

Pretty soon, the sons of those independent-minded nobles who'd given him so much trouble, became more concerned about who was favored by the crown at the moment, who was wearing the latest fashions, who had the best and most lavish taste in music and cuisine, who was fucking who, and so on. This deflected and absorbed what had been their status- and power-seeking tendencies. At the time, this must have seemed like an ingenious way to stabilize his throne, however with the benefit of hindsight we can see that Louis XIV's assumption – that the commoner-bureaucrats he granted power to through his support would actually be loyal to him – was utter wishful thinking.

Now, the people Louis appointed weren't the sort of lower-class types that can barely feed themselves; they were the smart, middle-class sons of successful merchants and artisans and such, so the bureaucrats quickly began carving out personal power-bases for themselves within the system. Obviously, if King Louis can't rule all France on his own, then he also can't supervise each and every bureaucrat. It's the old "*qui custodet custodes?"** issue, and you know it's a very old problem since there's a Latin saying about it. (*"*who shall watch the watchers*?")

See, the Romans mostly solved the issue in their Imperial period by having the Emperor appoint regional governors and such from hand-picked and trusted nobles he knew personally, allowing each one free rein within some very broad boundaries and executing any that majorly fucked up or got too greedy, but Louis had another idea. Since he couldn't be sure if his civil servants in places like Marseilles or Calais and so on were actually carrying out his orders, he hired **more** bureaucrats to oversee the other bureaucrats (starting to see the problem here?).

History indicates that a King or Baron or Duke doesn't get any richer or more important when he meddles in the lives of the people in his fiefdom – riches and importance come to nobles from military power and taxing trade, and for the rest even just keeping things ticking over smoothly is a lot of work, so they gain nothing by adding excess workload. So we see in history that nobles tend to be very hands-off in the way they run things except in times of crisis or war. But a bureaucrat becomes **more** important and influential, gaining more power the more problems he "solves" and the more paperwork exists with his signatures on it, so pretty soon bureaucrats start "finding" problems that weren't there five minutes ago, or even just faking that there are problems, generating issues out of little more than smoke and mirrors that then "need" to be solved. (Sounds familiar? It should.)

Louis XIV's bureaucrats functioned pretty well for the first 30 years, but not for much longer. Pretty soon, the bureaucrats realised they were operating independently with almost unlimited power and near-zero actual oversight. Realizing they were effectively in charge of France, they used what started as a local crop failure as an excuse to whip up an angry mob, captured the king (by then, Louis XVI) and set up an English-style Parliament, formalising the political reality of that point in time. They then proceeded to wipe out any remaining nobles who could have potentially been opponents to their rule, then they started to eliminate anyone within their own ranks who could have opposed them, then they started to eliminate anyone among the commoners who could be smart and capable enough to get uppity, and so on, leading to a nice big slaughter known as the Reign of Terror. YAY DEMOCRACY!

All the revolutionary characters that the official history books portray as having sprung up out of nowhere in had really been there all along: they were the experienced legislators and administrators who'd already been part of the machinery of government before rising up and usurping all the power for themselves in the name of "the people" - of course the people themselves got shafted as usual.

See what happened? Louis XIV wished to consolidate his power, so he made the aristocracy into figureheads. Doing so caused to King himself to become just a figurehead. Logically this indicates that the King's effective power is intrinsically tied to his noble class, somehow. More on this in a moment.

Now about the crisis that sparked of the overthrow of the King Louis XVI by the bureaucrats - the grain shortage. Claiming that this, alone, was the cause of the French Revolution, is stupid. Or it comes with an agenda. Let's debunk it: Famine is inherent to Malthusian societies, and had happened cyclically for hundreds of years, but now suddenly it's the King's fault? Just when a new elite class, thirsty for power, is on the scene? Please, bitch, in the past 1000 years there hasn't been a single peasant rebellion at anything more than the local level due to famine. Peasants overbreed when a realm is rich and successful, but food production doesn't rise in parallel to population because the surplus population moves into the cities (within which they breed at below-replacement levels). And if they're not making enough money to import food from elsewhere, people will start to starve. In Darwinian terms one might even see this as a good thing, but let's leave that can of worms be.

England avoided this because its surplus population was sent off to settle the Empire, but on the other hand France's colonies were, by and large, not settlement colonies. Consider how few Frenchmen lived in the Louisiana purchase compared to the American colonies. A bunch of fur trappers, mostly, a few traders in New Orleans, and a few Cajuns who went out into the swamps.

Having a safety-valve for the excess population is obviously extremely important. You need population growth to have a healthy society, but you also need a way to stop that excess population from causing revolutions, etc. Colonization is an excellent and productive safety-valve, which leads to similar cultures to your own spreading far and wide. In our own modern times, our elites are trying to use suppress births as a safety-valve, but it does not seem to be as effective a measure.

Most of the civil servants who led or supported the French Revolution were Anglophiles, because they attributed the success and stability of England's Empire to England's constitutional parliamentary monarchy. But England staved off famine and revolution through colonialism while France did not. (Let's pre-empt a likely objection and say that it wasn't Descartes and Rousseau and Voltaire either. Enlightenment philosophy, like Protestantism, only became popular because there was already a market for its ideals: wealthy educated commoners who were salty about not having noble titles and thought that they knew better than the Church and King.)

These people, as in all revolutions, took over with the best of intentions. They wanted their Lockean Enlightenment constitutional monarchy, perfectly moderate in its whiggishness, sensible in its electoral franchisement, and humane towards its peasantry. Just like the Russian Revolution. And just like the Russian, 130 years later, the moderate faction got outflanked by the Left, as it always does. Lafayette and Mirabeau were probably good, but misguided men. They were destroyed by demons in human skin like Robespierre, who once said: "*The weapon of the Republic is terror, the power of the Republic is virtue - because without virtue, terror is unwholesome and without terror, virtue is powerless.*" Louis XVI would've probably been fairly content to relinquish the levers of power and to be a figurehead much like the modern British monarchs. That weakness is why he lost his head, and why France took a blow from which it's never recovered.

But purity spirals are something we understand quite well. What's less obvious is the need for an aristocracy - the King relies on them, and they rely on the king. But why? You see, feudal society is like a big bandit clan. The nobility are first and foremost military officers. The experience they get in war helps them govern in peacetime, and their duties and obligations as peacetime leaders help make them an effective military force. It's not uncommon for the King and the nobles to fight, or the nobles to fight each other. But this bond of personal military loyalty is the basic unit of Western society. Tension between the King and the Lords is perfectly acceptable compared to the alternatives. Every attempt in history at trying to avoid basing society on such interpersonal links in the ruling class ends in a bloodbath, just as we saw in France.

I don't believe in perfect government, or perfect society - I don't believe it's even theoretically possible to create a perfect government or society, and I really want people to stop trying to create them because every time they do, everyone gets screwed over and people die by the boatload. Even gradual changes that attempt to make society more perfect fuck us all over - just look at what's done in the name of equality/equity and diversity.

If the Lord is just a bureaucrat, he ***needs*** to meddle in people's business to make it look like he's doing a good job so he doesn't end up fired by the King. And if his position is replaceable then he's incentivized to overthrow the King to create an egalitarian parliament of bureaucrats that ends up fucking everyone over. But the Lord can't have total rights over his land, total alienation of sovereignty from the King, because then he has no reason to obey the King. One king, a thousand miles away. or a thousand kings one mile away? How many petty kings does your local government have that can legally meddle in your business?

When you scale sovereignty down to the totally local, when every petty baron is completely indipendent and owes loyalty to no-one else, then your state is prone to being invaded by any asshole with an army. And then, if you don't die fighting, that asshole makes you a noble and calls himself a king. Which is pretty much how feudal monarchy was invented in the first place. After Rome fell, you had a bunch of minor kings with tiny kingdoms. And then some jerk whose tiny kingdom was a tiny bit bigger would invade you and tell you that if you took your men and fought for him, you'd be big and important once he was finished invading everything he could. And maybe your kids would marry his down the line, and you'd get your genes into the royal bloodline. And so on, and so on.

And since the King was just another dude with his own little personal army just like you, he didn't really bother sticking his nose into your territory once you were a Duke. As long as you kept the peace, protected the Church, sent him his share of taxes, and all that, you were cock of the walk on your own lands. And every guy who fought for you was promised pretty much the same thing you were by the King, and they got some land and some legal independence and were lords of their own home, and lo and behold, now you have freeholders. Everything I said about monarchy and aristocracy scales down to the aristocracy and its freeholders. If you don't give your responsible, trustworthy men some independence, you end up with a class of unaccountable bureaucrats that effectively wields all of your power. And they'll end up killing you and an sizeable percentage of your population.

Our own concept of social organization is derived from the Enlightenment and the revolutionary traditions it spawned. Revolution arrived in England in the 17th century thanks to the Puritans (as mentioned elsewhere), to France in the 18th Century thanks to the Jacobins and Louis XVI's loose-cannon bureaucrats, and also in the 18th Century to what became the United States of America thanks in large part thanks to the Puritans that (as mentioned elsewhere) were kicked out of England for their crimes there. As a result of all this, societies and bureaucracies spawned by the ideologies of the Enlightenment were highly suspicious of any forms of authority not firmly under their control, whether that authority was political, social, or religious.

Note that in every case, after revolutionary Enlightenment ideologies conquered political authority, they proceeded to attack social authority and then eventually religious authority (usually by undermining the religion itself). That's why we see that French and American societies, which are especially designed around ideas deeply rooted in the Enlightenment, therefore adopted extremely formalistic methods of organization in which different areas of life were clearly and deliberately separated from one another, with the limits of power being sharply delineated through a series of largely ineffective "*checks and balances*" - this design was adopted in large part to break down the power of local communities, organizations, and individuals, and by doing so, eliminate the possibility of resistance to their Enlightenment-based centralized authority.

As a result of this societal manipulation, our societies are formed in such a way that we compartmentalize our interpersonal relationships and seek to maximise out social mobility - to the point most of us have no idea what our neighbors' names are, or anything about them. While the reduction of man to a merely economic rather than social animal has generated economic success for the nation as a whole, it has also created a fragile and fragmented form of "community", which lacks resilience and is liable to break under severe strain.

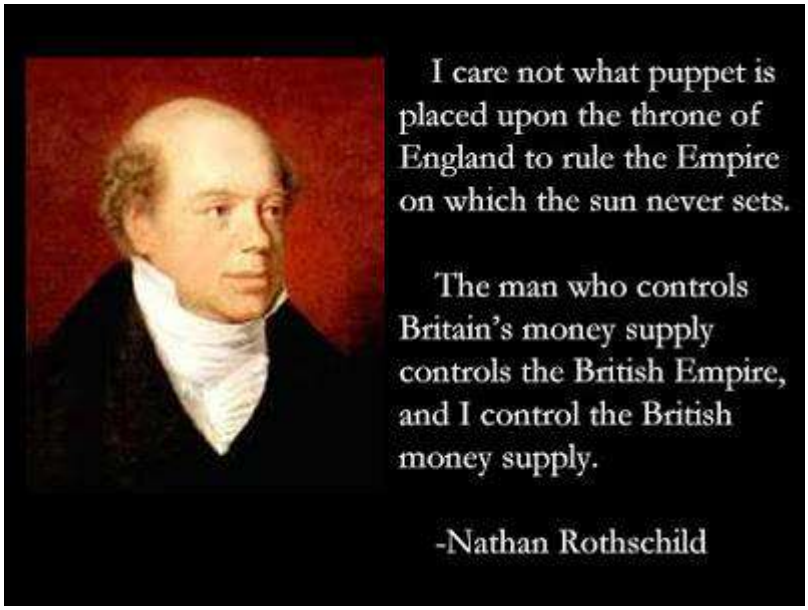
*72. **Money Money Money***

"*Money, being naturally barren, to make it breed money is preposterous and a perversion from the end of its institution, which was only to serve the purpose of exchange and not of increase... Men called bankers we shall hate, for they enrich themselves while doing nothing.”*
– Aristotle, Politics

"*If Congress can employ money indefinitely, for the general welfare, and are the sole and supreme judges of the general welfare, they may take the care of religion into their own hands; they may appoint teachers in every state, county, and parish, and pay them out of the public treasury; they may take into their own hands the education of children, the establishing in like manner schools throughout the union; they may assume the provision of the poor.... Were the power of Congress to be established in the latitude contended for, it would subvert the very foundations, and transmute the very nature of the limited government established by the people of America”.* - James Madison

Powerful centralized banking organizations (and their allies in governments) have been the root cause of most, if not all, the various problems that western societies face today: debts that cannot possibly be paid off, expensive wars no-one wants, cultural shifts normalizing perversion, and more, all can ultimately be traced back to their choices. Those who control the money nearly always have the final say in what happens to a country, by deciding and influencing who succeeds and who fails. What influence would they hold without that strangle-hold on your money? None, and they know it. The history of such things is well-explained in Stephen Goodson's “*A History of Central Banking*”.

The global network of privately owned central banks and their system of managed wealth redistribution through the mechanism of inflation, credit, money supply, and the price of money, comes to mind. Not to mention the secondary partnership those banks have with various governments to further confiscate and redistribute wealth through deficit spending, debt to finance it, and taxation to pay for it (the interest at least), whereby the central banks are the largest purchasers earning the largest share of perpetual interest payments, with governments paying their debts from the sweat of the citizen's brows.



A massive portion of the money paid in taxes goes to the private central banks to repay interest on loans of “money” that governments could have printed themselves interest free! The federal United States is bankrupt and has been since 1933, only surviving on loan agreements with the privately-owned Federal Reserve. Our children will inherit this un-payable debt, and the tyranny to enforce paying it. What we call “privatisation” is the selling off of government assets in response to bank-created debt.

Right now 99% of all US dollars are created by private banks out of thin air as data entries on their computers every time they make a loan. This places the debt on *we the people*, and causes inflation. The trillions owed in national debt is held by Americans and foreigners in their savings accounts as US treasuries. It's simply US government spending that has not been taxed back and repaid to the (privately-owned) Federal Reserve Bank yet.

However if the US government was to ever return to having a sovereign currency, by being the lender of last resort instead of letting the Federal Reserve Bank take that role, then inflation could easily be controlled by having the IRS (acting as an arm of the US Treasury), delete a fraction of the money supply back out of existence every year via taxing it and then deleting the money from existence. Banks would borrow money from the government at interest, lending it out to private borrowers and corporations at an interest rate commensurate with the risk involved. This would place the debt on the banks, not the people.

The idea of punishing the "rich" through taxation and redistribution is an obvious sham, since the above-mentioned network is controlled by the richest of the rich to benefit the owners of shares in the private central banks in a positive and negative feedback loop designed to make everyone else pay them a portion of every monetary transaction indefinitely. And always remember that Communism is *GREAT* for bankers - the central banks loan money to the communist government, which then steals people's labor to pay off the debt. Wall Street funded the Bolshevik revolution after all.

Price controls are always an attack by the big cities against the small cities and countryside. If they cannot get value to move from the countryside to the big city with money, they get it with bayonets. Price control is always a physical attack on people like you and me and our real-life friends, who are likely to get a bayonet in the gut. If there are price control, goods stop moving from the small-town to the big-city. If they stop moving, then bayonets are applied to keep them flowing. This was destructive to energy production in the USA (remember the 1970's oil crisis?), just as it was of food production in Revolutionary France, and is to food production in Venezuela today.

In ordinary times, the instinct to keep prices as low as possible is usually adaptive; but these aren't ordinary times, and an attempt to keep prices stable in the face of inflation by cutting costs internally is simply like trying to drop a ladder down a bottomless pit. A government or business owner cutting into his own wiggle room, which is capital, in response to an inflating money supply, which is a matter of programming, is committing a basic category error. Such category errors is why we see keystone companies which many economic sectors depend on (eg freight-lining), some of which have been in business for multiple generations, are now going out of business due to unwillingness to simply raise prices.

The way exists to remove the central bankers' power, a way learned long ago: a debt-free currency. While not an easy task, doing so would remove the roots of the poison tree. However, this is a way fraught with risk- why do you think so many people in history have been assassinated or had attempts made on their lives once they tried to free their nations of the international bankers? Abraham Lincoln was one such person, as were Andrew Jackson and John F. Kennedy. Research on what they did to combat the US national debt. Even Hitler is a case- Britain was hostile to him for refusing to pay Germany's debts with gold right from 1933, not the ex-post-facto justification of aggression in 1939 or the jewish holocaust later.

Basically all of the owners of central banks and their helpers now own private islands with their own militarised private security forces. Now that they've looted everything of value from your countries, they almost don't need the police, except to apply civil asset forfeiture, just as banks foreclosed on people during the "global financial crisis" of 2008 - including people who owed the banks nothing!

In future years you can expect to see bankrupt cities, states, and even nations removing crimes from criminal courts to place them under civil courts with the government as applicant. You have no right to an attorney in civil court, meaning offenders will be dealt with faster and not paying fines becomes contempt of court, meaning instant jail. Those fines typically have fees which accrue while in jail, so as soon as you're finally let out, you can be placed back in jail. This tactic is already used in family courts in the US, milking fathers for their income in support of single mothers, who breed and produce more offspring to feed into the monster- a vicious cycle.

This is the price of trust and alliances with usury, you'll be refused assistance at your most desperate hour. The only loyalty you should have is to your own people. One can only escape the slavery of this system by transcending it and forcing governments to compete for one's citizenship(s) via tax forgiveness, while concurrently hedging all fiat currency holdings (which should be kept to a minimum). Those who are doing so are living the Libertarian dream in our authoritarian world.

Now, how to avoid this when setting up your post-SHTF city-state? Consider: what is money worth? No, really- what is a dollar worth, in and of itself? A dollar note is made of perhaps a cent's worth of paper, with a few cents more worth of ink and security features. The value of a dollar is not in the thing itself, it's in its ability to facilitate trade, as a medium of exchange. Once you understand that, the options open up.

Naturally, our existing currency will continue to be used after the collapse (for a few years at least) but eventually, you'll begin to see shortages of money not least of which due to the skyrocketing prices for most goods that will still be available. You would do well to read of the Wörgl experiment, in the town of the same name in Austria during the Great Depression, or similar events in history where there was a shortage of currency and the local government provided it (almost always with the result that central banks demanded that this be stopped, as it cut into their profits). While desirable, it's not actually necessary that this be backed by gold, silver, or whatever, as long as it's accepted for the paying of taxes by the issuing authority.

This might allow for fiat money without the issues we have seen in the last century or so. For it's not the fiat currency itself that was the problem, but the endless printing of more of it. This is why gold was such a good monetary metal – the amount was fixed, or as close to fixed as is probably possible, and debasement of gold was both easy to notice and relatively hard to do. It had nothing to do with the "intrinsic" value of the gold itself – gold, like any other currency, must be backed with some sort of widespread acceptance, in the case of fiat currency this is usually achieved by imposing it on users through legal tender laws passed by a government. In any case, anything used as money requires the backing of a strong, widely accepted organization – otherwise, it's just paper and shiny discs.

It's important to consider that classical economics only survives among Austrian economists [see: **https://mises.org/books/introtoaustrian.pdf**], as almost all the rest converted over to either Keynesian or Marxist economic theories, which is probably why economics has become such a huge mess. Keynesianism especially says you cannot have rising inflation and unemployment at the same time, which is patently untrue. For a debunking of the Marxist "labor theory of value" economics, see Ludwig von Mises' "*Economic Calculation in the Socialist Commonwealth*", or just look at the history of every nation that has tried it. Under both these theories, inflation is perversely seen as acceptable and even positive, and in such circumstances, fiat money is sadly a temptation for government and, worse, banks, to debase the currency via inflation. Inflation has been held artificially low for the last decade, and unemployment numbers fudged and reinterpreted to make them appear low, this is going to cause issues soon enough.

However, by using some sort of coinlike "casino chips" as your money, perhaps with an enclosed RFID crypto key along the lines of Bitcoin, this issue might be avoidable. At least this should be carefully pondered for those who are interested in forming your post-collapse economic system(s).

A large part of the current world economic problems were caused back around WW1, when Britain with its central banking and insistence that the rest of the world adopt free trade so that its bankers could freely manipulate national economies, the awful model that the US would inevitably adopt as a result of Woodrow Wilson's befuddled actions after getting to the presidency on a fluke. The British Empire was still protectionist internally but the global economic power brokers always want free trade since it will naturally dominate the market. Indeed, in 1848 Karl Marx openly supported Free Trade because he saw that a high-wage economy created via protectionism was a mortal threat to the rise of communism. As economist Ian Fletcher laid out (some of his videos are on Youtube) the economic system created by the founding fathers in the USA (that existed until Woodrow Wilson and FDR screwed the pooch) was economically protectionist in nature.

Putting all the “true capitalism” jokes aside, the USA doesn't have anything even vaguely representing an actual relatively free market – that disappeared in the 1920s into something resembling a mixed economy, the old actual free system having been butchered by the 1930s, when FDR basically put its corpse on a pedestal like some sort of giant sick joke. It was beginning to recover after WWII ended and people finally went back to work, but by the mid-60s was replaced with a mixed permanent war economy and has just teeter-tottered back and forth between a war economy for the military-industrial complex and a mixed economy of subsidies and mega-corporations with unequal power to keep out competition. Things like tariffs and farmer subsidies have almost always existed in America, but it wasn't at the level of a mixed economy until FDR’s efforts the mid-20s/30s. FDR was nazism-light, which at the time everyone thought was just dandy, history being revised halfway through WW2 so that the Nazis were evil right-wingers and always were.

If crony capitalism had not demanded a larger workforce it could pay less, you'd never have had the women's rights and civil rights movements. Female participation in the workforce reduced male salaries. If tomorrow all females were fired from their jobs, employers would have no choice but to pay the remaining male employees more – enough to pay the bills. Not immediately, sure, but gradually the market will adjust to the new reality, and after a period of some turmoil and instability, we’d be back to a state of affairs where one breadwinner is enough to support a family and pay off a home. The problem we have isn’t “economic” – it's in the culture we have been forced to accept.

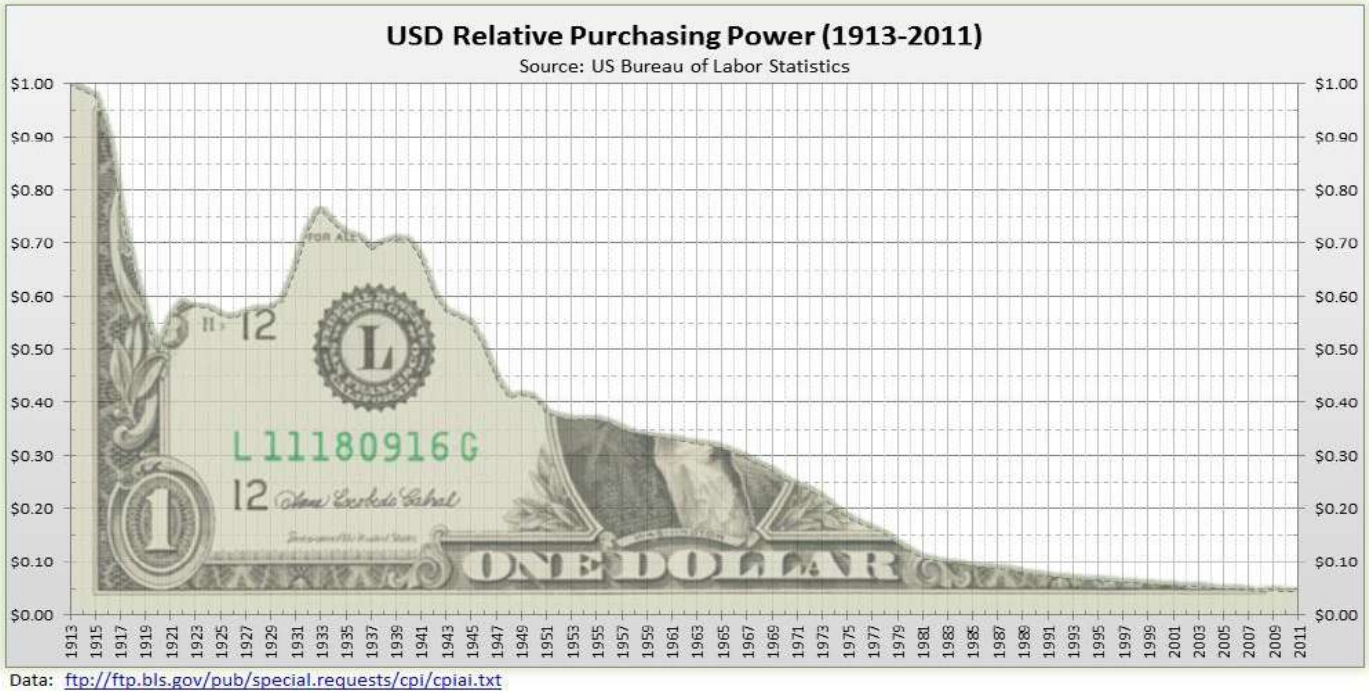
If individuals are prosperous, that weakens state control. It’s why communists keep their workers poor. If state institutions are kept fat at the expense of individuals, that leads to aristocratic decadence and stagnation. To empower the individual excessively, though, leads to hedonistic degeneration. Societies go one direction or the other; the middle can never be sustained. All glory is fleeting, and once a society realizes its greatest triumph the remainder of its history is living in the echo of its past. It's the cycle of empires.

73. Savings And Loan

"*Inflation is the one form of taxation that can be imposed without legislation*" - Milton Friedman

A major reason for the industrial revolution was Britain's high labor costs and easy availability of credit for investments in the 1700's. This spurred industry to automate tasks so that less labor would be needed. Despite many inventions used in the industrial revolution having actually been created in China or elsewhere hundreds of years earlier, the lower local cost of wages and lower availability of credit meant that no industrial revolution took place there. To ensure a second industrial revolution despite the reduced availability of post-collapse natural resources, you must ensure a similar combination of circumstances. However, this brings us to another set of problems- usury and central banking.

Allowing usury (aka interest), no matter how low a rate, will inevitably destroy the value of money if it's at all permitted, just as it has throughout history. The value of one US dollar was 1/20th of an avoirdupois ounce of gold until 1933, but the seeds of ruin were planted in 1913 with the founding of the private central bank known as the Federal Reserve. Since that time, the purchasing power of the US dollar has plummeted, with a US dollar in 2013 buying you what 5 cents could have bought you in 1913 - a 95% loss of purchasing power in one century.



Data: ftp://ftp.bls.gov/pub/special.requests/cpi/cpiai.txt

To put it another way, the US federal minimum wage in 1960 was $1.25 an hour, and the US federal minimum wage now is $7.25 an hour. On the face of it, this seems an improvement, but it's actually not, since five 1960 quarters are made of 90% silver, and the notes of that era were redeemable in silver, so the silver content of one hour's worth of 1960 minimum wage pay is worth about $25 in present-day currency - a quite dramatic drop in real wages. The silver has not significantly changed in value during that time – it's the fiat money that severely dropped in value.

Central banks are the cause of this problem by loaning out unbacked money - this creates inflation. Let's say I am a bank and you come to me for a loan. I loan you money, and "transfer" the funds into your account. The issue is that the money **did not exist** before I loaned it to you, yet you have to pay it back with real money that must you earn through hard work. It's even more obvious today when such things are done on computer. A few keystrokes, and I have put a million dollars in your account that just previously, *did not exist*, and boosted inflation as well, reducing the purchasing power of the money I just gave you. I gain repayments at full value, but cheapen what you get before you can even spend it!

*74. **Pie Slices***

"*The modern banking system manufactures money out of nothing. The process is perhaps the most astounding piece of sleight of hand that was ever invented. Banking was conceived in iniquity and born in sin. Bankers own the earth. Take it away from them, but leave the power to create money, and with the flick of a pen they will create enough money to buy it back again. Take this power away from them and all great fortunes like mine would disappear, and they ought to disappear, for then this would be a better and a happier world to live in. But if you want to continue to be the slaves of the banks and pay the cost of your own slavery, then let the bankers continue to create money and control credit.*" - Sir Josiah Stamp, Director, Bank of England 1928-1941.

Let us discuss inflation further – firstly, inflation is not the same as interest rates, for interest rates are a calculated appreciation of money, either as debt like a mortgage or as credit as profit for your bank deposit. Inflation is rather the devaluation (reduction in value) of money in circulation, which is caused by printing of more money by banks and/or government. It's not, as the government and press would have you believe, rising prices, nor is it caused by big business, labor unions or OPEC. Inflation is simply an increase in the supply of money without a commensurate increase in the wealth that backs it. Only governments and lending institutions can create it and only they can stop it. This can easily be explained by likening the economy of a nation to a pie. Every unit of currency (dollar) is a slice of that pie. If the economy as a whole grows, your slice gets bigger (increases in value) - but only if there's no inflation. Inflation is a great way for the government and central banks to steal your money without having to physically steal your money. When they print more dollars, the amount you hold in your wallet or account shrinks, because the pool of money is larger – your slice has shrunk. In the same way that a pie when cut into 8 slices has smaller slices than one cut into 4, a country that prints money recklessly shrinks the worth of the money that you, the worker, hold. This is the reason that a man who was paid 5 cents an hour in 1913 could hope to someday buy a home if he cautiously saved up, but a man today earning a far larger number amount may be unlikely to ever own a home.
(See: **https://graymirror.substack.com/p/the-inflation-economy** for more info on inflation.)

I have seen people argue that inflation is a good thing because it prevents "the rich" from putting money aside as savings, and instead forces them to re-invest that money in the economy. This is a ridiculous notion that needs dispelling, so let's deal with that next: imagine that no-inflation pie again. If someone takes their slice and puts it away in the freezer to eat another day, all this has done is reduced the total amount of circulating money in the economy- you still have your slice of pie to do whatever you want with. This actually ***increases*** the purchasing value of the money still in circulation – if all the trillions of dollars in the economy were taken and destroyed or locked away, and only a single one million dollars was left for use, it would mean that the total economy would be divided in just one million slices, rather than trillions. Having one dollar would suddenly be a **very** big deal, as that one dollar "slice" of the economy would be a billion times larger!

It's also best to have a fixed total amount of money, and to only print new currency when old and damaged currency is returned, doing so on a one-for-one basis, and perhaps even carefully matching the serial numbers between the new and old unit. If a person is foolish enough to allow a unit of currency in their possession to be destroyed, it should not be replaced unless the destruction can be confirmed beyond all doubt- this will prevent any inflation. Of course, the owner should be made to pay for the replacement of any destroyed currency units, perhaps in gold or silver. I suggest a hundred billion currency units would be a sensible size for an economic slice, no more and no less. Obviously, before this is implemented, this should be publicly discussed and carefully considered.

Certainly, a government bank could also cause such issues as we ourselves have with inflation by recklessly printing more currency, but at least government banks must realize that in doing so the nation will only cripple itself, whereas the internationalized central banks have no such qualms - once they've sucked dry a nation's lifeblood with inflation, they can then provide bailouts from the World Bank (that they also own) ... for a price.

For those interested, here is a brief overview of the "ten points" which the International Monetary Fund and the World Bank generally insist on imposing in exchange for financing a country:

1. Impose fiscal discipline; (*not a bad idea generally*)
2. Reform taxation; (this being good or bad depends greatly on what reforms are put into place, the ones the WB and IMF demand are generally poor choices for national sovereignty in light of their other conditions)
3. **Liberalize interest rates**; (a free market of interest rates is generally only beneficial for banks)
4. Raise spending on health and education; (a fetish of Universalists, as it increases their influence since that is how their faith spreads)
5. Secure property rights; (not a bad idea at all, as long as the nation remains sovereign)
6. **Privatize state-run industries**; (not always a bad idea, depends greatly on what is privatized)
7. **Deregulate markets**; (rarely done in a way that benefits the nation)
8. **Adopt a competitive exchange rate**; (*usually suicidal for nations*)
9. **Remove barriers to trade**; ("free trade" is usually suicidal for nations in the long-term)
10. **Remove barriers to foreign direct investment**. (*rarely done in ways that benefit the nation*)

One of my major points of contempt for marxism is that Marx completely disregarded the critical issue of inflation, doubtless due to his biggest financier being his 3rd cousin Lionel de Rothschild, one of the biggest players in international banking (and a British politician) at the time. [Also see: **https://archive.is/xxsyb**]

For the financial well-being of your fledgling nation, it's far, far better to completely forbid all loans on interest, and only allow profit to come from fees (example: you loan someone Ɀ100.00, and charge an additional Ɀ50.00 as a fee. The borrower pays back a total of Ɀ150.00, with no interest rate ever being needed, as the fee is set to be half the loan's value).

Let's assume we are the government, operating in an (low) inflationary fiat currency environment, and decide to offer interest free loans for young families starting out. We don't want to charge any interest for these loans, and plan to write off a quarter of the loan for each child born to the couple, in order to encourage childbirth among your people. How would this work out economically? Now both the Austrian and Keynesian economists of today would predict doom and gloom - "*you're inflating the currency supply*" etc. However, a simple thought experiment would soon show that this is not so. We will assume that the government (not a bank or other private entity - this is important) loans a young couple (let's call them the Smiths) Ɀ100,000 to buy a house and land to live on, at a reasonable 50% fee. Being an interest-free loan, this means that the Smiths need to repay the government Ɀ150,000 in total, an amount that cannot increase over time. A sensible arrangement would obviously be that the fee is the first item to be paid off.

A year or two after buying their home, the Smiths are blessed by the arrival of baby Primus Smith. This brings their debt down to Ɀ125000 (being the Ɀ100000 loan - 25% child write-off, and then adding the Ɀ50000 fee). The Smiths continue to pay off the loan, and another two or so years later, their debt is down to Ɀ100000, having paid off half of the fee (Ɀ75000 loan debt + Ɀ25000 fee). Mrs Smith gets pregnant again the fourth year after moving into their home, and nine months later little Secundus Smith is born, bringing their debt down to Ɀ75000 (Ɀ50000 debt + Ɀ25000) fee. And so on when baby Tertius and Quartus are born...

It should be evident that as long as the government is honest and does not charge interest on the loan or the fee, there's little impact on the currency supply, and thus no inflation as a result, because the government is eating the "loss". The impact of the immediate injection of currency is reversed when the currency is removed by the debt being written off, and so while productive work is done by the loan money, the total amount of currency in the system remains the same afterwards. Unlike Keynesian government spending, a portion of the money is removed from circulation when a portion of the family's debt is repudiated at the birth of each child, but the work done by the money remains. As long as the money supply is in the hands of private bankers, this is impossible, because they always want to make a profit off the borrowers.

Why would our theoretical government do that? Well, for the simple reason that every child born is a potential future worker - a relatively small cash shortage for the government *now*, caused by eating the debt loss, ends up being repaid by the labor and future lifetime earnings of the children when they enter the economy as adults. This is long-term thinking, and that's why we'll never see it in action under our present system, where governments will at most look forward to the next election.

If we are operating in an environment that does not use an inflationary fiat currency, then it would be somewhat more difficult for the government to give out the loans, but the loans themselves would be smaller, and the government could recoup any financial losses through other means, such as tariffs, to prevent the nation's wealth being spent elsewhere.

As an example of the attitudes to be cultivated, for Benjamin Franklin, the attainment of wealth was of little value unless it allowed the wealthy to serve a higher public purpose. Franklin had an instrumentalist view of property and saw material gain as a means to an end. Moreover, Franklin believed that with citizenship came responsibility to improve living conditions and promote opportunities for gainful employment.

Part of Charlemagne's take on Christianity was a firm stance against usury (interest), not in itself a bad thing, but it was a stance which led to his successors bringing in jews to run the finance system to get around their own rules. However, when you find yourself sneaking around your own rules, you clearly have some badly designed rules. It would have been better to either determine and enforce what were the religiously acceptable limits on interest among Christians, or to completely forbid any loans repayable by interest, but neither was done (admittedly they both would have been difficult to do in that era anyhow).

In any case, giving jews the exclusive privilege of operating the finance system had the effect of genetically selecting jews for intelligence and failing to breed Whites for intelligence. Once the average IQ of jews in the financial system rose sufficiently above the average IQ of the White elites in the political system (which took place around the mid-1500's or so), the stage was set for descendants of jewish financiers to have a disproportionate effect in politics, and for politics to be dominated by financial and economic concerns, which is exactly what we observe, beginning in Holland, where jewish financiers held the earliest and deepest sway. This change of focus was marked by the downfall of the last main White elite family involved in finance, the Medici, and their subsequent demonization by historians.

You need to give your state's folk, the people who are near to you, rather than those that are far, the privilege of doing all the jobs that require smarts and which generate prestige, to encourage and recruit intelligence among your own folk.

75. History Lesson

Now, how to encourage this when setting up your post-SHTF city-state? One way is to allow ourselves to be inspired by feudalism. This may require a little history lesson, as sadly people with little information about the Middle Ages project the characteristics of totalitarian Renaissance states upon medieval feudalism, a viewpoint exacerbated by Hollywood's a-historical portrayal of history. The entire notion of absolutism is un-feudal, a fraudulent media-driven attitude towards the era that even tvtropes mocks, calling the portrayal "the dung ages".

Rather, in contrast to absolute monarchy based on the "divine right of kings", feudalism rejected centralization and authoritarian rule. Evolved in an age when the speed of communication was restricted by the speed of a horse or sailing ship, and literacy was limited to a small elite, it was a highly decentralized system. Feudalism depended on the local administration of justice and taxation, protecting borders and fostering economic growth. It was a system that consciously devolved power downwards rather than concentrating it in distant, difficult to reach capitals.

It also recognized the value of collective decision-making and checks on royal power. Obviously, this is not the same thing as "democracy", but it was far less arbitrary and far more legalistic than many people today realize. Kings and lords had obligations to their subjects. They owed them good governance which entailed not just defense but also the administration of justice, i.e. maintenance of "law and order". A king who failed to deliver good governance could legitimately be challenged by his barons for breach of contract.

A major criticism that came up again and again in English history for example, was the failure of a king to consult his barons, i.e. to prefer his "favorites" (who were often men of lower birth) to his "natural" advisors, i.e. the great/barons of the realm. This epitomizes the contractual nature of feudal oaths: while barons pledged to advise the king, in return he pledged to consult his barons. This obligation of the king to consult his barons was the basis of Parliament in England, the High Court in the Christian Kingdom of Jerusalem, and the Curia Regis in France, among others.

In short, medieval kings needed to take into account the advice and interests of their tenants-in-chief, but they were also expected to ensure "good governance" for the lowliest in the land as well, even for the lowly serfs. Under feudalism, each level of society owed allegiance to those above, AND those below. Only the merchant class was (partially) outside this system, which is what eventually caused its downfall.

For those wanting more information on what ***actual*** historical feudalism was like, read the books "*Feudal Society*" by Bloch, "*Cathedral, Forge, And Waterwheel*" by Gies, or "*The Axe and the Oath*" by Robert Fossier. While all have their issues, they're at least more accurate than anything you'll see on TV.

76. Guilds And Labor

In the same way, the small percentage of people who were employed for money in the medieval era, were not wage laborers in the way a factory worker today is, to be discarded or hired- that is a side-effect of the industrial revolution, one unlikely to be repeated if it happened again. A craftsman such as a carpenter in the medieval era was expected to be loyal and obedient to his employer, and the employer was expected to protect and help the craftsman even should he become unable to work. This was the foundation of the guild system, where both boss and workers cooperated to create mutually-beneficial outcomes for both. In such a system, there are no pure wage-earners, but rather, partners of variable social and economic standing who all gain income from the profits of labor and mutual social support from one another.

Employment in a guild-based market framework is lifetime employment. Lifetime employment is completely independent of progressivism and indeed, is also generally contrary to capitalism. It decreases in countries as they become more "Westernized" under ACWE, and is tied to long-term orientation and feudal sensibilities, both discouraged by Universalism.

Income is an imperative need so it can be used for the exchange of goods and services. You won't be able to build your new civilization on wage labor as presently, since wage labor is both economically and socially toxic, resulting both in employees whose aim is to get the most money for the least work possible, and employers who desire the most work from their workers for the least outlay. Further, wage-earners are but slaves to the masters who hire them, whether the masters are individuals or the state. They're temporary slaves of course, but this relationship between employers and employees is similar under all prevailing conditions in the world today, regardless of ownership, or of the nation's political leanings, left or right.

The industrial revolution was harmful not because of the technical developments it brought, but it was harmful in that it came and struck at the enforceable apprenticeship system (guilds) at its most vulnerable point, as the new industrialists neither came from within the apprenticeship system nor did they hold it in good regard, seeing it instead as an impediment to their bottomless thirst for low-paid wage-labor. This made it difficult if not impossible to enforce wage and condition agreements on the industrialists, as this was an out-of-context problem for guilds, and so we ended up with leftists teaching that workers and their bosses should be in conflict, rather than cooperating for mutual benefit. They then drafted children into government schools for further leftist indoctrination, and replaced the existing religious charities and pro-social mutual aid societies with bureaucratic organs like "social" insurance and government pension plans, and subjugated the financial system to finance wars and their entitlement programs.

In the US and Europe since 1945, it was the modern college market that killed the apprenticeship system, as colleges & attendance were expanded something like tenfold with government money, causing parents to not want their kids to become apprentices because going to college became synonymous with being suited to higher cognitive work, and therefore, high-status.

And so everybody went to college, to signal how smart they were, and how much their parents cared about "education"- in a democratic society without castes or guilds, nobody wants to be considered second-class. Funny how government is always inefficient, but their promotion of college was an instant hit.

Apprenticeships only survive in places like Germany and Japan because they run on families, and the family business structure supports the tradition – you cannot enter certain jobs without first being an apprentice. Otherwise even there, everybody goes to college to study communication or whatever is considered cool at the time.

Even publicly-owned establishments whether in the USSR, China, the USA, etc. give workers wages as well as other social benefits, thus the similarities between the charity endowed by owners of employing corporations upon their workers and government social programs.

The claim that income from public-owned establishments benefit all of society including the workers is true, but only if we take into consideration merely the general welfare of the society and not the private well-being of the workers. It's not for nothing that citizens of the USSR used to joke that "*we pretend to work, and they pretend to pay us*". In both instances, the producers are wage-earners, despite the difference in ownership. Thus, a change in ownership does not cause the worker to benefit directly from what he produces, neither through society nor through wages. The proof is the fact that producers are still wage-earners despite the change to state ownership.

Even under the best-case scenario of an establishment owned by a co-operative, what the workers receive directly with respect to their own interests, in the form of wages, percentage of profits or social benefits, is generally little more or the same as received by workers in a private corporation, due to issues of economies of scale.

The sole worker who benefits directly from what he produces is that most-overlooked and underappreciated individual; the small-business owner or tradesman. It matters little if he is a shopkeeper, a cobbler, baker or plumber - he is the sole person in today's world who not only directly benefits from the sweat of his brow, but can guide and direct his own efforts as he sees fit. No wonder he is so hated and taxed by the establishment! Should he gain wealth that the tax-man does not steal, he is the one who betters his local community, not merely by spending locally, but by teaching the skills of his trade to the next generation, giving to local public works, providing employment to those unable or too unskilled to ply their own trade or business, and assisting in other ways his peers of the local community.

Thus, we should emulate Franklin's attitude, and demand that those with wealth use it for the betterment of the less fortunate, not by handouts and wasteful government-coerced "social programs", but through associations and public works eg., the construction of an aqueduct that not only provides water to the town, but also provides employment during its construction and leads to unskilled laborers gaining a useful trade, thereby freeing themselves from a life of wage-labor.

In a similar manner, you must find ways to ensure that the employer-employee interaction is not limited to a mere exchange of labor for money, but becomes a mutually-binding agreement with the implicit and explicit purpose to strengthen tribal and social bonds.

The sunk cost in the modern world is that you don't actually know what the market will be for a particular trade or employment in twenty years; it might suck due to oversupply, it might go the way of the buggy-whip. However the solution to this is reasonably easy: if everyone gets two practical hands-on trades, the odds are very good that at least one will be desirable in 20 years.

77. <u>It Really Isn't About The Money:</u>

Here's the thing – forget about the money and the economy. The more you care about them, the more you'll resemble cuckservatives - and just like them, you'll be irrelevant, letting those who hate you become rich and use their money to crush and silence you, just as America's oligarchs are doing, and have done for generations.

The greatest evil of trade-based societies is wealth and social influence being the primary markers of status. Such systems are perfect for middleman-merchant types to exploit to gain power and influence without needing the military power component of more traditional societies. This allows the working class to be treated as nothing more than cattle to be used and exploited with no chance for self-improvement. History shows us that the working class thrives under the paternalism of a caring traditional aristocracy; instead our elites throw them to the wolves, and thwart their every attempt at gaining dignity and indipendence from the trade-based system.

Lowering taxes makes entrepreneurs richer and increases inequality (one of the progressives' bugbears) however as has been demonstrated*, positive gains in everybody's overall social welfare, even the poor, far outweigh the losses in equality. Consider that China encouraged entrepreneurship after the disastrous Cultural Revolution, and while inequality did grow the Chinese people -*including the poor*- are much better off.
(*Robert D. Cooter and Aaron Eldin, "*Law and Growth Economics: A framework for research*" Working Paper Series, Berkeley Program in Law and Economics, UC Berkeley, Jan 13th, 2011)

However, raising taxes does have some effects considered positive by Universalists – it hinders social climbers, especially those who don't adhere to the "correct" ideologies, it reinforces the moral doctrine of equality, and finally it provides a lever to manipulate those with wealth to follow the desired Universalist policies.

The problem within ACWE between workers and the elites/CEOs are less an issue of wealth than it's one of status. The Nazis understood this- their workers worked much harder for less financial reward than any other nations thanks to the high status, dignity and self-worth the Nazis gave the working-class in life. Contrast that with America where high status is given to the parasitical classes (politicians, lawyers, rich businessmen, and butt-kissing generals) and the contribution to society of the working classes are ignored and denigrated to the point there are special insults used by Universalists against working class people; "hillbillies", "rednecks", etc.

American conservatives in general, and Republicans especially, constantly claim we have to drop taxes on the rich or they'll go elsewhere. Democrats constantly claim that taxes on the rich should be raised, and then invariably fail to actually do so (it's a sham, a ruse to get votes). But the rich don't leave countries because of taxes; what people want in life is status, superiority, not to be rich (though they **do** want to be richer than the next rung down from where they're on the social ladder), but to have exclusiveness, and power and therefore status within that exclusiveness.

Look at Japan. Its tax bureau takes its work so seriously that Japanese companies have no access to any tax havens and pay their taxes in full. Japanese CEOs and other high-flyers earn less than US$500k each. But the president of Toyota doesn't need billions, he's quite happy with his 300k, because he is the president of Toyota and people literally bow and kneel to him wherever he goes. Moving to another nation chasing money doesn't compare to that, and never will.

Japan's elites never complain about their comparatively low level of wealth, because they have a better life than everyone else, and like all people that's what they **actually** care about. They have their own restaurants where commoners aren't allowed to go, their own schools where you can't go if nobody introduces you, their clubs which plebs don't even know exist, and their personal estates where even the much-feared Japanese police won't enter without an engraved invitation.

When all you have is a hammer, everything looks like a nail. It's the universal problem of economic determinists, whether they're Michael Moore or Bryan Caplan. In most American sub-cultures, since there's no aristocracy, the only proof of success is how much money you have and how you spend it, with even the method of earning it being relatively unimportant. The solution to the problems of capitalism for a capitalist is always more capitalism, and the solution for the problems of socialism for a socialist is always more socialism. Pragmatism is always an intellectual failure to a theorist. The study of social status distribution instead of wealth distribution would be well worth looking into.

Nationalism recognizes that there are different classes and they should all work together for the good of the nation. Every time a businessman hires someone, he and that employee are working together for the good of the nation. If you have class consciousness, if the workers band together to act collectively, it's not working together as a nation, but class war within the nation, hence the toxicity of Marxism. Form your own nation, it's not just about land- it's about having a distinct culture and identity from the neighboring nation(s).

Humans are primarily status animals, and perceived status is more attractive than actual wealth when basic living needs are satisfied, which optimizes evolutionary fitness. Status. Give your citizens status, and everyone in the area under your control will want to be one. Make being a citizen an achievable but difficult goal, one that requires sacrifice and provides rich rewards. Make them feel wanted, make them feel truly ***needed***, and you'll give them something that they cannot effectively gain under progressivism in our current modern society, except to a tiny degree.

Money is the worst way to reward success because it doesn't last and is fast forgotten. The best reward is a new identity – a new title perhaps. Napoleon was very good at giving titles to those who did a good job, to create new potential identities for them. A ritual or institution that hands out such rewards is a great way for successful people to show that they're moving up in the world.

78. <u>Why Socialism Is Not The Answer:</u>

"*It's too obvious, too easily demonstrable that fascism and communism aren't two opposites, but two rival gangs fighting over the same territory—that both are variants of statism, based on the collectivist principle that man is the rightless slave of the state—that both are socialistic, in theory, in practice, and in the explicit statements of their leaders—that under both systems, the poor are enslaved and the rich are expropriated in favor of a ruling clique—that fascism is not the product of the political 'right,' but of the 'left'—that the basic issue is not 'rich versus poor,' but man versus the state, or: individual rights versus totalitarian government—which means: capitalism versus socialism".* - Leonard Peikoff

The sausage-less sizzle in socialism was the claim that it could bring about a "left-wing" society: more prosperous, more fair, more equal than anything ever seen before. But the reality actually visible by the mid-20th century was that socialist governments weren't merely incompetent, poor, unfair, and unequal, but also murderous. Yet no committed socialist anywhere was willing to give up their utopian dream.

When Karl Marx referred to free enterprise as capitalism, he regurgitated much of the formula previously offered up by Smith and Say, adding his own sinister twist from thin air - the "*exploitation of labor*". At the same time Marx was fabricating Book 1 of *Das Kapital*, three separate members of the Marginalist School of economics utterly destroyed and debunked the concepts behind Marx's Labor Theory of Value, which was what allowed him to make such inflamed claims at all.

By the time Stalin took over in the Soviet Union, the three main socialist rivals were well-established. These were: 1) Marxist-Bolshevik socialism, 2) social democracy (as forged by Bismarck), and of course at the time, 3) fascism. Given that the latter two retained free enterprise, Stalin decreed that only Soviet-style Marxism was **truly** left-wing and capable of securing a truly free and prosperous society. Accordingly, Stalin insisted that Soviet state media refer to all non-Leninist-Stalinist socialist leaders and systems as "*right-wing*".

Of course as we knew all along, Soviet Communism was fully totalitarian - a small politburo "scientifically" managing the whole show for the benefit of "the people". Despite being supposed to magically transition to a leaderless, government-less model as claimed by Marxist theory, it never did; by the time of its utter collapse in the early 1990s, it was no closer to achieving its goals than it was in 1917, and had shown itself to be more despotic than even the most absolute tyrannies of old.

The two other main forms of socialism, Fascism, and the outgrowth of social democracy: National-Socialism (nazism), both took a similar stance: they promised to create a fairer, more prosperous society. While they were more realistic about human inequality than Marxism, they both subordinated free enterprise to the state, with government being able to set wages, prices, and demanding that industry produce this or that. Medical research, for example, basically came to a standstill as the NSDAP in Germany insisted that doctors focus on providing government-funded medical care, and all money to find new cures and treatments was diverted to that purpose instead.

Nazism especially sought to control rather than eliminate the entrepreneurial class:

"[Hitler stated that] *the socialism of the future would lie in* "the community of the volk", *not in internationalism, and his task was to* "convert the German volk to socialism without simply killing off the old individualists", *meaning the entrepreneurial and managerial classes left from the age of liberalism. They should be used, not destroyed. After all, the state could control without owning, guided by a single,* [and] *the economy could be planned and directed without dispossessing the propertied classes. To dispossess, as the Russian civil war had recently shown, could only mean Germans fighting Germans, and* [Hitler] *believed there was a quicker and more efficient route. There could be socialism without a civil war.*" **https://archive.is/zZLtt**

Socialism of whatever type is based on government directing society's actions "for the common good" – this "common good" being defined as whatever the government wishes to define it as that particular day. We inevitably see "the common good" being used as a dishonest argument to enrich and

empower those in government, and we also can see that centralized government control invariably leads to massive diseconomies of scale and rampant inefficiency in every area it touches. In short, the problem that exists with socialism **is** the socialism.

Curiously, Marx suggested in his writings that workers create institutions for themselves that would aid them, not that they should take control of existing institutions (education, government, etc.) and redirect them to aid the workers. As always, good intentions, however poorly-thought-out, get redirected by those whose hands land on the levers of power to their own purposes.

Despite the claims of socialists, it's extremely rare that a peasant farmer or factory worker actually wants the overthrow of society, or to "seize the means of production" - 99%+ simply want decent treatment, a little more pay, and a bit less taxes, which are at least reasonable and understandable goals. In the 1800's and beyond, Marxism seized on the first two to push for ideological conflict, and in places like the Russian Empire used this as a lever to overthrow the legitimate government and crush all opposition (aided by western intellectuals and power-brokers), enslaving the population to benefit the new "socialist" ruling class and keeping the populace from rising up with liberal use of the stick (secret police, mass arrests, repression, etc.) and the carrot (limited improvement to living conditions, enforced employment, industrialization).

While perhaps some ended up more prosperous than before, we see that wherever anything gets implemented "for the people" or "for the common good" we find massive drops in actual equality and fairness among the public, and often in prosperity when compared to their peers as well.

79. Homes And Land

It's conceivable that something vaguely resembling a manorial European arrangement might be able to emerge on a small scale, but the persistence or widespread adoption of such a model requires something to prevent market forces from breaking up large landholdings, like the Law of Entail, Fee Tail, or Copyhold did in feudal Europe. Such laws that existed were overturned due to three main reasons - firstly, the taxation of land-holdings, secondly, the difficulty in selling such land for profit to fund the creation of industry by those landholders. And thirdly, land owned under such laws could not be confiscated as security to repay loans if the present owner died. This brings us to our next topic - that of true freehold.

People lack freedom when they depend on others to fulfil their needs, for need may lead to enslavement or exploitation of one person by another. Need is an intrinsic problem and conflict is initiated by control of one's needs by another. We can easily recognize that housing is an essential need for both the individual and the family and should not be owned by others, for living in a house owned by another in the long term, whether paying rent or not, compromises one's freedom.

Acquiring dwellings additional to one's own dwelling or that of one's immediate heirs for the purpose of renting is the beginning of controlling the needs of others, because these additional dwellings are something that someone else needs. Attempts to solve the housing problem by offering the reduction,

increase, or standardization of rents, whether it went to privately or publicly-owned enterprise, or to government, have so far failed to solve the issue.

No one, including society itself, has the right to control people's needs. This is why the marxist principle of state ownership of dwellings is anti-freedom, as it forces the people to permanently depend upon government for their basic need for housing.

The ultimate solution is naturally, that people own their own dwellings, and that such ownership be free of taxation, rates, fees, etc. - for how can one truly say one owns their own home when failure to submit to financial exploitation by government leads to the expropriation of one's home? Such untaxable dwelling will in this document be called a "*true-freehold*", as it's completely under the control of the owner, and is also inheritable by one's children.

It's a similar concept to "allodial title" - allodial title (sometimes called a land patent or "estate in fee simple" which is actually a different thing) gives the owner the *absolute* right to their land, without any obligation to any landlord, sovereign or government. If you have allodial title to land, it cannot be seized; no government, agency or bank can place any lien, attachment or encumbrance on land secured by allodial title (though obligations could be placed upon the owner, separately to the land itself). This also means that if you're able to get allodial title to your land where you are, you must not be paying off a mortgage on the land – until you're done, it's the bank that owns the land, not you.

Allodial title does not presently exist in the United States, because the Founding Fathers declined to give peasants like you any ***real*** guarantee to their private property, other than saying that it won't be taken for public use without "*just compensation*"... which they get to decide what it is. No-one in the USA currently has allodial rights on "your" land - at best you hold it in fee simple. Meaning, at the government's pleasure, as all land is subject to eminent domain by federal state and local governments, and it's also subject to the imposition of taxes by state and/or local governments. As a result, there's no land under true allodial title. You may hear of people attempting to gain allodial title to their property, but such attempts aren't legally recognized, are unlikely to be recognized by courts, and making the attempt to claim allodial title, or asserting allodial title in court after a government attempt to tax or seize the land may be classified as a "frivolous claim", and punished.

Unlike allodial title, the proposed "true-freehold" land (once declared and notarized) is inalienable and indivisible during the lifetime of the owner (meaning the owner cannot convey (sell), devise, gift, or mortgage it in whole nor in part during their lifetime) – nor it could be seized to pay off taxes or debts of any sort, though any moveable property on it might be another story.

It could be left to an individual in the owner's will, and blood-relatives of a (deceased) owner are automatically first in line to claim ownership of the title after the owner's death if they wish to do so. The land does not remain a "true-freehold" if the land is ever broken up and owned by more than a single person - person in this context meaning a human being, not a corporation or trust, the land must be owned by an actual, living, breathing human being to be "true-freehold".

It would be reasonable to charge a tax for transferring ownership of a "true-freehold" upon the death of the owner to an heir or other person, but only as some fixed percentage of the unimproved value of the land it sits upon (perhaps say, 15%?), otherwise it would deter owners from improving the land such as by building or improving a house or other buildings, or improvements to soil drainage, etc., and means they will seek to rid themselves of the land, or to destructively exploit it. Instead, the suggested policies ensure that the productivity of the land continues to grow and that it's well-looked after by the owning family, benefiting the entire community for potentially centuries to come.

Additionally, it should be obvious that a community would be best served by ensuring such *true-freehold* land should be limited to one title deed per person, to ensure that every family can live and own their own home. Ownership of additional dwellings should rightfully be taxed yearly at a rate sufficient to disincentivise such additional ownership, but one's own *true-freehold* dwelling (or again, that of one's immediate heirs) should remain untaxed after purchase, with no fees or other impositions thereafter. It also seems logical to insist that a *true-freehold* property owner must physically live on it (for at least half the year) to retain its status as a *true-freehold*.

80. The Use Of Tariffs

As long as tariffs are used as part of a strategy to encourage domestic industrial growth in the particular industry affected by that tariff and aren't open-ended (ie: you have to create them with a clear conditional sunset clause) they're useful tools of economic development, especially when they force other nations to remove their own pre-existing tariffs.

Tariffs protecting the US steel industry in the early 1800's allowed it to surpass the world's previous largest steel industry - the British one. Doesn't anyone read economic history anymore?

I'll give three examples of how tariffs would help protect your nascent industrial base:

1) The US steel industry.
At the beginning of the 1800's the USA had almost no steel industry to speak of, while the UK had the biggest in the world. The US couldn't even produce steel of the same quality as the UK could. The USA imposed tariffs on steel imports, to which the UK objected stridently using some of the same "*muh free-trade*" arguments used to protest Trump's push for tariffs. In less than a century, the US steel industry was the world's largest, and produced the highest-quality steel.

2) General goods manufacturing.
In 1950, almost no general household goods were produced in China- almost everything was imported. The PRC government embraced capitalism in its industry, simultaneously imposing strong import tariffs. Less than 50 years later, China manufactures the majority of the world's general household goods, ravaging manufacturing industry in most of the "developed" world.

3) Car manufacture.
Again in 1950, Japanese cars were never seen outside of Japan itself. By imposing strong import tariffs and incentivising exports, Japan is now one of the world's largest manufacturers and exporters of automobiles. In failing to imitate this, Detroit went from the no.1 automobile manufacturer in the world to a third-world shithole.

Tariffs aren't subsidies- those are a very different thing. The effects of tariffs are long-term, subsidies short-term. Think of it like this - tariffs shield industries, subsidies bribe them.

We see tariffs on a smaller scale in late Medieval German town market fairs, where merchants were expected to pay an assessed percentage of the value of any goods that they brought to the town to trade or they were not allowed to sell their goods.

Perhaps most significantly for our interests, import tariffs provide government with income to pay for critical necessities such as military expenses without having to tax the income of citizens.

Tariffs can have bad consequences when they reflect corruption and special favors. What happens in such instances is that there's a high tariff on goods imported by regular folks, and someone who is cozy with government gets a special permit, a recategorization, or some such, and he gets to import stuff without a tariff, and mark it up. But the biggest cause of the indignation against Trump's tariffs on steel is that he taxed specialty steels, taxing steel that you just cannot buy in America, and that tax is not a gift of free money to existing steel producers, but a demand that they get their act together and an opportunity for them to do so. Hence the outrage from those who were purchasing that steel, and the joy of US steel companies at expanding into niches that they had not been able to compete in (because there are severe losses when setting up a new product line, even one that is similar to an old one).

81. A Suggested Possibility For Ruling Your Town

"*Freedom means responsibility - that is why most men dread it*". - George Bernard Shaw

There's a fable of a group of frogs who wanted a king. They prayed and prayed to the Frog God who relented, put a log in their pond and called it their king. At first, the frogs were happy to have a king, but soon again became upset at the inert lump of wood and prayed to the Frog God to give them a king who would do actually do something. The Frog God again relinquished and gave them a new king, a stork, which proceeded to eat all the frogs in the pond. - The moral of the story is that the frogs didn't need a king. But rather than sort out their own problems they wanted a leader. Thus the Frog God wrote them off as useless.

Even in groups as small as 4, there's always one wannabe "lone wolf" willing to sacrifice the community's good for their own benefit, especially if the decision is implemented via a secret vote (((hey, does that sound familiar?))) - this is why a shared, explicit value system is so important: consider very, very carefully the individuals and families you let in your community as members.

The "progressive" modern way to implement policy is to immediately make laws at the highest possible levels after deciding the desired outcome is a good idea. The older, conservative way would be to have small pilot projects over an extended period of time in multiple areas and slowly scale them up only once they proved successful and the risks properly understood. This manner of performing small-scale trial runs of new political ideas was the entire reason for the multilayered design of the US political system - it's essentially the scientific method applied to political decisions. Sadly, this does not make politicians powerful and the elites rich, now does it?

This next part will probably earn me some flak, but hear me out. Since representative democracy doesn't exactly have a history of working out so well for the represented in the long term, I suggest imitating a modified version of the Pashtun concept of a *jirga*, or council, as the most direct form of functional democracy possible. A description of how one works follows, then I include an explanation of how to apply it to your group:

"*the jirga ... takes its roots from Athenian democracy, although some scholars argue that it predates it. The participants arrange themselves in a circle, and everyone has the right to speak. There's no one presiding, in accordance with the principle that no one is superior [to any other] in the eyes of Pashtunwali [the Pashtun code of conduct]. The decision is based on a majority consensus. Those who defy the decision of the jirga open themselves up to officially sanctioned arson and murder. It's significant that the jirga does not allow representation: it's a direct rather than a representative democracy. It's also crucial that the jirga reserves the right to abnegate any agreement previously entered into, making treaty-based state-legal relations with the Pashtuns impossible. Lastly, only those who follow Pashtunwali can participate in a jirga; all outsiders are automatically excluded. This should give you some idea of why Pashtunwali presents an intractable problem for any empire that wants to dominate the Pashtuns".*

- from Dmitry Orlov's excellent book ***The Five Stages of Collapse*** (emphasis added)

Notice the three most critical points for our purposes:

1 - *The jirga does not allow representation: it's a direct ... democracy.*

You cannot elect someone to speak for you or use a secret vote - you can only speak for yourself, while present at the time. Thus you don't end up with a congress or parliament that is supposed to work *for* you, but actually only works for itself.

2 - *The jirga reserves the right to abnegate any agreement previously entered into*

Previous decisions can be erased by the group by forming a new consensus decision - you cannot be bound by old decisions, treaties, etc. once they become harmful to your group.

3 - *Only those who follow Pashtunwali can participate ... outsiders are automatically excluded.*

You cannot end up with a situation where individuals who don't follow your moral and ethical code make the decisions for those who do. The usual things /pol/ whines about are impossible, because no matter how talented "*da j00z*" may be, they can't take over control of institutions they're automatically excluded from. Think of it as conditional citizenship- fail to constantly *act* as a good citizen, and you stop being a citizen at all.

Now let's talk about how such a thing could be incorporated into your team.

1 - This one is pretty simple, and you should see why: similarly to Pashtunwali, decisions that affect the group should be made by all group members, equally sitting together in council. If it affects you, you should be allowed to speak up and must then accept the decision. It's best if there's no official leader to bully others into compliance- you don't need a president, or representatives, you don't need a Congress or taxes- you only need yourself. The importance is to reach a compromise tolerated by the whole group, not simply to vote on which idiot leads- it's completely ok to disagree, but the group must reach a decision that is accepted by all members, and it's ok if the decision is only a temporary one. The other option is representation, and inevitably you end up with the abortion of justice that the US government displays. Instead, under this system, if you disagree with the decision, fine go your own way- but you're no longer included and are outlawed (in the ancient Anglo-Saxon sense) from the council, and anyone can harm you with impunity, so good luck out there.

2 - "*the right to abnegate any agreement previously entered into"*- so, let's say that let's say that post SHTF, the fragments of three states join together and declare themselves the New United States of America (NUSA) - your team/tribe/council agreed to become citizens as the NUSA declared there would never, ever, ever be an income tax or gun control, and that all your trading would be done in the town of Bumfuck. However, NUSA's congress implemented income taxes and gun control anyway. You hold a council, and hey presto, screw that agreement, you're now an independent nation again, and you proceed to go Genghis Khan on NUSA's lying ass.

3 - This one should also be pretty simple, but here's an example anyhow: let's say you have a member, let's call him Joe, who for whatever reason breaches your moral/ethical code by, let's say, cheating other members out of money (something prohibitively expensive to sue over even now). You assemble the council, have the victims and Joe speak, and determine that Joe breached your agreed-on moral code, and hey presto, he's now no longer allowed to take part in any decision- including the next one, the one that decides his fate.

See how this reinforces in-group bonds and loyalty? See how the Pashtuns resisted all invaders for two millennia? The goat sex requires choosing the optional "islam" package (not recommended).

Remember what I said above: "***fail to constantly act as a good citizen, and you stop being one***" - imagine how this simplifies H punishment;

Today in the USA, let's say Tyrone goes out to rob a store and in doing so he kills the clerk.
If Tyrone gets identified as the perpetrator, and
if the police decide that catching him justifies the expense, and
if he is caught, and
if the DA decides to prosecute, and
IF there's no plea bargain, and finally,
IF he is actually found guilty after an expensive trial at taxpayer expense,

…then *maybe* justice is done, at least until Tyrone gets released early for good behavior and does it all over again.

Under conditional citizenship, the process is much simpler - citizens from the town or neighborhood where the crime happened hold a council and let Tyrone speak, as well as any witnesses and families involved. Tyrone's guilt and punishment are decided - perhaps he must pay a blood-fee to the clerk's family, perhaps he must pay by indentured servitude for a fixed period, perhaps he is declared to be outside the law's protection and given an hour to run for his life - whatever the council decides is final, with no further appeals, and the decision is not bound by precedent, though it may use precedent as a guideline if it wishes.

Could this suit your law & order needs? That is for you to decide- I suggest you discuss it.

Note the similar system laid out in Muammar Gaddafi's "***Green Book***", for use on larger scales.

*82. **Another Possibility***

"*The natural progress of things is for liberty to yield, and government to gain ground*" - Thomas Jefferson

Political power and political authority are different things. In ACWE, and especially in the US, political power lies no longer in the hands of elected officials, but in the hands of the unelected bureaucracy, elite university specialists, think-tanks, non-government organizations, "advisors", and the media, while the political *authority* is vested in the actual government - congress etc.

This is an unstable system, and a noticeably unfair one. At no point does the average citizen have any input, except to legitimize the system that oppresses his or her freedom of action by voting. Refer to Walter Lippmann's oft-reprinted 1927 book "*The Phantom Public*" here. You can vote for Vermin Supreme, but even if he wins that does nothing to remove the fossilized hand of the permanent bureaucracy from your neck. Regardless of who you vote for, there's no way to abolish an oppressive department without first having a thousand bureaucrats interfere with your proposal and fill it with pork.

Now, I love the constitution, but we have to face facts: it was designed to curtail government power and overreach, and it has spectacularly failed to do so since 1900 at least. Therefore, it needs to be either amended to do better, an unlikely event – or replaced with something that can.

The 800-lb elephant in America's living-room, the one that gave us all the other problems is "who gets the voting franchise". As John Adams put it: "*Our Constitution was made for a moral and religious people; it's wholly inadequate to the government of any other*". …and the people of the USA today are neither very moral nor are they very religious, unless you count Universalism.

I'm not arguing a return to the status-quo ante 1860, as splendid as that would be in many respects other than the slavery part, but it's incontrovertibly true that precisely as the voting franchise was bestowed upon groups who demonstrably choose poorly, our national calamities multiplied until we arrived where we are now. In brief, the sum total of national intelligence is a constant, but the voting population keeps increasing.

IMHO, any plan that overlooks the fact that Johnathan Edwards and John Wesley ultimately had more to do with founding this country than the Continental Congress is doomed to eventual failure.

Consider that if President Woodrow Wilson and the US Federal Government hadn't been able to create a draft army or have a standing army on hand in WW1, it would have stayed out of that war. This would have meant that the allied nations of Britain, France and Russia would have had to seek a negotiated peace with Germany, Turkey and Austria-Hungary, meaning Europe would have resolved their issues the first time around, and we'd never have had WW2. Without WW2, nearly every major problem we see in the world today could have been averted or would at least have been limited to being a local or regional issue at most.

It's well-documented that SCOTUS, especially in the last hundred years, has been basically '*making it up as they go along*' in regard to what is or is not constitutional by violating their own precedents in high- and low-profile cases depending on the politics of the sitting justices in question (for those interested in the subject, I recommend the '*Constitutional Literacy*' DVD series by Michael Farris; at $50 you might find it's the most inexpensive education on what the Constitution is and what it isn't you'll ever find).

In the words of G.K. Chesterton: "*The men whom the people ought to choose to represent them are too busy to take the jobs. But the politician is waiting for it. He's the pestilence of modern times. What we should try to do is make politics as local as possible. Keep the politicians near enough to kick them. The villagers who met under the village tree could also hang their politicians to the tree. It's terrible to contemplate how few politicians are hung today*."

*83. **Stable And Responsible Government***

To create greater stability and fairness, the power and authority need to be unified. This can be done in two basic ways -

1) full handover of both power and authority to the citizenry, as in ancient Athens, etc.
> This method is better for small groups of less than ~1000 people, ideally 200 people or less, with a strong sense of unity and belonging. It does not scale at all to bigger group sizes.

2) both power and authority are explicitly unified in one person.
> This works better for groups larger than 200 or so, and is basically the way most Americans seem to think is how the office of the presidency works - as if the President were some sort of king or chieftain, able to dictate laws and regulations. This is likely due to such governance being the oldest, simplest, and most instinctively understandable form of leadership since the dawn of humanity.

Now, how to get the best of both worlds?

I have spoken earlier on feudalism in this book, and I believe it's significant that with some changes, a form of pseudo-feudalistic governance may also potentially fit the needs of some post-SHTF communities. This would be similar to the "neo-cameralism" proposed by Moldbug, but with the major difference that unlike him, I'm very unenthusiastic about the necessity of relying on high technology to make my political system stable and enduring. This goes double if we consider a post-Collapse founding scenario, as is the focus of this book.

I would prefer to adopt the Swiss model instead, but that requires fewer parasites in both the upper-classes and under-classes than is feasible in America or elsewhere, and it's a system that is failing even the Swiss today under the onslaught of ACWE. In any case, you'd need decades or centuries of kings and lords and suchlike to clean up the gene pool before you can possibly head in that direction, all of which aren't possible or available to us both now, and under SHTF.

The first and most obvious change from what we can consider "classical" feudalism would be that it would no longer be a four-tiered structure, with a king, local lords, serfs, and "miscellaneous" (merchants, slaves, travellers, and so on), but rather a three-tier structure similar to some American Indian tribes. This would have some manner of Chief (the actual formal title the individual holds is irrelevant, you can call them a president if you prefer) and the remainder simply being freemen, as well as one other important tier, which I'll get to explaining in a bit.

Having a wife and X+ kids should be a ***requirement*** for individuals holding positions of political power and responsibility to ensure that the people making decisions have an investment in the future. This should apply to citizens (for eligibility to be a citizen in the first place), and Chiefs. Citizens should be required to have at least three children before being allowed to speak at a council, and five kids seems like a good number required before a person is elected to be a Chief.

The main differences from our present "representative democracy" would be these:
1) once elected, the Chief serves for life, or until they willingly step down.

2) Chiefs cannot be re-elected - it's a once-and-done proposition

3) the Chief is **not** a representative. They're simply the person who has final say (being the final point of appeal) in **all** decisions affecting the collective group.

4) the Chief can be removed by a ¾ majority vote of the citizens of that area, and can be killed with impunity if they don't step down after such a vote. It's best if this vote cannot take place before some minimum number of years in the position, I suggest 10 years minimum.

5) the Chief's decisions cannot be overruled – doing so requires removing the Chief from their position, and then asking the new Chief to overrule the previous Chief's decision.

6) no citizen can be refused a face-to-face audience with the Chief to discuss their concerns.

7) the Chief cannot be tried by any Council* for any crime actual or alleged, any concerns must be judged by a higher Chief who already held their own position for not less than ten years.**
* There's a very good reason for this, though not an obvious one: the ultimate meaning of "*presidents should be subject to the rule of law*" (as was heard so often during Trump's presidency), is that the

person bleating the statement wants for some judge no-one ever heard of to issue an arrest warrant for the ruler of your nation, and for the ruler to be arrested without any resistance or pushback of this coup. This is the method the CIA uses to justify events after they overthrow other nation's leaders and install their pet dictators. Eliminating this opportunity means it's much harder for your government to be overthrown or infiltrated.
** This is to prevent lower chiefs being removed by higher ones, again preventing your government being overthrown or infiltrated should a higher chief be influenced by outsiders.

Finally:
8) Most importantly, "tyrannicide" should and indeed, absolutely must, be a valid defence against a charge of murdering a chief, for the reasons laid out here: **[LINK]**.

If you're about to object that this means the system can be gridlocked, this is by design. In emergency situations, such as if you're being invaded, the council and Chief will naturally agree on broad actions to be taken. But under normal conditions, the role of both is to manage the smooth running of the territory by enforcing and approving agreements, contracts, and settling disputes – it's not their job to constantly legislate and write new laws. You only think it is, because that is what bureaucracies do, and you have lived under a bureaucratic system your whole life. The consequences of bureaucrats' actions can be seen by doing a web search for "weird laws", "absurd regulations" or "crazy rules" and counting how many pages pop up- it's a lot. As a side-note, this form of electing a "chief for life" has strong parallels to the system used by the Holy Roman Empire to elect new Emperors, which removed the usual royal problem of the ruler having no sons, or worse, having a near-retard for a son (*cough* Britain's ~~Prince~~ King Charles III *cough*).

I strongly discourage anyone from organizing a pre-SHTF group around a chief-style leader. A capable and inspirational person of the kind who should be made chief is rare to begin with, and at present they're unlikely to have displayed their skills in ordinary life. Moreover, most people, even those who might agree with you or I, have neither the mentality nor the social background to follow and operate under such a ruler under our "normal" clown-world conditions. Finally, most people who would seek out such a position at present are exactly the sort of person who you ***wouldn't*** want as a chief, as they would be megalomaniacs and bullies of the worst sort, the kind that ends up driving everyone else to leaving the group by their actions. These issues will be much reduced after the transition period, when the harsher world has silenced, reformed, or otherwise eliminated today's assorted whiners, ne'er-do-wells, and political parasites.

84. Solid Laws To Live By

Your foundational laws must explicitly and emphatically state that any unelected bureaucrat (we'll call them appointees in this document) can be removed without cause by any Chief, or by the collective ¾ majority vote of the council of the area it operates in. Translated to modern terms, this would mean that with the simple stroke of a pen, an elected president or senator could abolish the ATF, FBI, or any other unelected department, and that they could fire any employee in any branch of government whatsoever without cause, such as when they block a policy. This is similar to the result of Myers v. United States (**https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Myers_v._United_States**) a much-ignored but never overruled Supreme Court decision that the US president can fire any federal government employee for any reason or no reason at all, and that any law restricting his power to do so is unconstitutional… something that is unfortunately rarely, if ever, used.

Any appointee selected to represent your territory to another territory (an ambassador, in other words) can be appointed and approved by the Chief, but ideally this should also gain the approval of the council. It would also be a very good idea for laws to clearly explain in detail exactly what is meant by each law, and what the specific words used mean at the time the law is written- otherwise, look at the mess regarding the clear meaning of the second amendment when it's "reinterpreted" by some do-gooder idiot from New York. If there was an appendix explaining the meaning of things like "infringe" and "regulated" in the context of the time, the NFA and other subsequent infringements would never have been possible without a full amendment passing.

America's founding fathers didn't commit to writing the assumptions they already "knew" any reasonable man would also "know" at the time, and we're paying the price for that now. Let our own era be a cautionary tale for those who would write such foundational documents. When writing laws or guidelines, for everything you know that "*goes without saying*" or "*needs no explanation*", the next generation just won't get it. So you need to explicitly, comprehensively, say the unnecessary, and explain the obvious in great detail, to avoid that happening later on.

This dual nature of authority ensures localized decisions, and reduces the chances that a Chief would grow excessively powerful. The councils would control local matters from county down to the city block level for any of their 200-or-so-up-to-500-maximum constituent members (the number of councils depending on the population of that area) while the Chiefs would do the same for the area as a whole. The Chief operates much like the CEO of a company, with the council acting rather like a board of shareholders. Citizens have the right to be tried by a council (either their own or the one where their alleged crime took place), and can appeal to the chief, but only once per crime, with all outstanding offenses to be resolved simultaneously, and separate justice being meted out for separate issues. Non-citizens cannot appeal, ever.

"Plea bargains" should be avoided by simply running trials as fact-finding events, rather than the English-style system used in the USA where trials have become an elaborate act of "how can the law be twisted to justify the events".

This system is also scalable all the way up to the full size of the US or Europe, but ensures far more decentralization than any system in place at present, giving democracy without the oppressive bureaucratic structure of a "democratic" government. One can imagine a group of Chiefs forming a council at state level, with a state Chief, then a national council and a national Chief. In any case, the Chief would be elected by the council and would then become separate from it, though they could speak at a council without having any authority over it.

Separatism is avoided at the larger scales by simply allowing each Chief's domain massive latitude to manage their own affairs: there would be no right to appeal at the Federal level over State-level decisions, nor at State level over County-level decisions, for example – meaning each level would be a patchwork of different systems, with more efficient and effective methods of doing things competing organically and being adopted as people see fit.

Obviously, there also needs to be a third tier for those people who don't fit into the above tiers. This would include children, the mentally incapable, those convicted of crimes by your local citizen council (a *jirga*, as seen in the above pages) visitors, travellers, etc. I propose that the old English concept of ***wards*** be resurrected. A ward is a person who is under the legal responsibility of another person (the ***guardian***) who makes an oath or similar declaration that they shall be responsible for the ward, and this oath or declaration is recorded and notarised under the authority of your Chief or the local citizen council for reference. This works similarly to power of attorney, but with several important distinctions, such as that a ward *can* own their own property and the guardian cannot seize it, unless under very specific circumstances and with the legal authority confirmed by a council or a Chief. The status of ward is also territorial, in that the (non-parent) guardian's authority over the ward begins and ends at the edge of the territory the declaration is recorded in. This is not the same as slavery - slaveowners were not held liable for slaves' actions in normal circumstances, and slaves could technically own no property.

Children, for example, would be wards of their parents or some other suitable guardian until adulthood (yes, they could appeal to the local citizen council for transfer of their wardhood or even for emancipation if they felt that they were unfairly treated) – parents/guardians would have full authority over their children/wards, having the social responsibility to care for them, and they would also be responsible for any actions done by their children/wards. This would give us a situation similar to the broad paterfamilias powers fathers had in early Rome.

It is a curious fact that most libertarians and anarcho-capitalists would be quite horrified by an actually anarcho-capitalist system, because if the police and judiciary were mostly the direct employees of

shopping malls and suchlike (as posited by such a system), then the actual property-owners would have a lot of legal authority, and they'd be even more horrified that since suburbia would be protected by heads of households, and/or organizations made/paid by them, each head of household would have near-total legal authority over his household and property, after the fashion of Republican Rome and the Old Testament - *paterfamilias* powers. Under "regular" anarchy, the result would rapidly end up exactly the same, but the slogans would be different.

For example, the parents of little Bobby Troublemaker would be held liable if Bobby decides he wants to burn someone's house down. Likewise, little Bobby's parents could punish him as they saw fit for doing such a thing. In this specific example, should Bobby prove to not respond to correction, his parent-guardians could formally emancipate him before the local council or Chief (and would require their approval to do so), and thereafter the consequences of Bobby's actions would fall only upon him – this system would avoid the nonsense we see where parents are responsible for their children's actions, but prevented from correcting their behavior.

Likewise, the mentally incapable would be the ward of a nominated person, generally their parents, but if not, it could be the local pastor or other specific relative or person. The guardianship would in nearly all cases be a voluntary obligation, but otherwise it could be determined by the local citizen council or Chief. Monasteries served in this role during the medieval era, putting the mentally incapable or societally useless under the wardship/control and constant ascetic supervision of a religious order as an act of Christian charity. The decadence found in monasteries and nunneries during the later Renaissance era was caused by the failure of the Church of that era to make clear distinction between the people who were in those places because they were otherwise useless on the one hand (lay brothers) and those who were in such places due to seeking a more contemplative spiritual union with the divine on the other hand (actual monks). This must be avoided by clearly distinguishing between the former and latter, and permanently excluding the former from having any opportunity of rising to any position with any power over others within the system.

Most importantly, **only true-freeholders can ever be citizens**: anyone who does not hold true-freehold land cannot sit on a council. As a true-freehold cannot be taxed or otherwise lost (though it *can* be sold or transferred after the buyer pays a fee on the land) this means all citizens will by necessity be net taxpayers in some way. Thus, no citizen will depend on gibsmedats or government handouts for their livelihood, and anyone who does so will be some citizen's ward, ensuring such people cannot vote for more handouts for themselves.

This means that council members are also those who shall pay the bulk of any taxes, giving them a good incentive to keep taxes as low as will still pay for infrastructure. And no matter how much the Chief's position might come to resemble an old-time king, it's simply not possible to consume more than a few billion-dollars-worth of stuff per year, again reducing the incentive for excess taxation, especially considering the bureaucracy would be minimal under such a system.

Due to Ricardo's law of rents, any rents (taxes) not collected by the Chief (who is the government) will still be collected, by landowners (the citizens). This means Chiefs depend on and are supported by a coalition of landowners. Though true-freeholds aren't taxed by the government (except that 15% mentioned when passing father-to-child at death) other lands can, indeed should be, and the income generated can be used to pay for infrastructure, defense, and suchlike necessities. If there's enough income, your citizens could choose to use it to subsidize their healthcare if they so wished, wards being provided for out of their guardian's allocation. If it started to run short of money like the British NHS, those citizens could simply choose to pay more tax out of their own pockets to fund it.

It's critical that no monetary handouts ever be available or allowed to citizens, for the obvious reason that this will render them predatory and despoil the land. If they end up in sufficiently dire financial straits, they can always transfer their true-freehold land to someone else and use the money to pay off any debts they have, or better yet they can live from subsistence farming on that true-freehold until they pay their debt off some other way.
Note that a person selling off their true-freehold land terminates their status as citizen and renders then a ward of someone who is still a citizen – this would cover cases of total bankruptcy and also be a disincentive to enter into severe debt.

Some other significant points are that any person would have right to leave the territory but no territory has an obligation to accept or allow anyone to enter. Thus visitors to and travellers in your territory would have to declare themselves at the border and request wardhood under someone's guardianship for the duration of their stay. One could imagine some sort of "visitor-guardian insurance" system springing up in scenic or attractive areas, where a person agrees to be the guardian of, say, a busload of visiting tourists for a week, in exchange for a moderate payment and signed insurance documents that ensure the ward can be financially held accountable if they breach the guardian's trust by breaking the law.

Someone who was not a citizen and is found in the territory is an outlaw, in that they're literally outside of the law and not protected by it. Any citizen finding an outlaw could (for example) grab them and drag them in front of the Chief for judgement, I imagine the punishment could even be forced wardship to whoever will take them, possibly the Chief (who remember, basically is the government) if no-one else will, which means they would be made to perform government labor as punishment (Since imprisonment is a uniquely expensive and unproductive form of punishment, this system is designed to not use prisons as punishment for crimes).

Legal immigrants on the other hand, could be warded by citizens from religious groups, social or cultural organisations or similar, and encouraged to find work and save until they could buy their own land to certify as true-freehold, and thus, become citizens themselves once accepted by a council. It would be absurdly simple, and eminently wise, to structure the laws so that one must be a naturalized resident for over 25 years before one can claim one's land as true-freehold for example, and this would protect against recently-naturalized immigrants voting against the interests of the citizenry. The issues seen in California and elsewhere would therefore never take place. Again, it would also be wise to ensure that persons born elsewhere aren't eligible for voting citizenship, but their children are. If they felt this was unfair, they could always move somewhere where different rules applied instead.

In all cases, the guardian quite literally holds power of life and death over their wards (subject to social custom, peer pressure, and after-the-fact decision-making by the council or the Chief) – this means guardians can be held to account by their peers. In cases such as a citizen killing a ward, the council or chief would determine the situation and if necessary, apply punishment.

Finally, out of necessity we come to the status of those non-citizens who aren't wards of a specific person - rather than point out that they're still wards of the chief, we can provide a polite fig-leaf over their official situation and allow them to be called "*resident*". This is obviously a group that you should seek to minimize the numbers of through whatever means at hand. These are the children of citizens who fail through stupidity or ineptitude to become citizens themselves, but which have become too restless and have extricated themselves from being the ward of a parent or relative. These are the ones who should have their income taxed (if you're going to tax anyone's income, which is always a terrible idea), but if any other nation or tribe is willing to take them in, you should certainly allow them to leave. They fall directly under the authority of the chief and, unlike a citizen, cannot be tried by a council. They also lack any right to appeal.

You could do far worse than taking a leaf from Heinlein's novel "Starship Troopers" (the book, not the dreadful movie) to gain some more ideas for citizenship requirements once you settle in.

I would have liked to name this system neo-feudalism, but sadly that name is taken, therefore users are welcome to coin their own. Notice that it's a political, and ***not*** an economic system- it would be completely feasible for a territory operating this system to use capitalist economics, just as it would equally feasible for a territory operating this system to decide that it wanted to try communist economics (cue the starvation), or any sort of mixture of the two, or anything else entirely. As it is, I can envision an average system that is a mix of capitalism and Distributism, with the actual practice varying from county to county (or shire to shire in the UK, gemeinden to gemeinden in Germany, or whatever such subdivisions are called that exist wherever this system may be applied by readers).

*85. **Religion And The Law***

Theoxeny is a theme in Greek mythology (and we see similar themes in several other mythologies, such as the Norse one) in which mortals demonstrate their virtue by extending hospitality to a complete stranger, usually a humble one like a beggar or a poor traveler. The stranger then turns out to be a deity in disguise. The man who was a generous host, thus displaying his piety, is rewarded, while the man who refuses to extend hospitality is punished for his lack of piety.

For the ancient Greeks, hospitality toward foreigners and guests was a very important moral obligation. Zeus is sometimes called *Zeus Xenios* because of his role as a protector of strangers. The name *Xenios* derives from *xenos*, the Greek word for "stranger". To have Zeus, the ruler of the gods, embody the moral obligations around the treatment of strangers speaks to the importance of the practice to the Greeks. We see a similar thing in the Biblical story of Sodom and Gomorrah: the travellers to whom Lot offered hospitality were angels in disguise, and so Lot's family are spared the destruction that was the fate of the decadent and hedonist inhabitants.

In the religion of the American ruling elite, there's a similar sort of ritualized hospitality toward strangers. It's primarily expressed in the form of open borders, the admittance of anyone who has a reason to settle in America. The reason does not need to make any sense, it just has to provide the ruling class with the opportunity to tell one another how much they care about these strangers and receive a pat on the back for it.

In his book "*The Inequality of Man*", the great evolutionary biologist J.B.S. Haldane noted that fanaticism was one of the great inventions of the pre-modern world. Obsessive enthusiasm, especially for an unattainable thing like paradise, makes the fanatic a violent force of nature. We see that with the current Afghan debacle; not only did the fanatically dedicated Taliban conquer their technologically and organizationally superior enemy, but then Western open-borders fanatics immediately seized on the crisis to justify importing millions of Afghans into your neighborhoods. They never miss a beat.

The sorts of people drawn to things like open borders and anti-fascism have disorganized, chaotic minds and need the structure of a religion to focus their energy onto something useful. When supernatural religion faded, what replaced it was ideology, which focuses their energy on their fellow citizens who they see as enemies of their new secular faith. The same impulses that gave us cathedrals now give us mobs tearing down old statues hoping for grace.

This coincides with the fact that western man started getting dumber around the same time that Christianity started to fade. The intellectual history since that point has been about finding a suitable replacement. The body count suggests we were better off with the old gods. The search for new ones has been a disaster and will no doubt lead to more tears. Perhaps the right answer will be to pick a suitable form of Christianity and make it the spiritual foundation of a new system, one that does not try to shut religion out of politics, as Universalism does to its rivals.

If being right about the facts of life mattered, this world of ours would not exist. The radicals would have been routed a long time ago. Public discourse in all human society is about morality. Who we are, and what defines us, is what matters - repeating the facts only matters if they have an impact on the morality of the people. This has always been the failing of the Right; they've always assumed that after proving their case, the other guys would have no choice but to throw down their weapons and embrace them as brothers. This is not reality - the progressive left always, always frames all arguments as moral choices. That is how they win. Unless one can connect physical reality with morality, they exist in two separate domains.

The simplest, oldest, and most reliable way to unify one's observed objective physical reality with morality is a formalized, structured religion. It's a method that has withstood the test of time, and one that humans continue to apply, even today.

"*Providence* [God] *has given to our people the choice of their rulers, and it's the duty, as well as the privilege and interest, of a Christian nation to select and prefer Christians for their rulers*."
- John Jay, first Chief Justice of the US Supreme Court, in a speech to the Grand Jury of Ulster county, New York, September, 1777

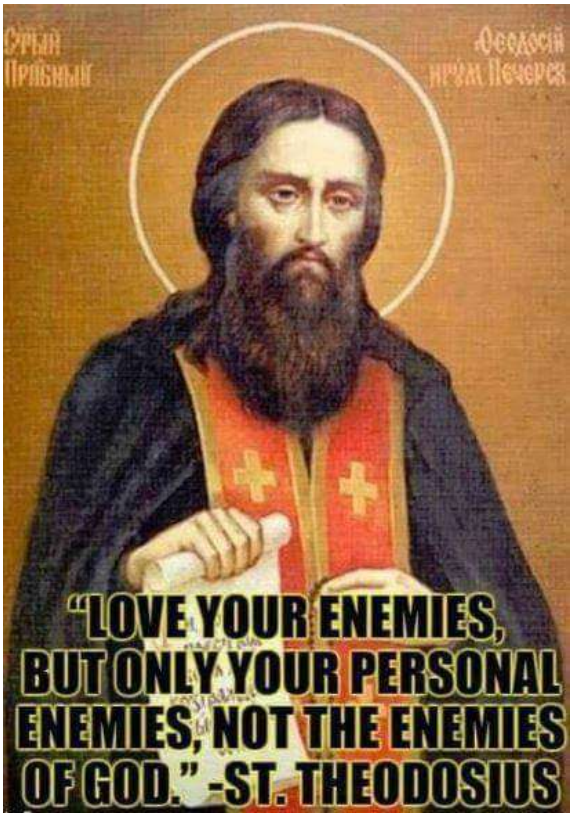
Once you have grasped power in your region and established a new order , don't try to impose your own beliefs and supposed moral superiority on other people like the progressives do. Instead, teach your children, and those of your tribal community, that the morals you believe in are superior moral values. Then place those who internalize and follow your values into positions of power and influence in your community's power structure, excluding those who don't follow your social/moral code. The success of your community will prove you right, and others nearby will start looking at why your community is successful, and will follow suit.

Recall the suggestion earlier that the majority of people would willingly "convert" to our new socio-political ideology; if individuals or groups did not wish to do so (or if some specific group or groups were deliberately excluded for some reason), and one truly wanted to remove a group, it's far better to eject the unwanted individual or group peacefully. In the example given, jews, since there's a nation run by them and for them, that they can return to and which is willing to take them in – one can picture offering subsidized one-way tickets to Israel for any jew desiring to leave your new nation, especially if they were understandably upset over not being allowed to vote, hold public office, or loan money at interest, all things that you could easily forbid non-citizens from doing if you wished to, for example.

Now, ***in theory***, the ideal is that our enemies see the light and become our friends. That is why Christianity says to love not only your neighbor, but also your (personal) enemy. However ***in practice***, we must safeguard ourselves from our enemies' *as they currently are*, not how we might wish them to become, and preferably we must do so in a permanent way. We can resolve this by taking the practical Christian example of Charles "the hammer" Martel, and praying for the conversion of our enemies (not to mention, sending willing missionaries to try and convince them) while also fighting to utterly defeat them. It's perfectly acceptable for one of our European friends post-collapse to give the muslims living in his nation the option of "convert or die" – this approach worked beautifully for the Spanish during the Reconquista, and if only they had done the same with the Communists they would not now be having the issues they are.

Turning one's cheek to a slap is a way of ensuring harmony among your in-group, ensuring retaliation only ***after*** you can confirm that the man truly is your enemy. The in-group gets the forgiving, cooperative treatment that the New Testament focuses on. The out-group gets the Old Testament slaughter and vengeance for which it's famous. Remember that Jesus also commanded his disciples to gather up swords, and sell their clothes to acquire the funds needed to obtain them.

Christians are required to turn the other cheek and walk the extra mile, but a Christian only has two cheeks, and isn't required to walk unlimited miles. Keep in mind that even in the Old Testament, God was always forgiving and patient, taking a long time to get to the point where he'd mash the "smite" button on anyone, but he did mash it, and often. Jesus came to fulfill the law, not abolish it. God's vengeance is just as much a part of Him as is the forgiveness Jesus espoused.



The bible makes an important distinction between *hostis* and *inimicus*: ***hostis*** is an external enemy, someone at war against your in-group (for example, an armed or unarmed invader of your people's nation), while ***inimicus*** is a member of your community who you're on bad terms with, in the sense of a neighbor's dispute or clan feud (like the guy who borrows your lawnmower and never returns it). The early Church Fathers reiterated this point. When Jesus says to love your enemy, he is talking about *inimicus*; members of the in-group who you're on bad terms with, not the slavering enemy (*hostis*) at your gates. Christendom struggled with the issue for two millennia, and the answer was *just-war theory* which can be summarised as: 1) don't attack anyone without grievous provocation, and 2) the aim of waging war must be a fair and lasting peace.

*86. **Morality In Law***

I see leftists complaining whenever someone wishes to base a real-world law on non-Universalist morality. This was very visible in the US when Amy Coney Barrett was nominated by US President Trump for the Supreme Court in 2020 – the fact she was a practicing Catholic was mentioned by hyperventilating leftists as somehow being the ***worst thing ever***, that the US constitution insists on "*separation of church and state*" and that they didn't want her Christian beliefs and morality "imposed" on them.

Now, those words aren't actually in the constitution at all, the exact initial words of the first amendment being "***Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof**..".* – this clause was a political compromise between the Puritans*, and everyone else who refused to prostrate themselves to Puritan radicalism**.

*(who were lashing out at the British policy of shutting anyone who subscribed to private moral standards out of politics – the only sanctioned political morality being the official Anglican church one. This policy was adopted by the UK to avoid a repeat of the English Civil War, which the Puritans had caused by creating a purity spiral in Britain in the 1600's, leading to most of them being exiled to the American colonies ... (I bet no-one taught you *that* in school.))

**(basically they didn't want to end up with Puritans burning "witches" again, or putting crippling taxes on people for not attending Puritan churches again, or attacking anyone who wasn't a Puritan, again, or fining people for wearing bright colors again, or ...well, you get the gist - just read the history of colonial America in the 1600's, and you'll see how much bad shit the Puritans got up to. No-one living in 1776 wanted a repeat of that era which we've basically forgotten.)

The meaning of those words in the constitution is simply that the USA is not allowed to **force** an official religion on its inhabitants, nor may it prohibit them from worshipping as they please (though *theoretically* the states could do both), something that the descendants of the Puritans, the Universalists, did an end-run around by deleting God from their faith and falsely claiming that their ideology was the product of "pure logic" (LOL, fuck no).

Suppose you have two belief systems - both claim to be absolutely and undebatably true.
Faith **A** tells you it's an ineluctable consequence of pure reason and logic.
Faith **B** tells you it's the literal word of God.
Which is more likely to be accurate?

The answer is: you have no information at all regarding the accuracy of either claim.

A religion is a system of ideas based on faith. To be a religion it's not necessary for the believers to have special books, special buildings or even that they be aware they're religious. The only criterion is whether the follower's acts are based on faith. Postmodernism constantly makes ethical statements with no supporting information regarding the ethical assumptions it contains eg: "*we should do X*", "*Y is wrong*", "*Z is evil*", etc. These are clearly faith-based statements. Chasing down a Universalist's logical justification for their moral beliefs is about as productive as a dog chasing a car – anger results when you don't take their faith's moral claims as irrefutable.

Faith is not a belief held without evidence; faith is unquestionable presupposition. Take for example the Progressive belief in "equality"- it presupposes that "equality" is both natural and righteous. Why should we believe in equality? Why should we implement it? If men are unequal, why should we try to make them be equal? All of Progressivism presupposes itself unto itself as a starting point to reason: circular reasoning at its most well-developed. Whether it's due to low IQ or otherwise, leftists absolutely believe in "*all men (and women) are created equal*". Non-believers would not go to the depths of insanity they do if they did not truly believe.

We've never had equality before the law, and we have it less every day. Cops have a special right to use violence, blacks have a special right to use violence and not be insulted, similar to the traditional aristocracy, Hispanics and illegal immigrants in California have a special right to use violence and not be insulted, and so on.

Freehold necessarily involves and requires rejection of the principle of equality before the law, and property the rejection of equal outcomes. Not all men were created equal, nor are women equal to men, nor is one group or category of men equal to another. Stereotypes are stereotypical, because the stereotype is usually true for most of the individual members of the group or category.

If two movements A and B propagate the same beliefs about the world, but A includes a supernatural element while B doesn't, the concept of "separation of church and state" protects against A but not against B. Consider how Marxism makes an entire series of sweeping moral judgements and implications: "*the workers **should** control the means of production*", "*the proletariat are **unfairly** exploited*", and so on. Like Universalism, it acts as a non-supernatural religion in these respects.

Since Marxism is not recognized as a religion, separation of church and state does not protect against it. This is why Universalism threw out all its supernatural theological elements in its quest for power. Think of it as evolution: unused organs atrophy, the way that those cave fish living in eternal darkness lost their eyes. When Universalism still had supernatural elements, the antibodies of government protected America from the worst of its ideological ethics. By promoting their beliefs as the products of pure reason and logic, they were able to infiltrate and take control of the system, while simultaneously using those same rules to prevent their own removal by the people who still understand what words actually mean. Defining religion as a belief in the supernatural leaves us with a giant loophole in our defense system against political theocracy.

Universalists claimed in 2020 that they didn't want the "Christian beliefs and morality" of US Federal Judge Amy Barrett imposed on them, but they're more than happy to impose their own religious beliefs and morality aka "*political correctness*" on you, and if you disagree with any one of a thousand of it's often-contradictory points, prepare to suffer for it. The people saying "*separation of church and state*" don't actually want separation of church and state; they want to separate **your** church from the state, so that theirs can move right on in; their church and their definition of 'church' are designed to move silently past one another, like ships in the night.

But you cannot truly separate state and church. The church will undermine the state and take state power for itself, or the state will subvert the church, or both at once. Harvard is our high holy Cathedral of Universalism. A holiness spiral ensues as the priestly classes - the professoriat, the judiciary, and the media - all pursue power by each being holier than the other. Obviously, we have a state religion- one that every day becomes crazier, more dogmatic, and more intrusive, and that means any state religion needs to be formalized and made official so the high priest and grand inquisitor can stop holiness spirals. State-building is coalition building to rule. We need a coalition of the smart, the cooperative, and the productive, ruling over the stupid, the disruptive, and destructive. Political power requires cohesion.

You will ultimately need an official church to provide a cohesive and standardised level of ideological purity. If you start with a decentralized religion (Protestantism, Sunni Islam, Mahayana Buddhism), you end up with new sects popping up like mushrooms after rain trying to out-purity their peers, and there's little or nothing you can do about it. With an official, centralized religion (Catholic Christianity, Orthodox Christianity, Shia Islam, High-Church Anglicans), the hierarchical nature of the ideology guarantees that those who attempt to out-purity their peers end up either recanting and conforming, or being punished for heresy eg. Giordano Bruno.

American Christianity at present is terrible, but it's not Christianity. If you trace their theology, they most closely align with groups like Anabaptists, Gnostics, et cetera. Martin Luther, John Calvin, and Pope Pius V disagreed on basically everything, but they all burned Anabaptists at the stake.

Decentralized religion is vulnerable to leftism, especially Protestant Christianity which is decentralized by default, as is Sunni Islam which is too violent to be quite as vulnerable. The structured, hierarchical forms of Catholicism and Orthodox Christianity resisted ACWE's efforts much better than one would expect, though they've been affected far more than desirable. In particular, the deliberate infiltration of Catholicism by Soviet protégés in the period 1920-1960 enabled the entry of homosexuals, causing the "pedo priest" (but actually, "**fag** priest") problem they're only now managing to slowly resolve. (Refer to the confessions of Sr. Bella Dodd, of Chambers, of AA1025, etc).

Since the engines of government have shown themselves to be incapable of being neutral as long as they're staffed by human beings, we might as well cut out the hypocrisy and make the nation's government openly, officially, and formally sponsor the state church, and the state church openly, formally and officially sponsor the state. Think of the way Napoleon took the crown from the bishop's hand and put it on his own head at his coronation. This way we can regulate the official Church to prevent runaway holiness signalling/purity spirals.

Note that this "official church" does not necessarily need to be religious (in the supernatural sense), just as the present atheocracy (coined *from **a**theist theocracy*) does not believe in the supernatural. It will help to smooth the application if you use an actual religion however. You can treat it like Anglicanism in that no-one is allowed to become the British monarch if they aren't Anglican – similarly, if someone is not a member in good stead of your official church, they aren't allowed to take part and vote as a member of a council, nor to become a chief, but they may still live in your nation, work, and pay taxes (and taking a leaf from islam, possibly paying a higher tax rate than a member of the official faith).

This worked very well for thousands of years, all the way back to the original Mesopotamian nations: In the first civilization of Sumer the priests ruled just as the professor-priests rule in our civilization. We're not sure how long they ruled but it was many centuries at least. Eventually in one city they were overthrown by a General who became the first king and he appointed his own daughter as chief priestess over the priesthood, humiliating and humbling them in the eyes of the other warriors. After that, priests didn't rule again for a very, very long time and kingship spread like wildfire to all civilizations. There have been kings who tried to rule without a priesthood – they tend to quickly find their rule unstable thanks to a restless and rebellious population.

We need the priests out from the top rungs of society and we need a fully fleshed-out replacement system ready to go. Our civilization is getting violent because the unofficially official belief system is getting ever-crazier and ever more harmful, so the repression needed to make it stick keeps increasing. The solution is ***not*** freedom of speech, freedom of assembly, and freedom of association; the solution is that the official religion should have saner beliefs that require less repression to make them stick. Since we won't get that with the present Universalist belief-system, we need a whole new belief-system.

Restrictions resulting from respect for government and the official religion are only big problems when the official belief system enforces obviously counter-factual beliefs such as "*all men are created equal*", or "*Kim Jong-un represents the will of the people*". Repression is ramping up not because we once had freedom of speech and freedom to peaceably assemble before, and we suddenly don't, but rather because the official belief system is purity spiralling to ever crazier levels, requiring ever-increasing violence to enforce: we're presently required to believe that women and men are equal and thus interchangeable, that being interchangeable it's reasonable for men to become women and vice-versa, to disbelieve in parental authority and obedience to parents and especially fathers, that any man who asserts his authority over his family is evil, etc. etc., all of which causes ever more glaring social problems which we're forbidden to notice.

Every preceding generation of leftism looks like rightism by the standards of the next leftist generation, and like intolerable hitlernazi fascism by the standards of the one after that.

Freedom of speech and religion is not really fully attainable, and if you try to attain it, then the State of Virginia, which really did have freedom of speech and religion, gets conquered by the state of Massachusetts, which really did not: the first US Civil War was a holy war in which the side with the most powerful and intrusive state religion conquered the side with a milder and less intrusive state religion. You need to bring a gun to a gunfight, and a religion to a holy war.

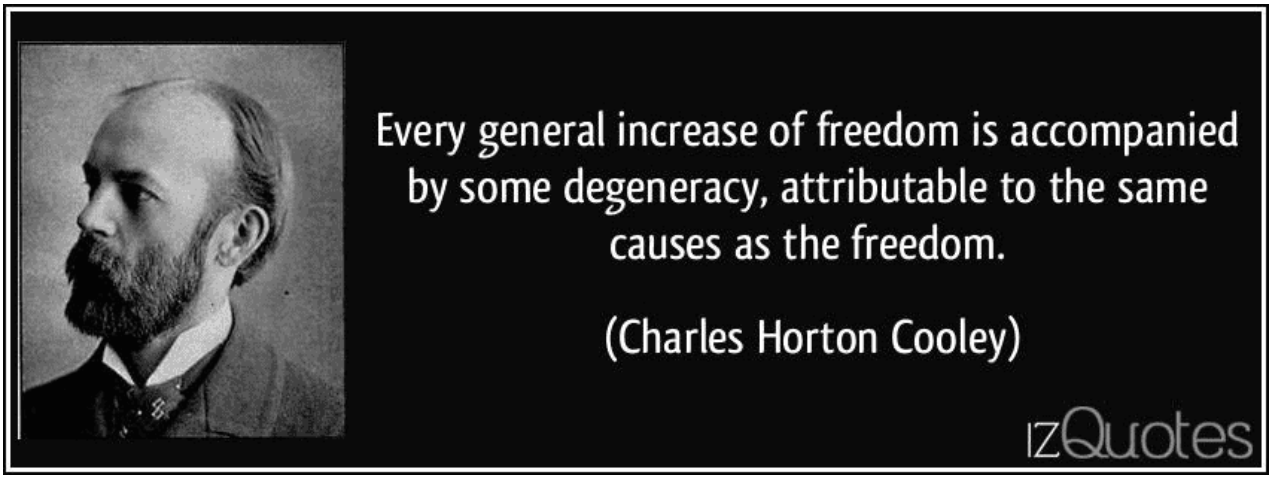
Though your slogan should always be Freedom of Speech, Freedom to Peaceably Assemble, and Freedom of Association, that slogan is a half-truth. We are fighting for Freedom of Speech, Freedom to Peaceably Assemble, and Freedom of Association for ourselves, not for those who want to destroy families, marriage, and religion. Freedom for us, not for them. Like anarcho-capitalism, freedom for everyone assumes general good behavior, tolerance, generosity, and an ethnically and culturally homogeneous society. The way to achieve what we want is by overthrowing the current officially unofficial state religion, and replacing it with a saner religion, whose official beliefs will intrude less on people's lives. This will require the dissolution of the ~~Monasteries~~ Universities.

Freedom of Speech for everyone is unilateral disarmament, and our enemies the leftist progressives never disarmed for a moment. They quote the "paradox of tolerance", yet are the most insanely intolerant to have ever walked the Earth. Disarm in today's society, you get shot. Diversity has a striking tendency to develop into a war of each group on all of the others, and if one group disarms, you get what we've got.

Freedom tends to decrease bad actors, but not eliminate it. Starvation and slavery aren't equivalent: one requires coercion and one does not. Starvation is a sign of freedom and liberty, in that one's choices can lead to starvation. The first freedom is the freedom to accept the consequences of your actions. Removing that, removes freedom, removes liberty - it's why removing starvation enslaves the rest of society by forcing them to care for the foolish, starving individual collectively, rather than leaving that care in the hands of the well-intentioned via charity and the like.

There's a reason that the French Revolution began, rather than ended, with storming the Bastille on July 14, 1789. It wasn't complete until 10 years later. A revolution, by definition, is the replacement of one political system by a significantly different system. In the case of replacing an already authoritarian or totalitarian status quo, even one masquerading as a "democracy" as our own system does, it has always required many phases of rebellion over a number of years, and much bloodshed. The only revolutions to end quickly are those resulting in totalitarian or authoritarian regimes, eg. the Cuban Revolution. Democratic revolutions are much, much messier. Behind the barricades, there's always thousands of people working together to support the front lines. It's an important lesson that logistics is what ultimately wins battles.

In America we have an evil party and a stupid party. Occasionally, Congress does something that is both stupid and evil: we call this bipartisanship. Consider that Stalin's victims were the supporters of policies that enjoyed broad public support, yet Stalin was easily able to overcome this by having control of the instruments of state power. This is why voting harder is not a path out of the current crisis: your vote does not actually matter at anything above the most local level. Instead, what comes next is always what comes next when the ruling elite believe they're the embodiment of the revolutionary dream of a "better future" - their revolution from above ***will*** continue, regardless of how upset the people are over the oceans of blood it takes.



87. Criminal Punishment Under Law

Now, I mentioned earlier that I propose a legal system without prisons, and those who noticed might be wondering why that is. Believe it or not, but putting criminals in jail has almost no effect on crime: [see: **https://archive.is/O1YKa , https://archive.is/8Lfx3 , https://archive.is/yw3K2** and **https://archive.is/NbQQW**] – something that surprised me too, when I found out. But it makes sense, doesn't it? We have the biggest prison population in the world, and most of them return to their life of crime immediately when they're released. Obviously, it's not working.

Criminal justice in the Old Testament was pretty based. It had the death penalty for offenses that lead to bad long-term outcomes and restitution for smaller crimes. Being unable to pay restitution resulted in being sold into slavery for the crime. Petty criminals didn't last long. Though I suspect most criminal justice was dealt with privately - the OT book of Numbers implies that a wife cheating on her husband results in him killing the wife, no formal trial needed. Only crimes between families or where a patriarch refused to enforce the law required formal trials. Jails were something you sat in until while waiting for your trial a day or two later.

So how do **we** make a system where criminals are punished but prisons don't exist? You're no doubt aware of the old saying that says criminals "*have a debt to society*", well the suggestion provided to me by "*Mr. Steel*", which I lay out here is astonishingly simple, and even better than my own previous solution – it's simply the literal application of that saying:

Imagine if you will that a guy (let's call him Kyle Carthief) steals a car. He and the car are caught later that day and to keep this simple the car is undamaged. Let us say the car's market value is $5000. Despite being found undamaged, Kyle's debt to society is the cost of the stolen item plus the cost of catching him. So we can add up the cost of fuel, wages etc. for whoever was set on the case. For the sake of argument in this hypothetical example let's say the total comes to $10,000.

Kyle Carthief therefore owes a *Debt To Society*™ of $10,000. He can either pay it from his savings, or it can be taken out of whatever he earns, or a combination, my suggestion would be half of Kyle's pay is garnished to pay it until the whole lot is repaid (with no interest, just like our other economic rules).

What if Kyle is unemployed? Well, we can **give** Kyle some sort of job and again, garnish half his pay until the whole debt is paid back. There's always some unpleasant task to be done somewhere, and I'm certain Kyle would far prefer to be made to dig ditches or clean sewers at a minimum wage (before it's garnished) or something similarly unpleasant rather than being hanged or whatever.

What if Kyle is disabled? Well, first – how did he commit the crime if he's (for example) wheelchair-bound? If he committed the crime, consider that even a person in a wheelchair can hold down a job of some kind. If Kyle has a mental disability of some type; **who is his ward**? The same applies if he is a child or whatever. The ward has responsibility for Kyle's actions if he is under wardship. If Kyle isn't under wardship, then he's under full control of his own actions, and can be treated accordingly.

Regarding the money: this is used to reimburse the costs of those involved - if the stolen item was lost or destroyed, then the relevant amount is used to repay the loss of the person who was robbed, or to reimburse their insurance company if the insurance company already reimbursed the victim. Some would be used to defray the cost of catching the criminal, for example by being put into the public coffers to refill the amount used up paying the detective's wages and expenses for the period they were pursuing the criminal. And so on. It's important that an open public accounting be made of every penny, so that citizens can be sure that those charged aren't being exploited - unlike the current system where basically no-one has the slightest idea where the money taken from fines and taxes really goes.

The beauty of this system is that this can be scaled up or down for almost any crime, except where the death penalty may be a more reasonable option. Finally, we come to violent crimes committed against people. For such crimes, the same thing can be done, with the appropriate value being allotted to the injury done to the deceased.

However, I will add to Mr. Steel's solution and suggest in cases of murder (but not manslaughter) that the criminal be offered their choice of two options: *a*) castration and fines as above, or *b*) the death penalty. By castration, I mean permanent surgical removal of the testicles (or ovaries) by a medical specialist under general anaesthetic (no need to be unnecessarily cruel).

Why castration though? Because as multiple studies show (eg see the book "*Biological Determinism, Free Will and Moral Responsibility*" by Chris Willmott), there's a strong inheritable genetic element in the predisposition to impulsive violence (for example, search online for information about the so-called "*warrior gene*" which was discovered to be most prevalent among black Africans), however unlike the current legal system, I do **not** believe that a genetic predisposition towards impulsive violent outbursts reduces criminal culpability. We all still choose our actions. A predisposition simply means we're more likely to be tempted.

Indeed, I believe that the fact there's a genetic predisposition towards impulsive violent outbursts indicates that such individuals, once they have actually **acted** on those impulses, should be prevented from spreading their genetic predisposition in the rest of society - castration removes such genes from the gene pool with the minimum of fuss, and ultimately removes such genes from the population, because castrating known violent criminals means they will not reproduce.

We can see the results of such removal in European and Asian cultures, where violent criminals were, for centuries, executed and often in the most ingenious and brutal ways. The article "*Making Europeans Kinder, Gentler*" [**https://www.unz.com/pfrost/making-europeans-kinder-gentler/**] tells us that between "*the 12th to the 17th centuries, capital punishment became steadily more prevalent*" but also that "*after the 17th century, the war on murder began to go into reverse. It had largely been won, and public sympathy now shifted to the condemned man. In England, the homicide rate fell by over a hundred-fold between 1300 and 1900*".

Of course nobody in the 17th century could have predicted what we see today - that in the early 21st century European nations would collectively import millions of lower-class foreigners whose ancestors never underwent such a weeding-out of pro-violence genes.

88. A Case Study In Social-Political Motivation – Spain And Franco

Right-wing people often can't understand the spinelessness of center-right parties (eg. the US Republican Party or the UK's Tories), or for that matter their constant poor performance. The reason is surprisingly simple: the focus of Conservatism Inc. in America, and of "the Right" in Europe throughout the 20th century, has always been commerce and making money rather any real battle of ideas. The same goes for far, far too many grassroots right-wingers – excepting a handful of very religious people and a few real reactionaries here and there, the rest are very modernist and progressive in their outlook, having absorbed the ethics and morals of Universalism. As long as conservative voters are more concerned with limiting taxation or balancing the budget rather than solving unemployment or enabling family formation, (or for that matter, crushing the opposition by any means necessary) there's little hope.

The political class knows exactly what we the people are after and they know it would probably win the day hands down if it was ever allowed on the ballot - they make damn sure it never is. Think back to John McCain vs. Obama in 2008: "*John, we need you to step up to the plate and fumble three pitches. Make it look good*". Our "*conservatives*" will still let men into the girls' restroom, but they'll ***swear*** to investigate any rapes. Some black GOP governor will talk about how Confederate statues need to go away forever, etc. They simply solidify the Left's gains.

The biggest issue the political Right has anywhere, is that it lacks a vision of a future destination to head towards, instead having only a vision of the past to hold on to. The reason leftism was successfully crushed for several decades in Spain after their Civil War was that Franco purged Spain's judiciary, academia and civil service pretty thoroughly. Thanks to that, the establishment leaned heavily conservative for until at least a decade after the transition to democracy; most were only forced to retire in the mid-80s when Gonzalez felt democracy was secure enough.

In Spain, upwardly-mobile people avoided progressivism like the plague since the government took very successful measures to make Spaniards perceive leftism as low-status. For example, though society was overall non-political, and most people identified as neither left- or right-wing, a 1960 advertisement for a Madrid hat-shop simply consisted of a photo of a hat and the pitch: "*Los rojos no usaban sombrero*" ("*The Reds did not wear hats*"; notice the past tense used).

While Franco was able to make Francoism high-status, he neglected to do enough to keep it so after he was gone. Compare and contrast with Charles II, who was able to do vastly worse than cutting off the heads of his opponents - he was able to make them look ridiculous to the public.

The actual problem with late Francoism was twofold:

1) – After winning the war Franco took the Christian urging for mercy and compassion way too literally and spared the lives of far too many leftists - 100k communist & anarchist war criminals both major and minor, were convicted and shot, but almost as many were only sentenced to hard labor, and almost as many again were straight-up pardoned! Franco also made the mistake of giving the leftist war criminals full military court trials with defense lawyers and due process, when instead he should have imitated Mao by encouraging right-wing civilians to personally revenge themselves against their former communist overlords - the more people with blood on their hands, the more people have a stake in your system's long-term survival - that's basic Machiavelli. Leftists being pathologically ungrateful, the survivors raised a whole new generation of resentful fucks who became leftist agitators, just as you'd expect. Had Franco taken a *serious* hard-line and straight up eliminated the whole 300k, the rebellious young elites of the 1970s wouldn't have had an easily-available mob of Red revanchists as pawns for their power games.

2) – Franco's government built an excellent education system, but didn't provide enough high-prestige jobs to absorb the large number of intelligent, educated ambitious young men that graduated. Here enters the issue of Elite Overproduction (Refer to Peter Turchin and his work at **https://archive.is/4mzjS** and **https://archive.is/1locI** - for anyone who's not heard of it I really recommend it, truly eye-opening stuff): a low-turnover ruling class found itself with a growing number of competent and ambitious outsiders under it wanting to gain wealth, power and status – this is obviously unstable and encouraged key members of the elite to defect from the system immediately

after Franco died. The aging conservatives in the civil service were especially eager to jump ship - after all, a dictator can hire and fire anyone at all, but a democracy's professional civil service must be independent and neutral towards any and all political parties – any civil servants who aren't independent and neutral towards any political party get fired, and their pensions get revoked.

In fact the first order of business for the new/current "democratic" Spanish government (ie: left-liberal oligarchy with a figurehead king) was raising taxes to unprecedented levels and massively expanding the national government, plus creating 17 new regional governments just so every left-sympathising boomer with a college degree could have a middle-manager job (the Catalan separatist movement is a direct result of this). 40 years later Spain is bankrupt in every possible sense of the word, including morally, and the national elites support the murderous losers of the civil war (even though the families of 99% of them had been in good standing with Franco's government if not outright members of it).

Another of Franco's errors was failing to create a popular mass political movement like Indonesia's *Pancasila* to survive him - Tito in Yugoslavia made this error too. There are multiple lessons to be learned from all this, and I very much hope that any future American Franco does not repeat these mistakes - it's not enough to be a soldier and leader, the guy in charge must also have a gift for the political and for long-term thought, or at least needs to surround themselves with loyal and competent people who do, and then the guy in charge listens to what they say.

89. <u>Regarding The Purely Hypothetical Elimination Of Hardcore Leftists And Universalists</u>

You need to make sure it's the cuckservatives who do it (not your hardcore followers) because committing acts your enemies will never forgive you is a good way of binding people to you. You want to cause the former outer layer of the American mono-party (Republicans) to permanently sever their ties to the inner core of the mono-party (Democrats), and the poison seed that created the situation (Universalism and the professor-priests that spread it). There should definitely be trials in some cases however; we wouldn't want people who aren't Universalist loyalists to get swept into the meat-grinder. You ***do*** want the fence-sitters and moderates getting their hands dirty, because even hardcore followers can defect once the situation changes enough. You avoid this by making your enemies reject your allies, not by making your allies reject your enemies.

Consider "right-wing" grifters like Ben Shapiro… wouldn't it be better (and funnier) to give guys like him a choice between personally taking a one-way helicopter ride out to sea on the one hand or, on the other, being the commandant of a leftist re-education camp? The best part is he'll justify his actions to everyone that he did it all not because he was afraid of choosing the helicopter ride but because according to his supremely good and moral principles those evil commie fucks just <u>*had*</u> to die.

A common misconception is thinking that Francoism was, at heart, a bona-fide ideological battle. Francoism was first and foremost a government of the moneyed ruling classes, landowners in the south, Catalan industrialists, etc. – the millionaire Juan March financed the anti-communists from the start. The transition to democracy happened easily because the moneyed class were assured that their wealth would remain untouched, something that the communists and anarchists did not do in the 1930's. The 1976 amnesty freed Basque terrorists with blood on their hands, but it made Francoists untouchable in the future, meaning no-one fought the change when it happened.

There was no guiding vision or ideology, and the Falangists and Carlists in the Spanish government had realized this by 1945 - by the 1960s the government was merely a technocracy with several Opus Dei members in the Council of Ministers, and the single party FET-JONS rapidly became an increasingly hollowed-out remnant of its heyday in the philo-fascist 1940s.

Franco and the members of FET-JONS failed to hold frame, something which worsened exponentially after Franco himself died, all due to insufficient effort having gone towards the creation of a lasting legacy, and the lack of a socio-political vision for the future – it's not enough to just gatekeep, one must continue doing so, and structures must be organized in order to prevent public and social entities being hollowed out from within by Universalist/progressive entryists.

90. Faith And Its Role In Mantaining A Society

"*...the great theories of government which the British race devised and which the English-speaking people have adopted are closely associated with the system of religious ethics, and are the foundation upon which [Western] civilisation stands, and without which it will fall."*
- Sir Winston Churchill, from an address titled "*Focus for the Defense of Freedom and Peace*".

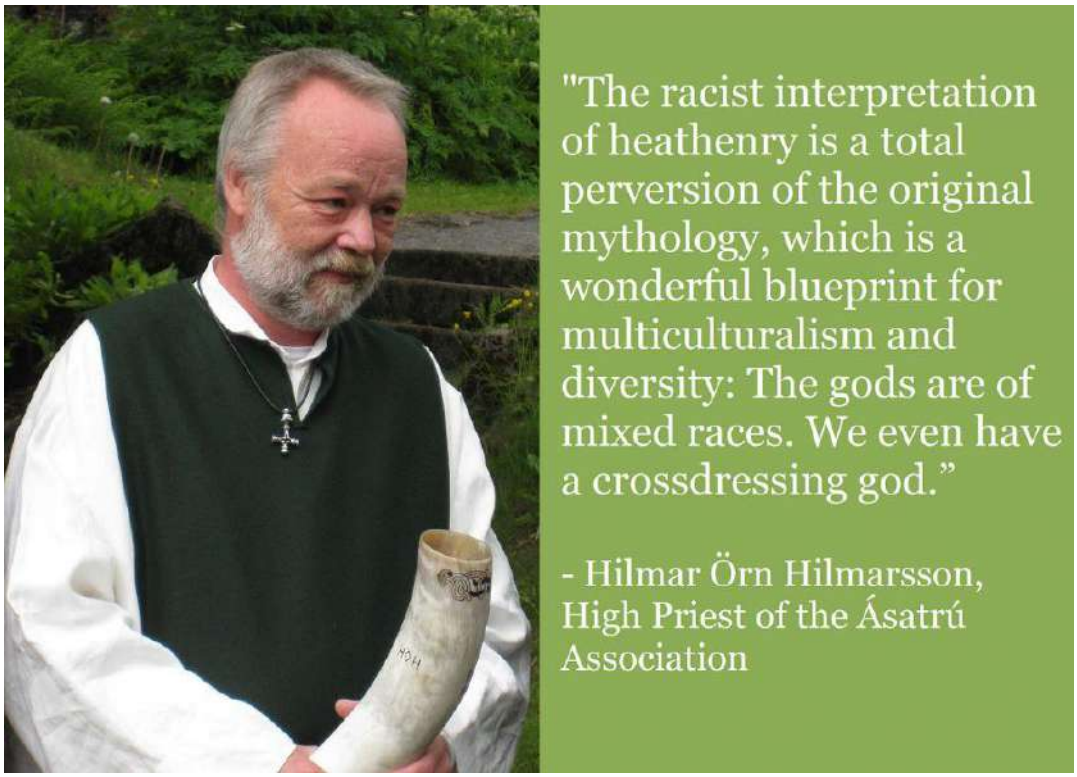
Regardless of whether you're religious or not, surely you must realize that organized religion in general, and local churches especially, are a socially stabilizing influence. The "will of God" is manifest in natural law- God works primarily through material cause and effect. Following the morality that is the natural consequence of things like game theory and evolutionary psychology is therefore, obedience to God. To say that violating God's will has real world consequences seems entirely reasonable regardless of the names you use for it.

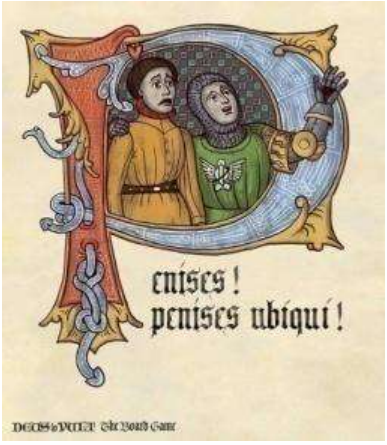
We see the example of this in that people from religious/spiritual societies* are more fertile, more fulfilled in their lives and are far less likely to be faggots or trannies. Materialism and atheism breed dysfunctional behavior as they provide no ultimate guiding purpose to life except hedonism.

*(notice it does not say religious/spiritual *people* in fake & gay societies like ours)

Christianity is the only known moralistic social cornerstone which can save Western man, and probably humanity in general. The entire project of progressive "humanist" modernity is founded on an intellectual war against God. This is well-demonstrated in Fr. Seraphim Rose's book *'Nihilism: The Root of the Revolution of the Modern Age*'. Other paths, such as atheism and materialism - the paths that we're on now, will only lead to destruction and death, as will other possible alternatives, such as Islam, which is clearly a false path once one digs into its historical claims and the documented behavior of its prophet.

You can also forget paganism, even if you believe in it - it failed the first time when it had every advantage, it has less than no chance now. All the elements of paganism that were still alive and non-toxic to civilised behavior by the time of Christianity's rise became absorbed and adapted into Christianity. It's unlikely that any pagan religions can be resurrected without them being fatally infested with woke-ism: all attempts to revive them have so far been infiltrated at the roots by progressives, making the known pagan religions useless as shelters for our renascent civilization.





aganism worked while each family was connected to its own ancestral gods by an unbroken line of patriarchs - it died when they lost that line. This is why we see that, for example, Goths living in the Frankish kingdom converted to Christianity as the Western Roman Empire fell apart: they no longer had any real connection with their ancestral culture or religion of the steppe from before the Huns came, which is why Christianity replaced the various Germanic religions as well as the then-dominant Greco-Roman pantheon.

Any westerners at this point who are adopting paganism are LARPing as Vikings, Celts, or some other long-dead socio-cultural identity. The horse you're flogging isn't dead – it's skeletal. Consider that Odin/Wotan hung from Yggdrasil for nine days after pawning one of his eyes to gain wisdom, miraculously failed to die despite being stabbed with a spear, and on the other hand, and then how Christ one-upped his performance by dying, dropping by Hell to free the Old Testament prophets, and finally not just returning from the dead, but doing it all in a third of the time.

If a handful of people out there manage to make paganism actually work for them, then good for them, but for the 99% of us living in what will be left of the West, then we must turn to some form of Christianity. Whatever your opinion on Christianity is, and whatever problems you might have with its now-corrupted forms, we must work within its framework. Christians are kin by adoption, a synthetic family for a synthetic tribe. It's designed to fit the times, which have not fundamentally changed since the time that Jesus Christ gave us the parable of the wicked vinedressers. Our current crisis still fits that parable well enough; the enemy are still socialists, still incohesive, and still sitting in the seat of Moses, even if far less of them are part of the Synagogue of Satan that Christ condemned in his time.

People have been sealioning Christianity for 2000 years now, there's really nothing new under the sun. Any super-clever, high-IQ, ooh-look-at-me-I'm-so-smart objection was last raised and brutally crushed 1500 or more years ago, probably by Saint Thomas Aquinas if no-one else. Importantly, there's also nothing in the Bible preventing "race realism": the Bible states that (by applying correct behavior) everyone has the opportunity to reach Heaven ***in their afterlife***. God certainly considers all mankind to have potential, but actual human beings are not interchangeable or equally valuable.

The story of the Tower of Babel and other parts of the Old Testament clearly indicate that different nations, borders and people ***staying*** separate in this life is God's Will, and that the "multiculturalism" enforced within ACWE is sinful and abhorrent to God. Most Christians in the Southern US for instance still thankfully believe in this idea. Europe's medieval development of nation-states was an example of self-segregation. Again, check out Aquinas shitting on "open borders": **http://www.newadvent.org/summa/2105.htm#article3**

Christianity is a success story, it's an accepted norm, it's a religion of power, so much so that progressives still invest lot of time and effort into combating it, and into infiltrating and subverting it - they fear it, and for good reason; it's an ideological super-highway with a propensity for re-animating itself every time someone tries to kill it off. Sure, it has some potholes and obstructions now, but that does not mean you charge off into the woods with an axe to cut a whole new dirt road from scratch. Plainly stated, we need to remove the "woke" progressive elements that were sneakily introduced into Christianity over the last century or two, starting with the Schofield Reference edition of the Bible.

We've great reams of tried-and-true social technology in old-type Christianity and the Old Testament. The Christianity of Constantine's New Testament Canon is dominated by St. Paul's writings, because St. Paul's social tech actually works. *That* old-type Christianity came from centuries of social-Darwinian evolution. This winning version had powerful meme propagation, inspiration, and pro-natalism. It worked for millennia and brought Western Civilization to the peak of worldly success. The Ten Commandments are timeless pillars for a society. The Sermon on The Mount is poetically-arranged doctrine. Humans are biologically adapted for cooperating on the basis of shared faith, and old-type Christianity is the most functional historical religion for social cooperation that we know of.

Conversely, modern new-age charismatic evangelism turns believers into self-centred suckers, and worse, keeps them out of their local churches where their delusions of being "saved" by doing nothing would be squelched. Since the spawning of TV evangelism began, church attendance throughout the US, and likely the world, dropped off dramatically. Like television itself, it rots community participation - not only in established religious activities, but also the social activities which (often organised by the local church) helped to bond neighbors together into a cohesive and cooperative society. You have to actually attend and take part in traditional religion to take part in the various rituals, from baptism to burial, but evangelism, even if not televised, does away with all that, the faith being reduced to little more than a spectator sport, complete with pop-music soundtrack.

The followers of modern charismatic Christianity (often but not always evangelical) believe in gifts from Heaven without any effort being needed to secure them - favors bestowed by grace, regardless of merit. In short: something for nothing. He or she may say the right words, and will likely send money to the preacher, but they expect to receive not only paradise here on earth, but also to receive it without deserving or even working for it. This is especially noticeable in "born-again" sects that teach that the believers will be taken up in "the Rapture" – which is a distinctly unbiblical claim, not borne out by any mainstream textual interpretation.

By massively and unreasonably over-emphasizing the miraculous and illogical in the faith to get crowds rather than the social order and structure of more traditional religious presentations, evangelism also paradoxically breeds a lack of faith in the more useful portions of society, but not before infusing them with the rot of laziness and greed, handing their minds on a platter to progressivism- there's a reason progressives expect to receive paradise here on earth without deserving or even working for it, only their point of appeal isn't God, but instead government.

The modern "I love Jesus" sentiment is an impious and hostile substitute for the distinctly feudal "Jesus is Lord". The reason this homoerotic substitution was inserted is that giving fealty to God is contrary to giving fealty to the progressive state and progressivism. The word actually used in the New Testament which gets translated into English as 'love' is the Old Greek word '*agape'*: it literally means to do '*what God prefers*'. We're called to *agape* God by following His commands and laws, to *agape* our neighbors and enemies. Not to love them in our modern sense.

You won't find loving God, or compassion for one's fellow man, mentioned anywhere in the bible; you're supposed to obey God, love your neighbor, and show mercy and forgiveness to your fellow man. Yes, the progressive take on the bible mentions love and compassion all over the place, but that is a deliberate and hostile misinterpretation. God rules ***this*** world, and his will is manifest in ***this*** world. This article of faith excludes gnostics, progressives, and Marxists. Current Christianity kicks God out of this world into heaven, to make room for a morality in violent contradiction to natural law, and which makes Jesus my current boyfriend, instead of my Lord.

Equality is the great dogma on which liberal Western democracies are built. It's often said to be rooted in Christianity … how strange that it's never mentioned in the Bible, and was only discovered to be a Christian virtue 1800 years after the time of Christ. Oneness in Christ is a Christian virtue, but that isn't equality – rather, equality is a materialistic distortion of it.

Equality might have seemed like a step forward at a time when the gap between rich and poor, between powerful and weak, was as great as it was, and the movement towards less inequality did bring certain benefits in the short term. But the flaw that lies at its heart is now being revealed. If equality, and equality alone, is taken as the foundation of a culture then that culture will collapse into the lowest common denominator and it will eventually collapse altogether.

Equality is totally contrary to human nature and enforcing it is forcing human beings to live against their natural and their spiritual instincts. It becomes a tool to push the higher down to the level of the lower. This doesn't mean that the higher should dominate the lower (except perhaps spiritually) but liberty and equality aren't natural bedfellows despite what the Enlightenment claimed, and liberty (as distinct from "freedom") is the greatest spiritual quality as far as human beings are concerned.

We can see what lies behind the drive for equality – a spitefully destructive hatred of the natural order, the desire to reduce creation to chaos, and to loot the ashes for personal gain. Notice that the supposed benefits of what the proponents of equality propose are always abstract, while the costs are material and immediate. Even their greatest "successes", such as the passage of the Civil Rights Act or instituting gay marriage, inevitably result in significant negative consequences for everyone who does not personally benefit from the change, whether they realize it or not.

For a religious ideology to facilitate cooperation, for it to work as a synthetic tribe, for us to be adoptive children of God, there has to be an ultimate "alpha male" at the top that the men give fealty to. Women believe the religion of the top earthly alpha male, who is currently the Uncle Sam the Big Pimp. But this is just a fitness test. If you laugh at the religion of Uncle Sam the Big Pimp, women are indignant, but they smile. The top alpha makes sure his lieutenants get pussy. If they're hostile to us getting pussy, they aren't on the team of the top alpha. If someone tells you that you, as a member of society, must believe things that ultimately reduce the odds of successfully marrying and reproducing, they're not on the side of God and good, they're on the other, evil side.

At present, Christians don't serve their young and thus religious demographics skew toward the elderly. Every Christian Church dies about a century after it becomes hostile to family and fathers. Who today remembers the Congregationalists? Anglicanism changed its marriage ceremony to a ceremony that made it unsuitable as a mating ritual for heterogamous organisms in 1928. In 2020, the few who show up are elderly people with one foot in the grave, and its cathedrals aren't cathedrals, but museums. New-age Christianity is uncool because it surrendered to progressivism.

Throughout history the Church has often spread by "baptizing" indigenous pagan practices; a standard operating procedure from the beginning has been to take healthy, pro-social, pro-family, pagan rituals, clean them up with a fresh Christian paint-job, and announce you're doing it "unto God". This issue was addressed by Saint Paul - pagan practices are fine, provided that they cease being pagan, and are done unto God. Hence the manger goes with the reindeer, and the star on top of the (very pagan) Christmas tree. This is a wise and excellent tactic that goes all the way back – absorb your opponent's practices to avoid the public backsliding when your back is turned. What matters is not so much the ritual or practice itself, but the meaning of the ritual practice as understood by the person doing it, and as understood by those around them.

The Puritans in Britain wanted Christianity to be purified of "pagan additions" but the "pagan additions" that they so despised were actually the Church preserving the useful elements of Greco-Roman civilization through the darkness. Christian marriage, and Christian monogamy, derive from the oldest and most respectable form of Roman marriage, so when the Puritans (proto-progressives one and all) undermined the "pagan addition" of Christian marriage during the Nominated Assembly or 'Barebones Parliament' of 1653, they undermined the very foundations of Western Civilization.

Britain had a restoration, and it worked. It got science, technology, industrialization, and a world-spanning empire, while avoiding massive internal bloodshed. During the restoration, people celebrated with Christianized pagan festivals, because they knew that an officially official, official state religion was less oppressive and intrusive than the unofficially official Puritan state religion they had had prior, which would literally kick down doors to destroy a family's Christmas.

If you want to create a new ideology, or even just modify an old one, it's almost mandatory to present it as a revelation of ancient wisdom. Even marxism framed itself as a return to natural, primitive ur-communism (this despite primitive cultures having significant respect for personal property – for example, refer to the Yanomamo people of the Amazon who "*would sooner destroy an item of personal property than permit others to exploit it without permission*" according to Chagnon's detailed anthropological study of their culture). Restoration, the return of the true king, heroic triumph over adversity, a return to one's roots, things like that are really deeply ingrained in the human psyche, and resonate widely across times and cultures.

The most successful revolution in history was General Monck's restoration in the UK. Parliament's army ran away when General Monck's forces arrived. Monck's praetorians then "guarded" parliament, which immediately voted for new elections, which elections produced a parliament much more in line with the wishes of Monck. That parliament continued to be guarded by Monck' praetorians and still is to this day. With King Charles II restored to his throne, a bunch of Monck's commissars went through the universities and government employees looking for people committing thought-crimes against the new leadership. Surprise, surprise, very few people were committing any thought crimes, and many stated they had always supported the new leadership, and always had. Monck's men sensibly turned a blind eye to any thought crimes committed before the King was restored. This seems like a pretty good model. Unlike ACWE, a reactionary state doesn't need continuous terror like grabbing 90-year-olds and putting them on trial to keep people in line*. Sadly, it's unlikely to be what we'll get in the US or anywhere else.
*(link to geriatric guy arrested for "*thoughtcrime*" BS)

99% of people have the political/religious views of their family or peers. Since the bulk of people simply borrow their views and never actually analyze their beliefs (***especially true for militant atheists***), does it actually matter that it's the old-type Christian religion or some new evo-psych/game-theory religion? As long as it's sane and high-status, most people follow along. The rare few who analyze the religion carefully shouldn't mind it too much so long as it's not effectively a disease (like the current progressive religion which hurts your fertility: pretty much the definition of a disease).

It's highly effective to conceptualize the establishment of cooperate/cooperate relationships as obedience to God. It works with your wife, it works with contractors. This naturally leads one to conceptualizing a disobedient wife, a contractor who fails to properly attach the tiles, the customer who pays late or not at all, as agents or worshippers of the other guy. In some cases, like the EU's leaders, Epstein, and the Clintons, as literal worshipers. There's good reason that the old way of saying a man was honest, forthright and honorable was to call them a "good Christian".

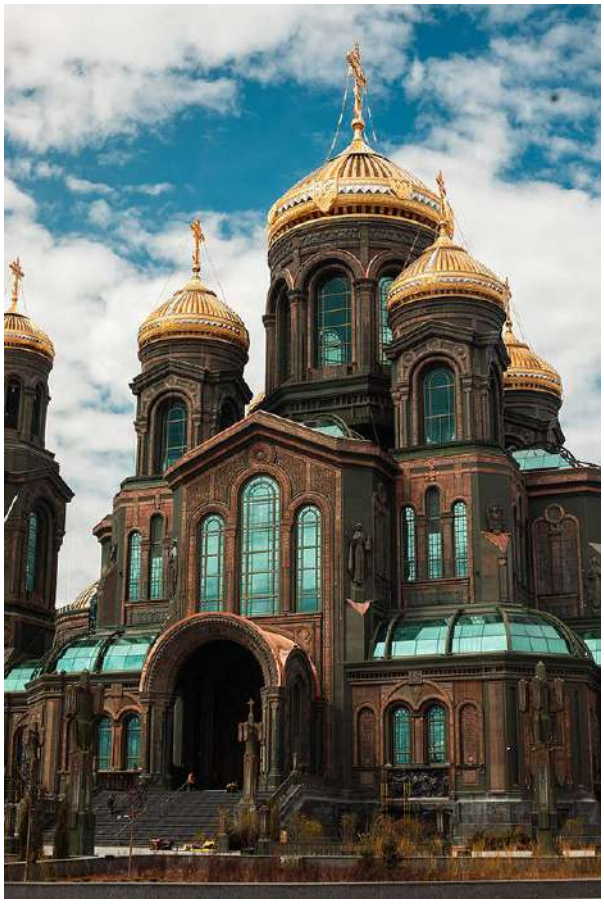
In the context of establishing cooperate/cooperate relationships, demonizing enemies and defectors as Satanists/agents of Satan, works because this establishes that you and those you hope to cooperate with are adherents of a common tribe with a supreme alpha male in charge of it.

Conceptualizing the in-group as adherents of God facilitates cooperation, because people are apt to demonstrate superior holiness by praising God and proclaiming adherence to his laws. Hence one should always invoke Biblical social guidance, such as Old Testament law when commending the killing of unfaithful wives and their lovers or promising a contractor prompt payment, and invoking the New Testament and the marriage vows when reminding a wife to honor and obey. It's metaphorically accurate to conceptualize in this fashion even when it's not literally accurate.

One can deduce is from ought (to a degree), in the sense that one's rational self-interest is to ally with and befriend good people, and to avoid or drive away bad people, but the problem with this type of rational deduction is that though it provides a distinction between good and evil, it doesn't provide a compelling reason for being good yourself. If you announce commitment to good on purely rational considerations, you might be announcing this for the purpose of getting someone to cooperate, whom you intend to betray. One is more likely to succeed in establishing a cooperate-cooperate relationship if one frames good conduct as adhesion to a shared tribe led by alpha male, the supreme alpha male, and that ethical behavior is what follows from the way the world in fact works ("*by their fruits you'll know them*") because the way that the world works is a reflection of the will of that alpha male.

As a general rule, in most societies at most times, conforming to the official belief system strongly correlates with sanity and good conduct. But in our society, the reverse is the case. Lefties tend to be evil and crazy- this is probably not because crazy people are more likely to accept a crazy belief system, since craziness inclines them towards many possible crazy belief systems. Rather, it seems the need to continually deny what's in front of their eyes drives them mad.

To see an example of Christianity working as a state religion to a degree, look at modern Russia. Putin's "Spiritual Security" program recognises that promoters of progressivism are missionaries of a hostile Church, the state religion of a hostile power (ACWE). Putin is attempting, with some success, to resurrect Orthodox Christianity as state religion, and by doing so Russia has admirably dealt with its feminist problem: active feminists get beaten up and ones that don't take the hint end up in Siberia. Women in Putin's Russia consider US-type feminism extremely uncool. Of course, there's a very long way to go - the Russian Orthodox Church was quite cucked in the time of last Tsar. Not fatally, but enough to make it gravely ill. For the resurrection to work properly, Putin must finish un-cucking it (in both senses of the word).



Consider Russia's new "Cathedral of the Armed Forces" which opened in 2020. On the outskirts of Moscow, and adjacent to a state-of-the-art museum of Russian military history, its floors are forged from the steel of destroyed enemy tanks and the decor is defiantly far from the bland and tasteless postmodernist style favored by the West, indeed it wouldn't look out of place on the cover of a Warhammer 40,000 novel-[**https://yewtu.be/x_lDNvwTx6Q**]. Construction of such an unashamedly religious, militaristic, and nationalistic building would be quite unthinkable for those of us living under the domain of ACWE. Also unthinkable in ACWE is the decriminalization of what is laughably called "domestic violence" - the physical chastisement of an unruly and aggressive spouse or daughter, yet I've seem liberals "*literally crying*" (their exact words LOL) about this happening in Russia.

There's nothing leftists hate and fear more, nothing that makes them run out of steam, than being laughed at. Our oligarchs crave the feelz of '*doing good*' and being respected. The most basic way to undermine them is to deprive them of affirmative consent. Make it clear that we see them as clowns and that we want nothing more to do with them. They can tolerate anything but irreverence. The most effective insults against leftism aren't pointing out the difference between their beliefs and reality [**https://archive.is/Owe9S**]. It's direct mockery of their status, outing them as ineffectual losers. As a front the Left is powerful, but it's made up of inferior specimens. Their status is lowered by telling and showing the public that though backed by the state, they're still losers. But state backing nonetheless gives them status.

For guys like us to be backed by the state, we need to have a gang tougher than theirs, and what gives our gang cohesion needs to be our state religion, just as progressivism is now ACWE's state religion. Mockery alone is insufficient to shred the religion of Universalism. To defeat it requires cohesion. Cohesion needs a synthetic tribe. A religion is a form of synthetic tribe. It has no choice but to contend for power and status in this world, like any other tribe, or else it will be devoured.



When the local Church disrespects the ruler of its land, it tends to get far too friendly with (and often remarkably subservient towards) the rulers of hostile foreign lands, and the Ecumenical Patriarchate of Constantinople is at present far too friendly with Harvard and with Harvard's vision of what Islam should be. Harvard seeks to overthrow the Russian government and install a more compliant government – and a more compliant Orthodox Church, one that knows its place and doesn't complain or fight back when naked feminist whores smash church property and desecrate altars and war monuments.

Similarly, in Latin America, the Roman Catholic Church was way too cozy with the USSR back when it looked like the commies were winning- Pope John Paul played footsie with Cardinal Alfonso López Trujillo, and Cardinal Trujillo was no Christian. Rome didn't go commie, but a large part of the Catholic Church in Latin America did, and there was nothing indigenous, nothing actually Latin American, about the Catholic Church in Latin America going commie - it was a concession to Soviet power. Rome was doing the Soviets a favor, and Rome only grew a pair when the USSR predictably demanded bigger favors.

A tribe needs an ultimate alpha male - in a sense it's even more important to men than to women. Leading women is not even hard when allowed, but to be a leader of men, damn, that's hard. And yet it's wanted and needed. We're commanded to obey Caesar, but Caesar is apt to rely on the *asabiyyah** of a hostile tribe, and we're commanded to not honor the faith of hostile tribes. Thus religion is political. Churches are (in a certain sense) political parties, and political parties are (ever more obviously) sectarian churches. It's always been this way. Only in the US are churches forced out of politics, and forbidden to orient their follower's morals, and therefore, their political opinions. This was the deal struck with the ~~devil~~ government to prevent it from taxing churches into oblivion.

*(asabiyyah: *an Arabic term meaning social cohesion & shared sense of purpose*)

People in government will have to follow <u>our</u> state religion, because allowing freedom of conscience for people in government positions or quasi-government offices -allowing heretics into those positions- means pretty soon they won't allow freedom of conscience for anyone else. This is the situation we find ourselves in now - just as with socialism and female emancipation, we have walked this path many times before, and we know where it leads.

Freedom of conscience means we aren't going to conquer other religions, but we will exclude them from positions of power and authority within our lands. There's no need to root out heresy on minor matters, no need to force anyone to actively believe in the official state religion - if you don't want to take part, hey do your own thing and go nuts in private within reason. But if you wish to be part of the social machine, you don't get a say in what you get to say.

There has to be <u>one</u> official line, and all the priests, educators, bureaucrats, bankers, reporters, etc, who present the nation's official face to the public have to stick to it - open disagreements with any of the core tenets of the faith aren't OK. As a public official, you're playing the role of a secular priest, so you don't get public freedom of conscience - you get to follow the party line.

There's no need to persecute people for merely being quietly sceptical, cynical or for private disbelief, but public cynicism or disbelief that you can't keep your mouth shut about (in terms of the religion) should keep you out of government and quasi-government jobs - you can think whatever you like as long as you scrupulously follow the forms of the official religion in public and keep your mouth shut. Anyone with their own "personal Jesus" must be excluded from any government position or quasi-government office, because they're a threat to the stability of the nation. Freedom of religion in matters of conscience, except for state and quasi-state jobs.

Any attack, no matter how slight, on the official state church by a representative of the official state church should result in severe consequences – and if the heresy is that the heretic is holier than the hierarchy, consequences starting with permanent exclusion from all state and quasi-state institutions, and going right up to slavery or death.

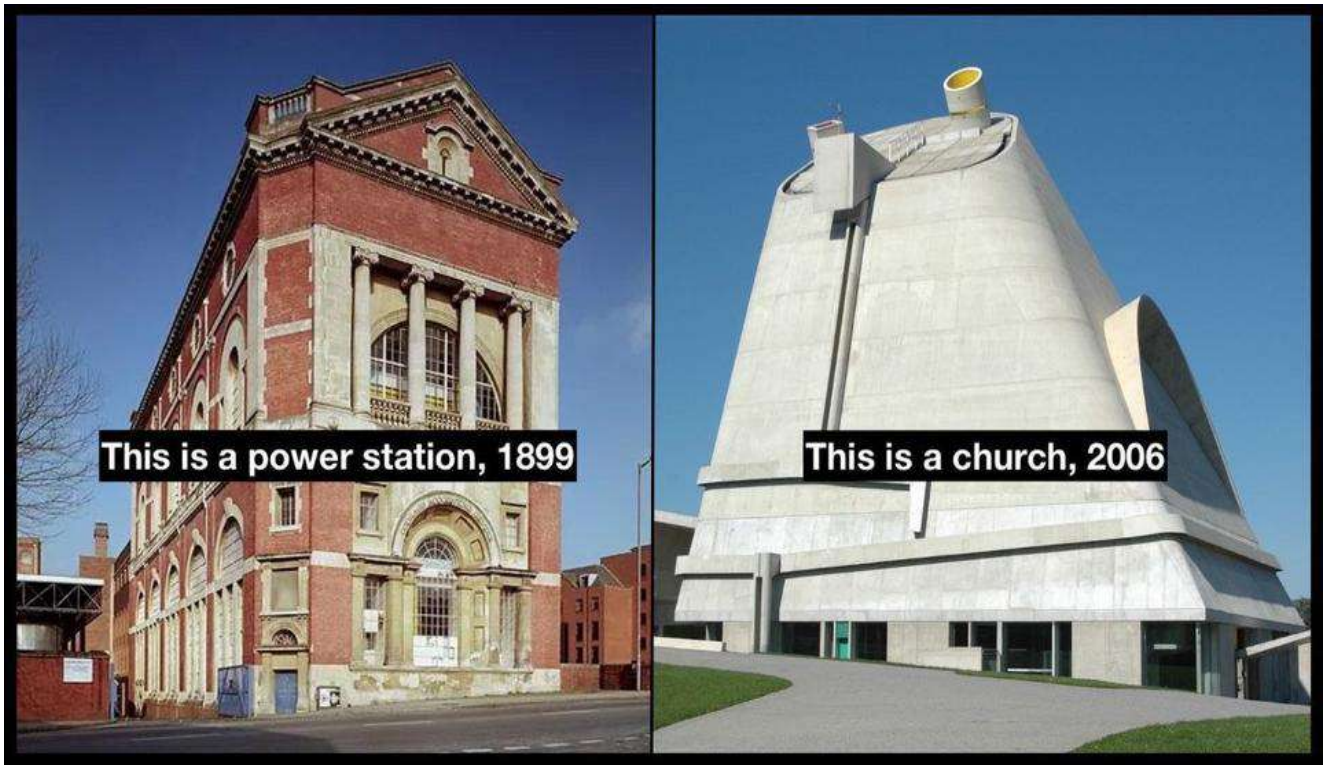
What do I mean by "*heresy…that the heretic is holier than the hierarchy*" - well, pretend for a moment that we're living in a victorious Confederate States of America circa 1890; imagine further that some journalist there openly indicates his belief that while slavery may be legal, it's immoral. In making that statement, he has declared that he, in morally opposing slavery, is holier than the hierarchy, who sanctions it - thus the journalist should expect to be censured and likely fired, with nothing but negative references forthcoming from his former employers. Were our incautious fictional character a government bureaucrat instead he would rightly become a "nonperson", or even face a firing squad.

In other words, the official state church would not care if you actually truly believe that (say) communion wine **literally** turns into Christ's actual blood or not. But they need to care a lot if you hold a state or quasi-state job and start saying you don't believe it to the public, and the state then needs to detain the loud-mouthed heretic and punish them for their actions. This contrasts with the present situation where our unofficial state church cares a very great deal if you privately think that there are any significant differences between the races, or between men and women.

When the British decided that "occasional observance" (at an Anglican church) was sufficient to qualify one for a government or quasi-government position, that turned out to be a fatal error, eventually leading to the downfall of High-Church Anglicanism and control of the British State apparatus by secret Puritans and later, progressives, which ended the success of the Restoration.

The communist party in the USSR, China, Vietnam, etc. required people to "voluntarily" show up for party gatherings, and they found the sermons mighty dreary, but the party nonetheless found that requiring people to gather and endure a sermon was vital to its power. But the communist party of China has gone high-tech, and no longer is so big on people enduring weekly sermons. On the one hand, a high-tech approach by the CCP may well be more effective in the modern age. On the other, it may well prove as fatal for the party as it did for the Church of England.

We would probably be more successful if we had a priesthood that believed as sincerely and passionately as Charles the Hammer's warrior-priests did. We're likely to get what Charles II got, which was Havel's Greengrocer in the priesthood. The people who believe sincerely and passionately in a literal resurrection are likely to be great assets, but we should not require such a belief regardless of its truth or falsity, or people are going to fake it to get ahead in the new order.



We don't want people holiness-spiralling on purporting to believe this and that. We should require belief in those unfalsifiable articles of faith that are helpful to cooperation, and (as an obstacle to progressive infiltration) prohibit enemy articles of faith that aren't empirically demonstrable. We should also require adherents to notice empirical facts that tend to cast doubt on unfalsifiable enemy articles of faith, for example that the divine revelations received by Mohammed tend to be whatever was in his interest at that moment even if it contradicted the previous divine revelation that he received when something different was in his interests, we should similarly require adherents to explicitly notice the observable, empirical, racial and sexual differences in humans.

When we're in charge, we'll have an Islamic entryist problem, among others, but our biggest problem is going to be progressive entryism, thinly disguised as old-type Christianity (things like the perpetual virginity of Mary, denial of the sacrament of marriage being perpetual consent, priestly "celibacy", Donatism, universalism etc.) To make outright open progressivism disappear completely would only take half a dozen helicopter rides and a few street beatings more, but Christianity has always had a leftism problem, and that is not going away. We should therefore require adherents to notice those characteristics of female sexuality that make female consent opaque and antisocial, and make emancipation dysfunctional, and require as an article of faith that Eve was created as a helpmeet for Adam, without being entirely clear as to whether this was literal creation, or the logic of evolutionary psychology and game theory.

From the standpoint of evolutionary psychology, the problem is that a man who gets enslaved will have no children, but a woman enslaved has escaped from defect/defect equilibrium and is likely to have lots of children, so women look for someone who can master them. If you look at entertainments targeted at men, they have a whole lot of images of scantily-clad women. If you look at entertainments targeted at women, they have a whole lot of images where the female protagonist winds up alone with a powerful and dangerous stranger, or only other females subject his authority are present. In a society with emancipation, this leads to a great deal of dysfunctional and anti-social behavior. Women have no country - we should require adherents to notice this in order to exclude leftists. This will not stop all leftist entryism, but it would have stopped most variants of leftism all the way back to the eleventh century.

Likewise, the Peace of Westphalia needs to become an article of faith, as worldly interpretation and implementation of the command "*Peace on Earth to all men of goodwill*". The separation of the nations is part of the fall, and universalism/globalism/internationalism are attempts to *immanentize the eschaton* - that is (in religious terms), the attempt to create Heaven on Earth in defiance of God's will. It must be defined as heresy. The doctrine of the fall must be an article of faith, and the sin of Babel as an attempt to return to the prelapsarian state.

But the major characteristic of leftist faith is not the blue pill, but envy and covetousness. Existing leftism is probably most effectively excluded by requiring adherents to notice the nature of women, but with that in place, we are going to get subversion from one hundred and one thin justifications for casting the final commandment aside. To stop future versions of leftism, we need to bang hard and regularly on the final commandment – that in general, you cannot holiness spiral some form of holiness to push it above the spirit and intent of the commandments.

Believing human consciousness evolves is gay and progressive. That's an argument that progs make to insinuate we need to become more humane or respecting of rights blah blah blah because we're so much more rational than our ancestors.

Consider also that exterminating the louder and most unrepentant unbelievers who refuse to keep quiert (eg. probably progressives and mohammedans), creates loot and *lebensraum* for your tribe to have large families, so there's no "need" for social liberalism and government handouts…

91. Why Christianity Is Uncool… And How To Make It Cool

Why are things cool in the first place? Something is cool if it gets you laid or gives you power (which gets you laid) or boosts your rank in the social pecking order (which gets you laid). Ironically, "cool" comes from authority - if you're the boss, you get to define what "cool" is.

Fashion trickles down from the practical gear of tough and violent men, from the aviator sunglasses originally worn by fighter pilots to pants – yes, pants: wearing pants under your tunic signalled you were a cavalryman, and the reason that we all wear pants today is because people started aping military gear. The reason camouflage pants aren't high fashion is because within ACWE, the military is low-status to the Cathedral. In rural places where the military is high-status, men wear camo pants and boots like its high fashion. In the Kaiser's Germany, where the military was very high-status indeed, even lowly post-office clerks wore military-style clothing.

Power ► Status ► Art & Fashion

Power makes a thing high-status, and what is high-status is cool. Christianity is currently uncool because women and betas worship power, and Christianity is currently out of power. If you're an alpha, and you claim to be backed by a bigger alpha (eg. God), then women are impressed and want to be with you, while men are impressed and want to be like you. If you say that you're under an authority that prohibits defection, other men, those who hope to cooperate with you, to trade with you, will claim to be under the same authority. This last one is both why and how the Norse converted from worshipping Odin, Thor, etc. to worshipping Jesus, for example.

If you forged a retro-Christian Neoreactionary warrior society imitating the Crusaders, and went around wearing tabards and beating (for example) antifa members to death in the streets while police stood back and let you, or alternatively any police who attempted to arrest you for doing it got hog-tied, then Christianity would be considered epically cool *reeeeall* quick, and tabards would fast become a fashion trend. Instead, those in power are faggy, effeminate losers, and the fashion trends they spawn are likewise faggy and effeminate, like skinny jeans and tight shirts.

That assumes you've assumed power after TEOTWAWKI of course, but the reason the degenerates behind antifa and the like have any street cred whatsoever is because they're permitted to do violence unmolested thanks to the unspoken threat of government violence against anyone who defends themselves – the same logic applies to black and islamic violence in the USA and Europe. If absolutely deviant trash like that can get any sort of "street cred" just by beating people up who can't fight back, imagine how manly men in smart uniforms who can actually win a stand-up fight would look to the public – there's a reason women love men in uniform, after all.



The cool parts of current Christianity are things like Crusader memes and songs about old Christian victories like "*Winged Hussars*" or "*The Last Stand*" by Sabaton. Listen to those songs and they all have a theme - they remember when Christianity spread the faith through holy men, and if that required holy men to wield sword or axe to prove the faith by strength of arms, so be it. This is also why the nightmare dystopia of Warhammer 40K is popular; it has a bunch of manly men fighting and conquering for their people, backed by their religion.

The current face of both progressive and fundamentalist Christianity is old, faggy, weird, and effeminate – of course those are uncool (duh). Neo-Christianity is uncool because it adopted a theology and morality fundamentally hostile to old-type Christianity. Observe the decline of "modernized" Vatican II Catholicism. Observe the decline of pacifist Protestant churches, now filled with the elderly and frail. Who wants to sign up with losers? If Christ is victorious why are they telling us to passively accept the transsexualization of our sons and daughters? If they don't tell our women to obey us, why should we obey them? Make the public face of your Christianity virile, masculine, high status, and violent in a controlled way, and Christianity becomes cool.

Look at the public reaction to the footage of those men who toppled that metal obelisk in the desert while shouting "*Christ is King*"* –there's a reason the US media rapidly dropped the story after initially presenting it as "Christian vandalism": it made Christianity and Christians look powerful, and therefore, cool.
*[see: **https://keyt.com/news/2020/12/03/atascadero-monolith-destroyed-by-vandals/** also, **https://percolately.com/men-destroy-monolith-chant-homophobia/** as well as **https://yewtu.be/OkaDv85bn9c** and **https://yewtu.be/gFtDx-rgmrQ**]

Christendom's martial spirit is presently smothered by the legions of impotent effeminate Christians. Christianity functions when it's the heart of society, the charitable empathetic spiritual core which the outer limbs, the military and the law, use their might to defend. Christianity is something to fight for, not something to fight with. Christianity flourishes when it's fought for. Progressivism did not attack Christianity from outside; it would never have won. Progressivism brought Christianity into a form of competition which Christianity is not equipped for. It brought Christianity into a competition of altruism.

Progressivism convinced Christians that the good behaviors motivated by Christian principles should be locked into political law, (ending slavery, civil rights act, welfare state) but this drained Christianity (and, therefore, Christians) out of its position as the heart of the West and dispersed it into the law and enforcement (the limbs), whilst progressivism filled the void. It usurped Christianity's place, and now Christianity finds itself beset on both sides. It faces invaders which must be met with force externally, and a popularity contest internally. Christians must armor up for war, and yet they rehearse vacuous beauty pageant lines about world peace. They apply makeup as they draw battle lines.

Christianity would be flourishing if Christians obeyed the traditional teachings of the Church, despite getting called sexist. Instead, Christians hold out hope that they can just prove that THEY'RE the ones who are really the nicest friendliest kindest folk around. The limbs operated for Christianity, but they didn't operate through Christian means. How exactly does one go to war in a Christian way? How does one collect taxes in a Christian fashion? I think the answer is that you don't. You go to war to keep your Christian society alive. You collect taxes to keep your Christian society functioning. The limbs contained many Christians, but they operated for Christianity (among other things, like the nation), not through it. The heart pulls the strings and the limbs do the work. They have different roles. The Christian warrior's heart tells him to pursue what leads to peace, so he uses his limbs to destroy the enemy. Christianity is complicated, and the arguments and explanations often even more so – just read some of Tomas Aquinas' writings for proof. I don't blame the Catholic Church for choosing not to give the masses Bibles, but I do blame it for failing to explain the content sufficiently clearly to the average man.

The common Hebrew goat-herder or shopkeeper listening to Jesus speak, even the apostles, believed Jesus was going to be a literal king ruling a literal earthly kingdom in Israel - that's why they always scolded or ignored Him when He talked about His death. Some even suspect that Judas was in a way attempting to force Jesus' hand and kick off the process. Meanwhile, after Christ's death, his followers and our ancestors understood that the kingdom of heaven was **not** going to be an earthly kingdom. The Pharisees took advantage of the situation, codifying their oral law into the Talmud, and they're *still* hoping for the messiah to arrive and hand over a literal earthly kingdom in Israel to them on a silver platter any day real soon now... (*eyeroll*)

For Christians the thing that made things like going to war or collecting taxes acceptable, is the clear and rigid distinction between the kingdom of heaven and those of earth. The kingdom of heaven will not occur on this earth until the end times (which will happen according to God's schedule, not man's) , in other words, it is completely inappropriate for Christians to try to build utopias in this world. Modern Christians have lost this distinction, and too many believe that this earth can be reformed to *become* the kingdom of heaven.

Progressivism has made them impotent and effeminate by indoctrinating them into thinking that niceness is the path towards a ridiculous and unachievable goal, and into subverting and harming their own interests in senseless altruism towards those who would do them harm, because a commitment to building a sort of heaven on earth ultimately relies on killing anyone and everyone who disagrees, which is why the various attempts to construct egalitarian utopias in the 20th century led to almost 100 million people being murdered in various purges, pogroms, witch-hunts, and wars. And when the progressive vision of a pro-Muslim, pro-black, pro-LGBT, Feminist "heaven on earth" differs from yours, you're a subversive obstacle and it must be **your** fault it isn't working out as planned.

"*They're trying! They're doing their best! So what if a million people died because of implementing policy X – the people doing X meant well!*" This is the mindset that makes single women (whores) and old people invite gangs of male, military-aged ~~illegal immigrants~~ ~~invaders~~ "*refugees*" into their house. This is also the mindset of someone who "loves Humanity" but is distinctly violent to any actual human in particular - the actual human hasn't lived up to their near-divine standards of Humanity, which is clearly an excuse to bully and mistreat them.

Everyone by definition sees their own cause as righteous. Ultimately, a pacifist is an activist whose victory strategy is to suppress his enemies' military efforts. If the pacifist and you have the same enemies, you're by definition allies ... for now ... What ultimately happens if you're a Christian indoctrinated to be a pacifist, and the enemy is militantly arrayed against ... you?

An earlier attempt to revive Christianity was known as Muscular Christianity. The problem with it was that it tried to have manliness while ducking the woman question and bowing down before women and White knights. Predictably, they got buggered. Literally - the YMCA they created is today a joke because of gay infiltration. A successful equivalent needs to have the death penalty for open support of homosexuality and humiliating public beatings for White knights. It needs to support and enforce the authority of husbands and fathers, or its lack of muscularity becomes hilariously apparent.

The core of Christianity in this world are the rituals of hatch, match, and dispatch, which have to be the construction of a biological tribe from a synthetic tribe. And a tribe can only have cohesion if it controls its women, and awards women for good conduct and good performance while punishing them for bad conduct and performance. The wedding, in which the bride is given away, mock abducted, or really abducted, has to be the key ritual where laypeople encounter the faith, not the gym. Muscular Christianity focused on a few fragments of St. Paul's writings that arguably commend physical manliness, yet they studiously avoided a lot of texts that are considerably more relevant to manliness.

92. <u>The Very-Long-Term - Creating Empires That Actually Last A Thousand Years</u>

"*If you wish to build a ship, don't drum up men to gather wood, divide the work, and give out orders. Instead, teach them to yearn for the vast and endless sea".*
- Antoine de Saint-Exupéry, author of *The Little Prince.*

All living things on Earth expand their numbers to meet the resources available, any that failed to do this went extinct long ago. Thus most of the time any species' population sits at the limit of the local environment's carrying capacity for that species. During both good but especially during bad times there's constant intense competition within every species in any given territory for survival. Only individuals whose behavior and innate abilities are suited to survival in that environment live long enough to reproduce, and to have their offspring reproduce in turn. This is the basis of Darwin's concept of "*survival of the fittest*" - the lion does not compete against the gazelle, it competes *against the other lions*, just as the gazelle competes *against the other gazelles*.

Likewise, humans compete against other humans in their level of reproductive "fitness" to their environment. The greatest blind spot anthropologists have is the assumption that intelligence in humans is always advantageous. This is a natural assumption for them to make in their field but human intelligence is not exempt from evolutionary selection pressure. Without external evolutionary pressure selecting for higher intelligence, intelligence will drop if it's not conducive to greater reproductive ability. If the low-IQ people who are net takers are advantaged against the high-IQ people who are net producers, being high-IQ is no longer a reproductive advantage, leading to the dumbing-down of society.

According to the Life History Model of human development, we either invest energy in reproduction or in growth; investing more energy in reproduction is an r-strategy whereas investing more energy in growth (including nurturing our offspring and competing with other members of our society) is a K-strategy. All of us sit somewhere on the r-K continuum. An extreme r-strategy would be for a man to copulate with as many attractive (and thus healthy) and young (and thus fertile) women as possible and invest nothing in the offspring. This so-called 'fast life history strategy' develops in an unstable ecology where you cannot predict anything with much accuracy so you live fast and die young. As the ecology becomes more stable, it reaches its carrying capacity for a particular species. As such, its members start competing against each other and they do this by investing more resources in their offspring, so that their offspring can learn to survive. This environment selects for intelligence and impulse control.

Rushton (the inventor of the r-K concept) argued that the r-K continuum underpins race differences in psychology. This is similar to what anthropologists like E.B. Tylor or Lucien Levy-Bruhl wrote, and see if this sound familiar:
> "*Lévy-Bruhl wrote about the 'primitive mind' in his work* How Natives Think *(1910) where he posited, as the two basic mindsets of mankind, the "primitive" and "modern". The primitive mind does not differentiate the supernatural from reality but uses "mystical participation" to manipulate the world ...* [it] *... does not address contradictions*."

And what do we see? We see that blacks are the most r-strategist because their ancestral ecology is subject to unpredictable outbreaks of tropical diseases but has reliably warm weather and a year-round growing season, meaning their basic needs are met year-round and any catastrophes are due to unpredictable events. The sky can fall on you at any time, for any reason or no reason, just because. In a place like Africa, where there are so many bizarrely random ways to die, a kind of learned helplessness takes over. If you nearly got eaten by a lion, but didn't, then the only thing to do is: whatever it was you were doing before. Oh, you'd stopped to pick up a weird-looking rock a few minutes before? That rock must have juju (magic). So you carry it with you everywhere, to ward off the lions.

And if your magic rock ***doesn't*** work next time, it's **not** because the rock is actually useless. No, it's because the lion had a stronger juju, or because your enemy put a hex on you, or maybe you offended the rock's spirit somehow. What else can you do under those conditions but clutch at your fetish, praying that your juju stays strong? Alas, prosperity has made it all too easy for us to revert to the primitive, old, juju-centric mode of thinking, and we've done so with a vengeance.

Look at it from that angle, and everything we see being done by the "Karens" and SJWs and such in our society, or by our governments, and especially everything involving COVID - it all starts to make sense. Though it may be comforting to think that the clowns actually like Clown World, in their own way, they hate it as much as we do. Yes, there are some who are self-aware and powerful enough to like it, since they're at the center and have real power in it, but the fearful majority aren't actually happy at all - they're using their beliefs as a shield against their fears.

If you look at their beliefs from the juju perspective, you'll see how it works. For example, while it's easy (and funny) to call their current beliefs the "covid cult", it's actually a clear case of animism, or totemism if you prefer. The masks show you're one of the faithful, and have good juju to protect you, and they hear "vaccine" and think it's the equivalent of being splashed with holy water to drive off the demon Covid, and if you get it anyway, it's because you weren't pure and holy enough, or you didn't believe in the vaccine enough, so go forth and get another booster, my child, because the witch-doctor says it works to protect you *eye roll*.

As Victorian cultural anthropologists pointed out, the scientific habit of thought is deeply unnatural to humans. It takes tremendous effort to link cause and effect the way that we (the heirs of 3,000 years' painful struggle with logic) think of as "natural". There's plenty of horrible ways to die in Europe and Asia too, of course, but death tends to be more coldly logical there.

The environment of Eurasia, is harsh but it's predictable: the pattern of changing seasons (especially winters or in some areas, the long dry seasons, when food was difficult or impossible to find) created an increase in intelligence in humans living there, because since we humans did not evolve to hibernate, our ancestors learned to survive the ice-age winters by planning and laying aside food during the warmer weather to eat during the bitterly long, cold winters. So selection pressure in Eurasia favored patience, attention, and a high future time orientation.

The true relationship between cause and effect came much easier to Europeans and Asians, because winter always follows autumn and if you don't figure that out - as Africans never did, because they never had the opportunity to - then you die. As higher intelligence led to greater success in hunting, greater inventiveness in keeping warm (such as the invention of clothing) and the creativity that led to making artificial shelters such as tents and huts (see online for discoveries of Pleistocene huts made of mammoth bones and tusks in Siberia), this selected for higher intelligence in the prehistoric Eurasian peoples.

As many of the creatures Eurasians hunted were also *extremely* dangerous (mammoths, musk oxen, wooly rhinoceros, etc). evolution worked its magic and Eurasians also experienced evolutionary pressure in that those who could mentally plan a successful hunt, accurately gauge risk, and were active and highly motivated survived longer and reproduced when others did not.



Those of you who've faced a bear, an elk, a moose, or even just seen an elephant at a zoo in real life, could you imagine yourself hunting one armed with nothing more than a sharpened stick? Yet our ancestors frequently did just that for ten millennia, and feasted on the great beasts' flesh by the fire as they regaled their children with tales of the hunt. This also led to women seeking good providers, and to stronger social bonds, all of which were evolutionarily selected for.



In contrast, prehistoric Africans lived in the tropics and experienced no need to squirrel away provisions. The changes in rainfall and other factors which do affect tropical food supplies are unpredictable at best, and preparing for them is likely to be a waste of time and resources as tropical climates cause rapid spoiling of food, meaning that attempting to store food under stone-age conditions in the tropics wastes future food supplies potentially resulting in death now. We also see that African women relied then as now far less on their menfolk to provide food, and that the animals humans prey on in Africa tend to be far smaller and less dangerous - only relatively few tribes hunted dangerous game such as lion, elephants, and rhinos prior to European exploration, and those were usually part of their manhood initiation rituals.

We see the result of this in the reduced ability of many African people to plan ahead and their greater impulsiveness compared to Eurasians. For far more details on these evolutionary pressures, and many, many more examples of their consequences search online for the book "*Erectus Walks Among Us*". We can also infer that civilization produced its own evolutionary pressures, the consequences of which are still slowly distributing themselves throughout the human genome - you can learn a bit more from the book '*The 10,000 Year Explosion*', an interesting book exploring the notion that the rate of human evolutionary change has increased as a result of civilization.

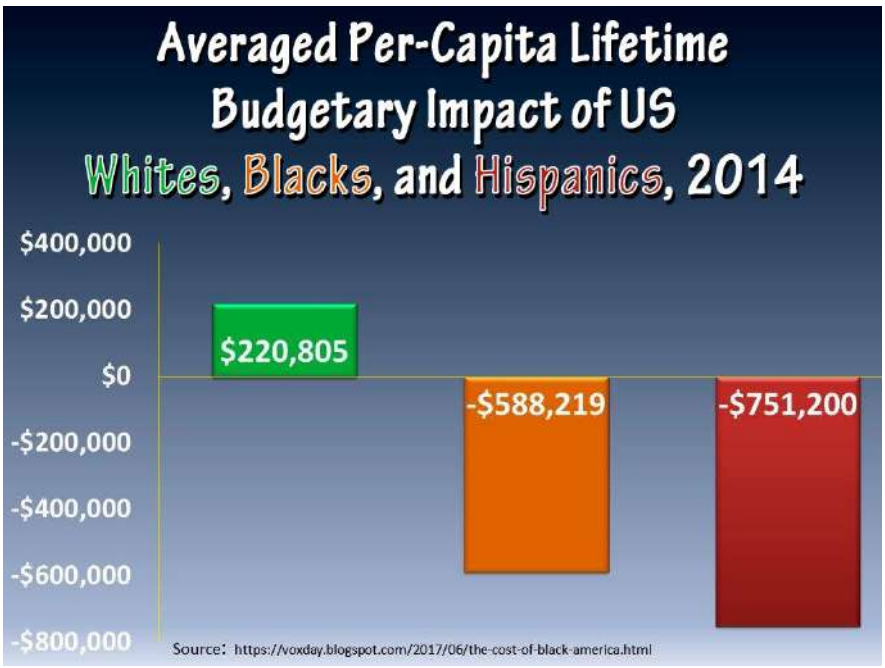
As the prestigious journal "Science" informed us:

"*Populations of sticklebacks that evolved under different ecological conditions show strong reproductive isolation, whereas populations that evolved independently under similar ecological conditions lack isolation.*" - Science. 2000 Jan 14; 287(5451):306-8

In plain English, this means that adaptation to specific local conditions, rather than physical or geographic separation, seems to be the primary driver of speciation from a common ancestor, something that has implications that are somewhat disturbing, (and extremely politically incorrect) for our own species. It's also exactly the method that Charles Darwin proposed in his book "*The Origin of Species*" and which, due to its implications for human biodiversity, is presently largely ignored by science. Because if we accept the (reasonable) claim that proto-humans started out in Africa, we see that it was the ones who ***left*** who evolved, and the ones who stayed put... didn't. The only real argument to be had is over just **when** they left, because the "official" claim of ~40-80K years ago is far too short. Doubtless, someone will cite the much-parroted factoid that sub-Saharan Africa contains more human genetic diversity in than anywhere else, to which I should point out that there are potentially thousands of ways one can fail to build a bridge, and only a few that actually work. Diversity in and of itself, is not necessarily a positive.

If it's possible for sticklebacks that share a single lake to divide into two species by adjusting to two different ecological niches within it, despite substantial interbreeding, then it's probable that hominids whose ancestors lived for the last fifty thousand years or so in environments where lack of future-orientation would result in freezing in bad weather and starving in winter, have considerably greater future-orientation due to genetic change than hominids whose ancestors lived in environments where failure to prepare for the future was considerably less likely to be lethal. I can guarantee that suggesting a genetic or other study to prove this will get any western scientist ostracised, shunned, and likely "unpersoned" or even jailed on trumped-up charges. The main point of all this (which has special concern for us in the context of our slow-collapse socio-political conditions), is that the welfare state in particular creates a false sense of tropical abundance among citizens. (The grasshopper/ant thing again.) This while most of us exist in areas that evolved cold-winter scarcity cultures by necessity, and though it's been a long hot summer the leaves are starting to change color...

Due to government redistribution (eg. taxes and welfare), and reproductive interference (eg. "no-fault" divorce laws, alimony, and child support) western nations under ACWE's influence for the last 200 or so years or so have experienced strange new evolutionary pressures, ones that don't reward intelligence at all. Watch the scientifically-accurate introduction of the movie "Idiocracy", and you'll immediately understand my point here. The director stated since making the film he "*was off by about 490 years*" (Intro is online here: **https://yewtu.be/sP2tUW0HDHA**).



As Neil Postman pointed out at considerable length in his 1985 book "*Amusing Ourselves to Death: Public Discourse in the Age of Showbusiness*", to a surprisingly great extent, we find that the medium ***is*** the message; today's functional illiteracy and historical ignorance simply could not exist without television being the most common method of disseminating information.

It's the "digital clock" effect, whereby people live in the eternal "now": with traditional analog clocks one sees all the numbers - what the time is, what it was and what it shall be. We didn't look at clocks just to find out what the time is now, we looked at it to see how much time was left, how much time was before something else, how much time an activity had taken, or how much time we were spending doing something. In planning and tracking, the ***now*** was the least important aspect.

However, with digital clocks you always and only can see the **current** time - the modern world is leading people to lose a perspective view of time. And memory; nobody remembers yesterday's false predictions anymore, the story of the boy who cried wolf is obsolete. That makes an appropriate response to events impossible - modern life is the endless present, the limitless **now**.

Which makes a perverted kind of sense as a survival skill - consider the poor kid whose life depends on acing some standardized test. There's THE answer, and he must know it… but what THE answer was yesterday might be totally different from what THE answer is today, and it might be something else again tomorrow. So the kid finds it best to live in the mental world of Orwell's Airstrip One: "we've *always* been at war with Eastasia".

For just one of the more blatant examples, we can look online and see that not so long ago the Canadians were apologizing and self-flagellating about having put Ukrainians and Japanese in internment camps during the world wars, because they were allegedly a potential public danger then. Now, they're self-righteously treating those who refuse to get the Covid "vaccine" in exactly the same way. It's not even hypocrisy, they've got literally no memory at all of what they did just yesterday.

In chaotic situations and societies where the future payoff may get ruined/taxed away/inflated away/swindled out from under you, taking the immediate reward may be the better move. Planning and working for the future doesn't make sense if the future is too risky and insecure. The formerly high-trust society we once lived in supported future time-orientation a lot better than the low-trust society we have today.

.....oh wait, remember the little chat we had a few paragraphs ago about Eurasian-style long-term behavior vs. African-style short-term behavior? What evolutionary pressures can we derive from the modern emphasis on the short-term, and would you consider this to have good or bad effects on our social intelligence and cohesion?

How do we, in the very long term, ensure that traits such as high intelligence, cooperation, adventurism, vitality, good judgement, and the willingness to take carefully-calculated risks are passed on? In every culture, people are good at what is important to that culture. Under conditions in which aggressive men have more children, genes that favor aggression become more common, we see this in several stone-age peoples such as Brazil's Yanomamo tribes. Under conditions in which men who are better at legalistic arguing have more children (such as Ashkenazi jews), we see that genes favoring speaking ability and intelligence become more common. The fierce but stupid Viking raiders of the tenth century began to live off trade with others and stopped sacrificing their most intelligent people to Odin, and became the peaceful Scandinavians of today.

To ensure that such traits as intelligence and mathematical ability are selected for over evolutionary timescales (centuries or longer) you need to ensure that your culture values those traits as fundamental values, and that people who succeed in those areas have more children who then follow similar paths.

In this sociological context, pop culture really does matter. For an example of this, consider that blaming black social pathology on rap is, in a lot of ways, like blaming wet streets for rain - it's ass-backwards. And yet, blacks would be better off, a LOT better off even, if rap didn't exist. No, forcing them to listen to Beethoven isn't going to suddenly turn them into doctors and engineers, any more than making White trash listen to the New York Philharmonic Orchestra will turn them into astrophysicists. But since culture and biology have a dialectical relationship, the lowest common denominator will sink ever lower if you let it. So while eliminating rap wouldn't suddenly make blacks socially well-behaved, it would remove the encouragement it provides to their worst social elements, while encouraging their best social elements would encourage that kind of behavior instead.

"*I hate luxury. I exercise moderation…It will be easy to forget your vision and purpose once you have fine clothes, fast horses and beautiful women. [In which case], you'll be no better than a slave, and you'll surely lose everything".* - Genghis Khan
And again, see:
"*Heaven grew weary of the excessive pride and luxury of China... I am from the barbaric North. I wear the same clothing and eat the same food as the cowherds and horse-herders. We make the same sacrifices and we share ... our riches. I look upon the nation as a new-born child and I care for my soldiers as though they were my brothers".* - Genghis Khan

Speaking in terms of societies, not of individuals, it's not enough to just live - doing so eventually leads to comfort, then hedonism, decadence and collapse, just as we're witnessing in our own civilization. Rather, every successful nation lives *for* something, just as every empire lives to expand - the bigger the dreams in your children's heads, the greater their achievements. It speaks to something deep within us, within our souls, to seek greatness. Rather than seeking for your nation to become an empire (which would last a mere couple of centuries anyway, refer to the examples in Glubb's book), you must give your people an ultimate goal they can pursue on truly massive timescales.

The Romans taught their children that their destiny was good governance, and we still base our laws on their methods. We still visit their ruins, use their alphabet, and in some places, speak derivatives of their language.

For nearly twenty centuries after Titus crushed their rebellion and exiled them from their lands, the jews taught their children that their ultimate destiny was their "promised land" of Israel, a goal that sustained them in exile, and which they finally seized through violence in 1947.

For Europe after the fall of the Roman Empire, that goal was spiritual self-perfection under Christianity, a goal that sustained it for nearly fifteen centuries until the Renaissance, when the princes of the Germanies manipulated Martin Luther's complaints, splintering the faith for their own greedy political gain.

Post-Renaissance Europeans taught their children that their destiny was to rule the world. And they went out and did so for five hundred years - no one else climbed a mountain just "because it was there". No other people crossed an ocean just see what was on the other side and settled it, and no others invented flight, and then sought to travel across the very heavens, and did so.

This is why we see for example that Ashkenazi jews, being limited by Charlemagne to the trades of merchants and banking, became very good at manipulating contracts and applying clever trickery through wordplay. As trade and banking assumed superlative importance and superseded, even consumed their efforts, we now see the results– consumerism, which is rotting society and has spoiled and rotted people's morals and drive into destructive petty squabbles instead of the former vision of grandeur and excellence which carried western civilization to a previously-unreached peak of global power, wealth and knowledge.

What's needed is a goal that is achievable, physical, and that takes technical skill and effort. You should already be teaching future generations of your tribe that you have been chosen by your deity, but you must also teach them to ensure that the choice was a good one or they will end up becoming parasitic on the surrounding peoples, or at best forming an empire that then collapses. Remember our earlier chat about heroism – your descendants should strive to be heroes.

93. "Astra Nobis" - The Stars Are Ours.

An interesting pathway to that, which I suggest following, is instead of living in exile and dreaming of a far-off land as the jews did, teach your people's children to live on the land but dream of conquering the heavens. In his short story "*If I Forget Thee, Oh Earth..".* Arthur C. Clarke gives us an example of creating a yearning in a child for something that they may not be able to attain within their lifetimes, but for our purposes we should reverse the goal of the yearning in the story.

Doing this does not take creating a spin-off Christian cult, like Mormonism or Scientology, it merely takes an existing biblical statement: "*the meek shall inherit the Earth*" (Matthew 5:5) and then making a non-biblical statement to the effect that the bold should prove themselves by reaching the stars. Remind your people that they're called to be bold heroes. Let the meek have Earth - you won't need it when you have the whole universe. Such a goal primes your culture from the very beginning to value technical engineering work, mathematics, calculated risks, etc. and fills their heads with a positive vision of a successful future goal - a destiny, even.

As the XXXXX Wes Jackson once said:
"*If your life's work can be accomplished in your lifetime, you're not thinking big enough*."



What a shortcut to technology you would have: a mere century or two after our collapse, your grandchildren could be waving their kids off on their voyage to settle Mars. Your grandchildren's great-grandchildren could then end up waving to *their* kids as they set off on a journey to Alpha Centauri. A few centuries after that, you could end up with more direct descendants than there are people on Earth alive today, spread far and wide throughout the galaxy.

Big dreams? Perhaps. But dreams are necessary if one wants to achieve anything. Flight was nothing but a dream once, until the Wright brothers cracked the secrets of that dream and built the dream into reality. Without dreams, big dreams, what will inspire future generations with ever greater hope for the future? Spaceships are now older than airplanes were when the first man went to space – where is the next step? What dreams will lead us there?

Should your descendants perhaps adopt the environmentalist "dream" that they must simply accept poverty and squalor in a sordid belief that their misery is necessary to "save the planet"? When Earth has been here far longer than our entire species and will be here long after we've left it, one way or another? What utter arrogance that we think of ourselves so.

Why should our descendants accept living in squalid poverty here on Earth, when a single metallic asteroid holds more metal than the entirety of our species has grubbed from the dirt in ten thousand years! You want wealth? If your children or grandchildren leave this rock, they'll each have more personal wealth than the Rothschild banking clan has in total!



Ponder also that once in space, those desirable evolutionary pressures continue. Just like ice-age Europe and Asia, space is a cold and dangerous environment that requires (demands, even!) long-term planning and careful resource preparation. Shifting around an asteroid to mine would give enormous payoffs, but requires long-term planning and deferred gratification. Even a base on Mars would be extremely rewarding to careful settlers with intelligent judgment, and harsh on irresponsible or stupid settlers. A millennium of evolutionary pressure could easily lead to your descendants having far higher intelligence and ability than anything seen on Earth.

You could literally end up with each family having an O'Neill cylinder each to live on, each with the land surface of Rhode Island, and that is even if we don't consider leaving the Solar System.

We, or at least our descendants, could truly reach out and finally at long last grasp the dream that so moved Alexander the Great:

> "Alexander wept when he heard Anaxarchus' discourse about an infinite number of worlds, and when his friends inquired what ailed him, '*Is it not worthy of tears*,' he said, '*that, when the number of worlds is infinite, we have not yet become lords of a single one*?'"
> --Plutarch.

In 2017, NASA identified not one but an incredible seven Earth-sized planets in other solar systems, three of which were in the kind of orbit that would enable them to have liquid water, and therefore could support life. Exponentially more have been discovered in every year since – we now know of hundreds of such planets. Indeed, since then the closest star to our own, Proxima Centauri, was found to have an Earth-sized planet orbiting it, which was unimaginatively named "*Proxima Centauri b*".

But the stars are distant and we sadly don't quite have the technology to travel there yet. In the meantime, we need a stepping-stone to the stars, to prepare us for the long journey our great-grandchildren will take into the endless sea of eternal night, and the first stepping-stones to doing that are Mars and the Asteroids.

Take the asteroids Vesta and Pallas for example; both are over 500 km in diameter and mass hundreds of Trillions of tons each. There are lots of asteroids in the Trillion-ton range, and they're more numerous as they get smaller. As for ones that are relatively easy to reach, there have been nearly 1,000 "near-Earth objects" of over 1 km diameter catalogued. Anything over 1 km in diameter should mass at least a Billion tons, much of it an irregular combination of metallic ores, carbon-rich silicates, and oxygen-laden exotic ices.

We can accurately estimate the mass distribution of asteroids, which is e: D^(-2.3) for sizes in the range of 0.4 km to 5 km, and D^(-4) for 5 km to 40 km, implying that asteroid settlement is likely to

be most interesting for quite small communities built around a 5-km wide asteroid, implying that we shall have to reinvent manufacturing so that a quite small fabricator, or a quite small set of fabs, can make basically anything. For Mars settlements we won't need such drastic miniaturization, but we're still going to need some serious production chain miniaturization. The very limited data we have on interstellar objects indicates a mass distribution of around D^-3), giving us no clue about the appropriate settlement size. Composition is likely to be similar to the asteroids, but with a greater proportion of exotic ices, such as frozen hydrocarbons and light molecules. We, or rather our great-grandchildren, will one day simply have to go take a look in person.



CHON (Carbon Hydrogen Oxygen Nitrogen) compounds (plastics, biotech, carbon-fiber, etc.- the stuff of 3D printers.) can do anything metals can do, though small amounts of metal will still be needed for certain catalysts. To settle the Kuiper belt objects that are mostly made of such stuff, we'll need to greatly improve our CHON technology, so we can rely far less on metals for construction. We'll also need stronger superconducting magnets than we have now, so we can have smaller fusion plants, though the fast neutron problem means that they can never be all that small. Settlements will have a couple of fusion plants, and a very large stockpile of liquid oxygen, liquid hydrogen, and liquid methane, so if a fusion plant goes offline, death is years, not minutes, away. The Kuiper belt seems to have a significant proportion of asteroid material, so there's a modest amount of high atomic-weight material out there. Much of it's dirty ice, not plain ice, probably in about the same proportions as Uranus and Neptune. CH chondrites are forty percent metal, and probably represent the non-volatile fraction of Kuiper belt material, the dirt in dirty ice.

Once we have a foothold in our solar system, we can then begin to look further outwards and plant our flags on the interstellar objects. Our knowledge and insofar limited observation of small interstellar objects (three so far) are consistent with a mass distribution where mass is nearly logarithmically distributed, the amount of mass in objects in each power of ten mass range being roughly comparable. This implies that there's enough matter between stars to make settling interstellar space in the Sun's neighborhood feasible by a very high-tech high-IQ population with a high elite fertility, a stepping-stone to the technology and the race that will reach the stars.

In space, there's a wealth beyond our imagination. The elite and their pet nation-states don't want to put people beyond their instantaneous surveillance, or give them the equipment to become

economically and industrially independent of Earth. Private space travel proves that there's no conspiracy against people doing it themselves - the governments mantain control simply because it's currently too expensive to bother regulating. It's not going to be governments that go out and do this, because there's no benefit for them – they couldn't even make NASA function effectively, let alone turn a profit, and they're certainly not going to give people like you and me free rides to a place where we might successfully declare independence.

Everything's pop-sci until it's stocked on shop shelves. Experts as recently as the 1970's seriously thought no-one needed computers in their homes and other experts thought five computers would be enough for the whole US. Anything else was pop-sci… now we have computers in our pockets. Regardless of the excuse-makers, rockets aren't any special kind of hard. If people had tried to go straight from the Wright brothers' Flyer to the 747, they'd have had a hell of a time with that too.

Imagine a different world where the government took as much control over aviation as it did over rocketry - there might've been an "Apollo Project" of aviation: fly a handful of men across the ocean and back, at a billion dollars a trip, and nobody tries again for decades. Or picture a "~~space~~ sky shuttle": government eggheads develop a reusable aircraft, but they insist on making their first try at reusability the biggest and highest performance aircraft ever flown, and political directives come down from the top levels to give fat contracts to favored contractors even though their work is inferior, so it ends up being even more expensive than a regular expendable aircraft. Oh, and let's have a couple of them blow up on live TV due to bureaucratic incompetence and stupidity when the managers ignore the engineers, leading to the whole multi-billion-dollar project being scrapped.



Even in today's relatively non-hostile regulatory regime, you can't just build a little rocket of a few hundred pounds or a few tons thrust and try it out. Hobbyist "high-power rockets" aren't just limited by size, but also by performance. They're kept as toys by law. If you want to build a **real** rocket and aim for space-capability, you had better have some millions of dollars to hire professional engineers and deal with the paperwork, the way Elon Musk did. Can you imagine the Wright Brothers pushing through regulations and red tape like that to develop a manned aircraft today? Neither of them ever got their high school diploma, let alone any higher education. Yet they flew.

And for those sarcastically thinking "*yeah dude, it's the government-man keeping us DOWN from asteroid-mining our way to personal wealth*" think of this: there are lots of huge mines all over Earth - if we try to dig out a rich ore vein to make ourselves wealthy, the government in that place will protect the existing property rights of other people. Space mining on the other hand, no one is ever going to bring the majority of that wealth back to Earth, because it's an expensive waste. But it doesn't *need* to be brought to Earth to be used – it can be used right there, to build whatever you want or need that you're able to build - Spacers are going to be wealthy from the very start, no matter how poor they were on Earth: if you want a solid-gold space toilet? No problem - smelt an asteroid and make it.

That's why the trillions of Oort cloud objects are so important – there's more than one per person alive today. 3D printing is exactly the kind of thing needed to do this in a compact space probe, and so man's colonization of space is inevitable. Those who don't see that inevitability simply don't want to imagine what comes next after their society's day in the sun is over.

3D printing won't have to completely replace traditional manufacturing to allow the construction of industry on comets and asteroids - it simply has to build the absolute basics, and traditional manufacturing can do the rest. This isn't a pie-in-the-sky fantasy either – something as simple as

graphene ejects electrons when shot with a laser, meaning it could be used to build cheap, solar-powered spacecraft. You could even launch payloads into orbit with this technology, though probably not from Earth itself.

People living independently in space couldn't just successfully declare independence and refuse to pay taxes; they could also drop some pretty big rocks on Earth fairly easily if they should disagree about it, while being largely immune to reprisal from earthbound powers – the bottom of gravity wells are a lousy place to fight from – even nukes are a poor threat against someone who can make mountains fall from the sky like raindrops.

Consider that building Europe's great Cathedrals took centuries. People, tribes, cultures, religions, and groups with very long time-preference will seize the stars. The people, tribes, cultures, religions, and groups with short time-preference will not. A people that can build a Cathedral could, with better technology, reach the stars. It took two and a half centuries to build the York Minster Cathedral, and it will take about that long to reach the nearest star. It can be done with present-day technology, but what is missing at present is not the means (we have the basics of that), but the drive to explore and settle and the will to do it. Exploration and colonization of unknown territory is a very stereotypically White male thing, and White males and their attitudes are demonized under our present elites' religion. When we finally get ourselves out from under Universalism's boot-heel, we need to start planning for the ultimate frontier.

If and when self-sustaining populations are ever established on Mars or elsewhere, regardless of the ethnic or geographical origins of their Earth-bound ancestors, they will follow independent evolutionary paths, adapting in their form and social behavior to the ecological rules of their new home. Mars is the stepping-stone to producing the technology, the culture, and the race capable of settling the abundance of smaller space objects, and settling the abundance of smaller objects is the stepping stone to reaching and settling the stars. There are more stars in the Universe than grains of sand on Earth - even if only one in a hundred has suitable planets, a societal emphasis on applied technology will lead to breakthroughs that would provide your people with untold wealth and living-room.

Don't teach your children the sky is the limit when there are footprints on the moon.



94. FIT TO FIGHT, FIT TO SURVIVE:

It will be important for you and your fellows to be physically fit to withstand the stresses that life will bring you. This will also ensure you remain healthy and can withstand fatigue and hard work (farming without machine tools is hard work as well).

Nature (and your enemies) don't give two shits that you're old, or that you've got a hundred obligations competing for your time, or that you get home exhausted after your day of work. If you want to be able to protect your wife and kids, or your future wife and future kids, you HAVE to MAKE the time **now**, in the present. We're all going to die eventually - the only choices we have are how we live in the meantime, and (hopefully) how well we die when our time comes.

There's no need to be as fit as an Olympic-level athlete, but you should be able to do the following **prior** to SHTF:

►Run for 2miles (3km) in 20 minutes (max) without being completely out of breath at the end.

►Depending on age, be able to perform the following amount of push-ups within two minutes: anyone between 18 and 25 should be able to do at least 35 push-ups. Between 25-35, at least 30, between 35-45 25, 45-55 20, etc. These are minimums.

►Carry a person of roughly your own body-weight to safety at a run for a hundred yards/metres.

►With weapon, full gear and loaded pack, speed-march for 10 miles (16km), taking no more than a quarter-hour per mile, and arrive fit to fight at the end of it. That's about 11min per km.

►Be able to physically push an aggressive person of roughly your own body-weight off yourself so you can draw a concealed weapon if they're trying to grapple you.

To achieve these minimum standards as laid out above, you'll need to work out.
There are two main ways to work out -
1) Strength training, which uses low rep/high weight - you won't look fancy, but you may end up able to throw someone across a room (this is the one we will focus on, for obvious reasons).
VS
2) "Looks" training, which uses high rep/low weight - makes you look good, does build some endurance, but can't actually *do* shit unless you keep adding weight. Needs expensive equipment.

To start improving your strength and fitness, find out your max reps to failure (MRTF) of push-ups, sit-ups, chin-ups, and squats. For some of you that will be 1, for others a few more. Record this initial number for each exercise, then subtract two, up to a minimum of one rep. (eg. if you can do 2 push-ups before your arms give out, that would be 1 push-up. If you can do 5, it would be 3, etc). We will call this number "MRTF-2", it's obviously going to be a different value for each exercise type.

Ensure you can perform the movements correctly and safely - see how to perform PROPER push-ups here so that you don't waste your time and risk injury:
https://www.t-nation.com/training/push-ups-youre-doing-them-wrong
If you're extremely unfit or obese, then it may be best to initially do your push-ups pivoting on your knees instead of your toes, until you lose a little weight and gain more strength. See the paragraph on exercise diet at the end of this section.

To correctly perform a sit-up, lie on your back on the floor. Bend your knees at a 90-degree angle and hook your feet under a secure brace or overhang - the lower edge of a bed is perfect for this. Then, lightly put your hands flat on your thighs, arms slightly bent, keeping your neck straight so that you can breathe easily- don't lean your head forward otherwise you won't breathe right.

Bend at the hips to raise your body. As soon as your fingertips hit your kneecaps, drop back down immediately. It's best to do this to a timed cadence like the British Royal Marines do. Refer to this video, you may wish to download it. Raise your body at the beep. It's quite a punishing pace for a beginner, but will very rapidly build your core strength as you progress:
https://yewtu.be/ZpZHcExCIY4

I suggest that after waking up, brushing your teeth and shaving, on weekdays (Monday to Friday), you perform your MRTF-2 of push-ups, sit-ups, and chin-ups. Then, after a 5-10-minute rest (if you actually need it), do a one-mile (1.6km) run at the fastest speed that does not force you to stop and catch your breath (be sure to time your runs to track your improvement). When you get back, do your MRTF-2 of squats, then stretch thoroughly before showering. Breakfast is best done after the exercise, because otherwise the body diverts blood to the digestive system and you'll feel weak and may possibly puke. By all means drink your morning coffee or whatever before starting if you like.

This whole exercise process including the run, should not take you more than an hour at most. It takes me less than 30min. After this, stretch out your muscles, shower, have your breakfast, and go on about your normal day. (Refer to the stretches shown in the link here: **https://www.mayoclinic.org/healthy-lifestyle/fitness/multimedia/stretching/sls-20076840)**

When you reach the point where you find this easy to do, then run the same distance aiming for a faster time, and add ONE push-up, TWO sit-ups, ONE chin-up, and ONE squat. Do this each time you get to the point you find the exercises easy. You should add sit-ups slightly faster than the other exercises, as this strengthens your core muscles, and the exercise is somewhat less intense on your musculoskeletal structure.

Keep careful track of your progress as you go - it will take some time to build up your ability if you start out unfit. Keeping track of your improvement will help you avoid getting discouraged.

Saturday should be your rest day, and Sunday should be a double-length run (2miles/~3km) followed by a series of weight exercises to develop upper-body strength, such as one-arm front and lateral kettle-bell raises (these develop the muscles enabling you to push away an opponent).

To perform kettle-bell raises, hold your arm straight down holding the kettle-bell, then swing it smoothly in a controlled fashion through a 180-degree arc until your arm is pointing straight up. Then lower it through the same arc under control - **don't** just let it drop down. The raise and the lower should each take one full second to perform, count it by thinking "*one mississippi*" on the upswing, hold it for a half-second ("*ah-two*") and then count "*three mississippi*" on the downswing. Do your personal MRTF-2 for both front and lateral raises.

Again, start with your own personal MRTF-2 for that exercise and build up over time as you start finding it easy, eventually adding a pack to your run and gradually increasing the weight.

Notice that so far, the only piece of equipment needed to perform all the exercises described is a kettle-bell, easily improvised by filling a 50-cal ammunition box or some other durable container or bag with sand or dirt until it weighs about 16lbs (~8kg) if you're broke. Once you get strong enough to require more weight, look into a professional kettle-bell of around 24lbs (~12kg) (depending on your ability), or fill the container with something heavier than sand. I make no concessions for the ladies - they need to keep up or else.

On top of this, you should regularly perform the regimen suggested in the backpack section, at the very least once a month, to ensure you can perform the 10-mile speed-march. If you're able to safely bear the weight, you can gradually increase your carried load while practicing your ruck-marching to beyond the actual tactical weight by following the suggestions seen here:
How to get fit while rucking: **https://archive.is/Cm8Y3**
Creating sandbag pills: **https://archive.is/fRNBM**

Once you start getting to the point you can comfortably perform more than the minimums for each exercise category I've described, I suggest looking into the training methods developed by former SPETSNAZ fitness instructor Pavel Tsatsouline. His methods emphasize kettle-bell, barbell, and bodyweight strength training. In a nutshell, his method focuses on picking 5 different overall-body exercises, (Say...dips, pull-ups, squats, dumbbell side bends, and barbell curls) and performing them 5 days each week (M-F), stopping each training session a couple of reps short of failure, similar to the training regimen I suggested above. By the time you get to this point, your Sunday 2-mile run time should be well under 20 minutes.

95. A Simple But Effective Exercise Diet

I was hesitant to recommend an exercise diet initially, but then realized that some readers might try using a useless fad diet if I didn't say something, so here's a bit of basic dietary advice:

You do **not** need to have a special diet to lose weight and build strength, you'll merely need to change the proportions a little to take in more of what you need and less of what you don't.

Good things to eat are things like **lean** meat, lots of leafy greens (eg. spinach, cabbage, kale, lettuce, broccoli, kale, watercress, chards, and other collard greens) and moderate amounts of fresh fruit.

Bad things include shit like processed, fatty foods (eg. McDonalds) and sugary crap such as sodas, snacks and candy. At most, have ***one*** meal of such stuff a month to reward improvement, maximum.

High-fructose corn syrup and cane sugar are bad for you and fuck with your blood sugar, period. Blood sugar addiction is a big part of obesity - when blood sugar is high, the body thinks it's full even when it needs nutrients, and also perversely it feels hungry when it *does* have enough nutrients. You only store fat when your blood sugar is high, and you'll never burn fat when your blood sugar is high, even when you're at a caloric deficit. When blood sugar is high, the body sees all incoming food as "extra" to get turned into fat, causing progressive malnutrition because the fatass is eating at a deficit in terms of nutrition and his body is cannibalizing what's left. That's why fatties snack constantly. If you resist eating sugar long enough, your body rejects it in anything above healthy amounts. (Honey is fine. It was ancestral proto-Europeans' only dietary source of simple sugars and it's very hard to eat too much honey - if you doubt this, buy a jar and try eating it with a spoon on an empty stomach).

You should somewhat reduce but not eliminate the amount of carbs (eg. bread, rice, pasta) you eat. Eliminate seed oils from your diet - replace them with butter, ghee, olive oil, or lard.

Especially if you're trying to lose that spare tyre of fat around your gut, limit yourself to just one small portion of whatever you're eating, but fill up with salad to stop the hunger, and don't use anything other than plain vinegar (balsamic vinegar for more flavor) on the salad. Never skip breakfast, eat moderately at lunch, but minimize your supper and avoid all snacks - throw out the Doritos and sodas!

Fasting for one or two days a week each week is excellent for rebooting your metabolic rate to normal levels once you're older or have gone soft.

You don't need to waste your money on protein powders or bars if you're eating enough **lean** red meat or chicken - trim off and discard the larger pieces of fat if you're trying to lose the blubber.

Avoid stuff like gatorade and drink plain water to hydrate instead - the sugar content is harmful to your diet and teeth, and as long as you're eating a healthy mixed diet daily, you'll be getting quite enough electrolytes from your food.

Avoid soda unless it's diet soda (and even that isn't really great for you.) Fresh fruit's occasionally fine, but most processed fruit *juice* is just water with a ton of sugar and flavoring added.

If you need anything more specific than this regarding your diet, go and see a nutritionist, not a personal trainer.

On a lighter and humorous note, apart from making you more credible when discussing survival under dire circumstances and improving your chances of survival, being fit and trim also makes you look better and improves your chances of success with the opposite sex, as well as making for a more impressive statue when your great-grandchildren eventually immortalize their nation's founders.

96. Further Enhancing Your Physical Ability

You are also going to want more Close-Quarter-Combat (CQC) centric training just to keep all your bases covered. Though they're few and far between classes like Shivworks' ECQC do provide some practical if less conventional training. Lots of martial arts are practically useless, but should you have the money and ability, some may be a way to enhance your self-defense abilities.

You want an art that teaches how to disable attackers quickly and minimizes your chance of injury, not one with flying kicks and other such nonsense. Things like Krav Maga, Jeet Kune-Do, Ninjutsu, and Eskrima are some useful ones I know of. These teach students practical self-defense skills without needing decades of learning. Regardless of the specifics, if you can train to strike (with your hands) and grapple, you'll be better off for it. At least join a boxing/wrestling gym or get into MMA.

Many thanks to the contributor for this next portion, who also recommended readers try conventional powerlifting programs, many of which are free and highly tested. Starting Strength, for example. It's a lot easier to lug around heavy gear if you can squat 300lbs one time than when you can squat 180lbs fifteen times. Further exercise types are best done after you can achieve the minimums suggested earlier in this section, so you don't risk injury.

The MARSOC Short Card

1. 30 Push-ups
2. 30 Air squats
3. 30 Crunches
4. 10 Burpees
5. 10 Windmills
6. 30 Push-ups
7. 30 Mountain climbers
8. 30 Flutter kicks
9. 10 Burpees
10. 10 Cherry pickers (4-count)
11. 30 Push-ups
12. 30 Star jumpers (or jumping jacks)
13. 30 Back Extensions ("supermans")
14. 10 Burpees
15. 10 Chain breakers
16. 30 Push-ups
17. 30 Lunges
18. 30 Hello dollies
19. 10 Burpees
20. 10 Trunk twists
21. 3 Max sets of dead-hang pull-ups or flexed-arm hangs

https://iteroni.com/embed/nhoikoUEI8U

https://iteroni.com/embed/p2OPUi4xGrM

https://iteroni.com/embed/rxD321l2svE

https://iteroni.com/embed/2ggG1M2gGes

The MARSOC "short card" displayed at left focuses on cardiovascular endurance. The exercises should be done back to back with little or ideally no rest in-between. Only rest between sets of the whole card.

PT doesn't have to be the grim drudgery the military turns it into. With some imagination, you can get a good workout while having fun.

Paintball and/or airsoft are outstanding solutions (and you might learn some lessons playing them). Racquetball and tennis are fun, increase aerobic endurance, don't cause injuries, and toughen up your feet. Hiking and mountain climbing have potential, but definitely depend on where you live. Both indoor and outdoor climbing are fun and good for your upper body *and* endurance, if there's a place to do it near you. Swimming is excellent for building aerobic endurance, and is especially good if you're older or have pre-existing leg/back issues. Cycling improves your cardio as well.

Overall, developing cardio endurance is the most important element of this exercise program – while being able to lift a lot or run really fast is helpful, it's less critical than being able to keep up a more moderate run or jog over long periods while carrying your basic load. The main thing to achieve that is your primary fitness activity needs to emphasize cardio somewhat more than upper-body strength, and you need to do a high-impact session at least 2x/week.

For the over-weight, losing 1 pound of body weight equals losing 4 pounds of pressure at the knees.

The fitness standards of the WW2 Wehrmacht for men aged 18-25:	
100m run	13.4sec-14.2sec
200m run	30sec-32sec
400m run	68sec-72sec
Long jump	4.15m-4.75m
High jump	1.15m-1.35m
Shot-put	6.5m-8m
Grenade-throw	35m-42m
100m swim	2.66min
300m swim	9min

97. Chapter 5 - Post-Collapse Defense

This chapter will be divided as follows:
> Defense of a single building.
> Defense of a single town.
> Defense of surrounding areas and farmland/crops.
> General/political post-SHTF considerations.
> Post-collapse financial information (funding reconstruction)

Survival is interlinked with discipline, learning, and being exposed to danger. It's the difference between a street cat and a house cat: obviously, both are the same species, but their survival training is completely different.

If we look at security instead, we are talking about a completely different reference system. We need to be clear that when we talk about security, we are talking about mantaining borders, and protecting ourselves from harm, attack, and any crimes that could destabilize daily life.

This is very masculine- when we talk about 'security'; we're talking about making sure enemies don't enter. On a reptilian level, when a man and woman have a family and a home, it's the woman's duty to make sure the home is childproof, while it's the man's duty to make sure it's secure from potential invaders. Women are in charge of making their place safe, and men are in charge of making sure no one can enter the safe place.

Security means weapons, guns and castles; anything and everything that keeps people out of the safe place. The whole idea behind the Great Wall of China was to stop the Mongolians from invading: that's security. When you go to a nightclub, the bouncers have shirts that say '*Security*', not '*Safety*', because they're preventing unwanted individuals from entering the safe space.

The whole point of security is accumulating enough backup in order not to fight. In the film *The Karate Kid,* Mr Miyagi teaches young Daniel how to fight so he wouldn't need to. Security is about accumulating enough weapons, soldiers, bombs etc., so that the benefit your enemy gains by attacking you and taking your land, house, and women is outweighed by the risk they face.

We've arrived at the point where so many nations have amassed such an incredible amount of weaponry that, as we've seen with the Cold War, it just ends in stalemate. This is good in the sense that it avoids death on a large scale, but poor border controls meant all the nuclear weapons in the world couldn't stop terrorists from attacking America on 9/11. It takes just a few extremists, with not many resources, to completely throw a country off its notion of what security really means. Barry Buzan, a highly regarded authority on security and securitization, says, "*States generally, and some governments in particular, need threats in order to justify their existence*".

"National security" as presently used in America is an amusing euphemism for "world domination", this is the belief that our nation cannot be secured against Nazis, al-Qaeda, etc, except by pro-actively dominating the world, and incidentally creating more enemies to justify the bloated and wasteful "security" budget. This is why over 70 years after the end of WW2, there are <u>still</u> US troops stationed in the nations of our former enemies, current allies, Germany and Japan - the paranoid nature of our elites leaves them unable to disengage over three-quarters of a century later, for fear that they may lose total control. This belief is why, when we shockingly realized that America's enemies could simply get a visa and invade us by booking a flight, we wound up with a "Department Of Homeland Security" - which is essentially the US government doing the dirty work of imperial peacekeeping against the smelly foreigners, but without having to first go and travel to them like most empires usually do, plus a secret police function deliberately designed to be used against us thrown in for lulz.

98. DEFENSE OF A SINGLE BUILDING

There will come times during collapse conditions when a building will be attacked by raiders or looters - think of the BLM riots and similar "protests", or the Benghazi events recreated in the 2016 movie "*13 Hours*". You should know how to prepare a building for defense and how to go about fighting them off. Isolated buildings like outlying farmhouses, and urban buildings on the outer edges of your area of control will require the ability to withstand close-range assault by hostile raiders while awaiting the cavalry's arrival in the form of the local militia. Such relatively extensive defensive preparations will be less critical in the center of your areas of influence.

Take a few minutes to view this video that draws from lessons learned in Rhodesia and Malaya, to present you with some principles relevant to defending a single isolated building:
https://yewtu.be/Q1rgVupHp-s

If raiders take severe casualties every time they attempt to enter a home, they will rapidly become discouraged and decide it's best to look elsewhere. To encourage this, it's good practice to wound the enemy by shooting them in the upper right of the torso (or in the pelvis if they're wearing armor). This is a roughly 6x6in square area, and a man (or woman) shot in this area becomes incapable of firing a weapon from that shoulder and needs medical treatment. Since 90% of people are right-handed, practicing this ensures that you'll be able to put 90% of people attempting to raid your home out of action, and demoralize their buddies as you do so. If you were to kill them, it may have the effect of angering the rest of their buddies, who might decide to turn up the violence against you- but wounding them not only takes one person out of action, it also takes at least two more who are needed to carry them away and treat them. You should be able to easily make such a shot from at least 200yds/200m away with a little practice at a firing range, and if the hostile group is mixed-gender, be sure to shoot any women first, so the men instinctively stop to render assistance to them - again, be careful because although it may be necessary, needlessly killing their women or young kids may worsen their actions.

As best you can, you should adapt existing buildings to allow for all round defense against attack. Strong stone or brick buildings are preferred, with barricades built between buildings (eg: between house, barn and garage build crude fencing, then strengthen it with sandbags and walls of reinforced earth, forming an enclosed space between them). The next time you move, try to buy a brick or other masonry house and upgrade its security, or better yet, start with a bare lot and custom-build a stout house with integral defenses. Two good starting points for house designs are Mexican-style walled courtyards and buildings with square bastions (aka Cooper corners). These projecting corners eliminate the blind spots common to typical square or rectangular houses.

For greater detail on this topic, see the book "*The Secure Home*" by Joel Skousen. James Wesley Rawles' novel "*Patriots: Surviving the Coming Collapse*", also has detailed design descriptions for ballistically-armored window shutters and doors, as well as details on constructing neo-medieval door bars. There's architectural consulting services in the US that specialize in increased-security custom-builds or retrofit upgrades, like Safecastle and Hardened Structures.

Unfortunately, most houses in the USA are built of little more than a wood frame covered with plaster and plastic siding, or similarly weak materials. Removing the plaster from the inside will enable you to line the exposed hollows of the frame with bags of gravel or sand, and then these bags can be held in place by nailing plywood sheets in place where the plaster was. This method reduces but does not eliminate the risk that the wall's interior will catch fire. Alternatively, walls can be lined with sandbags or boxes of dirt or gravel (either inside or outside), however this leaves a risk of fire. Carpet that can't be removed should be soaked in borax or dirt to reduce fire risk where possible. Borax can also be liberally sprinkled into wall cavities to slow the spread of fire.

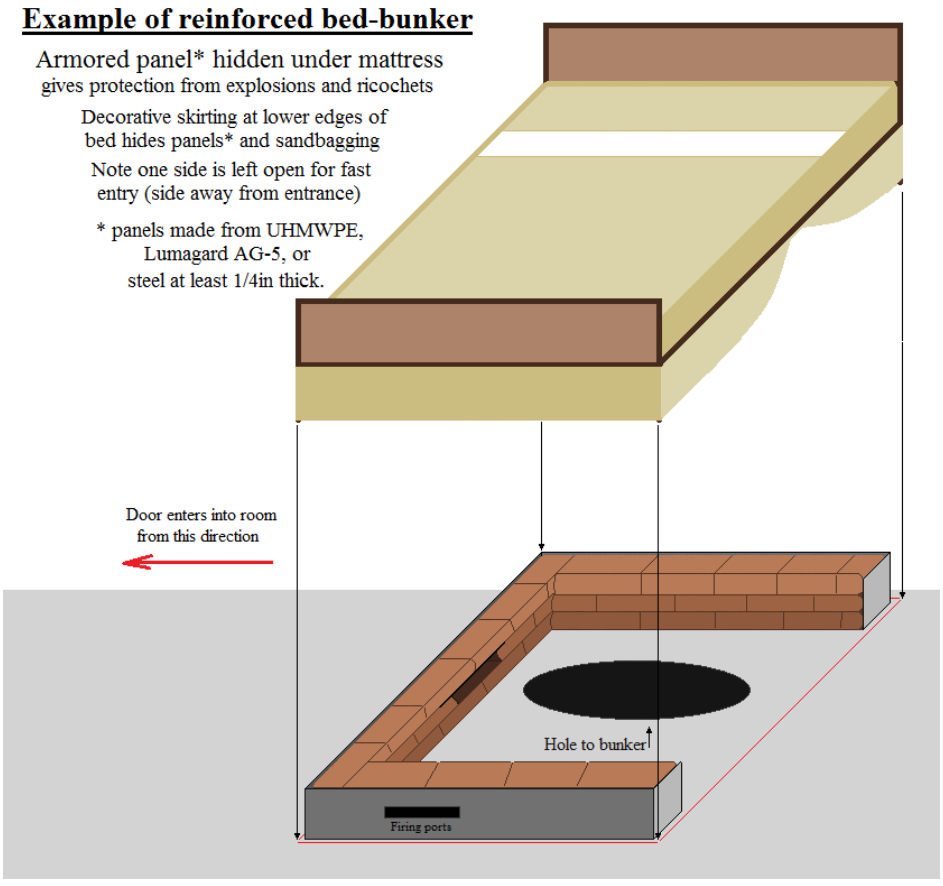
Most exterior doors are what is called "pre-hung" - this means the manufacturer provides the door, jamb, hinges, and sometimes the surrounding trim plus locks all assembled and ready to go. Pre-hung doors cost more, but they save construction time, which is often better than relying on an overworked carpenter subcontractor who's in a hurry to finish installing your door and move on to the next jobsite.

Carpenters attach the door assembly in the opening with shims (pieces of angled wood shingles) and a few nails. Some use a series of shims on the sides and a couple across the top, others leave the assembly supported in only a few spots. Either way, the average modern door and jamb are about as strong as a cardboard box - what's the point of installing elaborate locks on a door attached to a jamb held with shims and a few finishing nails? None.

Now, without ripping off the trim on your exterior and interior walls, there are ways to make your external doors stronger and safer. Firstly, pry off the doorstop – that's the trim on the jamb that the door closes against. Find where the jamb has been tacked through the shims and drive a long deck screw (about 3-4in long) in each location. This will go through the 3/4-inch jamb, the ~1/4-inch shim and about two inches into the wall stud. Don't over-tighten the screws, or you could jam your door by bending the frame. Drive them flush then reinstall the stop. This secures the doorjamb to the house-frame, which requires far more force to knock down. Improve the door hinges by replacing at least one of the (usually short) screws in the wall-side portion of each hinge with long steel deck screws that will reach well into the wall studs. Finally, we reinforce the keepers - this is a piece of hardware opposite the hinges, where the latch and lock-bolt from the door hook into. These too are normally mounted with puny screws that should be replaced with more deck screws. If you can only add two long screws in the entire door, use them here.

If power is available to pump water, garden sprinklers can be mounted high on the walls or at the edge of the roof and feeding from a tank or local water source to put out any attempt to set fire to the building. Suitable plumbing and valves would make it possible to selectively switch on only the sprinklers that were needed to douse flames (such as those created by a thrown molotov). In any case, one should have suitable fire extinguishers on hand, ideally one per room, but at least two per outlying house.

Additionally, be sure to have containers filled with sand to smother fires wherever might be at risk - this will also serve when all the extinguishers have been used up.



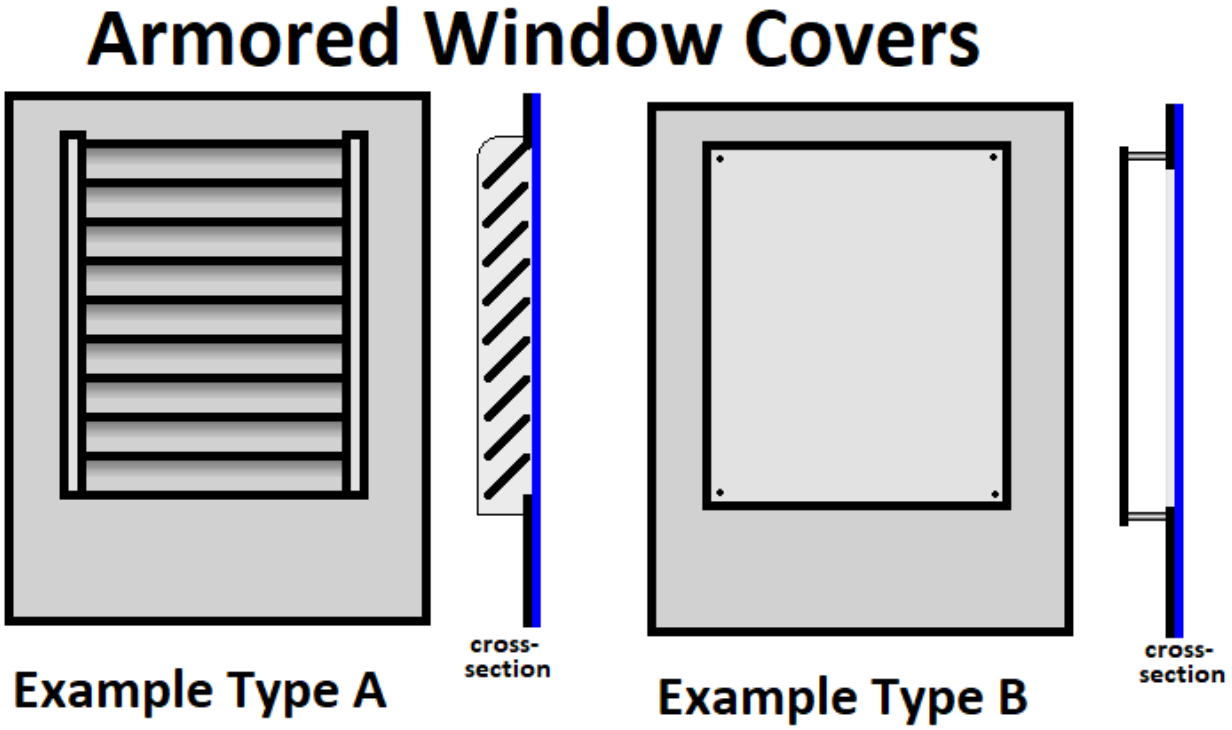
A strongly-defended house has to be taken floor by floor, or even room by room; hence the danger when on the offensive of allowing the enemy to take a building and organize any resistance; but once a house has been entered, and fighting is proceeding on the upper floors, the attackers should post one or two men on the ground floor to watch the street and to guard against surprise.
Strong resistance in houses is best reduced by working round the flanks to the rear, enclosing the several defense areas in a number of small pockets which can be reduced one by one. In defense, do not allow a fortified house to be isolated and cut off – use tunnels to link it to other defenses.

To adapt to guerrilla-style tactics, any natural cover the enemy is going to use to approach the house must be turned into a hazard with anything from barbed wire, jagged steel caltrops, sharpened wooden stakes, boobytraps, or even just broken glass (or home-made landmines and claymores, if you can make them) – obviously, this is only AFTER the rule of law has vanished.

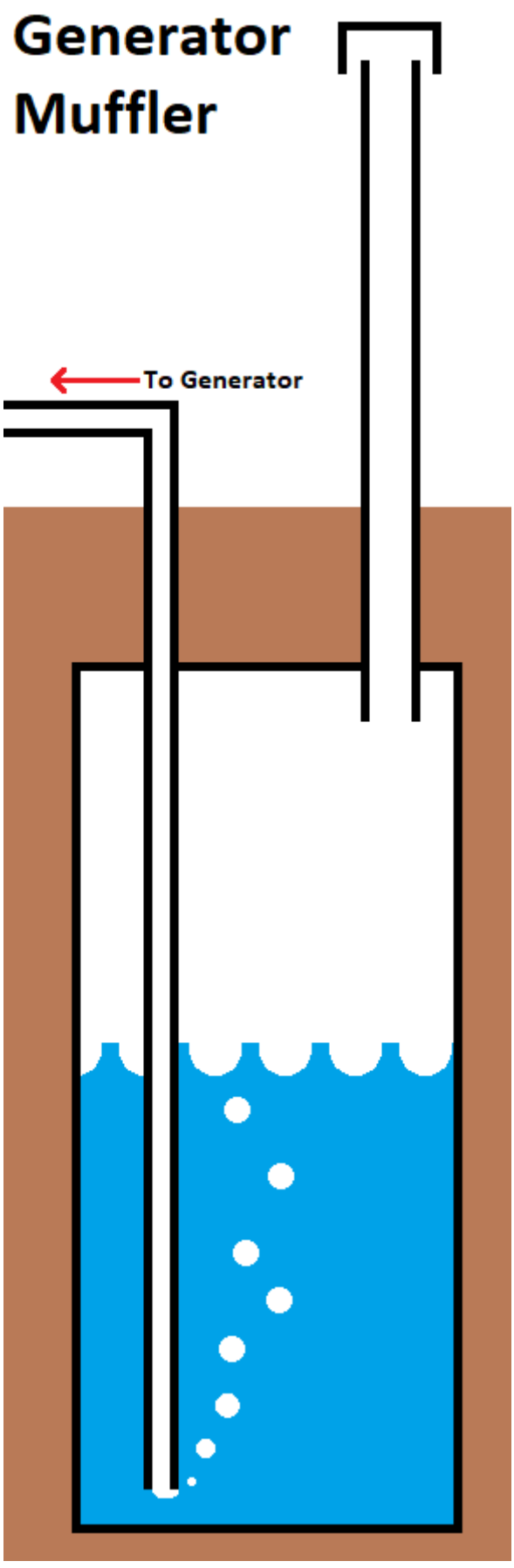
Again, if power is available, have discreet CCTV cameras observing the approaches to the land and buildings, with video feed funnelled to a central room so a single person can keep watch over the area. In time of crisis, residents can take turns keeping watch over the perimeter, and immediately use handheld radios and a hard-wired land line to contact the militia headquarters both in town and on-site. A low-voltage capacitive alarm fitted to your perimeter fences can easily be powered from a solar-recharged battery, and will set off an alarm if the fence is cut.

Avoid moving around outdoors at night, even if you have night vision equipment: assign curfew times, and warn your people to assume anyone moving around outside at night within curfew times is an enemy - kill them the moment you hear them moving about.

Before SHTF, prepare covers for your windows (think of the plywood covers people put on their house windows in tornado-prone areas) to be put up when SHTF. If carefully designed, these can be made so light from outside enters, but anyone outside cannot see indoors. Using DIY armor panels such as described in the "Hillbilly Mad Max" section, or with clear Lumagard AG-5 panels, they can also be made bullet-resistant to reduce the danger that raiders can snipe people inside. If you cannot permanently install bulletproof steel window shutters these are an excellent and cost-effective way to increase your family's safety without forcing you to live like some kind of primitive cave-dweller. Of course, you should still apply WW2-style blackout conditions at night, and minimize the use of indoor lighting when possible anyway to avoid drawing attention. The diagram shows two examples of armoured window shutters that can be manufactured well before SHTF, and kept in storage in the meantime.



If you get a generator, ***don't*** get a 2-stroke generator - these are extremely noisy and almost impossible to silence. Rather, select a **4**-stroke generator, these can be further quietened by having the exhaust pipe removed and replaced with an extended pipe, leading to an oil drum buried and part-filled with water to act as an excellent (secondary?) muffler. (See diagram below.) Building a padded box around the generator, putting it under a table and stacking sandbags around and over the table, or even putting it in a small underground room/bunker will all help silence the noise.



Chicken-wire netting is an excellent material for permanent camouflage against aerial observation, especially when garnished with simulated greenery. One useful and quite long-lasting garnish is feathers - these usefully come in natural colors, and white feathers can be dyed green or tan as required. Once tied onto the wire, you'll need to use the roughest possible broom or brush to “rough up” the feathers so they lose their natural smoothness. Sadly, white feathers appear too dark against snow, so for snow you’ll need to use the whitest possible synthetic white cloth, torn into strips and frayed - military engineer tape is ideal for this.

However snow will settle onto the mesh and garnish if it's reasonably thick. Where possible, unmodified natural material should also be used- for example, long dry grass or thin leafless branches. Hessian can be dyed or painted any desired colour and used in the same way, but it can rot over long periods of time. Synthetic fabrics can also be used in the same way to simulate greenery but are often too smooth in texture by themselves. Combining several different types of garnish will ensure a varied texture. Be sure to check the effect from the air with a drone or similar device throughout the construction of any camouflaged installation.

Cutting green leaves and branches to use for camouflage should be discouraged, as these will begin to wilt immediately and would need frequent replacement to avoid discovery. While useful to temporarily disguise vehicles, avoid the use of cut branches, etc as camouflage for static positions like bunkers. If considered necessary for permanent positions or installations, plant any required camouflaging trees and shrubs as needed on or around your long-term positions. Decorative rosebushes planted in your garden for example, could help to disguise a bunker set into a corner of your yard and the thorns will also add a slight deterrent effect to any curious inquiry. If vines and ivy grow in your area, they're especially useful to camouflage buildings as they’ll grow up walls or any trestles on them.

Flat surfaces can be textured to seem more natural by painting them with a good thick undercoat of paint and throwing generous handfuls of small wood-chips, sawdust, or sand and dirt onto it before it dries. Once dry, the surface can then be camouflage-painted if necessary. This is especially useful when creating a false rock or similar device to use as an observation post: cover a light wooden frame with chicken-wire and cover the wire with rough cloth such as hessian. Then apply paint and texturing to match the local terrain and add garnish as needed, cutting observations holes as necessary before positioning it. The end results are limited only by your imagination.

Inside each house should be a fortified room (usually built into the main bedroom or other central location), with sandbag-lined walls, an underground strongpoint/bunker with firing loops possibly dug under the floor or built beneath the overhead protection of a reinforced and sandbagged table or bed (*see images*), and with hard-wired communications to the town's central defense HQ - this will most likely be set up in the Police station after SHTF. The fortified room will be your Alamo in case the enemy enters the building, and also doubles as a casualty collection point.

If/when enemy infiltrators attack your home and breach the exterior doors or walls, you'd retreat to this room and hold the enemy off (if necessary, install a firing hole into the door if it's reinforced) while your town's quick reaction force (QRF) comes to your aid. Pick-ups converted into technicals would be ideal for this use, held in standby at the defense HQ or other pre-positioned areas near the people who operate them.

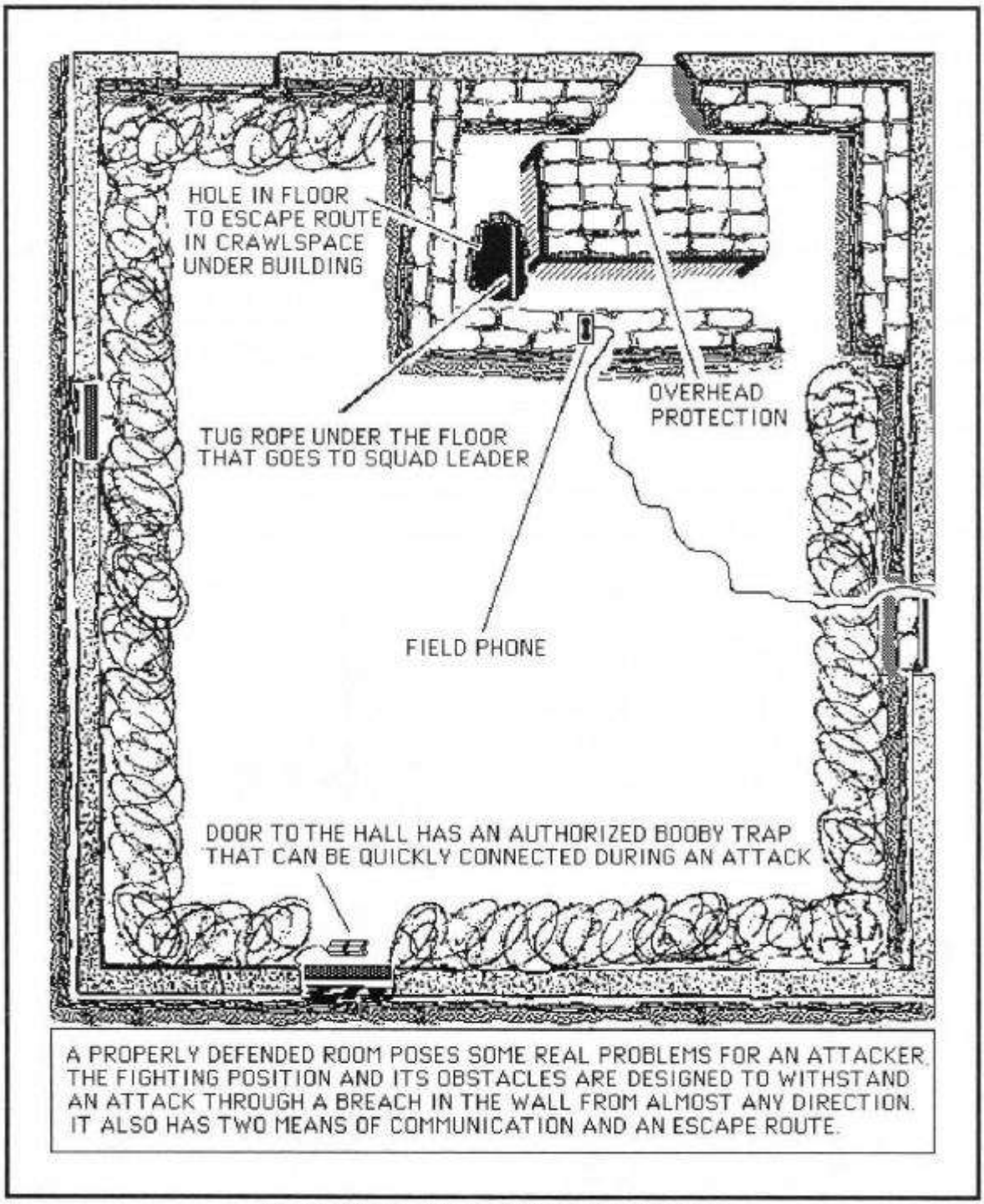
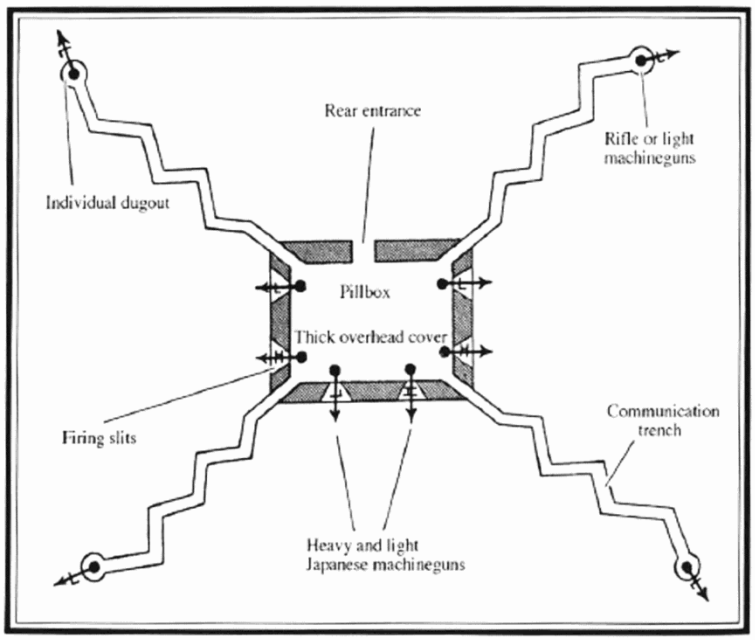


Figure 23.10: The All-Around Room Defense

Houses and other buildings used as strong-points on the edge of your town's area of control should be fortified, and trenches, covered trenches or tunnels leading out to outposts (fighting bunkers) should be added, much like the Japanese used on Iwo Jima and other islands they defended - see the diagram. The fortified house takes the place of the pillbox, the individual dugouts become one- or two-man fighting positions, mainly firing to the sides, enabling flanking fire on approaching enemies.



[Source: TM-E 30-480 (1944), p. 160]

Fortifications like castles (or on a smaller scale, fortified homes and farms) aren't static obstacles: they're a means of area denial. Designed to contain an armed garrison and dominate a piece of land, they provide defenders the ability to withstand attack, and then sally out and counterattack. Built a day's travel apart, it means you can't ignore them and just march past – the garrison can and will attack you, or your logistic train, and they can attack when you're most vulnerable, like when you camp for the night.

Be sure to camouflage all the positions so your foes don't expect to be fired on as they sneak up. Trenches should be at least 30 yards long (27m) but usually no more than 60yd (55m), they don't need to zigzag as they do in the diagram as long as they're fully covered and underground. The only visible parts of the dugouts are the well-camouflaged firing slots, only 4-5in high and a foot or two wide. Careful landscaping disguises the whole thing from observation. Camouflage synthetic materials like nylon sandbags with mud.

Don't forget some barbed wire lanes to funnel any enemies into your fields of fire. Even better, let thorny bushes grow over the wire, as barbed wire may tell them they're entering a trap. With thorny bushes hiding your wire you can have them follow a clear lane right into a firing line without them noticing, then mow them down like grass before they suspect a thing.

In urban areas, walls canalize enemy personnel - hallways and alleys with strong walls should have lateral doorways blocked off forcing the enemy to assault directly into fortified positions at the far end of the hall to proceed. In attempting to do so, they will take mass casualties. Should positions become untenable, friendly troops should withdraw at right-angles to the enemy axis of advance, leaving the enemy to assault further friendly locations arranged as defense in depth. This will minimize friendly casualties, and maximize enemy ones. Entry hallways in apartment blocks are especially suited to such methods. *Appendix C* of the manual **FM 90-10** "*Military Operations On Urban Terrain*" should be of great use to you in arranging matters around buildings.

There are those who will try to argue that CQB **only** encompasses urban warfare - structure entry and clearance. Not so. Close Quarter Battle is determined by proximity. In the larger scheme of things CQB (or in plain English, "*short-range combat*") encompasses ALL fighting at ranges shorter than roughly 150 feet, even if it's in forest, jungle, etc. CQB occurs whenever we close with the enemy in an effort to defeat them by whatever means necessary.

Urban CQB (aka room clearing) is simply a subset of CQB in general, with its own specific TTP's (Tactics, Techniques and Procedures) - it is, in fact, a subset of MOUT (Military Operations in Urban Terrain). Room clearing is a form of CQB but not the only form. There's a whole industry built up around Urban CQB tactics that are really only suited for SWAT-style entry in permissive environments against people who aren't ready to fight back. Don't be taken in by the hype.

Start and focus on the tactical basics – it doesn't matter whether you learn the basics in the woods, they transfer to all environments. Fire and movement is fire and movement. Concentrate on weapon manipulation, basic tactics, and patrolling.

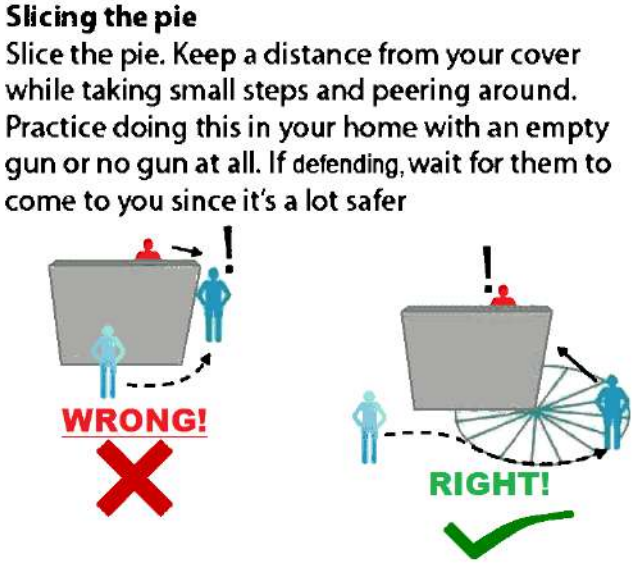
Remember always that room clearing is a law enforcement tactic, not a military one - it relies on having **both** the element of surprise ***and*** severely outnumbering and outgunning whoever's inside. These assumptions don't hold in military action- you're rarely, if ever, going to have the element of surprise to the degree SWAT teams do when they're raiding people without the slightest clue anybody is coming for them in the middle of the night. It simply DOES NOT WORK in other contexts - you CANNOT get inside an opponent's OODA loop, and using dynamic room entry actually **DOUBLES** the time-to-fire for those entering a room: **https://yewtu.be/GgcfApgk0ps**

SWAT entries are low-risk - when entry is assessed as high-risk, police don't enter. A whole SWAT team kicking a door in on a methhead, or serving a warrant on an old lady who forgot to pay her parking tickets, is *not* high-risk - it's nothing more than police-state sponsored PSYOP - a show of force and power to instil fear in anyone that might dare stand in their way as 99.9% of SWAT warrants could easily be served by a few regular uniformed officers knocking politely on the door. A "high-risk" warrant for a person or contraband is ***not*** the same as the Marines clearing houses in Fallujah - if a bad guy barricades themselves somewhere, police will sit outside and negotiate, or else they might blow it up or burn it down (check out the MOVE police bombing here). In true combat situations where the other guy shoots back and sets up things like barricades and booby-traps, dynamic CQB methods are as worthless as tits on a bull, and get the assaulters killed.

When police are dealing with an actual dangerous criminal, they catch them when they're in transit between home/work/etc. - that's the safest time to catch someone. Busting down someone's door who's going to fight back is the last thing they want to do. The police busting down doors is about intimidation and degradation. It shows their overwhelming power over the people and makes sure the targeted group feels like subjects instead of free men. Not the worst thing to happen when they're dealing with the criminal population, however cops now feel that anyone who is not a cop is a criminal, which is an extremely bad thing, for everyone in society.

Learn how to use limited entry CQB tactics instead, they're something that can be used even by a person working alone, as demonstrated here by Former Green Beret Mike Glover:
https://yewtu.be/BIz_DhJH7eg
No seriously, people pay hundreds to learn what he covers in this video in just 30min.

Pieing-off as mentioned in the above video with Mike Glover is a simple maneuver that becomes a part of nearly every more complicated urban movement. Here it's again for your benefit: **https://yewtu.be/IrulFx7mMkU**
This other video shows how to pie-off using proper CQB footwork, though the guy is very "jerky" in his movements: **https://yewtu.be/gTcC_H-bs_w**



Regardless of what you choose as your standard operating procedures (SOPs) for combat, especially urban combat, you MUST practice them force-on-force (ideally with paintballs or airsoft) to get your people thinking about procedures, angles, potential threats, and how to overcome them. Once you have practiced them, you can revise them where necessary to fit your group's abilities and needs and improve them until you can counteract most of the likely threats you might face.

http://iteroni.com/watch?v=XWiY-aN4HKQ (45min, but definitely worth watching, the entire channel is excellent for urban CQB information, all based on limited-entry tactics).

In combat, you want to avoid clearing rooms. If you absolutely must, go high-intensity, and frag/concuss them before entering (or incinerate them, like with a flamethrower...). The more you're worried about civilians and hostages in the rooms, the less pre-entry violence you can use, meaning more risk for the entry team - that's why tier one units like Delta practice so much.



In the Middle East, house walls are sturdy and likely to stop bullets. In the US, most buildings have plaster-board walls that merely provide concealment. This doesn't mean that tactical clearing, or "fighting from the door", is useless: tactical clearing itself is fast- the door is breached, you appear in the open door, and any threats are immediately engaged. You can follow up with entry if necessary.

Whether or not the walls are bulletproof, it's far better to pie off the room than to stack up and run inside before the threats have been engaged, particularly when you're unable to shock breach the room (explosives/flashbang/frag etc). The other side of that coin is; if the walls don't provide cover, then what's stopping you emptying out a whole house-full of enemies by just pulling up with a technical halfway down the street and hosing down the building with machine-gun fire well before you even consider going in to mop-up any survivors?

Of course, if you know an enemy is located within a building or room and you ***know*** there are no friendlies there, then the best option of all is to use explosives to blow the damn thing up with them in it. This includes baiting them into occupying a decoy house that was rigged to blow (just saying - that trick worked for the jihadists in Fallujah until the Marines got wise to it...). Always be on the lookout for the same tricks mentioned in this book, since they may very likely be applied against you by any enemies who also heard of or thought of them as well.

Other points to remember if you're fighting in urban areas are:
> Don't lean against walls. It's noisy and increases your likelihood of getting hit by ricochets. Consider that depending on material and thickness, walls may not be bulletproof or even fragment-proof.

> Ensure that as a minimum, the lead man entering rooms is wearing body armor plates; level IV plates stop bullets, so the lead man in the stack can act as mobile cover that can shoot back. It's gruesome but one of you getting shot is better than all of you getting shot. If needed urban bulletproof shields like SWAT teams use can be made by readers using the information included elsewhere in this book, if it's legal to make and own them in your location.

When performing Urban CQB training, the ideal method to deter CoD/SWAT-style run-and-gun nonsense is to start by running CQB paper target drills over and over with airsoft weapons or paintball guns, telling them to treat it realistically. Then, without warning them, after 4 or 5 runs, have someone hide inside and shoot back: a sharp learning curve, but less sharp than live ammo.

If your home is built on a concrete slab, you can drill a hole through this under your safe room and build an underground bunker/ storage space that way. If you can tunnel under an adjacent building with a cement slab you can quickly build a large and effective bunker. Should you hit any pipes or other underground structures, the best solution is to dig under or around, not to cut through them.

Generally speaking, tunnelling is your friend- a tunnel joining multiple buildings enables people to move between them safely even if enemies with artillery fire on your town.

If your house is on stilts dig a trench under your house and shore up the sides with wood or panelling, leading from an escape hatch in the floor of your most secure room (usually your main bedroom) to the perimeter for escape and use the excavated dirt to fill sandbags. Use the sandbags to build walls along the edges of the house, and along the top edges of your trench. Roof the trench with more sandbags if possible. This way you'll have a safe way to escape even if raiders come and attack your home with heavy equipment.

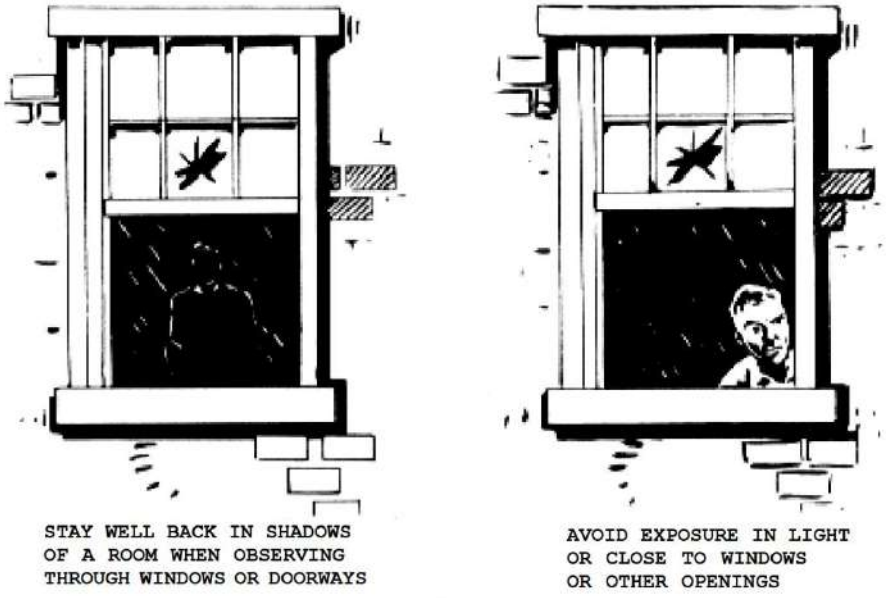


Image from U.S. Army manual FM 21-75 (1944) *Scouting, Patrolling, and Sniping*

To tunnel easily, first dig down, and then dig across. It's a good idea to put two right-angle bends, one sideways along it, and the other upwards at the exit. This prevents explosions being funnelled down into your tunnel, and disguises the source of the tunnel somewhat, making it more defensible. Tunnel mouths need to have grenade sumps and sumps that will control liquid - both water and any flammable fuel that an enemy might pour into the tunnel if they discover it. Imitate the Vietcong in this- their tunnel complexes were marvels of defensive engineering.

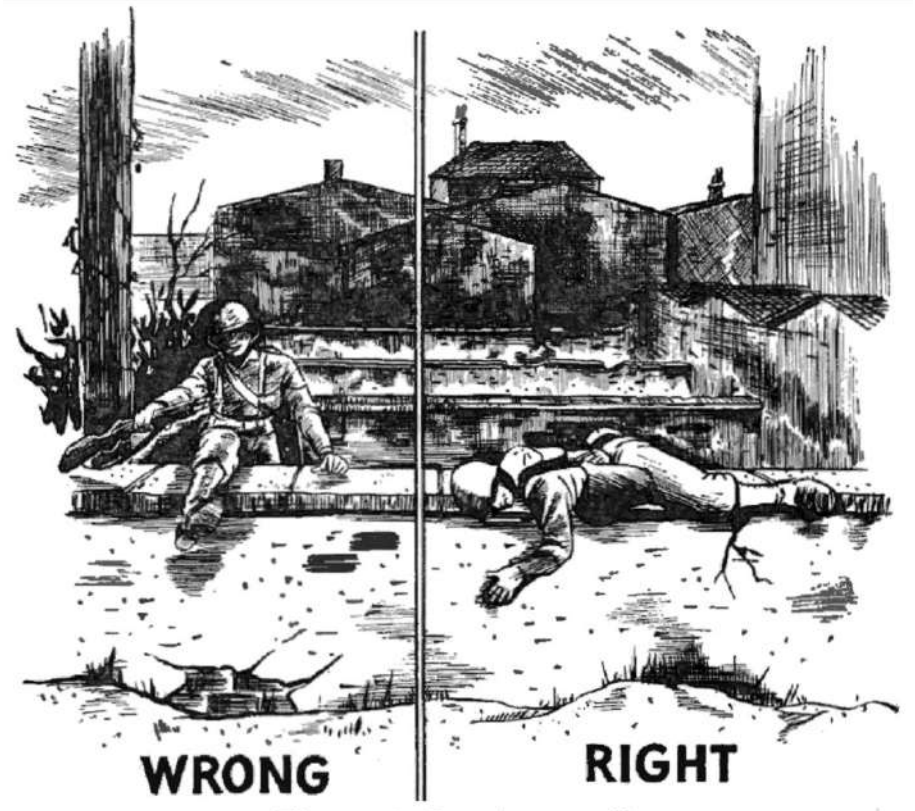


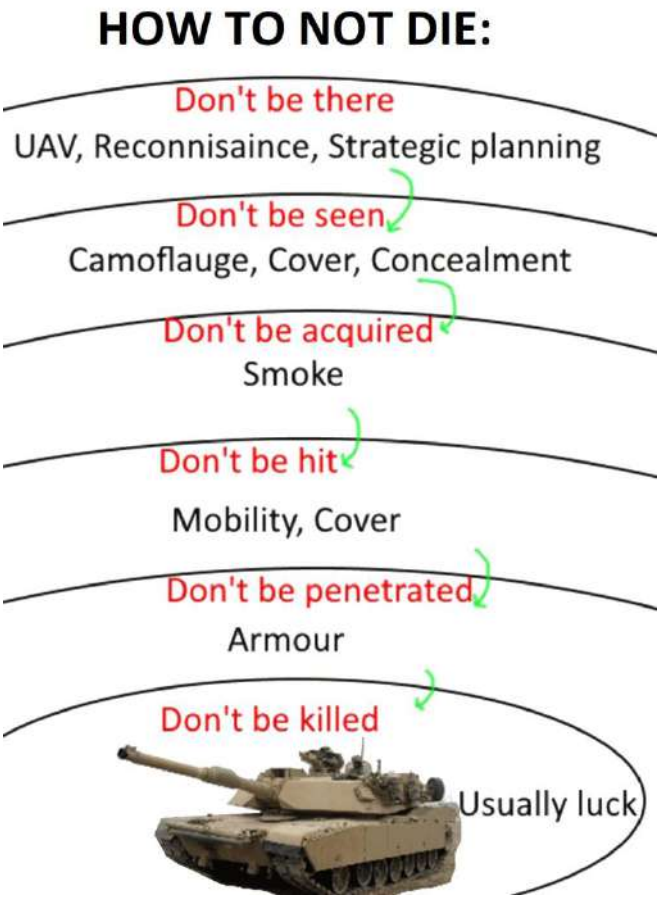
Figure 22. Crossing a wall.

Image from U.S. Army manual FM 31-50 (1943) *Fortified Position Combat in Towns*

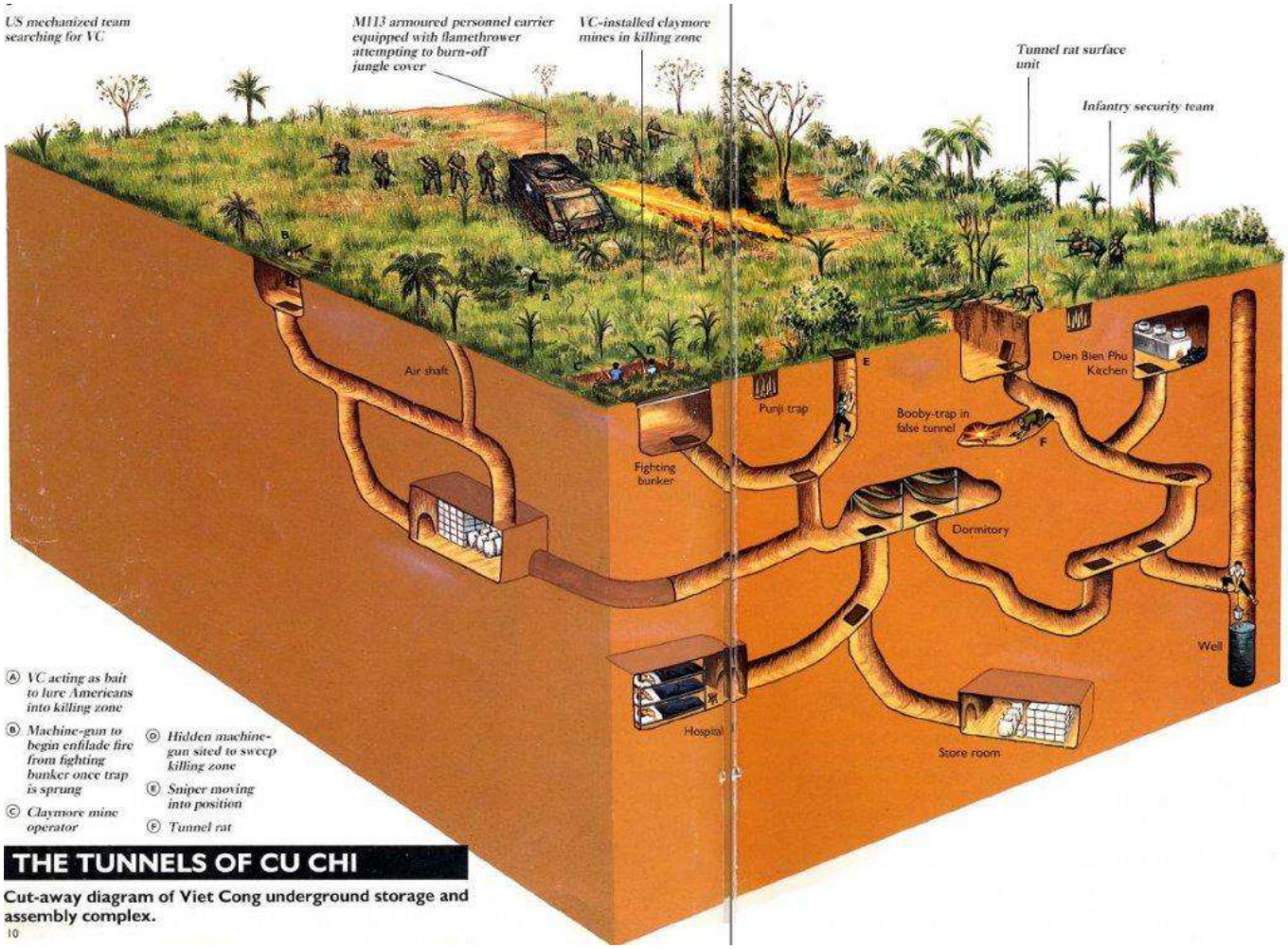
Remember that if you put a foxhole under trees or anything else, you MUST give your hiding-hole overhead cover, otherwise the shrapnel from anything exploding against branches or walls will kill anyone underneath.

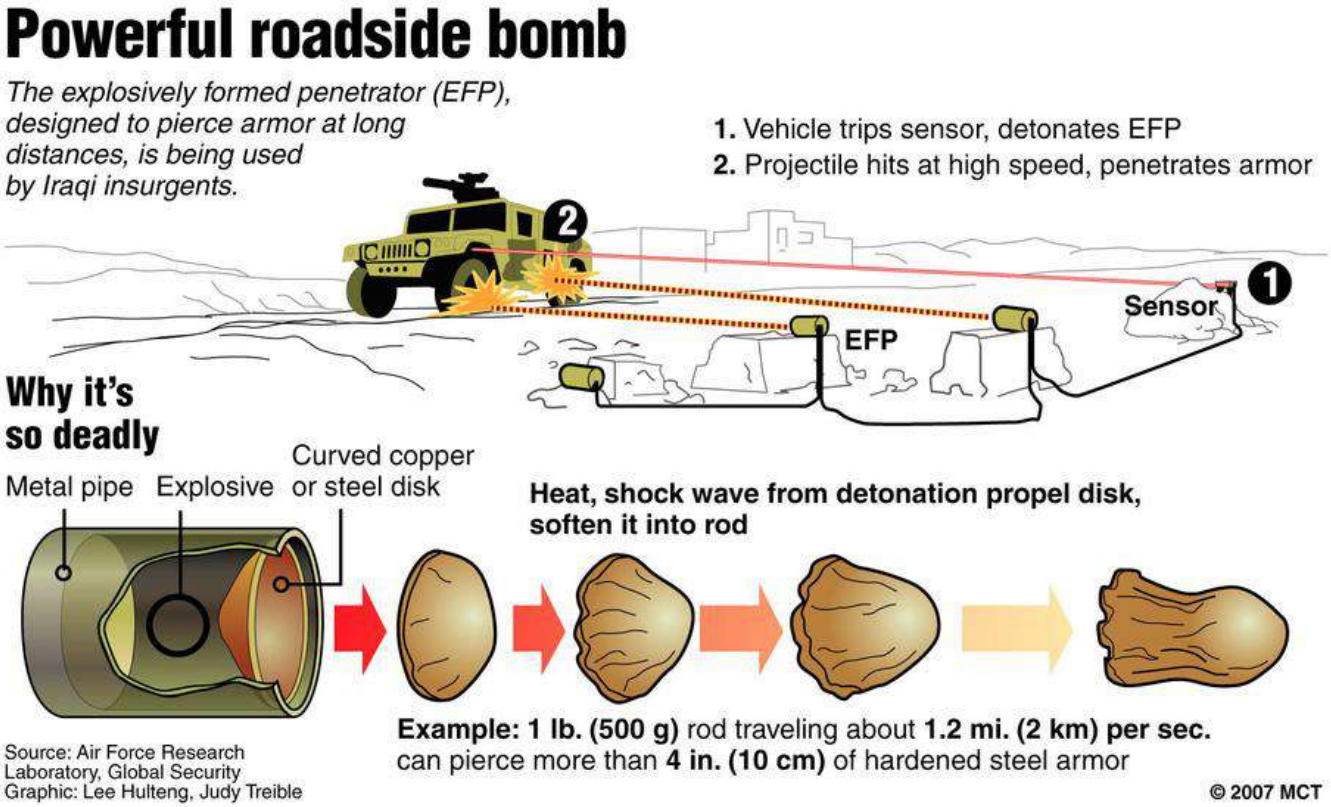
An UHMWPE panel an inch or more thick, or a Lumagard AG-5 panel, will stop bullets up to 5.56mm or 7.62mm as long as they aren't AP rounds. These can be used where bulk or weight considerations prevent using sandbags or boxes of gravel to stop bullets, such as over windows, over car doors, or on a bed under the mattress. A layer of plywood or other material should be used to disguise and protect the panel if it's visible. You could also make laminated armor plates as linked to elsewhere in this book.

The purpose of effective camouflage techniques is not just becoming undetectable to the enemy, but also to trick them into believing that you're somewhere you're not with the help of decoys. If something sticks out in one spot, it's easy to use it to mislead your enemy to think you're over there, and not where you actually are.



Use salvaged building materials to save money whenever you build defensive structures of any kind - remember you need <u>two</u> sandbag thicknesses (or one length) to stop a 7.62mm NATO round, or better one sandbag of sand/dirt to slow the bullet and another of gravel to stop it.





A good basic primer for urban fortification is to get a copy of the book **Elite 168: "*World War II Street-Fighting Tactics*"** by Osprey publishing. Another handy little book of theirs that may come in useful for TEOTWAWKI needs is **Elite 100: "*World War II Axis Booby Traps and Sabotage Tactics*"** - interestingly, except for the ignition triggers being mostly electronic these days and the modern use of EFPs (go look the details of constructing *that* up on a VPN or through Tor, even though the info is unclassified), almost all the information within is still relevant to what today's soldiers have faced with IEDs in Iraq and Afghanistan. Yet another useful one is Osprey publishing's **Elite 236: "*Vietnam War Booby Traps*".**

After SHTF, or during pre-SHTF disasters, don't use lights at night-time. If you're stocking propane-powered lanterns, solar-powered flashlights, or other unusual supplies, using them at night will announce to everyone within line of sight that you have more than the "usual" supplies. Expect them to come knocking in your door. At most, let a fire burn in the fireplace if other people in the area are doing the same, but in general, avoid drawing attention to your house.

A guard dog is certainly a welcome addition to any family trying to defend their house. Although he probably eats a lot of food, the investment is worth it. Dogs tend to sleep light, so let them sleep right next to your food storage areas, and make sure you sleep within earshot - if the dog barks in the night, don't consider it an annoyance, consider it an **INTRUSION**.

Smoke bombs can be useful for covering a planned escape from your house. You can purchase high volume smoke bombs that will quickly fill up any house with an unbreathable cloud of military-grade White smoke. Trip wires are great perimeter defenses. You can buy them online from Cheaper Than Dirt (they run a few hundred dollars), or make your own. They will give you early warning if someone is approaching. You can connect tripwires to flares, shotgun shells, light sticks or other warning devices. This way, you can have an audible or visible alert, your choice. In addition to these, you can make significant fortification-style improvements to your home. While none are particularly cheap, they'll certainly help defend your home:

> Replace glass windows with non-breakable plexiglass
> Add steel bars to windows
> Replace all outside door locks with heavy-duty deadbolts
> Replace all outside doors with steel doors, preferably window-less ones.
> Remove bushes and other shrubs where people might hide
> blackout windows to stop light escaping at night (as done by London's residents during WWII)
> Build secret hiding places for food, coins, or even people
> Create escape hatches or passageways
> Rig pepper-spray booby traps

These aren't as absurd as they might at first sound. Many living in rough cities already have steel bars covering their windows, and removing extra bushes and shrubs is a well-known tactic for making your home a safer place.

WHERE TO GO As mentioned earlier, if you have a designated place of refuge (Grandma's house, a cabin in the woods, etc.), head straight for it. If not, you're basically driving anywhere you can go, so try to head for a forested area near a creek or river where you can get some water. However remember that being mobile is, in most cases, an extremely hazardous situation.

The most likely problem with farms, as was the case in the Yugoslav wars, the American frontier, Rhodesia/Zimbabwe, or South Africa today, is that your neighbors can't hear the gunfire when you're attacked by an enemy war party. Though you obviously want some privacy, you still want a few neighbors near you within earshot of gunfire. You also need reliable and un-jammable communications to your town militia HQ, which means a buried communication landline (ideally connected to an old-fashioned military field telephone, or a DIY copy of one). Farms are best arranged in groups of four, with the houses within half a mile or so of each other at most, better yet just a few hundred yards, which creates four-family "micro-villages" the inhabitants of which can act together as a community to protect and help one another, even when bullets aren't flying.

Finally, a gun in your hand is totally worthless against an assailant unless you're fully willing to use it to defend yourself. You must understand that the new rules may require you to defend your life personally.

In conclusion, choosing to remain in a city *may* be a rational choice for many people in many situations. However, as you have seen from the dangers described here, the further away you can move from population centers in general before a collapse, the better your chances of surviving, as it's definitely not an optimal choice.

The methods and expedients listed below should guide the preparation of buildings for defense. They're lifted directly from hard-won actual wartime WW2 training material on the subject:

> a. Every defensive measure should be taken to prevent the enemy from getting above the defender and fighting his way down.

> b. Principal, alternate, and supplementary loopholes for riflemen and for all weapons should be prepared, reinforced, and camouflaged. Loopholes may be made high so that the firer can fire from a platform, or low so that he can fire from the prone position. Low loopholes are blocked with sandbags when not in use. It's good practice to fire successive shots from different loopholes, if practicable. Dummy loopholes and dummy heads may be used to draw the enemy's fire. *If you cannot entirely conceal something, make multiple dummies that look like it*.

> c. Use great care in selecting firing positions. Always try to fire from unexpected places. Weapons fired from windows or large openings should be located well inside rooms. The area in front of the weapon should be wet to avoid dust and disclosure of positions by muzzle blast. Don't allow weapon muzzles to project from cover. Snipers should frequently change position.

> d. Remove or sandbag windowpanes to prevent injury from flying glass. Screen or close openings, including the chimney, to exclude grenades. Place curtains over the upper portion of openings to darken the room and prevent observation by the enemy.

> e. Guard against surprise, demolition, and fires. Trip or barbed wires with tin cans on them may give timely warning of enemy approach. The floor over basement dugouts or occupied rooms should be reinforced and fireproofed with wet earth or masonry. Keep some firefighting equipment in readiness for instant use. Remove inflammable materials.

> f. Prepare one or more well camouflaged and sandbagged observation posts in the attic or upper story. These locations may also be used for sniping or to prevent enemy infiltration over the roof.

> g. LOOK OUT FOR BOOBY TRAPS, especially if enemy previously occupied the building.

> h. Always keep one exit available. Breach the walls of interior rooms in concealed places, such as behind heavy furniture, under stairs, or other places not easily discovered by the enemy.

> i. Barricade the openings. Doors required for your own use should be bullet-proofed by placing sandbags behind them, and the opening restricted to the minimum necessary for passage. The opening should be so located that the enemy cannot see into the room. In some cases it may be necessary to rehang the door to effect this safety precaution.

> j. Bulletproof parts of all upper floors, particularly the landings. This can be done with sandbags and will afford protection from enemy fire directed up through the floor.

> k. Try to keep an empty room between you and the enemy if he's attempting to breach the wall of the building you're in; otherwise you may be killed by the blast. Immediately after the explosion, take position to fire through the hole keeping alert for any grenades thrown through it.

> i. Drop grenades out of windows on enemy in the street below. Use a slit in the screen for this.

> m. Remove down-spouts, or anything by which an enemy may climb the side of the building.

> n. Fire through the walls or door if the enemy gains access to an adjoining room; fire through the ceiling, if he is upstairs; fire through the floor, if he is downstairs. A .30-06 bullet will penetrate most interior walls and floors.

> o. Prepare observation holes in the floors and walls and cover them with a sandbag.

> p. If you're forced out, retreat toward upper stories unless you've a safe exit prepared in the cellar. It's easier to throw grenades downstairs from upper landings than to throw them upward. Prepare a means of escape from upstairs rooms.

> q. Prepare a barricade in the corner nearest the door if you're cut off and unable to escape from a room, and fight.

99. DEFENSE OF A SINGLE TOWN

Reconnoitre your area now and prepare rough plans for the defense of your neighborhood or town against raiders. I strongly advise that you investigate the "*total defense*" concept pioneered by Switzerland, Finland and Sweden, and imitating it on a smaller scale.

Total defense is a concept of territorial defense based on the use of guerrilla warfare tactics by regular military forces and full societal support to military efforts. The aim is to deter aggression by creating a situation where the country becomes indigestible to aggressors, not least due to the ability of local forces to conduct guerrilla warfare in enemy occupied territory, and the support of those forces by the local population and the government in hiding - "*a rifle behind every blade of grass*". The necessary wartime resilience requires a strong sense of shared identity and values.

It also requires robust physical and psychological foundations that create a will to resist in the population and willingness to accept the inevitable sacrifices involved in a war fought on home turf. Total defense policies seek to build the necessary resilience through whole-of-government and society approaches that institutionalize collaboration between government ministries, civic organizations and the general public. It's cheaper overall in terms of both money and personnel than other defense strategies, but requires more careful thought and planning during preparation.

Its effects can most starkly be seen during the November 1939 Soviet invasion of Finland: the Soviet Union invaded with 600,000 men backed by thousands of tanks, aircraft and artillery. By comparison, the Finnish army was less than half the size, had few tanks and aircraft and suffered chronic ammunition shortages. Nevertheless, the Finns inflicted up to ten times as many casualties on the attacking forces than they suffered - indeed one man, sniper Sïmo Haäyaä, is known to have personally killed over 700 Soviets during the course of the war.

Finland's use of guerrilla warfare was a major factor in its operational success. They exploited the forested, marshy terrain and intense cold to which its troops were acclimatized to target weaknesses in Soviet military leadership, logistics and tactics. Lightly armed and mobile Finnish units using what they called "Motti Tactics", severed Soviet lines of communication and destroyed supplies, splitting Soviet columns into isolated groups that could be defeated piecemeal by the numerically-inferior Finns. The invading Soviet forces suffered enormous casualties and consequently a crisis of leadership and morale.



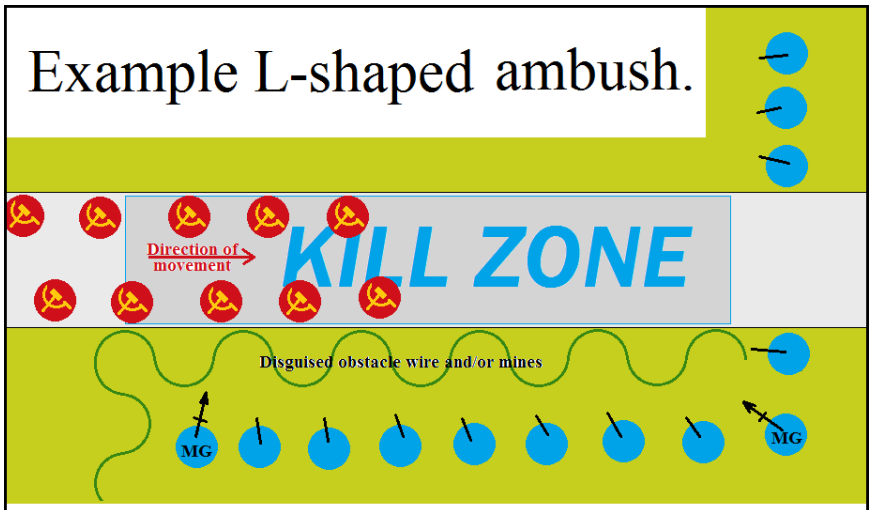
Recent campaigns by non-state groups such as Hezbollah, Chechen guerrillas in Grozny, Islamic State fighters in Mosul, and all sides during the Syrian civil war highlighted the ability of well-trained and highly motivated irregular fighters to confront powerful militaries with superior fire power and technology and deny them victory. Modern weapons technology seems to favor resilient, small, highly mobile, dispersed, and guerrilla-like combat teams.

Low-tech weapons such as a machine-gun or explosives can be combined with tactical deception to affect the enemy to your liking. Sun Tzu's "*The Art of War"*, and "*The 36 Stratagems"*, must be integral reference books for your planning. As stated elsewhere, you should read up on WW2 street-fighting tactics and look for online copies of the old British Home Guard manuals for ideas. Also useful is "***FM-90-10-1 Infantryman's Guide to Combat in Built Up Areas***", though the language is aimed more for officers than the man on the ground. The Yugoslav civil wars provide a plethora of material for post-SHTF defense which you'd do well to study and take notes from.

When you win a battle, don't become too optimistic. If you lose one, don't be too disappointed. When you lose (and you will) learn from the experience and find out what caused you to lose, so you're able to do better the next time. For the tribal guerrilla as you shall be, there's no shame in running from a more powerful foe in order to ambush them as they pursue. At the slightest sign of enemy presence, troops in the advance should halt and set up to ambush anyone approaching. Never ambush from only one direction- this gives enemies a clear direction to assault and fire towards. Rather, always open up on enemies from at least two and even three sides, forcing them to split their forces under fire and make mistakes that will cost them the fight.

Whether you're a latter-day minuteman, a raiding tribal warrior, a guerrilla fighter, a local volunteer militiaman, or a post SHTF-survivalist, you have only two basic tactical operations in combat: the **raid**[1] and the **ambush**[2]. Practice them until they flow naturally, and of course, your own defenses against them, and you'll survive when others won't.
([1] see: ~~**https://yewtu.be/L57tKVJQcQM**~~ (now hidden), **https://yewtu.be/dY0rVnhCSVI** , and **https://yewtu.be/wytY5luyQfg**).
([2]see: **https://yewtu.be/rYfhBxCckXo** , **https://yewtu.be/UOiHGIHtPE0** , **https://yewtu.be/ZMUl9Z_m1KI** and the book "*Ambush!*" in the bibliography)

Be well aware that without any means to really identify anyone, fratricide is a constant concern.



Ambushes are initiated by the team leader activating the weapon that will cause the greatest number of enemy casualties (usually, a claymore set for command detonation) when the enemy team fully enters the kill zone. Ambush team must be very well-camouflaged and not speak, sneeze, smoke, eat, etc, while waiting for the enemy's approach.

Buildings on the edge of town, or on farms, will need more protection work than buildings in the middle of town. Conceal your fortifications. Deceit's the best path to security. Learn the Russian concept of "*maskirovka*" and apply it: Maskirovka holistically incorporates all elements of camouflage, concealment, and decoys (CCD) and tactical battlefield deception into a cohesive and effective philosophy; it's not just about what the enemy doesn't see - it's also what they see that isn't what, or where, they think it is.

During Desert Storm, Iraq used maskirovka to effectively protect its surface-to-surface SCUD missiles despite persistent US air attacks. During the break-up of Yugoslavia, Serbia in particular did the same to protect its forces, especially its armored units. Forces trained in maskirovka possess a strong fundamental knowledge of CCD principles and techniques. You must carefully conduct CCD operations so well-trained enemies don't easily recognize they're being deceived, and vigilantly be on-guard for their own attempts to do the same to you.

Likewise; a secret is not secret if someone else knows about it. If you live in a solid, double-brick home, the strength of the structure will make it a desirable target, so disguise the outside eg. with what looks like shitty plaster or sideboards. Plant hedges over berms and covered trenches, plaster over concrete, build bunkers concealed into the corners of warehouses, etc. The difference between this and military concealment, is that military concealment rarely needs to last for years.

If building your bugout home, consider designing it for fire resistance by choosing non-flammable materials such as double-brick construction or cinder blocks, build it to resist collapse with metal-framed roofs, have sturdy tables to create safe areas even if the roof collapses, and design concealed hiding holes in cupboards, and under stairs and floors. An underground cellar with an additional hidden external entrance that can't be buried by rubble will save your life from almost anything that can be thrown or shot your way. Also refer to **FM 90-10** ***Military Operations On Urban Terrain***, especially Appendix C - it will be of great help to you.

Your home's front door is a natural kill-zone, instead of wasting effort fortifying the door, block up any doorways leading out of the hall and sandbag a pillbox at the opposite end facing the front door- anyone who breaks in will end up stuck in a hallway with a pillbox at one end, forced to move down the hallway past your pillbox to enter the rest of the house. Remember to always have covered, secure escape routes to rapidly leave the area after causing the enemy severe casualties.

You must be prepared to barricade roads on the edge of town and improve natural and artificial obstacles to prevent movement. After SHTF, infiltration by an enemy party intent on doing damage could strike at the heart of your preparations and stores, setting your work back by decades. Even the early Romans had issues with this in their early years, being saved on one occasion thanks to the noise of their geese, who'd been disturbed by an enemy raiding party!



Whenever an attacker crosses a street, he should be targeted by your marksmen, and his progress slowed by ankle-high tripwires, barricades, and booby-traps. Front and rear yards on the edge of town should have the fences strengthened with sandbags, or where possible, rebuilt from concrete, cinderblocks and brick. Each yard should become a kill-zone for any enemy that enters it, with windows and doors leading off them boarded up or sealed to entry with bars or mesh. You're basically creating an urban version of Normandy's bocage, circa 1944. Remember that infantry can really only fight effectively against vehicles in close terrain such as cities or woods.



Take example from the Japanese defense of Iwo Jima - let the enemy's force fall uselessly on decoys, while your men harry them from behind using hidden firing positions at close range.

Dummy positions encourage the enemy to waste ammo, time and effort in attacking them - something as simple as a twelve-inch-deep pit with the bottom lined with dark material appears to be a shoulder-deep trench to observers at a distance, especially when you sit mannequin torsos upright in them. Or, a mound of dirt can look like a bunker by burying cinder blocks on one side and darkening the bottom of the holes with paint or crushed charcoal so they look like firing ports.

Industrial garbage bins are possibly *the* fastest way to create pill-boxes to protect the perimeter of your town, by placing them upside-down over a trench dug to provide an entry-hole and covering them with earth and gravel, then cutting firing ports into the sides and revetting them with logs and sandbags. Obviously, wash garbage bins out thoroughly to avoid disease first:
Part 1 - **https://yewtu.be/xEA8ct7t5E0**
Part 2 - **https://yewtu.be/lFfGHW9xVSg**
Shipping containers and logistics pallets are also excellent building materials for defensive structures if one understands their structural limitations (eg. you can't simply bury shipping containers as the flat faces aren't load-bearing).

Be aware that non-government groups will be able to build recon and armed UAVs or drones in a post-TEOTWAWKI environment, just as ISIS was able to. To protect against this danger*, I suggest reading the following USMC document detailing camouflage and other protection against UAV threats (it's also an excellent guide on modern individual camouflage):
https://tinyurl.com/2ndbn5thmarSIGMANCamoSOP

Having drones able to provide live video feed would be excellent for your own reconnaissance. This Russian UAV footage of a Ukrainian paramilitary patrol moving through a town in the Donbas should be a pertinent reminder of the old infantry maxim: DON'T BUNCH UP! Note how visible (and vulnerable) they are: **https://tinyurl.com/mincedUkranians**

This other video also from the conflict shows the value of real-time UAV tactical surveillance - likely filmed sometime in March of 2022, it shows Russian troops clearing trenches at the bottom of the screen. You can see occasionally see the Ukranian soldiers trying and failing to hold them back at the top of the screen. Notice the Russian troops are getting real-time info from the drone about the enemy's position and activity. **https://tinyurl.com/TrenchClearingUkraine**

Camouflage is just as important at night as it is in daylight. People using night optics can still see movement, line, outline, shape, shadow, and shine. Even without night optics, once your eyes adjust to the low illumination these can all still be seen, even if at much shorter ranges than during daylight.

Remember that **movement is more revealing than color**, day or night.

You must expect any of your antagonists to eventually access thermal vision optics such as those used by civil engineering technicians to spot faulty electronics. Mylar emergency (“space”) blankets will shield you from thermal imaging observation, layer these under tarps, camouflage nets, and/or foliage to hide the shine. Glass or plexi-glass can be used to provide visual observation that thermal imagers cannot see through, place this under a layer that provides visual camouflage and hides shine.



Remember that thermal is defeated by screening heat emitters such as the human body by item/s that are opaque to heat (eg a Mylar space blanket, thick vegetation), but this will not work if the screen absorbs the heat, (eg. because you wrap the Mylar tightly against yourself, or your cooking-fire heats up the tree leaves forming your overhead concealment).



Also remember to minimize electronic emissions such as radio communications as much as possible if there's even the very slightest ***hint*** your enemy has enough electronic know-how to track signals using simple commercial components. Refer here for why: **https://archive.is/LSgw6**

Static radio antennas should be camouflaged by tying branches and foliage to them in order to imitate trees. Alternatively, set antennas up amidst trees to conceal their distinctive shape.

Camouflage netting, tarpaulins, or burlap should be used to camouflage the shape of vehicles, particularly wheels and shadows. Attach the material rolled up on the vehicle flanks, then unroll it and stake it out to blend the vehicle's shape into the terrain when stationary. Crew can use the space beneath to sleep or perform maintenance. Note that wheels provide a distinctive signature to vehicles in both the visual and thermal spectrum. Wherever possible, park vehicles under trees to aid in concealing them from ground or aerial observation (UAVs, etc.).

At all times, stay off the roads to avoid snipers. A long covered approach is always better than a short open route. Be careful of covered approaches that cannot be covered by the observation and fire of an overwatching unit. Units without mutual support are doomed: mutually supported units protect each other from being fixed or assaulted by the enemy.

Long unsupported assaults are suicide. A single unsuppressed enemy soldier can destroy a squad across just 100 meters of fairly open ground as they assault. A good sniper with a self-loading rifle can hit 5 men in under three seconds at 900 meters. An MG in the hands of a well-positioned gunner can potentially hit everyone in the patrol two or three times with one long burst.

Only assault for short distances, and then only against lightly-armed or well-suppressed positions. It's all about suppression. Fire and maneuver is ***the*** key tactic. Use the majority of your force to overwhelmingly suppress the enemy with firepower, and use a small and skilled assault unit to rapidly close on the objective. Fire without maneuver is wasteful and indecisive. Effective suppression is the basis for all infantry tactics.

Defensive positions are always to be considered temporary places to stop and fight from before moving on. All units need multiple positions and the ability to withdraw to alternative positions and continue the fight. In both the defense and the attack, use bounding overwatch to move, and remember that cover is life. Always move from one covered position to another. Remember that good cover is relative to a single enemy position: other enemy positions in mutual support may be able to hit you from other directions and overcome the protection provided by your cover.

A unit in contact needs to have immediate suppression of the enemy position provided by another unit. The measure of success is the number of units that can immediately bring suppression to bear upon enemy contact. Concentrate your fire. Fire control ensures decisive action. In contact, men will disperse their fire. Sequentially destroying targets with point fire is more effective than distributing ineffective fires. Mortars are inaccurate, DIY ones would be even worse. Area suppression is NOT destruction, and your rounds are going to be limited in number no matter where you get the mortar from, so plan to use them carefully and well. Don't waste mortars against bunkers or buildings – you won't cause enough useful damage in any sensible timeframe.

Don't forget to **protect your water supplies**- no matter how good the pipes are, they can easily be broken under abnormal conditions, which will be the new normal if SHTF. Garden hoses can be used to supply water if pipes are damaged. For more defensive considerations, watch: **https://yewtu.be/tapH7d2EPp4**

If you're forced to attack an enemy attempting to muscle in on your town, the most important thing will be to have prepared and trained beforehand, as improvization often fails. You must become skilled at short-range infiltration the way the Vietcong were, learn to move silently and unseen through woods and streets by day or night as the American natives did, and to patiently deceive the enemy regarding your targets and intentions. Skills such as the ability to sneak in at night past sentries and barbed wire needs to be practiced and learned, as do more traditional military skills like fire and maneuver. To invent a *koan* for the occasion: "Strike at weakness, bypass strength, defend weakness, build on strength."

When on the offence, your primary targets should be enemy economic infrastructure such as their power generation plants, water sources and economic hubs such as banks. Of secondary, but still significant importance, should be the enemy's political and security infrastructure such as their military, police and courts, and of course, the individuals who staff the leadership positions of those elements. Don't forget that leftists have gone after families of people they don't like, usually by doxxing their workplaces and leading to people getting fired. Similarly, after SHTF, you must hunt down and eliminate the families and friends of those who oppose you, not merely the enemies themselves. If your town is locked in a post-TEOTWAWKI struggle for survival with the neighboring town, their mayor's family becomes a perfectly legitimate target under such circumstances, and their deaths will provide a poignant reminder regarding why it was a terrible idea for them to attack your town in the first place. Of course, you might not need to eliminate enemy leaders if it's feasible to ~~kidnap~~ place them into involuntary protective custody.

On the other hand, you should avoid targeting ordinary police or military personnel as individuals except perhaps the very topmost leaders - they will be loyal to whoever pays them, and it's therefore better to target the political leadership and then have their police and military to form a security force for whatever puppet you install to control their town- basically you should do the opposite of what the US did in Iraq during Operation "Iraqi Freedom".

One thing I want to make perfectly clear is that while it's counter-productive to attack the rank-and-file elements of the enemy other than is absolutely necessary to impose your will (don't harm an enemy's military or law enforcement personnel unless they're attacking you, for example) it's absolutely critical and necessary to use maximum brutality against the leaders of those groups. It's also ***ALWAYS*** going to be your best-practice policy to target your enemy's enablers before targeting your enemy themselves – if enemy group A relies heavily on finances or support from group B, then it's best to first target group B even if they're currently claiming neutrality in the conflict between you and A. To make a house collapse, it's easiest to break its foundations first.

Again, picture yourself in a post-TEOTWAWKI struggle for survival with the neighboring town. Their chief of police has also been made the leader of their militia forces, and has been reasonably successful against you - there's good reason to make sure that he heads home at the end of the day to find his home ransacked and burning and his wife and kids lying in his yard with their throats slit. Now, you might think that such brutal violence is counter-productive, but you're wrong - the people in the enemy town's militia and police would rapidly realize that such high levels of violence were directed only at their leaders. Further, it shows that you're willing to use any means necessary to defeat them, and leads everyone on their side to start questioning things like if they *really* want that promotion to a role that puts a target on their backs. Power, water, transportation, and governing infrastructure are all valid targets. Starving, trapped people who cannot organize due to your sabotage cannot seize your kids, your guns, or you. If they come after you, and if you're 100% sure you're going down, do what it takes and pull a Samson option- take out as many of them as you can when they come to get you.

Remember, no-knock raids go both ways.

Asymmetric warfare is a natural response to military challenges, especially those from a more powerful or advanced power. It's a good way for the weak to defeat the strong, a concept dating back millennia, and epitomized by the battle of David and Goliath. Asymmetric attacks bypass and avoid the enemy's strengths and instead, concentrate on attacking their weaknesses.

Defensive action should always be predicated on using the element of time to waste and wear out the enemy's offensive force in order to prepare for your own offensive action against the enemy, enabling you to engage and strike them with a decisive and ideally, debilitating, blow.

War is at heart a contest of wills, and victory goes to the one whose will is the stronger. If your will is not strong enough to use ALL the means at your disposal, don't worry, the winners' will be and it will be your wife and kids in the yard with their throats slit.

When you go for a run, there are dogs that see a running man, and seeing running, they see prey, and seeing prey, they attack. You have to thump them, viciously, so they learn that the runner is not their prey but their predator and to keep their distance. If they don't, you clearly weren't vicious enough. Similarly, when people see culture, pride and wealth, they see high status, and when they see high status without oppression, brutality and murder, they think they see weakness, and so they attack. And just so, in the West, we see leftists and minority/special interest groups hear whining from cuckservatives and suchlike, and so they hear weakness, and so they attack.

So: STOP WHINING. Once the situation deteriorates to the point that doing so is a viable option and the only law remaining in force is the law of the jungle, kill someone. Kill lots of someones. Lots and lots of them – as many people that remain hostile to you and yours as you can reach. In the changed TEOTWAWKI environment, prioritize your enemies, target their centers of gravity, plan everything meticulously, and then strike their centers of gravity at the critical moment of every opportunity.

Consider that the team that controls the media controls the effects of terrorism – so target the enemy media and bring them to their knees. This works for islam, it will work for you: make them fearful of horrifically violent reprisals against them and their families if they should criticise you. Observe that no major newspaper or magazine dared to publish cartoons of Mohammed after the Charlie Hebdo attack, which specifically and deliberately targeted the media organ responsible.

This is the "Ender's Game" method of self-defense: rather than just winning the fight you're in, you win ALL future fights right then and there by making everyone terrified of crossing you. The problem is that under normal circumstances the sort of people who are likely to escalate violence in this way to defend themselves are far too likely to stupidly and impulsively escalate violence over irrelevant minor issues, against low-threat enemies, or without any planning to generate maximum effect, and thus we see that they end up dead, in jail, or impoverished – all as a result of that impulsiveness and lack of planning, so don't be like that.

Finally, be sure to treat surrendered enemies mercifully after their crushing defeat, and use the occasion for propaganda to show how merciful and magnanimous you're in victory. Perhaps let defeated foes join your cause as satellite states in the way Rome did, after a suitable ceremony. This does ***not*** mean letting them into your own political and social systems - merely that you allow their systems a continued parallel existence and (subordinate) self-administration under your control. On the other hand, you must be brutal to them before their surrender - leave them in no doubt that continuing to fight against or resisting you'll cause their extermination. If they continue anyhow.... well, just remember what Rome did to Carthage.

"*All who surrender will be spared; whoever does not surrender but opposes with struggle and dissension, shall be annihilated*." – Genghis Khan

Some important points for defending a town:
(a) Well-built villages make good strongpoints.
(b) Their edges are shell traps if the enemy has artillery, so the main defense line should therefore be either inside or outside, not right on the edges.
(c) If a village is favorably situated, it should be turned into a strongpoint organized in depth. The irregular shape of its approaches should provide ample opportunities for flanking fire.
(d) Villages are especially useful as antitank and anti-vehicle positions.
(e) Reserves must be held in readiness outside the village to deal with the enemy's probable attempts to bypass it.

(The following notes on street fighting were taken from a lecture given by a British major to soldiers attending the UK Commando school during WW2):

It's conceivable that companies of a couple of hundred men might, on occasion, need to occupy a town or village held by an enemy garrison, and to hold it for a limited period against attack. Such an operation may be facilitated, and casualties lessened, by remembering lessons resulting from the street fighting which took place in the Spanish Civil War, especially around Madrid at the end of 1936 and the beginning of 1937.

The vital essentials of the attack are surprise and speed. If the enemy has any warning of the attack, he will very quickly be able to turn every house into a fort, and an independent company, lacking heavy artillery and air support, will find it very costly, if not impossible, to turn him out. The greatest care in planning, and the utmost secrecy are therefore necessary.

Once the attack is launched, the enemy must be kept continually on the run, and not given the least respite in which to rally and organize his resistance. Troops must be trained to display the greatest boldness and initiative, since the slightest hesitation may prove fatal to the whole operation; junior leaders, especially, must combine dare-devil recklessness with a cool head. In this type of warfare, the motto is "*Hit first, hit hard, and keep on hitting*". Nothing is more demoralizing to the attackers than a long-drawn-out and indecisive battle in the streets.

When advancing along a street, troops should move in single file along both sides of the street, keeping close to the walls and with an interval of about 3yds between each man. Each man should watch the windows and doorways oi the houses opposite, and be prepared to engage enemy snipers. It may also be expedient to place an automatic rifle or light machine gun at street crossings to give effective covering fire. When movement is possible along the roofs of the houses, picked snipers of special agility and marksmanship should be sent up to the rooftops to cover the advance below.

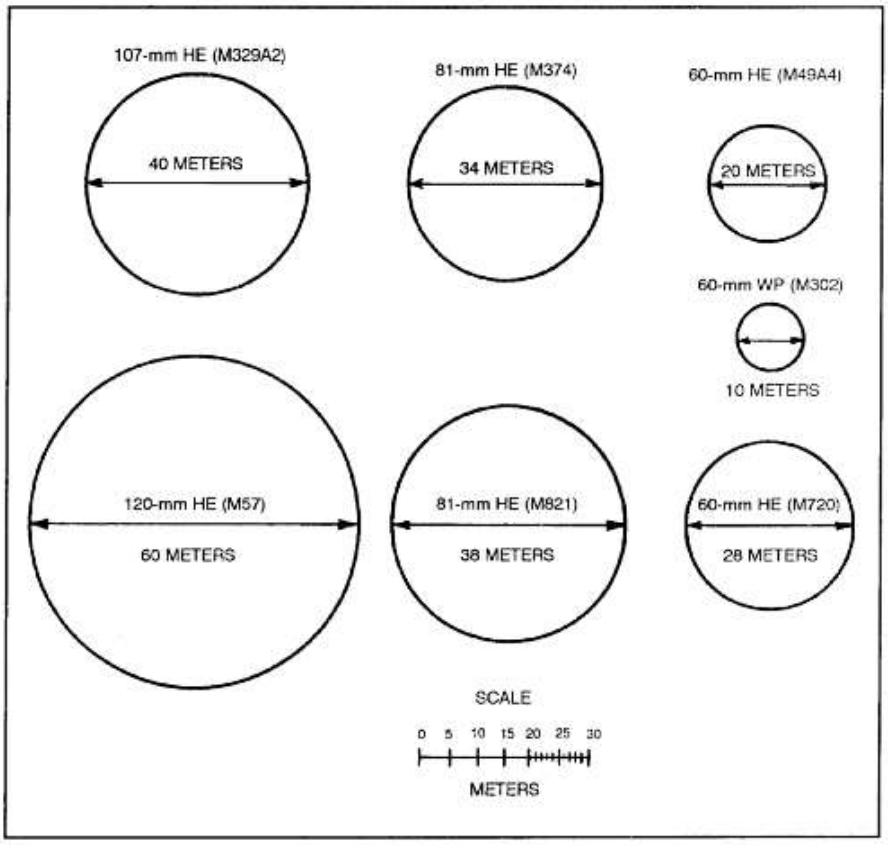


Figure B-5. Comparison of lethal bursting areas of US mortar rounds

Never approach a doorway into a house, or a room, directly from the front. If there's an enemy behind it, he is sure to see you well before you can see him, and he'll shoot first.

Approach from one side, hugging the wall; then take one or two des and throw them inside, and follow on in yourself immediately after the explosion, with pistol or rifle at the ready - this is where a pistol is preferred. It's fairly certain that if the grenades don't actually kill or seriously wound the defenders, they will knock them out for a few seconds at least.

Mortars of all sizes are most effective in street fighting, owing to their accuracy, the highly demoralizing effect of their bombs, and their rapidity of fire. They're especially useful against street barricades.

When operating drones, don't just launch it and stand there like a retard, MOVE: launch the UAV at one location, go elsewhere to control it, and then recover the drone at a third location. This will dramatically reduce the enemy's ability to locate and target the drone operator. Do NOT operate a drone from a hilltop or tall or isolated building - these are perfect locations to be located and targeted by any enemy with basic DF gear.

You must always be aware of your weakest point and defend it well - you can be certain that your enemy knows all about it and that's exactly where they'll strike at you.

Never go anywhere without a quality compass, preferably a lensatic or prismatic one - ensure all personnel are well-trained in navigation and the use of a compass. Don't rely on GPS and most especially: do not under *any* circumstances rely on any phone navigation app in SHTF conditions - signals and accuracy will likely be degraded or absent, can easily be spoofed or jammed, and will definitely be tracked by any hostile elements with enough technical know-how.

(The following portion was abbreviated from a 1933 US manual on defensive entrenchments):

All trenches and defensive constructs should be camouflaged or concealed from both air and ground observation insofar as practicable or, failing that, rendered as inconspicuous as possible. It's impossible to camouflage extensive trench systems except in woods, but individual positions within the trench system, for example machine-gun emplacements, shelters, and trenches approaching such positions, can be camouflaged effectively and with great benefit.

Such camouflage combined with consistent and deliberate planned irregularity in the trace and profile of uncamouflaged elements of the position will serve to largely withhold from the enemy knowledge of the detailed location and numbers of the garrison.

It's possible to ... conceal trenches from ground observation, but much harder ... against aerial observation. Thus attacking infantry, although knowing the general location of trenches by means of airplane observation, are confused as to their detailed location and relative position and hampered in the attack. Full advantage should be taken of woods and brush. Freshly excavated earth that contrasts with the surroundings should be covered with topsoil, sod, weeds, or brush. In general, avoid sharp or regular crest lines along parapet and parados; these lines should have the characteristics of surrounding terrain, and should be modified as required to blend in. Depressions in the parapet serve as firing embrasures, ... the parados should be sufficiently high to prevent the defenders from being silhouetted.

Clearing fields of fire.- (1) To ensure that a field of fire of at least 100 yards is available in front of each fire trench, a certain amount of clearing may have to be done even in the most open country. Clearing a reasonable field of fire will ordinarily precede digging complete fire trenches or will at least be done concurrently with such organized excavation. In areas organized for close defense it's best to commence clearing work at the trench and work forward. In delaying actions where fire effect at long range is desired, any effort that can be directed toward clearing should be employed on areas distant from the trench. Before commencing any work the question of just how much may be accomplished in the time available should be determined since a field of fire only partially cleared may give more cover to an attacking enemy than it did in its original condition. It's desirable to leave a thin natural screen to hide the position. A thin line of small trees or brush left standing impedes enemy observation and at the same time does not hinder the defenders fire.

(2) Large scattered trees, if left standing, give less cover to an attacker than if they're cut down, and are sometimes useful as range marks. Unless entirely removed or converted into dead abatis, only the lower branches should be cut off. Thick brushwood left standing may sometimes serve as an obstacle but infantry can usually pass with ease any but the thickest growth of this kind. Therefore, it's imperative to clear such growth or at least reinforce it with barbed wire. It's rarely possible or desirable to undertake the wholesale clearing of woods, and the work usually is restricted to clearing undergrowth and removing lower branches of the larger trees. Narrow lanes running obliquely in front of a line to be defended may be entirely cleared through woods and swept by automatic weapon fire.

Bypass the enemy’s vehicles by venturing into terrain where vehicles cannot go. Consider: during the battle for the Hurtgen Forest WW2 the US Army's 5:1 advantage in numbers, armor, artillery, mobility, and air support was greatly reduced by weather and terrain. In the forest, a full THREE US divisions took almost 100% casualties, and another three took losses heavy enough to cripple them, all while fighting LESS than TWO sub-par German divisions for a totally worthless objective that didn’t shorten the war by a single day.

The relatively few but determined and prepared German defenders were highly effective. They prepared the area with blockhouses, minefields, barbed wire, and booby-traps, which were hidden by the snow and the overhead tree cover. Their numerous bunkers provided strong centers of resistance, and the dense forest allowed them to perform infiltration and flanking attacks.

The relatively small numbers of routes and clearings also allowed German machine-gun, mortar and artillery teams to fire accurately on pre-ranged targets. Finally, the dense forest and rough terrain prevented proper use of Allied air superiority, which had great difficulties in spotting anything, and it was sometimes difficult for US troops to establish a continuous front line or be confident that areas had been cleared of enemy.

100. DEFENSE OF SURROUNDING AREAS AND FARMLAND/CROPS

If your community is tight-knit enough, there will be less need of this section as everyone will help each other and keep an eye out for unusual activity, and the problem then becomes one of how to rapidly call for the town quick-reaction force (QRF) when it's needed. However, you may still suffer from the bystander effect in some circumstances, as people are used to deferring action to police or other authority figures rather than taking action themselves. This lack of a sense of personal responsibility or accountability could easily lead to people waiting around for someone else to "do something" when bad things happen, so it would be a very good idea for you to continue reading.

Now, the focus of both counterinsurgency and insurgency is the people: provide for the people, protect the people, and convince the people of the legitimacy of your governance. Insurgents and governments both persist by controlling the passive cooperation of people under their area of control. Legitimacy is the objective: you need the people to accept your political power as being righteous and justified. This depends wholly on the local people, so political factors are primary and military action is secondary at best.

It has been said that a king or dictator relies on the tolerance and love of the people far more so than an elected government, and you'll soon see the truth of these words if you're forced into such a situation.

Both before SHTF, but even more so after, you must create networks based on mutual trust with the locals. This is the true meaning of the phrase "hearts and minds", comprising two separate components: **hearts** means persuading people that their best interests are served by your success; **minds** means convincing them you can protect them, and that resisting is pointless.

Note that neither has anything to do with whether they like you – it's their calculated self-interest, not their emotions that matter. Over time, if you successfully build networks of trust, these will grow like roots into the population, displacing any enemy networks, letting you seize the political initiative, and forcing any residual enemies to either surrender, or out into the open to fight your military forces and be eliminated.

Such networks include local allies, community leaders (political, social, and religious), local security forces (police, militias, etc.), and other friendly or neutral non-state actors in your area, and friendly media. Conduct village and neighborhood surveys to identify local needs in the community, and then strive to assist the local population in achieving their needs; for example, you may be able to gain some initial approval by resolving long-standing issues which the preceding regime failed to address - wherever possible, mobilize popular support to your cause by seeking out and acting on common interests. This must be your main effort; all else is secondary. Actions that help build trusted networks serve your cause. Actions that undermine trust or disrupt your networks help your enemies.

You will have one basic strategic requirement – that the population of the territory which you are concerned with believes that ***your*** authority offers a better deal than any of the alternatives. Anything else is of secondary importance.

To further this perception, the security of people and their property, and the establishment of the rule of law, are paramount considerations. While from time to time circumstances may require you to apply ruthless force, it must be applied within a coherent and solid strategic framework, against a background of clear and realistic political context and firmly understood end-state. In other words, whenever you're compelled to apply force (military or otherwise), it absolutely MUST lead to conditions where there's less violence, and less *capacity* for violence, than previously existed there.

Objectives (political, social, security) should be chosen for their value in achieving the primary political purpose, not just because they're possible, not because they're wanted or because they're desirable or popular. Do not confuse activity with outcome, which is what happens when the fools who say '*something must be done*' are listened to - this kind of muddled thinking always leads to a lot of very expensive activity, and all of it useless or counterproductive.

Start from friendly or allied areas and work gradually outwards. Do this by extending your influence through the locals' own networks. Go with, not against, the grain of local society. First win the confidence of a few towns and see who they trade, intermarry, or do business with. Win those people over, and you'll have local allies, a mobilized population, and a trusted network at your back.

You are strongly urged to deliberately exclude and minimize the influence and access of any and all nongovernmental organizations, including non-local charities – either deliberately or incidentally, they will diminish your influence, reach, prestige and power, so they should be treated as a covertly hostile element. Treat hostile or neutral media organizations similarly, as it's imperative that your people can frame any local narratives of events to your advantage.

Avoid knee-jerk responses to first impressions. Don't act rashly; get the facts first - first impressions are often highly misleading. Unless you happen to be on the spot when an incident occurs, you'll have only second-hand reports and may misunderstand the local context or interpretation. Unless you happen to be there on the spot when an incident occurs, you'll have only second-hand reports and may misunderstand the local context or interpretation.

Refer to the plethora of counterinsurgency-related literature written by and for the US Military during its two-decade-long wanderings in the Middle East for more ideas. I very strongly recommend getting a copy of Eeben Barlow's "*Composite Warfare*" - as the situations you may likely face will be similar to those experienced by African nations at present, and it touches on strategic, tactical, political, social, and intelligence considerations.

101. Intelligence Services for Your Town

Before every military campaign, the armed forces undertake a process intended to help them begin to understand the area where they'll be fighting. This process is called '*intelligence preparation of the battlefield*', and is known by its three-letter acronym 'IPB': IPB seeks to ensure that all relevant personnel are brought 'up to speed' with the environment, the enemy forces and the options available to achieve the commander's aim. IPB is a rigorous and efficient way of 'knowing your enemy' – provided, of course, that the available information is accurate. Political campaigns aren't much different, other than having a lot more variables at play and far less force.

For military intelligence officers, 'information' differs from 'intelligence', in that information has not been analysed as part of what is called the 'intelligence cycle' which consists of direction (orders to collect), collection (the gathering of the information), processing (editing the information gathered), analysis (studying and determining the reliability of the information and its relevance), dissemination (putting the intelligence out to interested parties who require it) and feedback. This then informs the commander as he sets new requirements for collection – direction again. This is a thoroughly tried and tested process. When the components are working even remotely well, this simple and logical system returns the required results. But if the components are out of kilter, the system can break down.

Even without a fixed, hierarchical government, **someone** needs to perform IPB: to collate and analyze what's happening around your town - in effect, they and any helpers will act as an intelligence cell, to maintain an up-to date picture of what is happening in the surrounding terrain (human and physical). This starts from the moment you have more than two people involved, and well before the system rots into SHTF conditions. A retired detective who still has a sharp mind and wants to help the local community might be ideal for the role, if they can accept that the law as it was no longer applies.

And you'll desperately ***need*** an active and effective intelligence cell staffed by smart and capable people; the largest failure of the Germans in both WW1 and WW2 was their lack of offensive covert intelligence and counter-intelligence. Time and time again, you see scenarios where there's a massive hole in some line, or some huge movement of troops going on behind the scenes that the Germans completely failed to notice at all.

In WW1, besides all the times they didn't realize the mass gathering of troops by the Entente for their offensives, the Germans literally had no clue at all when the French Army mutinied pretty much in its entirety due to the abysmal conditions and constant offensives, some divisions even going so far as to execute their officers. Meanwhile, oblivious to this massive opportunity, the Germans failed to take

any advantage whatsoever of the situation. Then in WW2 you have the Enigma Machine constantly intercepting communications - specifically, submarine radio transmissions after 1943 - leading to a horrific increase of losses seemingly out of nowhere, as no one in the entire German military realized that every time a sub sent or received a report it got triangulated. On top of that, you have the (admittedly overblown in the modern day, but still relevant) thing where a vast portion of German agents in Britain either defected or were captured, whereas in Germany you had British agents regularly putting fucking recording devices in secure high administration buildings.

In the present day, police departments and even prisons run an intelligence cell to keep track of events in their areas of jurisdiction. You absolutely **must** do the same for your tribe's initial homeland, building up a pattern of life and listing the links and bonds between people and groups. Ask any service member who worked in Afghanistan or Iraq – this was the majority of their role after the initial invasions, which should show you how important this is.

Get yourself Volume 2 of John Mosby's "*The Reluctant Partisan*", and study the Intel Collection and Intel Analysis chapters for good plain-English information on how to run an intelligence cell. Of course, if you can put up with the often-obscure military jargon, there are plenty of older military manuals on the topic that you can find online as well. In the US, Sam Culper wrote some books and runs the **https://readformag.com** website, as well as offering classes on the topic.

When it comes to actually collecting information, most of your efforts will by necessity focus on open-source info from things like newspapers, internet, etc. There's a Cold War story about a Soviet KGB director, who said that given a choice between a New York Times subscription and an agent deep in the CIA, he'd take the paper. This wasn't a joke: even ignoring that the NYT is the mouthpiece of ACWE's elites, despite their political bias journalists (usually) have excellent sources – often better than those of any intelligence agency, at least when they're not deliberate "leaks" from intelligence agencies. Indeed, a former British senior diplomat mentioned in 2003 that the British agency MI6 sometimes plagiarizes foreign newspaper articles and presents them as its own work. Open source intelligence (OSINT) is, in fact, the single most useful source of operational information there is.

While far less "sexy" than the "James Bond" world of HUMINT and so on, OSINT is information available to anyone with a library card and/or a secure internet connection, and comprises 99% of relevant information for almost any mission in a given area, from who the big political players are to what locals really think of them. All it takes is someone to put it together in a way that's useful.

However, there's no reason you or rather your intelligence guy/s can't teach a few people how to conduct tactical interrogation (which is NOT the same thing the CIA does at Guantanamo Bay and elsewhere), and then ask them to gather specific information. Interrogation is defined as the extraction of information from an unwilling subject. People tend to blab a lot of important data when showing off doing so makes them feel good about themselves – undercover police especially use this tactic on criminals all the time.

Consider that some police officers spend their entire careers asking sometimes hostile questions of sometimes extremely hostile and violent people while staying within the legal boundaries. No-one should be foolish enough to argue that interrogating a hardened criminal is somehow conceptually different from interrogating a 'terrorist' or captured enemy soldier. Indeed, the armed robber will likely have an advantage over the terrorist or soldier in that the criminal will probably be very familiar with police procedures, techniques, and legal framework due to having faced them many times before, which makes the police officers' task rather more difficult.

One of the best inputs your extended tribe offers is the same as the one that the elderly and young children have always provided a tribe during conflicts or times of tension - they can act as physical security and a warning system for the tribe. From simply standing watch during training exercises and meetings, to organizing and directing sympathizers into networks to observe, record, and report on the activities of other organizations - rival or not - in the area.

Do you know who your local constabulary is? Which ones are sincerely carrying out their oaths, and which are too enthusiastic about federal handouts and "gifts?" Do you know the names, faces, and addresses of the local, federal LEO who will be organizing and directing State efforts against autonomy and self-reliance in your local area during SHTF?

Who is going to be more effective at gathering useful, functional information of that nature, that the end-users need? The big, tattooed, muscle-bound dude looking like he just came back from skull-stomping ISIS, or the little grandmother that is just concerned about how well "protected" her community is from those "scary bad guys?" This technically falls into intelligence collection, though it's also relevant to security and early warning.

Grandma can sit on her porch, next door to the former National Guard armory being used as an arsenal by hostile forces, count vehicles, and take notes on activity levels, so that when there's a significant uptick or change in activity, she can share that information with the tribe. If she's sitting on the porch, shelling peas, knitting, or watching "grandchildren" play in the yard, who's going to think twice?

102. Short-Range Patrols.

Politically-contested terrain **must** be patrolled often, and at irregular intervals.

Regular patrols should be made in your town's local county or similar area to gather information and ensure that the people feel you'll defend them if they're threatened. These patrols aren't for imposing law from above in the way police do, but to be a friendly and approachable (but armed) mobile neighborhood watch, dropping in on outlying houses and farms to share security information and mantain bonds between locals. The patrol *must* have a reliable, portable radio in case it needs to contact the security headquarters and call the QRF for assistance (eg., because the Johnson farm is under siege by a gang of cannibal raiders).

The best way to perform short-range patrols is by having a respected element of the town's community (a "village elder" type of person) be tasked with regularly touring the areas that the town supposedly controls with a small security element for their protection. This can be as simple as getting grandpa George to tour the local farms on a weekly basis (with a couple-four guys tagging along to prevent him getting bushwhacked by raiders on the way).

At each farm or outlying "satellite" village, ol' grandpa George steps out and chats to the locals about their worries and concerns, and shares information on current events, perhaps staying overnight and traveling at first light to a different place each day, much as kings and lords used to do in medieval England (only it took them much longer).

When the short-range patrol returns to the central town, they hand their notebooks where they recorded anything they learned, over to the intelligence cell and are debriefed before taking a break for a day or two. Then the cycle starts again.

It would be best to have several such members, taking turns to travel to different local areas, so that they don't get complacent or worn out.

On any patrol numbering more than four men, you should always try to have scouts out in front and if possible to the sides of the patrol itself to find the enemy before they find you. Scouts should never be random picks, they're the determined eyes, nose and ears of alarm for your team and should be the most observant individuals you have, so that your troops don't blunder into ambushes. Remember that your enemies will also apply this principle. Scouts should be at the limit of visual distance with the main body, meaning that in thick jungle they may be as close as ten yards away, while in open flat desert terrain they would be as much as a mile away (obviously, in the desert they would be in light vehicles). Visual distance also obviously changes constantly based on terrain: if in a city, a scout would wait for the main body of the patrol to catch up before turning a corner. During combat actions, the main body catches up to its scouts and the team operates as a whole.

A generic QRF (see below) responds if a short-range patrol bumps into any trouble on their wanderings.

You will be weighed down with body armor, rations, extra ammunition, communications gear, and a thousand other things. The enemy will carry a rifle or rocket-propelled grenade launcher, a shemagh (head scarf), and a water bottle if he is lucky.

Unless you ruthlessly lighten your load and enforce a culture of speed and mobility, the enemy will consistently out-run and out-maneuver you.

The enemy will attack your weakest points.

Most attacks on Coalition forces in Iraq in 2004 and 2005, outside pre-planned combat actions like the two battles of Fallujah or Operation Iron Horse, were against supply installations and convoys. You do the math. Ensure your own supply assets are hardened, have communications, and are trained in combat operations. They may do more fighting than your rifle squads.

*103. **Long-range patrols.***

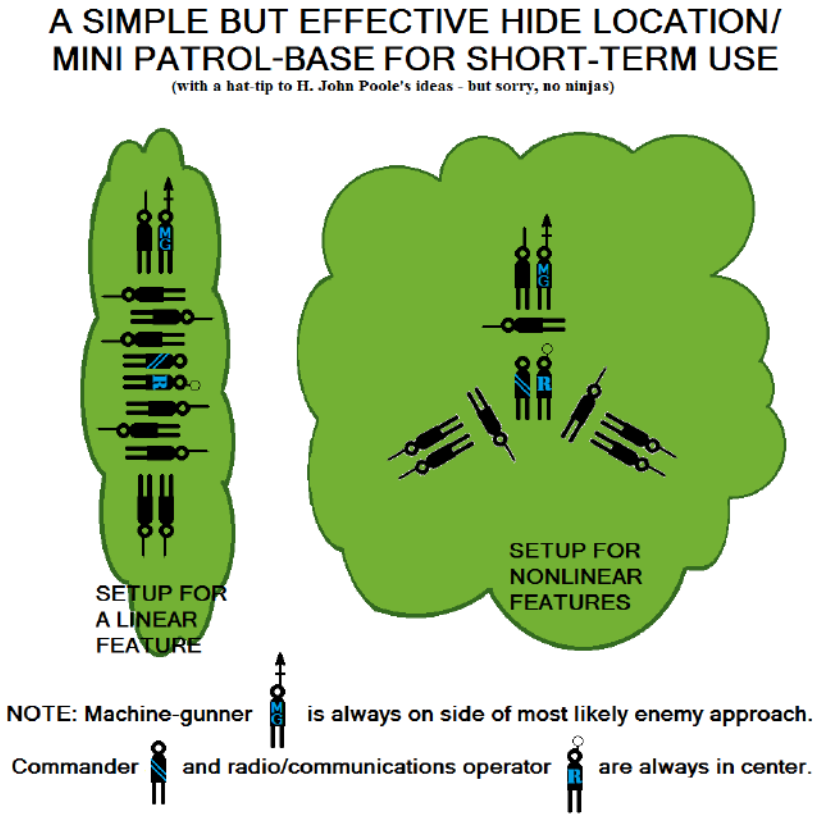
These work similarly to the short-range patrols, only they operate in areas that your town does not fully control such as the surrounding counties or suburbs, or on farmland between habitations, and they last for periods of a week or two at a time before returning to base and being debriefed.

Long range patrols should operate by stealth and ideally on foot or by animal, preferably moving at night. This requires terrain suitable for the purpose - a desert wouldn't suit personnel on foot nor animals, so they would have to be vehicle-mounted, and a city provides plenty of hiding places but at constant risk of discovery by locals, especially children, and risk of attack. Woodland or farmland would be good, depending on topography and population density - the more people, the harder it's to remain in an area unobserved. It shouldn't need saying, but such personnel must know how to actually **live** in the field - something infantry in conventional armies are pretty terrible at, and which we'll touch on further later.



While motor vehicles are excellent for long-distance overt movement, consider the use of animals (horses, mules, etc). for short-distance covert movement, especially of supplies. Animals, like humans, don't make much noise, and in a rural environment will blend right in. To this day there's armies whose mountain units use pack mules, not to mention the Green Berets used them during Operation Anaconda; like the men of ODA 595 who led Northern Alliance troops in an actual no-shit cavalry charge to capture Mazar-i-Sharif, Afghanistan.

Patrols operating at longer range should be formed of a “platoon” element numbering 12 people or more, and break up into smaller “minisquads” of 4 to 6 people. One minisquad should remain at the platoon hide to safeguard the platoon's gear and equipment and the hide location, and the other minisquads should proceed outwards to stealthily patrol the area looking for signs of enemy activity, building up an intelligence picture over time so your town has an idea what's going on.



It's important to remember that these minisquad patrols aren't fighting elements - they're used to gather information, and if they're ever discovered by enemy personnel they should immediately and aggressively break contact and call for support. It would be the job of a (preferably vehicle-mounted) dedicated quick reaction force (QRF) held in standby to attack any enemy elements that the patrol bumps into. If long-range-patrols go looking for fights, they end up like the SEAL patrol in the film “Lone Survivor", based on the disastrous Operation Red Wings.

104. Structure of the QRF.

QRFs can be either generic or dedicated for a specific task. It's best to put the older personnel in your QRF as their greater breadth of experience will make up for perhaps lower physical abilities. A generic one might be simply be a group of technicals situated in your town's central security headquarters, or they could be dispersed to the homes of the minutemen who will operate them when called. A QRF should be vehicle-mounted on technicals or Vietnam-era-style guntrucks, or at least have plenty of horses kept ready to ride at a moment's notice. Members of a QRF should be expected to dismount as they approach the target, and assault it at close range under the covering fire by the vehicle crews.

For ideas on providing a relatively low-cost ability to your town's defensive militia using armed vehicles, read: **https://archive.is/1mcVt** and also see the following paper;
https://smallwarsjournal.com/blog/journal/docs-temp/410-owen.pdf

A dedicated QRF is no different, except it follows a specific militia group (eg. one of your long-range patrols or a raiding party), and parks itself in concealment a reasonable distance away on standby to act as the "cavalry" if that group it's the QRF for gets itself into trouble. It's also already prepared for immediate action and living in the field rather than the members being "on call" as those of a generic QRF would be.



You can easily see that dedicated QRFs are activated for limited periods and then the members return to normal tasks, unlike a generic QRF, with members rostered in readiness as minutemen.

QRFs need to be heavily armed, and should be the first units to receive items such as machine-guns, rocket launchers, etc. if available. They will also need to have reliable communications, especially long-range communications gear. CB radios or similar would be excellent when used with proper radio net security procedures and code-words, etc.

Your QRF should be divided into 3-4 roughly-even-sized groups of at least two vehicles each, and each group needs to be able to operate independently from the others. However, one of them should be armed with a slightly greater proportion of heavy weapons - this one will act as the "heavy weapons" unit if more than one QRF group is used for an attack, and will provide covering fire to the others.



Anti-aircraft guns, light mortars, and more can all be fitted depending on the size of the vehicle and their technical details - several nations use technical-type vehicles with stabilizing outriggers to carry 105mm or even 155mm howitzers, even the US has tested similar mountings.

If speed isn't a requirement - killdozer/technical, anyone? Some of the Syrian rebel groups tried some crazy get-ups like that, and a bulldozer is useful in any case for removing and/or building earthworks and obstacles.

105. Effective Structures of a Local Defense Militia

Rather than the traditional military format of squads and platoons, I suggest dividing up your militia into mini-squads (I like the term "hand") of four members. Members should be trained in infantry-style tasks as well as guerrilla warfare tactics, sabotage, demolition, and such things.

The philosophy behind this is that three men is the minimum number expected to be combat effective. Adding a fourth ensures that a casualty who cannot walk can still be extracted, with two men carrying the injured member and the fourth providing covering fire as needed. It's similar to what the British SAS developed after their Malaysian experience, and additionally means a team can fit into a normal car or pickup with all their equipment for up to a week.

Four men is also a psychologically effective number – if allowed to self-select during initial training, groups of four men will readily form a bond of brotherhood, making them more effective since they will feel united and know that they have each other's backs. A four-member guerrilla "hand" does not present an easily spotted signature, except in the most open of terrain. A single hand can be used for reconnaissance or sabotage patrols. Two to four can be combined to conduct an ambush. More can be combined to a raid on an enemy position, etc.

The IRA was another organization that usually worked in cells of around four members who'd known each other since birth - people they could trust. At the edges of each cell would be like-minded people used for less-important tasks but if opportunity arose, they could be brought into a cell to replenish losses, cover for an injured member, or provide specific specialist skills. Until recently, US Marine Corps squads were made up of three fire teams of four men each, based on WW2 experience. It's also very similar to the tactics used since late 2023 by both sides in the Ukraine-Russia conflict, where they use multiple small teams of 3 to 5 men to infiltrate each others' lines and attack their positions.

Similarly, several nations use sub-squad units made up of two to three four-man groupings. Four is also a handy number of personnel to manage a tripod-mounted medium machine-gun (one man carries the gun, one the tripod, and the other two carry the ammunition and any binoculars, etc.). Four is also the usual size for a scouting team – by traveling in a diamond formation, they can provide their own all-round security while following tracks. These and more examples indicate that a four-person group is a viable, practical system, and that it's flexible and adaptable for many situations, making it ideal for equipment-poor groupings such as ourselves.

Hands must expect to operate independently as a norm and must be trained for that ability. Use generalized collective principles and planning, but independent decentralized tactics and action. An order given to a hand might be as simple as: "*the enemy is sending a guy to (*place*) tomorrow at (*time*), go get him*", with the hand generating its own plan and carrying it out. Higher headquarters and detailed planning should be unnecessary until dozens or hundreds of people are available, and having hands used to independent action means such higher planning would mostly revolve around logistics and fire support.

In a defensive mode, or during time in a rest hide, one member of the hand should be on "guard" while another is on "sleep", and a third is on "support" - cooking, fetching water, gathering edibles, cleaning their weapon, fixing clothing, etc. The fourth is going to be either on "sleep" or "support", depending on requirements and conditions. The roles rotate every three hours, so each hand provides for its own security, and, depending on circumstances, its own resupply.

Large groups make lucrative targets, therefore a good rule of thumb is that if more than five hands are used for an operation, they should approach the area from multiple directions, and immediately afterward they must get out of the operational area, disperse to safe locations (yes, more than one), and rest and resupply before again doing anything larger than a single-hand operation.

Additional recruits may be attached to an existing hand for training if there's no other available training system. Add no more than 2 or 3 new members to each hand, and once the existing hand members are satisfied with the new people's performance, split the oversized hand into two. Having each hand experiment and test its own variations of procedures and methods not only allows the discovery of new and more effective ways of doing existing tasks in a creative and evolutionary manner, it also ensures that enemies cannot easily devise effective countermeasures.

In defense, using a “phantom cell” or “leaderless resistance” approach with strict “need-to-know” security measures, leads to a broad anti-invader resistance movement that would be impossible to decapitate and almost impossible to infiltrate. A disconnected cellular organization means that if any member of any cell gets captured and tortured by an enemy, that individual can at most expose the names of the members in their own cell.

To aid in this, use individual call-signs or “*nom de guerre*” for each person when conducting joint operations with allies instead of member’s real names*, and avoid written rosters or membership rolls at all costs until your tribe holds a significant and defensible area firmly under its control.

*(e.g. Bumfuck’s town militia has many hands. Hand number three (Bravo-3) consists of John, Tom, Bob, and Fred. Their radio call-signs are Bravo 3-1, Bravo 3-2, Bravo 3-3, and Bravo 3-4. They don’t use their real names over radio, phone, or anything else in the field, not even when shouting. Their name tags should show their call-signs, not their actual names.)

How strong is a chain? Keep that question in mind as you and the men in your hand train. Hopefully you got the message that tactical success depends on teamwork. Well, part of teamwork means you must be able to count on the man next to you to do his job right. And he must be able to count on you. In America’s recent wars, it's been revealed that a military whose highest priority is “women’s rights” and “gay rights” just cannot fight worth a damn. Manly men will always beat unmanly men. Yes, technology matters, it's a powerful force multiplier, but the men who use it matter far more in achieving victory.

106. LONG-TERM NATIONAL DEFENSE

The simplest and cheapest method to ensure the defense of your country as a whole is to just stop pretending you're a "modern" state and officially adapt feudalism: feudalism includes armies led and mantained by feudal lords and (in wartime) levy forces drafted from the population with the promise of a basic level of pay, and more importantly, looting the enemy and his lands. The modified/modernized feudalism listed above under the heading "*Another Possibility*" would easily lend itself to such a multi-tiered structure, with each area's Chief creating and providing their own local military units (ironically this is similar to the militia system originally intended by America's founders in the US constitution).

Your nation's local ~~warlords~~ ~~barons~~ Chiefs would form their own infantry units and be supplied with some weaponry at cost, enough to provide their local militias with technicals and suchlike, including some artillery. Ammunition could perhaps be subsidised or production could be encouraged in any of several ways as well. At the whole-of-nation level, control over the lower-level Chiefs is mantained by centralizing things like armored formations and the air-force at a national level, something necessary anyhow due to the expense and complex logistics involved. Ground forces being under local control means they would be defensive, like the Swiss system.

Of course, local units (and individual citizens) could purchase armored vehicles and aircraft at their own expense if they wished, but the sheer costs (both up-front and maintenance) would make this relatively rare, aircraft especially would be lighter things like the OV-10A, armed Cessnas, and other such light ground attack/COIN aircraft rather than F-15/16/18 types or bombers. Local chiefs would not be permitted to create defensive positions along internal borders, but defensive constructions for towns would be acceptable (think modern walled cities, rather than a modern Maginot line) – again, cost would limit what local units do more effectively than legislation.



A militia system also means you'd have more ground troops available than other nations do – true, it won't be that well-trained, but it's not like most actual militaries are that well-trained either. Such a force will be far harder to use in an unpopular foreign invasion/intervention than a professional force, but then you shouldn't have as much need to involve your country in foreign entanglements as the present-day USA has now. On the other hand, if the citizens do support invading someone, they will be willing to go to war to gain land and wealth for themselves, and the problem then simply becomes preventing them from going too far in pursuit of that goal. In such situations native non-citizen residents from your nation could even sign up to fight for wealth and with the possibility of gaining land in conquered territory, as well as the income from loot etc., to earn full citizen status - this worked very well for Rome in its heyday.

This way of running your nation's military also makes your nation an indigestible bite for any invaders, as laid out by Machiavelli in his classic treatise on statecraft "*The Prince*" – even if an invader was to succeed in ousting your National Chief, there still remain all the State Chiefs, and all of the County Chiefs, etc. all the way down to you and the other guys in your local militia hand, all of whom now see their power threatened by the invader and an obvious opportunity for their own upwards mobility by giving the enemy the boot. Add to this a well-armed populace, and the invader would soon start to have severe headaches caused by their ever-increasing casualties and costs caused by their ill-advised foray onto your homeland.

This proposed militia system is very similar to the old English feudal system's '*yeomen's levies*' of sworn freemen, where a lord (or king) would 'summon his banners' (vassals, liege-men). It was then the responsibility of the vassal lords (in our system, the local/state Chiefs) to arm and equip the levies of 'fighting men' as best their abilities and resources could provide, eg with heavier weapons such as siege engines/artillery and logistic supplies. America's Founding Fathers, lacking an aristocracy, put the onus for the formation of such levies on the average free citizen, who, at any time, might be called upon to gather up weapons and form a military force of irregulars, usually under "*posse comitatus*" laws (that's why in Westerns, it's called a "posse" when the sheriff asks for volunteers to catch the bad guys). Thus, it's incumbent on all fighting-age citizens to provide their own 'militia kit' and keep it in good order. It also avoids the common problem of the .gov/.mil logistics system being jacked up - nearly all the functions can either be performed by guys from the unit's own HQ elements ("here you go boys, I got you your food and ammo here") or outsourced to whatever FedEx/UPS-type element exists locally (which also makes such elements *love* your work, because they profit from it directly).

107. TACTICAL DRILLS: Movement, the subtle art of getting around.

The infantry veterans out there undoubtedly remember Individual Movement Techniques (IMTs). This seems like a logical platform to jump off from.

However, the intricate tactical movements detailed in most military manuals will be of little use to you. Your people will perform their defensive pseudo-military roles in addition to their normal jobs, not as their sole career - you're unlikely to have enough people to do so for decades in any case, and wouldn't it be better to have everyone involved in defending your society, just as America's founding fathers originally intended?

Therefore, for simplicity and ease of use by amateur post-TEOTWAWKI guerrillas defending their loved ones, this will be a dramatically simplified and slimmed-down version of the content of official military manuals. After reading this section, watch: [**https://yewtu.be/t6qix6izpwq**]

Individual Movement Techniques (IMTs) are what each man in the group uses to get from Point A to Point B during a firefight. Specifically, we're talking here about the Low Crawl, the High Crawl and the Short Rush.

The Low Crawl: This is an extremely slow movement method, and should only be used when necessary, meaning:

1) You absolutely must move, and
2) Enemy fire is too thick to risk exposing yourself even briefly, and/or
3) Available cover is so limited and low to the ground that you must remain flat.

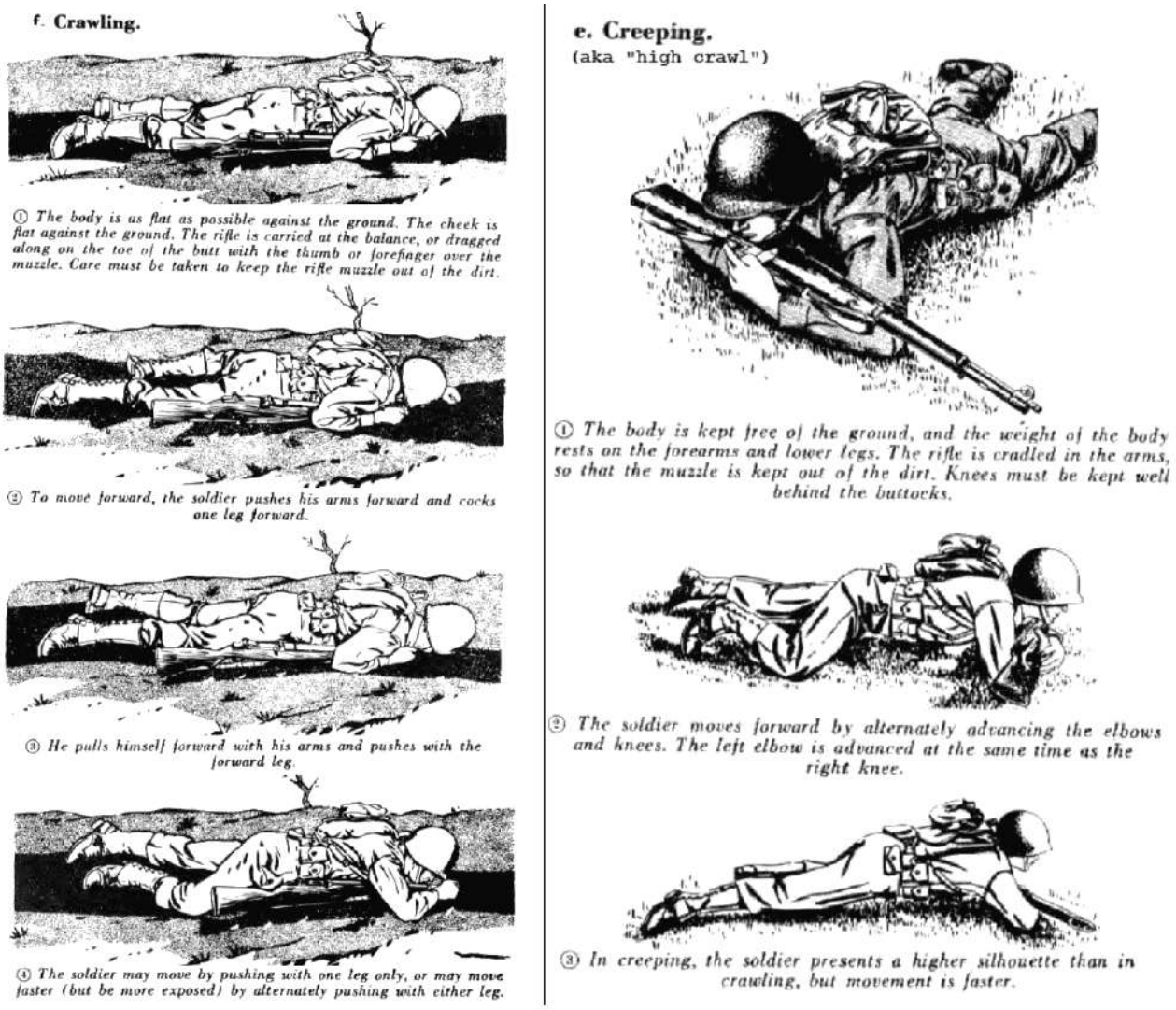
This technique is most often used by scouts or snipers crossing open ground.

To perform a low-crawl, lay belly-down, face (or helmet) against the ground. Reach forward with one hand feeling for obstacles, wire, mines, etc. With the opposite leg, slide your knee forward along the ground (keeping your butt down) and push your body forward. The other leg drags, the other hand holds your rifle sling close to the front swivel. The barrel rests on the back of your wrist and the butt drags along the ground (ejection port up). Your head should drag on the ground as you move while the rest of your body acts like a push-broom. When your pushing leg gets tired, swap legs.

The High Crawl *aka* Creeping: This is faster and it’s up to you when to use it. Use it if the available cover is a bit higher or if enemy action forces you to move and speed is your only hope.

Cradle your rifle so each end rests in the crook of an elbow. Hands should be palm-down, holding onto the sling. Legs are splayed out wide to the sides (so your butt stays low) with knees sharply bent so that from above you'll look like a lizard. Tuck in your head, holding it just barely high enough to see where you're going. From this starting position, crawl as fast as you can.

I'll warn you right now: this is murder on your elbows and knees, so practice it on a soft surface for a short distance at a sane pace or your doctor will be pulling a lot of ugly yellow fluid out of your joints. When and if you must do it in combat, then do it as low and fast as you can, for as far as you need, and count yourself lucky if all that gets messed up are your knees and elbows.



Images from U.S. Army manual FM 21-75 (1944) ***Scouting, Patrolling, and Sniping***

The Short Rush: This is exactly what it says: you spring to your feet and sprint for no more than three to five steps or seconds before diving back to earth. You must to pick out your next position beforehand, burst from your cover at a sprint, and then dive down behind your next cover. One way to time it's to say to yourself as you're executing, "*I'm up! I'm moving! I'm down!*" If you take more than 3-5 seconds to finish the rush, a skilled rifleman has enough time to take aim and hit you. When you hit the dirt at the end of the rush, depending on the micro-terrain it may be a good idea to crawl or roll to one side a couple of yards/meters if the area is fairly open. Rolling at the beginning of a rush will only attract fire and slow you down. It will also fatigue you more than using it at the end. It's damn near impossible to do a roll while carrying a machine-gun or other heavy weapons. Definitely do not roll if you're carrying molotovs.



A useful way to remember actions taken during a Short Rush when reacting to enemy contact is:

Rush – **Drop** – **Roll** (*or* ***Crawl***) – **Observe** – **Aim** – **Fire**

c. Rushing from prone position.



① *The soldier starts the rush from the prone position.*



② *He slowly raises his head to select a new position.*



③ *He slowly lowers his head, draws arms inward, and cocks the right leg forward, preparing to rush.*



④ *With one movement, he raises his body by straightening his arms.*



⑤ *He springs to his feet, stepping off with his left foot.*

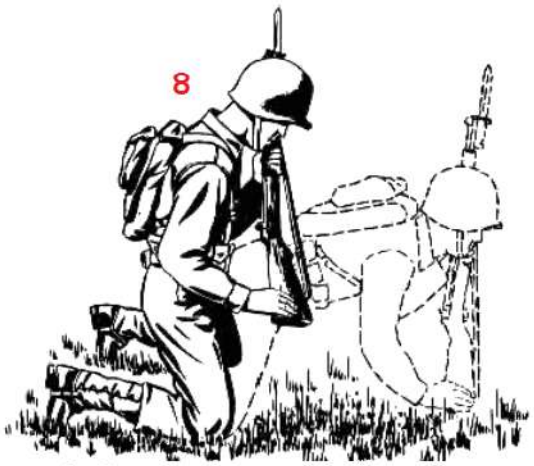


⑥ *He runs forward in a straight line, crouched low, to the new position.*

d. Dropping to prone position.



① *The soldier plants both feet in place.*



② *He drops to his knees, and at the same time slides his hand to the heel of his rifle.*



③ *He falls forward, breaking the fall with the butt of his rifle.*



④ *He then rolls into the firing position, or lies as flat as possible on the ground. If he thinks he has been observed, and concealment exists, he moves a short distance toward a flank, moving in the most practicable manner.*

(Images from 1944 edition of ***FM 21-75: Scouting, Patrolling, and Sniping***)

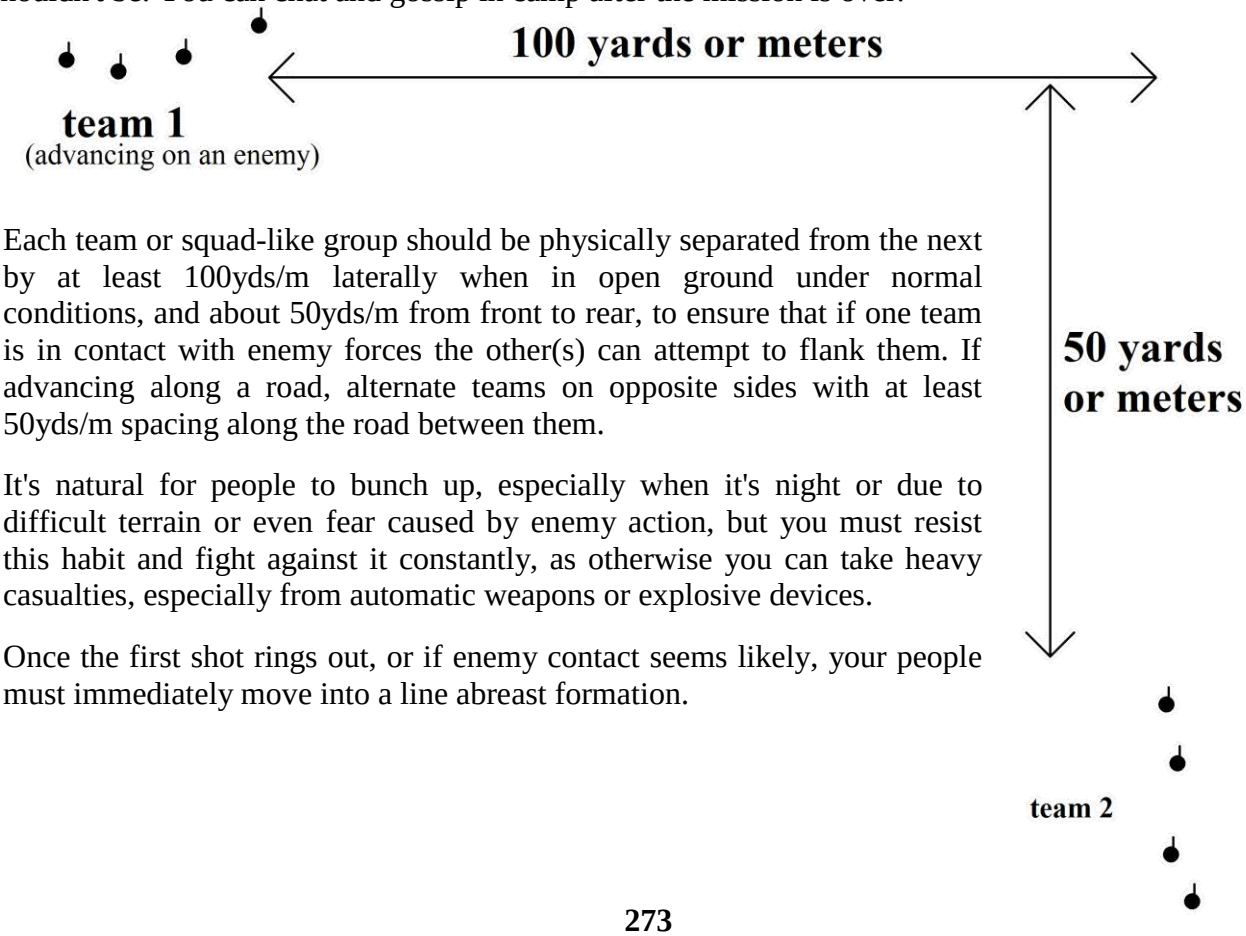
*108. **Movement Formations:***

How do we move around when there's a likelihood of ending up in combat? We can ignore most of the various movement formations army manuals propose for infantry to move cross-country ("diamond", "arrowhead", etc) and stick with the most important ones that anyone can easily understand: column, line abreast, and donut. You'll need to assign hand signals for each one, so you can get into position without yelling, but "line abreast" should get both a hand signal *and* a whistle command, since you may need to get into this formation quickly while under fire.

> **Column** - (*see "Team 2" in the diagram below*) also known as single file, this is used when patrolling an area, or if you're approaching an enemy position, but are still more than about 1000yds/m away. Each person should be at least 5yds/m apart or more, the leader should be roughly in the middle of the file and carry the portable radio. The first man (after your scout, if applicable) should carry a rapid-fire weapon, ideally a select-fire rifle but at least semi-automatic. If you have a rocket-launcher of some sort that can be carried cocked on safe and ready to fire like the RPG-7, this should be carried by the second man in the file. Launchers that *can't* be carried like that, such as the AT-4, the M-72 LAW, etc. should ideally be carried by the second-*last* guy. Your machine gunner, if you have one, should be slightly rear of the middle, just behind the leader, followed by his No. 2 man carrying a spare barrel and more ammunition in addition to his own weapon. It's best to select short muscular guys to run MGs to reduce the odds they get wounded. If possible get each team a 20in HBAR AR-15 fitted with bipod and binary trigger to serve as a sort-of substitute LMG/IAR/BAR before SHTF hits. If modern weapons are limited, the rear men should be the ones using bolt-actions or similar.

Movement while in file/column should generally be continuous but slow, so that the group does not end up with stragglers or with the point man wandering off alone. Conduct regular rest halts at least hourly and ensure people drink plenty of water. In both formations, it's extremely important that each man mantains visual contact with the people on either side. In file formation, this means each man pauses every dozen steps or so and checking that the guy behind them is still there.

Communication should be by hand signals as much as possible, or by first moving to arm's length - never shout to each other during movement unless there are weapons being fired by someone. Likewise, don't chatter or gossip while moving, your energy should be used to observe the surroundings- many an ambush has been prevented because someone noticed a broken branch where it shouldn't be. You can chat and gossip in camp after the mission is over.



Each team or squad-like group should be physically separated from the next by at least 100yds/m laterally when in open ground under normal conditions, and about 50yds/m from front to rear, to ensure that if one team is in contact with enemy forces the other(s) can attempt to flank them. If advancing along a road, alternate teams on opposite sides with at least 50yds/m spacing along the road between them.

It's natural for people to bunch up, especially when it's night or due to difficult terrain or even fear caused by enemy action, but you must resist this habit and fight against it constantly, as otherwise you can take heavy casualties, especially from automatic weapons or explosive devices.

Once the first shot rings out, or if enemy contact seems likely, your people must immediately move into a line abreast formation.

Weapon positions detailed here for the column formation should ensure some firepower to the front (assuming that you can access such weapons). The column formation provides good control even with inexperienced teams, excellent firepower to the sides, but very poor to front & rear.

> **Line abreast** (*see "Team 1" in the diagram above*) is used when you *do* expect contact with an enemy, when you're closer to a known enemy location than 1000yds/m, or when you're searching an area for something. This doesn't need to be a perfect line either, it's perfectly ok if it's wavy or if the sides bow in or out somewhat as different people move at different rates over the terrain, leading to a wobbly sort of line - this is sometimes called a "lazy W". This formation provides good control with a practiced team, and excellent firepower to the front, but poor to the sides.

Spacing is still a minimum of 5yds/m, preferably more, and ideally your rapid-fire weapons should be to each side, with the leader in the middle. Launchers and MGs should be close enough to the leader to ensure he can direct their fire if possible. This is unlikely to always be possible, especially if you're moving into line from file because you're being shot at. However, it isn't necessary to have perfect positioning as long as everyone understands their job.

Movement should ideally be in buddy pairs taking turns, with one person moving while the other is observing and covering any potential or known enemy positions. Choose where you'll go to, before you move there. Moves should not be very long - no more than 10yds/m, but don't do something stupid like stopping in the middle of a street or a clearing! Line formation does have the disadvantage of being vulnerable to enemy fire from the sides, but allowing it to become misshapen will help protect you somewhat, as will moving in bounds using the buddy system.

> **Donut**. A rough hollow circle, this provides all-round protection and is readily adapted to enemy contact from any direction. This is similar to the traditional Box or Diamond formation and works the same way, but requires less skill and practice to perform. Of course, if you only have four people forming it, it will be a diamond or square shape. With larger squads, this obviously resembles a misshapen circle. It provides only average all-round firepower, but is fairly easy to control in most terrain. Best used when unsure of enemy presence, or when enemy is believed to be in the area nearby, but you don't know precisely where or how far they are.

109. TACTICAL ACTION:

Unless you ruthlessly lighten your load and enforce a culture of speed and mobility, your enemies will consistently out-run and out-maneuver you.

When in contact with the enemy, you must apply fire-and-movement. Fire-and-movement does not mean you fire *while* moving. It means that one element moves while another fires. This goes from your buddy pair, with one man moving while the other protects him, to whole divisions moving while another engages the enemy. Each level of unit that is engaging the enemy utilizes fire-and-movement to position itself on the battlefield to both defend itself and harm the enemy.

Movement must take you from one element of cover to another. Cover must be selected in advance: it's too late to select cover when you're being fired on. Hug walls and move rapidly from cover to cover. Quickly roll over roof tops and walls - don't go over them upright. Avoid, if possible, firing over the top of cover unless your silhouette will blend with the background.

When moving in enemy controlled territory, a good rule of thumb is to spend twice as much time observing as you spend moving. For example, if crossing a field would take your group five minutes, spend at least ten minutes carefully observing the far side of it and any place that can overlook it before heading out. Then spend more time once on the other side, observing the next field the other side of that, and so on. With a little skill and luck, you'll spot any enemies before being stuck out in the open, and before they spot you.

When in defensive positions, avoid using automatic fire at night. Firing a machine-gun or other heavy weapon at night gives away its position, and leaves the position vulnerable to being destroyed by the enemy with explosives or their own heavy weapons during assaults after the location is known to them. Limit night action to rifles firing single shots, bayonets or other edged weapons, and grenades (if available).

110. INDIVIDUAL MOVEMENT

In this part I'll discuss some of the individual skills each man must have. It's broken down into 2 general categories: On Foot and Not On Foot.

POSTURE [IMAGES REQUIRED]

Most grunts, hunters and militiamen hold their rifle at a modified "port arms" position in the field. It seems the natural thing to do and, in fact, over in GROUP MOVEMENT I make the assumption that this is how you'll carry your rifle. But there's a better way to carry it if you want to be ready to engage a target at a moment's notice. Some call it the "Field Ready" carry. It may look and feel kind of goofy, but it allows for quick assumption of the standing, off-hand, kneeling and rice-paddy-prone positions. You place the butt of your rifle on your belt and hold it directly forward at an angle which places the muzzle centered and just under eye level. Your finger rests on the trigger guard or near the safety, while your supporting hand is about midway up the stock. When you change directions, the rifle turns with your body, always with the muzzle centered and just below eye level. When a target is acquired, you merely stop with your left foot forward (if you're right-handed), oblique your shoulders to the target and lift the butt of the rifle up to mount, keeping both eyes open. Practice this-it works.

NOISE/LIGHT DISCIPLINE

While it helps if you can move silently like a jungle cat, an Apache or some kind of ghost-ninja through enemy lines at night like some sort of VC/NVA sapper, Vietnam-style, it's not absolutely necessary. You will want to gear up and bounce around so you can identify and isolate what rattles, then tape it down, remove it or whatever. You'll need good boots that are comfortable (within reason) and fit right. You'll need to exercise some common sense while moving: don't bust through shrubs and bushes if you don't have to, avoid walking through piles of dry, crunchy leaves, don't step on fallen twigs or branches less than an inch in diameter (or thicker, if rotten), and watch where you're going. But more important than any of that is: **SHUT THE FUCK UP**!! Outside of gunfire, the fastest way to alert the enemy that you're nearby is the human voice - even when whispering, voices carry a long, loooong way in the sticks, especially at night. Use hand/arm signals to communicate. There'll be things you'll want to say to your buddy, and conversations you'll want to have... SHUT. THE FUCK. UP. That's why it's called noise discipline.

For those who smoke, you should quit ASAP for many reasons, most unrelated to the ones your doctor tells you. A lit cigarette will give you away in the field, even in broad daylight – a non-smoker can identify the smell from as much as half a mile downwind. If you absolutely ***must*** get a nicotine fix while out in the boonies, switch to chewing your tobacco. A lit cigarette at night, or a flashlight, or any size of fire, is suicide. To read a map at night, use a red or blue-green flashlight and the map and yourself with a poncho before turning it on.

But those are just the most obvious light discipline violations. Your outfit and all your gear should be subdued - anything bright and/or shiny is a no-no. Get rid of the big, gaudy cowboy belt buckles, the silver or gold wire-frame glasses, colorful baseball caps, bandanas and so on. Don't wear jewellery out in the field – if you can't bear to part with your wedding band temporarily, put it on a string around your neck (apart from the risk of shine, you don't want your finger to end up "de-gloved" should it catch on anything).

Field Marshal Helmuth Von Moltke the elder once coined an axiom that goes something like this: "*In war, brilliance is not always necessary. Mediocrity is often sufficient*". The Franco-Prussian War proved him right, as did most wars through history, since we can see that there are frequent major blunders on all sides. The side committing the least blunders generally wins - of course this is influenced by the size and technology of the forces involved, plus a host of other variables.

*111. **Battle drills.***

The main battle drills your team should practice are React-to-Contact and Break Contact. They're mirror-image versions of each other, and the basis of every other drill and tactical task. Rigid textbook adherence to battle drills is counterproductive - they're like tools in a toolbox or a golfer's set of clubs: the user selects the most appropriate one for the task at hand and adapts it to the situation depending on circumstances. The basic concepts and techniques are what's important.

Let's say your group divides into pairs of four-man teams. (Patrols should always involve at least two teams. Numbers are indicative, the principle works with teams of 3 to 7 people). Your teams conduct foot-mobile patrols in the areas surrounding your town and one makes sudden and unexpected contact with a hostile enemy force. At that point, either your group or the enemy starts firing on the other.

For our needs, we can simplify doctrinal army contact drills **a lot** - if the enemy is closer than 100yds/m, fire one or two hasty aimed shots at any visible muzzle-flashes or likely enemy position **while** taking cover. This is **not** blind fire, nor is it an "oh shit!" burst. Even if they don't hit, the rounds will land close enough for the enemy to flinch or take cover for a second or two.

If the enemy is farther away, simply dive/run/roll to cover, and **then** fire into any visible or likely enemy position. Don't simply fire in the enemy's direction - every person in the friendly element in contact should use **aimed** fire to engage known or suspected enemy positions, while any elements ***not*** in contact should maneuver and approach the enemy position to attack its flank.

Every single person should loudly verbally communicate to his buddies and the leader, where and what the contact is, e.g.: "*Contact Right! 200 yards! Infantry in tree-line with MG in ditch!*"

You must ALWAYS mantain visual or at least audio contact with the guys both to your left and right, and you must stay as far away from your buddies as you can while still mantaining that visual contact. When the shooting starts, every man in the in-contact element should return a magazine-worth of **well-aimed** fire at known or suspected enemy positions, as quickly as can be shot accurately (AKA the "Rhodesian" or "Drake" Drill). Leaders can order the team to slow down the rate of fire if they perceives a need to conserve ammunition, eg.; "*Slow fire! Slow fire! Take your time - aim your shots!*"

Team members **must** pass information to the leader(s) to provide an accurate picture of the fight. This then needs to be passed on to the leader of any follow-on elements, whether that is another team or even a QRF. This can be by radio, voice, hand signals, whistle blasts, or any combination of these.

Ideally, standard operating procedures should be the in-contact team leader simply turns and makes eye contact with the leader of the not-in-contact element, and signals which way he believes the follow-on team should maneuver, based on the best information he has of the battlefield, as well as verbally communicating the situation again. Eg., he yells: "*Flank Right! Enemy infantry in tree-line, 200 yards! MG in ditch! Go up the creek-bed!*" While passing on this information to the follow-up team verbally or by radio, he uses arm movements to indicate the direction he believes will provide the most-protected movement route. Remember the enemy will likely maneuver against you and will try to develop the tactical situation to *their* advantage.

You won't be able to wait for help if you're pinned down - the team leader has maybe 10 seconds to decide if you can eliminate the threat. If you can, go straight into fire-and- maneuver and assault the enemy position. If you can't, go straight into your break-contact drills, and lay an ambush for the enemy if they chase you. During the Vietnam War, there were six-man MACV-SOG recon teams who ended up assaulting all the way through whole companies and battalions of NVA unscathed, because the enemy was unable to react quickly enough to the situation.

React-to-Contact videos: **https://yewtu.be/eUgMWJISWYU**
> **https://yewtu.be/QlHi5_qQpTg**
Good example, but insufficient spacing→ **https://yewtu.be/QYweVsarRio**

- - - -

"Battle Drills" aren't so much the advanced forms of infantry tactics, as they're what works and can be taught quickly to a million-man army. Both battle drills and reliance on volume of fire rather than marksmanship should be thought of as best suitable for such a conscript mass, whereas small, professional, long-service armies such as the pre-WWI British Army and the pre-WW2 US military traditionally fared better with drill-free non-standardized tactics and individual marksmanship. The German military before 1945, all the way back to the pre-unification Prussian Army, was perhaps unique in effectively using non-standardized tactics with conscription, this only being possible due to the extreme professionalism and skill of its high-status officers. One must always remember that *excessive reliance on battle drills will prevent your troops from rapidly adapting to actual tactical situations* - predictability invariably leads to effective enemy counters to your patterns.

112. REORG

After any combat event you'll perform a reorganisation, or RE-ORG. Let's assume your two teams just won the battle of whatzit against the enemy in the example given above. At this point the teams are sitting on top of the enemy position and have a lot to think about.

The overall leader goes around and positions the teams' members to establish all-round security. His second-in-charge (aka 2IC) goes around to each member and gets what is known as an ACE report: updates on their remaining Ammunition, any Casualties (this includes injuries) and Equipment. The team leader takes this and if in radio communication, transmits a copy to higher elements (your headquarters, the QRF, etc). and requests any administrative action such as reinforcement, resupply, medical evacuation, removal of enemy prisoners, etc.

While all this is happening, they must be prepared for any of several things that they must deal with, including a possible enemy counterattack, enemies still on the objective, team members wounded who don't realize it, etc. Once the team leader and the 2IC have sorted this out, they will then also have to organize:

> Medical treatment of casualties, both friendly and enemy.
> Ammo cross-loading, redistribution and resupply.
> Searching and clearing the enemy dead.
> Searching and clearing the objective, including wounded enemies.
> Handling prisoners.

Once the reorganization is complete, and the team has sorted themselves out, they can either continue their mission or return to base.

113. Casualties & Prisoners

Yes, it's TEOTWAWKI, no we can't just shoot the prisoners and wounded, even if they're our enemies. For a start, that means their people will refuse to surrender the next time, and for another, it means your enemies will be more willing to rape, murder, and generally exterminate your sides' non-combatants – that's *your* wives and kids whose lives you're putting in danger.

According to the Geneva Convention and other Laws of Armed Conflict, friendly and enemy casualties should be treated equally and triaged in order of wound severity. You may not have the resources for this but you should act humanely and do everything you can for them although your people may be a priority for things like hard-to-get drugs.

You may have just violently assaulted the enemy in their position and shot a bunch of them, but remember that that is your job, so don't get too over-excited about it. Yes, you can't leave living enemy behind you, but you also can't just kill prisoners – and if there's anyone in your team who suggests you should, I'd suggest shooting that sonofabitch in the back before he puts theory into practice.

Realistically, if the enemies wait until you're up close to surrender, they're likely going to have a very bad day- by that point, it means there's a battle raging and you're probably grenading every trench without sticking your head into them first. It's also kind of hard to accept the surrender of an enemy in position 1, when the enemies in position 2 just next to it are still trying to kill you. This can result in some serious operational and moral dilemmas, and there's no good answers or "textbook" solutions. If they run away, at least try to see if they've kept hold of their weapons – it's a bad idea to shoot someone running away un-armed, but if he got his weapon in hand then he's fair game, since he can re-join the fight later.

Talking of which, an enemy who sees an avenue of escape open to him will generally take it – it's a bad idea to trap them. However, if they're presented with an obvious opportunity to flee to safety and don't take it just before or during the assault, then they're committed to the fight.

It's important to understand how surrender is handled on the battlefield. The concept of surrender was accepted by every army in the world. Even Japanese Imperial forces took prisoners. This reflected tacit recognition that when violence was separated from military purpose it became either murder or suicide. It also stemmed from powerful self-interest - if a soldier knows the enemy will take prisoners, he is far more likely to give up. If he believes he will die regardless, he fights to the death. Most armies wish to end battles as quickly as possible with minimum losses and welcome surrender. They realize, however, that there's a reciprocal relationship. If one side takes prisoners, so must the other. The issue with the Japanese in WW2 was that they were quite incapable of realizing their enemies did not follow the moral code of *bushido* as they did, and based on experience, most Japanese believed that they would be slaughtered by US troops even if they surrendered.

In practice, surrender entails great danger on the battlefield. Surrender is much safer if it's done by several people at once, and with some type of prearrangement. It's also very helpful if the enemy is distributing leaflets encouraging men to give up their arms. Once fighting starts, the situation changes drastically. If a machine-gun crew starts a fight, inflicts casualties on the enemy, then decides they wish to surrender, they're facing likely death; if they're powerful enough, the enemy may accept the surrender out of simple self-preservation. If not, the unwritten code of battle allows men retribution.

If one side committed an atrocity, chances for safe surrender by its soldiers decline greatly. Consequently, surrender should be viewed as a pact done to avoid mutual violence, and breaks down in the midst of bloodshed. This is true in all wars. Killing the helpless was not unique to the Pacific - for instance, during the battle of the Bulge, the Waffen-SS was reported to have murdered a couple of dozen American prisoners. In the weeks that followed, GIs killed hundreds, perhaps thousands, of innocent Germans in retribution. Oddly enough, multiple British murders of Axis prisoners in the North African campaign and elsewhere resulted in little Axis retribution.

What was perhaps unique to the Pacific war was the general refusal of Japanese soldiers to surrender (owing to the code of *bushido*) when any other army would have considered capitulation the only rational and ethical choice. American soldiers learned this lesson quickly. Two crucial incidents took place early in the Guadalcanal campaign that became part of the informal indoctrination received by every soldier who served on the island.

The first was the tragic Goettge patrol. In the first few days of operations on Guadalcanal, there was very little fighting. Japanese engineers fled to the bush across the Matanikau River. A few were captured, as were some Korean laborers. One of the prisoners during interrogation suggested others in his unit might want to surrender. Patrol craft had already spotted what appeared to be a White flag up the beach. Other reports indicated that dozens of Korean laborers were wandering helpless in the area. The 1st Marine Division's intelligence chief, Lieutenant Colonel Frank Goettge, trained to seek information from prisoners and eager to save Korean lives, convinced Vandegrift to authorize a patrol to seek out potential prisoners. Despite many qualms, Vandegrift agreed. Goettge personally led the twenty-five-man patrol, which included a battalion surgeon and the division's interpreter. Incredibly, the interpreter had worked on code-breaking in the US before requesting a combat posting. Had he been captured and tortured, the Japanese could have pulled off one of the greatest intelligence coups of the war. As it was, he died in the fight.

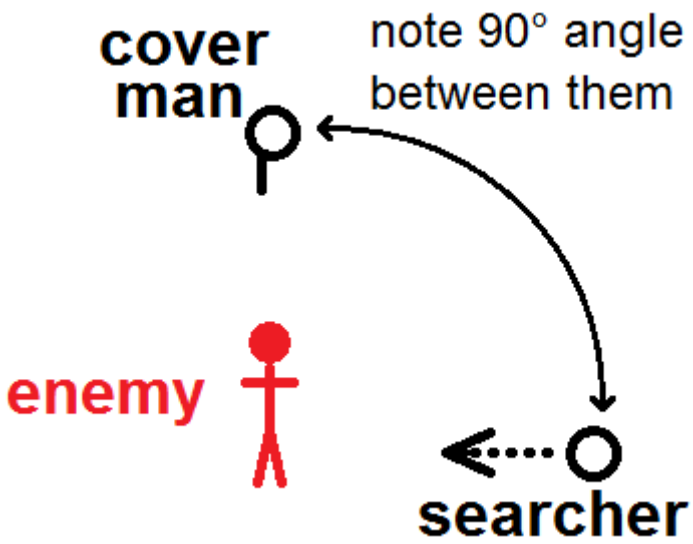
The patrol took a landing craft a few miles up the beach and put ashore. Immediately a firefight broke out, killing Goettge. In the next few hours the American patrol was whittled down. Three survivors made it into the surf and swam off. The last one left at dawn and later claimed that as he was swimming off "*the Japanese had closed in on those who were left and were hacking them to pieces. I could see their swords glinting in the sun".* Vandegrift ordered a large patrol to cross the Alatanikau, clean out Japanese positions, and find any survivors of the patrol. Crossing the river several days later, the Marines ran into enough resistance to deter a lengthy stay. On the beach, they found the half-buried bodies of the Goettge patrol. (Because the Marines were unable to recover the bodies, later accounts stated that the patrol was never found, but that is incorrect. One of the survivors of the Goettge patrol was a member of a later patrol which identified the position and several corpses.) Coming on top of Pearl Harbor and Wake Island, one can imagine how the news of the Goettge patrol was received by Marines on Guadalcanal. It's likely that Goettge's men died because of military incompetence, and not Japanese perfidy, however at the time, every man on the island was hearing lurid details of the calamity.

114. <u>Clearing a body:</u>

When searching enemy dead, be aware of enemy shamming death, or who may have pulled the pin on a grenade and laid on top of it as they expired. The best-practise search procedure I know of involves two people working at right-angles to each other; one covers the body and the other to search. The searcher hands his weapon to the cover-man before starting. It's also is used to search an enemy who surrenders – in this case get them to lay face down while being searched, fingers interlocked on top of their head, legs apart.

If anything happens, the searcher dives away from the body, and takes cover face-down, feet towards the body - if there's a grenade or boobytrap, the enemy body should absorb most of the blast. The cover-man does the same, unless the enemy is shamming, in which case the searcher dives away from the enemy and the cover-man can shoot.

While the cover-man aims at the body, the searcher starts by kicking the body's groin area: if they're faking, you'll know about it and the cover-man can shoot. Alternatively, poke them somewhere sensitive with a sharp stick – again, the cover-man should have the searcher's rifle on a sling, so the enemy cannot try grabbing it if they're shamming.



If the searcher is armed, they're too likely to take unnecessary risks and remain close to the prisoner if they resist or try to fight. It's the cover-man's job to use violence - all the searcher needs to do is get away. There's no reason to go hands-on with an enemy of unknown fighting ability, especially when there won't be any investigation into their death - if they run or try to fight, give 'em a bullet.

Then you'll need to turn the body over, to do this the searcher uses a rope about 6 yds/2m long, with a loop about 6in wide tied in the end. He fits this over one of the body's hands, if possible, while disturbing the body as little as possible in case of boobytraps. Or you can loop it over a boot, and drag the body for a couple of yards/meters. The searcher pulls on the cord to turn the body over, both keeping a close eye to see if there's grenades or booby-traps, and staying as low to the ground as possible.

Once the body has been cleared of possible booby-traps, you can search it, be careful as they may have things like uncapped needles or razor blades in their pockets. Be sure to turn all their pockets inside-out and collect any papers, documents, and identification. All the items found are best put into a zip-lock bag, and labelled with a sharpie with the time, date, location, and some sort of identifying designation, such as:

"*3:30pm - 01/20/'35 – battle at Bob's Hill - enemy #7 (leader???) - searcher: John Smith***"**

Doing this helps your intelligence unit create a picture of the enemy's morale, supplies, and organization.

If the enemy is a live prisoner, now that they've been searched and cleared, you can get them to kneel or sit cross-legged under armed guard in a reasonably comfortable position so they will wait quietly until taken to a POW camp setup (a bayonet on your rifle is useful to prevent them getting any ideas in this situation). There should be no need to have them keep their hands up for extended periods after they've been searched, but the guard(s) should keep at least 15yds/5m away from any prisoner, and try to keep prisoners physically separated from each other and especially their leaders until they're placed in a prison camp. Refer to WW2 practice as shown in films made before 1970 or so here - newer movies are often less realistic about such things since those who were actually there are mostly dead, and modern prisoner/POW handling tactics were designed for antiterrorist use by the Israeli military and passed on to police. They're designed to humiliate prisoners by using overwhelming force, and are a great way to make your enemy hate you and *not* want to surrender.

115. Grenades

Fragmentation grenades are a kind of military democracy- a fuze inserted into an ounce or so of explosive surrounded by something which will break up into shrapnel and spread itself around violently so everyone gets a share, whether they like it or not. Post-collapse, you might have access to fragmentation, incendiary, or smoke grenades. You may be able to manufacture improvised grenades such as small pipe bombs or suchlike. With a bit of lateral thinking it's possible to make plastic or wooden grenade fuzes that use a clothes-peg spring to strike a primer and ignite a black-powder time delay. I won't include plans here (for obvious reasons) but it's not hard. Remember that grenades used in the open are as dangerous to friendly troops as the enemy.

Molotovs have limited use for mobile operations: they're difficult to carry safely as you risk them leaking or breaking during movement. Two ways to make a self-igniting molotov are: 1) if you can source some white phosphorous, add it to the bottle, fill the rest of the space with gasoline, and add a strip of raw rubber (un-vulcanized, that is - some erasers and condoms are made of this) before sealing firmly and permanently. The rubber will melt into the gas during storage and cause it to stick better. To use, simply throw on a target and the phosphorous ignites the fuel. 2) Use bottles with a neck wide enough to insert a glass test-tube into the neck of the bottle. Wrap the top inch of test tube with electrical tape to prevent it breaking too easily during handling. Fill bottle with gasoline (and a strip of raw rubber if available) and fill, seal and insert the test-tube with sulphuric acid - when the test- tube shatters and the liquids mix, they will ignite exothermically.
WARNING: EVEN IF THE BOTTLE ITSELF DOES NOT BREAK WHEN DROPPED, BREAKAGE OF THE ACID-FILLED TEST-TUBE WILL CAUSE IGNITION AND EXPLOSION OF THE BOTTLE. USE EXTREME CAUTION DURING HANDLING.

If you do have some grenades, then think hard about how to use them, as a grenade incorrectly used is just as dangerous to you as the enemy. Grenades are best used in an enclosed space, like forcing one into a bunker opening or a building window to go off just before you enter that space. This is best done by "posting" the grenade: this means you physically put your fist holding the grenade in through the hole and drop it while a buddy hoses down the enemy within with gunfire. Don't throw grenades at an opening because they bounce back if it doesn't enter perfectly, including if there's chicken wire or a curtain in the way. If your enemy is in the open it may be possible to get within throwing range and hit them with a volley of grenades before assaulting through their position. It's also possible to "grenade your way up" a feature such as a hedge or ditch-line, but this requires some practise.

Grenades are nowhere near as destructive as Hollywood leads you to think - you only have to lie flat on the ground to avoid the shrapnel. The concussion effect in an enclosed space is very effective but if there's any cover there will be unharmed survivors. Phosphorous or napalm will burn the enemy out, but explosive grenades work like big firecrackers and mean you need to rapidly follow up the blast with an assault into the room or bunker to take advantage of the shock and disorientation created. Fortunately, training can be done using rocks or other items of suitable size and weight, or if legal and available, using firecrackers. Be certain to use eye and hearing protection whenever any explosives are in use, even small ones like firecrackers.

A quirk of human nature is that a person lying on the ground shooting at night, without night sights, will generally shoot high - therefore, fire low at night. Remember that grenades are anonymous at night - guns on the other hand aren't: the muzzle flash is a dead giveaway.

Some important points regarding ambushes:
1. When setting up an ambush give it time for the natural sounds of the local environment to return to normal. Don't spook the target with "*it's quiet…too quiet*".

2. Beware of giving off scents, just as applies to hunting four-legged prey, scents like food smells, body odors, even aftershave or the smell of Hoppe's no.9 can spook a scout and reroute a column out of your ambush.

3. Having rear flank spotters with a sniper/marksmen detachment (preferably on any high ground, if available) can more easily pick off high-value targets (eg. leaders, radio-men, machine-guns) at the beginning of an ambush and take out more high-value targets if the enemy routs and enters full retreat. Having them on rear-guard gives you info on "get ready". Having "eyes" on your flanks helps avoid the "hook" sweep-and-net manuvers designed to pincer and clear your ambushes.

4. Wired claymores aren't as effective in the day (the wire is too easy to spot – use mud, etc. to camo the wire) as they're at night. If you have people who can manufacture them radio-frequency detonators are more reliable (unless the enemy has signal jammers). Also look at the terrain and set layered traps, if there's natural cover for enemy forces leave it as bait and conceal a claymore to flank the hard point leaving their troops vulnerable and disoriented continuously. "Leaving an out" is a very effective strategy in an ambush, people under stress usually enter fight-or-flight mode, and flight is usually the path of "perceived" least resistance. Land mines/claymores/(traps basically) on a path of least resistance can be devastating.

5. Always make sure your team is all on the same page about the location of traps and ordnance, there's nothing stupider than letting your own team wander into traps you laid for the enemy.

6. Variety is the spice of victory, your behavior patterns will cause enemy "counters" to effectively counteract and neutralize them. Beware of becoming predictable.

In war, when moving forward on foot, even if you drop your pack and most of your non-survival gear, you quickly reach a physical state where the controlled breathing, etc., required for accurate, rapid, aimed fire is difficult. This means that the only automatic weapon that really counts is the squad machine-gun, which needs to be belt-fed to be effective in its role. Whether the rifleman's individual weapon is capable of automatic fire does not really matter all that much compared to the firepower produced by the squad MG, never mind the sort of supporting fire available in a conventional battle.

Some soldiers are aggressive, many are capable if lead well and some are basically porters, not fighters. The most basic problem for infantry is therefore to identify who belongs to which group and to assign jobs and missions accordingly (and possibly reject the porter guys). The aggressive, daring guys who are very difficult to suppress need to become leaders (the smart ones) or operators for the most important weapons (such as a machine gun). Assign the most valuable men to the leadership jobs or give them the most powerful weapons.

Forget about the experiences learned by the US and others against low-tech, unskilled paramilitary or village-militia fighters as seen in recent warfare in places like Afghanistan. As seen more recently in

Donetsk and Lugansk, the slightest whiff of organization and support means even volunteer militias are able to acquire modern equipment such as armored vehicles and antiaircraft weaponry (though they generally can't quite seem to use them as well as professionals do).

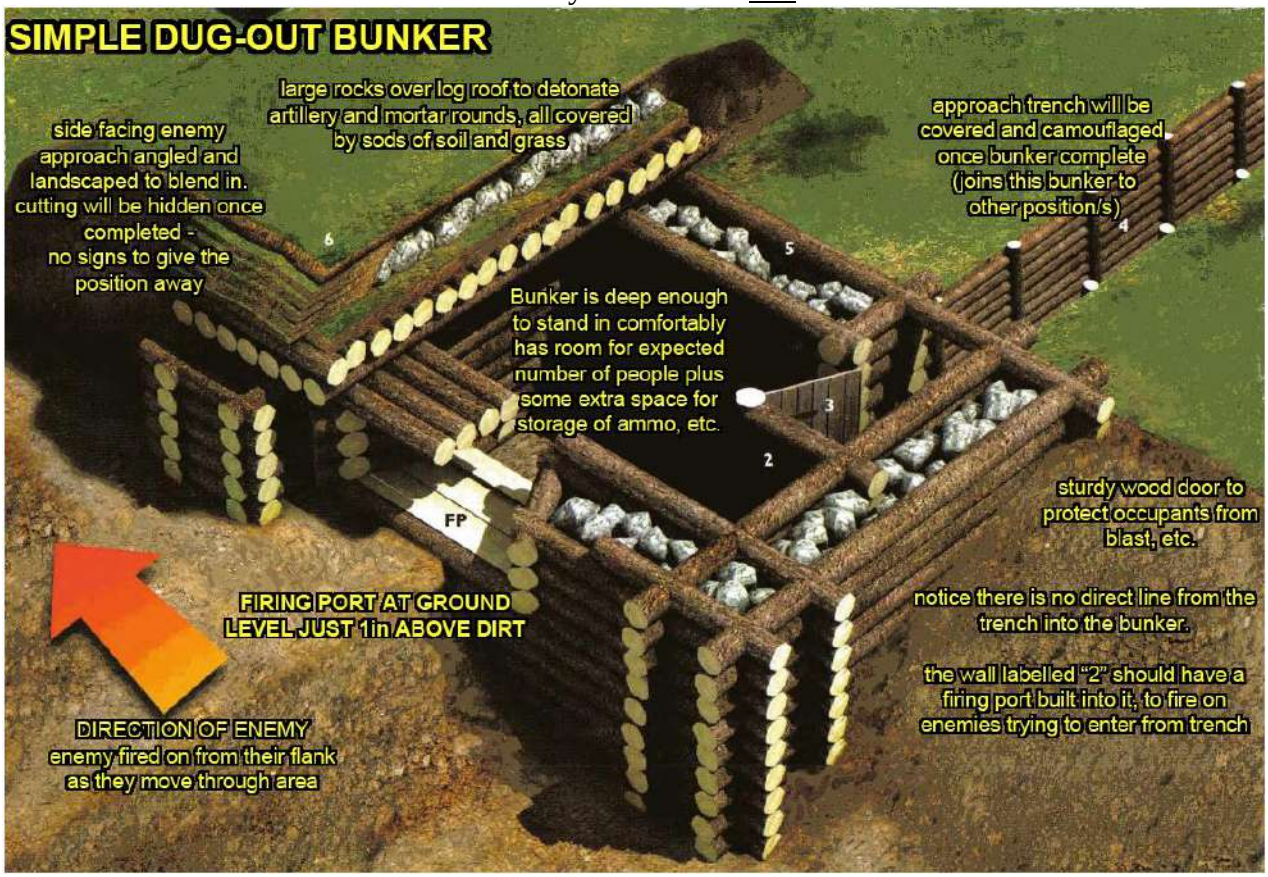
The extreme lethality of modern infantry arsenals (up to 120 mm mortars) restricts infantry small unit repertoire for most actions. Only very high pay-off actions justify risky tactics. Extreme lethality and cautious behavior naturally leads to very short but intense firefights with (whenever possible) the advantage of surprise, followed by a quick withdrawal and rallying. The latter is necessary to avoid being stuck (and fixed) in a protracted fire-fight until hostile firepower ends it.

Always assume the enemy has functional 24/7/365 aerial reconnaissance. Defensive positions must not be exposed to (aerial/UAV) reconnaissance. This excludes the viability of open-field defensive positions as seen at Kursk in WW2. A hill is not serious concealment against reconnaissance anymore. Even trenches will critically require overhead concealment (and even cover, if possible) - just look at footage from Ukraine to see the devastating effect of drone observation on entrenched troop tactics, even when there’s no artillery used, there’s nowhere to hide and the enemy knows where you are, making tactical surprise almost impossible without preparation. Camouflage and deception will be of utmost importance. Cover will often not be much more useful than concealment because artillery can obliterate most cover. Practice sticking close to enemy forces ('hug' them) to remain inside their fire support's minimum safe distance.

Also forget about using evasive drills for unintended sudden contact - you're dead if you walk into a competent ambushing party’s kill zone. Evasion drills only work against incompetent (or extremely unlucky) enemies. Surprise is a necessary and indispensable condition for survival and success in even the smallest offensive actions. Even a meeting engagement would be won by the side that opens (effective) fire first. Camouflage, concealment, deception and smart movement are the means to achieve surprise. You cannot succeed if your position was revealed minutes ago. Remember that attacks should be executed with superior force and maximum fire support.

116. Clearing Bunkers

Note: the term "bunkers" in this portion refers to dug-out trench positions with overhead cover and firing loopholes, not an artillery-proof concrete pillbox such as were found during WW2 on the Atlantic Wall, the Maginot Line, etc. Regardless of its construction or size, a bunker is still a form of building. Remember, if you find obstacles like barbed wire, there's usually a bunker nearby - to be effective an obstacle must be covered both by observation and fire.



If assaulting enemy in a bunker or dug-in position, you must remember that bunkers provide a lot of protection for the defenders but their fields of fire will be restricted due to the firing port opening/s. This means that to suppress a bunker, you must be in a position to fire through the firing port, which places you in the bunker's killing area. The good news here is that it only takes a deliberate stream of accurate rounds fired through the opening/s to suppress or neutralize the personnel inside. Inaccurate fire has no effect at all on the performance of the bunkered enemy, but accurate fire through the slit keeps them suppressed as you sneak closer.

You're probably not dealing with enemies who are current or former professional military personnel, so you have good odds they made siting errors. On-the-spot reconnaissance is critical to find any errors your enemy made when positioning their bunker(s) so you can approach to attack and move past the defended area. If you have access to artillery or mortars of any sort, they're surprisingly not that useful against bunkers and other fortifications except in a direct-fire role with the target visible. However, a preceding bombardment of the site may be invaluable in creating shell-holes to allow your men to approach to close range to do their work with small-arms and other weapons. Rocket launchers or flamethrowers would be ideal to clear bunkers, but you're unlikely to have one, and even if you did, they tend to be conspicuous, heavy, and bulky, so the operator would be targeted by the enemy. In any case you need to use the darkness of night and/or plenty of smoke or other distractions to give cover as you get in range with your molotovs, grenades, satchel charges, etc.

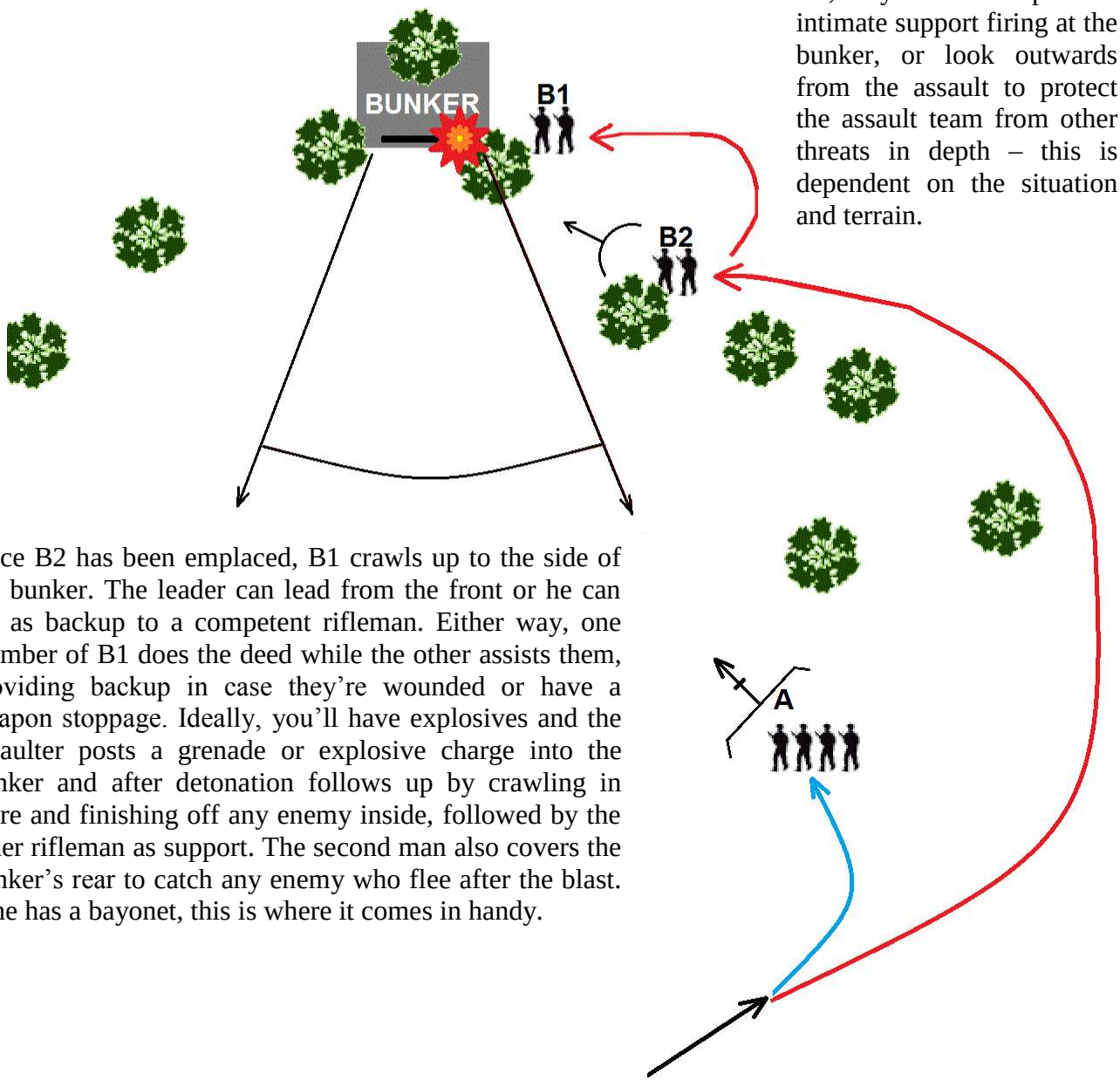
To assault a bunker, adapt normal team battle drills as outlined and move to the bunker's flank. When on a flank, the bunker can't get you, but consider that this may put you in another bunker's killing area. The tactics used to assault must be adapted to account for this: if the enemy has carefully positioned their bunkers this gives them defense-in-depth, meaning you can't approach one without falling victim to another. If you and your team find yourself attacking a network of mutually-supporting bunkers, then you need to quickly rethink what you're doing there (and rethink your life choices in general) and get some serious fire support, or GTFO.

Bunkers should be assaulted by a minimum of 8 people per bunker. This squad-sized element divides into two teams – the fire support team (team A) and the assault team (team B). The approach of the assault team towards the bunker should be covered by team A suppressing the bunker's firing ports as the assault team crawls up to it, ceasing fire at a predetermined point when the assault team has reached the chosen form-up point at the bunker's flank. Team A is best situated as close as possible to a 90-degree angle from team B's approach, as long as it can effectively get fire into the bunker's opening(s).

Once the assault team reaches the bunker's flank, it also splits into two - the leader and another man attack the bunker (B1); the other two are the "point of fire" supporting them (B2). The point of fire's purpose is enabling the assault team to manually place a grenade or satchel charge inside the bunker's firing hole and detonate it. Ideally, such a charge would also have an incendiary function, such as using a stick of dynamite strapped to an old soda bottle filled with gasoline.

The assault team leader decides on the spot if team B2 is best used to cover "inside" (towards the bunker you're assaulting) or "outside" (to cover eg. another bunker that threatens them). You must previously prepare a signal to indicate to the fire support team (A) to provide precision suppressive fire for the assault team if the point of fire team can't cover "inside".

As the assault team moves to the start point for the bunker assault, the leader decides where to place B2, they will either provide intimate support firing at the bunker, or look outwards from the assault to protect the assault team from other threats in depth – this is dependent on the situation and terrain.



Once B2 has been emplaced, B1 crawls up to the side of the bunker. The leader can lead from the front or he can act as backup to a competent rifleman. Either way, one member of B1 does the deed while the other assists them, providing backup in case they're wounded or have a weapon stoppage. Ideally, you'll have explosives and the assaulter posts a grenade or explosive charge into the bunker and after detonation follows up by crawling in there and finishing off any enemy inside, followed by the other rifleman as support. The second man also covers the bunker's rear to catch any enemy who flee after the blast. If he has a bayonet, this is where it comes in handy.

It may be possible to adapt suitable radio-controlled model cars to carry explosives, and to drive these up to, or even into, bunker openings along the lines of the German WW2 "Goliath" demolition vehicle. Of course, if you cannot manufacture more this will not be a long-term solution, but still a useful option while supplies last. Another useful idea (after TEOTWAWKI obviously, definitely ***not*** under normal situations) might be to make a DIY copy of the WW2 Panzerfaust, and cross it with the Armbrust recoilless weapon to create a launcher fired using black powder, to launch shells into bunker openings. It may be best to use a counter-shot of salt, clean dry sand, or sawdust (but not mixed) to reduce the required amount of powder. Range would probably not be very great, you would perhaps have an effective useable range of a hundred yards/meters maximum, and be sure (if circumstances are dire enough after SHTF to justify the effort of building one), to test it for safety and ballistics before use. Based on current US and other military manuals, as well as common sense, it's best to volley-fire several launchers simultaneously at the same target to guarantee a hit before it can suppress the launcher operators.

The original antitank German WW2 Panzerfaust 100 recoilless launcher:



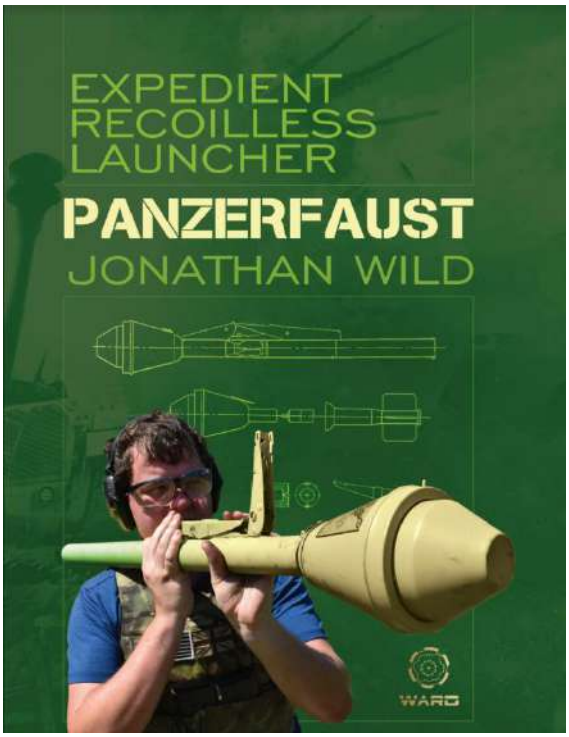
The hypothetical anti-bunker Panzerfaust/Armbrust-hybrid launcher mentioned above in the text. Note the projectile shown in blue, the sights on top, and the pistons (shown in green) made of plastic or glued cardboard sitting on each side of the launch/propellant charge:



It's important that the total weight of the counter-shot (the stuff going out the back of the launcher) is exactly equal to the total weight of the stuff going out of the front; otherwise the launcher will recoil, or even worse, pull forward. Ensure the inside of the launcher tube is as smooth as possible – fine sandpaper should help with that, and also lubricate the tube and the pistons with graphite when inserting them. It should be possible to rig up some sort of simple device using blank .22 rounds to ignite the propellant, and the projectile would be made similarly to the original panzerfaust projectile, with simple steel pop-out fins. Fuzing is up to your inventiveness, but I suggest researching what a "*spit-back fuze*" is to get some ideas.

Be aware that the rock-salt filled back-blast would be LETHAL to anyone caught by it, like being hit with a massive shotgun, so design your manual of arms for such a weapon with that in mind. Keep personnel well out of the back-blast area behind the firer, and keep the rear of the weapon an absolute minimum of 10ft/3m away from any walls or objects that might "bounce" the blast or the counter-shot back at the user.

Regarding the suggested use of salt for the preferred counter-shot material - this suggestion is made due to information contained in the April 2018 document "*Technical Report Islamic State Recoilless Launcher Systems*" by Conflict Armament Research - CAR noted that the use of salt as the counter-recoiling mass by ISIS in their launchers would cool the propellant gases to reduce backblast, which would potentially allow for firing from (somewhat) confined spaces, a desirable feature, and one that massively reduces the required amount of propellant. Both the salt and the black powder propellant should be enclosed in thin plastic bags to prevent moisture absorption, which would otherwise reduce reliability and potentially make the device far more dangerous to the users than it already is.



If you need more ideas on performing the hazardous business of bunker clearing, start with something like Osprey Publishing's book ***Elite #160 World War II Infantry Assault Tactics***, or look up old military tactical manuals.

A gent called Jonathan Wild built a BATF Form 1 Panzerfaust recoilless launcher at home which was capable of pretty consistently launching projectiles using black powder, to up to 120 yards. The book, titled "*Expedient Recoilless Launcher Panzerfaust*", can be found on amazon.com for $24.99, and may give you more ideas on things to do after SHTF. **Do not** build one before SHTF without getting the correct paperwork to do so first. I wish you good luck if it gets to the point where you need to use this information yourselves.

117. LIVING IN THE FIELD

"*The enemy moved in small groups of three to five fighters, making them hard to spot. During daylight, we watched them on the Predator [drone] … at night, when [they] heard a Predator or AC-130 coming, they pulled a blanket over themselves to disappear from the night-vision screen. They used low-tech to beat high-tech*". - 10th Mountain Div. AAR, Afghanistan, 2005

As stated earlier, infantry in conventional armies are pretty terrible at living in the field. Not only are most recruits from urban areas, but the military itself holds their hands constantly, and rarely emphasizes instruction in improvization, especially when it comes to procuring food, water, and shelter. Special Forces personnel are generally an exception to this.

One of the most fundamental things to remember after a SHTF event, is that your people will need regular and abundant sleep - better sleep means better performance and better decisions. Militaries rarely worry if troops are getting by on insufficient sleep, especially in the field, because field exercises commonly only last a week or two at most. The US Military operates on a 50% system, where only half the troops sleep at any one time - this can be done successfully for brief stays in the field, but after a week or two, the troops return to the base, and then try catching up on the sleep lost out field. Meanwhile, their performance suffers. Clearly this isn't ideal in the long-term. You won't know what the end date for TEOTWAWKI will be and so you need to ensure your people are getting at least 8 hours of sleep a night, especially because they will likely have to perform strenuous physical labor in the day. At the same time, you'll need people to keep watch at night, so how to achieve this? For our purposes, having well-defined routines that ensure adequate sleep is going to be very important. Sleep is the no.1 "*performance enhancing drug*" – lack of sleep is the number one source of hard times in life.

Let's assume we have a team patrolling an area of significant importance, control of which is contested by your tribe and another group. After the team has already spent the day patrolling or on other tasks, once no major tasks remain for the day but in the afternoon well before sunset, it must prepare for the night. This is done in a location called the logistic hide (LH). It's here that the team cooks and eats, socks are changed, blisters cared for, weapons are cleaned, etc. This is an important but dangerous time - only half the men should perform such tasks at any one moment, while the rest keep guard. Choose a location that provides concealment and if possible, cover. Use the terrain to shield your men from view, perhaps a wooded hilltop will be available or a draw near a stream. Be ready to leave the location rapidly if discovered by enemy personnel.

The team moves tactically using terrain for concealment from the LH to the "remain overnight" (RON) or sleep location that was previously selected. This is set up as per the earlier diagram/s, or however suits the specific spot chosen. This is ***NEVER*** in the same location as used for the logistic hide, it should always be at least a mile (1.5km) away from the LH - don't sleep in the same place where you prepared and ate dinner or did other tasks. Sleeping bags are silently laid out and tarps and anti-mosquito nets set up, making sure the team cannot be seen from outside the location. When in the RON, the machine-gun (if available) is set up to face the most likely enemy approach preferably with at least some cover, and definitely some concealment.

If the team has any sandbags, these may be filled and used to protect the gun, but no major digging takes place in a RON – ideally there should be no trace of the team having spent the night other than the grass being flattened. If the enemy has artillery or mortars, then digging slit trenches may be advisable, but if your personnel numbers are limited it may be best to limit oneself to shell-scrapes if there's a lot of you and the noise of digging isn't going to be heard, or in any other circumstance just use the micro-terrain for protection and rely on stealth for your safety, especially since your intent is to move again in the morning. This is somewhat similar to the "*stealth camping*" concept.

Members should avoid moving around as much as possible in the RON, and there should be **no** cooking and especially **no** smoking in the location before sunrise, though the men may eat cold rations or snack bars if they have them. Avoid using MRE flameless cookers in the RON, as the food smell can give away your location, especially if the enemy has dogs. Sleep in areas that at first glance, make you think, "I wouldn't want to sleep there"- this limits the odds of waking up with someone's gun muzzle in your face, especially when you're all exhausted.

While you sleep, you'll need to set up sentries to protect those sleeping. I will share one method I learned which can be adapted to your needs and used indefinitely if necessary. It comes in two flavors, 1-up picket and 2-up picket. Both function basically the same way. To use this system, prepare a list of the people in each squad-sized element. Each person in the list will wake the next. This means each person only has to remember one thing - who they'll wake up, and this should not change after the list is drawn up for the patrol. Adams wakes Brown. Brown wakes Charles, and so on. The exact order does not matter and does not need to be alphabetical or anything like that, as long as every person knows who they're supposed to wake up and exactly where that person will be sleeping, so they don't accidentally wake the wrong person - you'll fast become EXTREMELY unpopular if you do that.

Picket begins in the RON position a little before sunset at dusk or twilight. During picket, the team is to make no noise, and use no lights at all. Let's say this is day one of the mission, and Adams is the first person on 1-up picket. For an hour, they sit behind the MG, looking out for any movement and listening for the enemy. At the end of their hour, they wake Brown, who begins his shift, also for an hour. And so on - this continues until dawn.

If the threat level is felt to be more severe or if the team is exhausted, then 2-up picket is used. This is essentially the same, except two people are awake at any one time, one starting on the hour and the other at the half-hour mark. It's easier for members to help each other stay awake this way, and there's better awareness with two people. The first backup person may end up doing some additional picket so there are always two people on picket, but that should not be too troublesome as it would still be before nightfall.

The most important thing is that whoever would have gone after the last person on night one, starts on night two, and so on. In the example list shown, Franklin would be first on the second night for one-up picket, and for 2-up picket, it would be Iglesias and Franklin. Each guard shift on picket is an hour long, and it's the responsibility of the person on picket to wake their replacement and ensure they get up and take over the position. The person on picket does NOT go to bed until the replacement is in position and is definitely awake, and also does not wake their replacement up before the designated time. Ensure there's a wristwatch at the picket position so that the time can be checked in the dark.

EXAMPLE PICKET SHIFT LIST:

1-up picket
Adams
Brown
Charles
Daniels
Edwards
Franklin
Grant
Hughes
Iglesias
Adams
Brown
Charles
Daniels
Edwards

2-up picket	start time
Adams Brown	1700 1730
Charles Daniels	1800 1830
Edwards Franklin	1900 1930
Grant Hughes	2000 2030
Iglesias Brown	2100 2130
Adams Daniels	2200 2230
Charles Franklin	2300 2330
Edwards Hughes	0000 0030
Grant Brown	0100 0130
Iglesias Daniels	0200 0230
Adams Franklin	0300 0330
Charles Hughes	0400 0430
Edwards Brown	0500 0530
Grant Daniels	0600 0630

Graph assumes sunset is at 1800h (6pm) and dawn at 0600h.

The example above is written for a larger team of 8+ people, but can be used for larger or smaller groups as needed. Larger groups need more people on security so have 2 guard groups, while groups of 5 or less should simply stick to the 1-up system.

When sleeping, place your boots in a location next to you where they will be easy to get to and can rapidly be put on. Loosen laces so there's no fumbling about and they don't get stuck halfway up your foot. If you can't put your boots on within 3-4 seconds, you're doing something wrong. Place your helmet (if applicable) over your boots while sleeping, to keep both boots and helmet dry. Have all your gear under cover to avoid it getting wet from rain or dew while resting at night. If in danger of being "bumped" by the enemy while sleeping, remove boots at the LH and allow feet to dry, then put on clean dry socks and replace boots so you can sleep while wearing them – tie laces a bit more loosely then usual if required. Or wear something like TEVA sandals or light sneakers when asleep if you find that you can't throw your boots on fast enough when suddenly awoken.

Whoever is guarding the team on picket should wake the whole team silently 30min before dawn - the leader should establish when dawn is the night before (most GPS receivers will be able to tell you, and many fishing guides can too). This is best done by giving their replacement a good shake and ensuring they're actually awake, informing them that it's time to get up. The replacement then silently wakes the whole team, and the team spends the half-hour before dawn silently scanning for the enemy, as the last half-hour before dawn is the most effective time for an attack.

After this, members put away their sleep gear and clean their weapons as buddy pairs, with one guarding while the other packs up and cleans, prepares a small and simple breakfast, makes coffee, etc. This shouldn't take very long, maybe half an hour in total maximum before everyone is done and ready to move. Ensure that **all** trash is removed from the RON and that nothing is left behind to potentially provide information to the enemy – use civilian "leave no trace" camping techniques to deceive the enemy regarding your presence and numbers as much as possible. Again; ideally there should be no trace that the team was ever there other than flattened grass.

A similar system of picket can be used by your tribe to keep watch from a stationary location or to watch over CCTV camera feeds, etc. If you're in a stationary position during the daytime, picket shifts should be longer, about 2 hours, but should not be longer than that as one's attention will tend to drift which obviously would make it easier for enemies to approach. In a stationary position such as an observation post (OP) or bunker, a minimum of four people should be used, with one on duty and the others resting in the location during the day. Movement into or out of such positions should be at night at least an hour after sunset, using a different way in and out each time to avoid creating a visible trail to the spot.

Maneuver warfare theory holds that one method to defeat an enemy is through dislocation- "*the art of rendering the enemy's strength irrelevant*". Dislocation itself comes in different forms: temporal, positional, functional, and moral. Surprise is the key to each; an unsurprised enemy can react and avoid dislocation. In this context, it's important to remember that surprise is an event that happens within the mind of the enemy commander. It's critical to remember Clausewitz's maxim that "*war is the continuation of politics by other means*" which is where moral dislocation especially comes into play: one must ensure that your military operations generate politically undesirable consequences for the enemy. You must break the enemy's will to pursue their desired outcome, and you don't necessarily need to win battles to achieve that – just ask the Viet Cong or the Taliban.

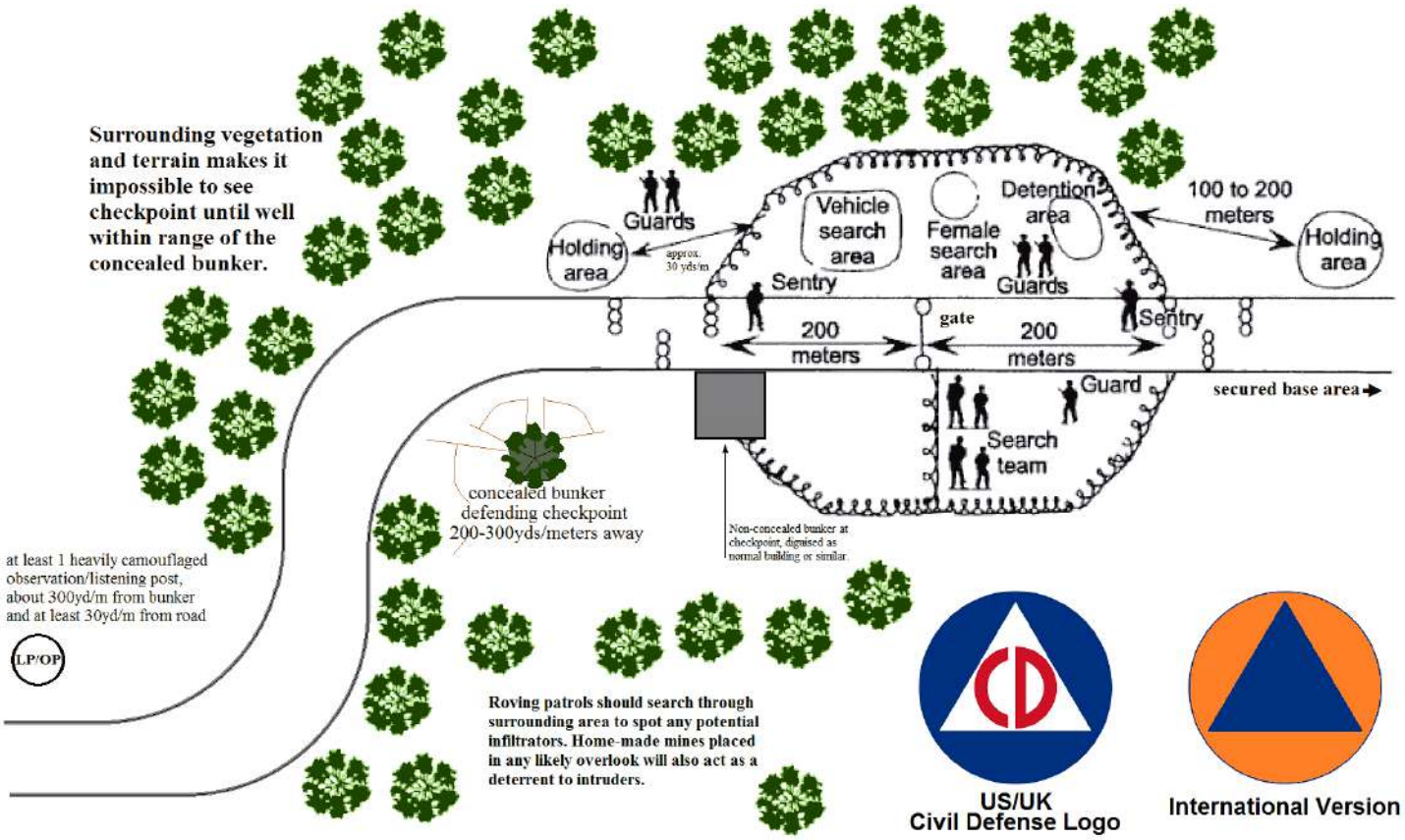
118. <u>ROADBLOCKS AND REFUGEES</u>

During the final years of our present civilization, those who intend to survive must be able to make quick, local decisions. Remember that as I said in back in chapter two:
"*If you're there [...] during minor local crises giving out level-headed advice, you'll be looked to [...] make hard decisions later."*

The libertarian solution, that of leaving people to basically act as they wish, only works if all the people are well-behaved. Our problem is that we have large numbers of people who are prone to be very badly behaved, who demand free stuff, and if government fails to provide them with free stuff (e.g. because it just collapsed), they either starve or they promptly set about taking *other people's* stuff for themselves. These people need to be dealt with. Having solved the issue with this type of people, then we can apply libertarian-style solutions for people who ***won't*** act badly.

Regardless of your town's officials' present attitude towards roadblocks, they <u>will</u> be set up after the first wave of refugees hits. Most local politicians will be unprepared and will impose ineffective total roadblocks, causing refugees to build up until they escalate violence to uncontrollable levels, dooming your town. A less palatable but more effective solution might be to collapse bridges or bury roads with a landslide to cut off access, and then cover the approaches with sharpshooters if they persist in approaching regardless. Whatever you use to cut access (especially vehicle access) **must** appear to be a natural event to casual observation, eg: a burned-out wooden bridge or a landslide. Obvious manmade obstacles (like felling trees to block a road) will lead people to realize the access-way was deliberately blocked to protect something valuable.

However, any remaining access points will require checkpoints to be set up for screening in locations where travellers will come across them without warning. Similar locations are used by police as speed traps and such today - if you ever passed through a police "seat belt", "sobriety" or "safety" checkpoint, you encountered a roadblock from the receiving end. Checkpoints are essentially (semi-) permanent nonviolent ambushes.



They should operate along the lines of military checkpoints like those the US military set up around its bases in Iraq and elsewhere. They must be impenetrable, but as official and businesslike as possible. Individuals manning checkpoints **must** wear uniforms and identifying markings to establish an air of authority and responsibility- many otherwise good and worthwhile people will be understandably distrustful of roadblocks of any kind. Refugees who simply want a chance for a new life will welcome signs of stable authority. Uniformed officers manning a proper way station will provide this- checkpoint staff should wear BDUs of a plain blue, gray, or green, with nametags and a visible armband bearing the Civil Defense logo. At the very least, clean proper clothing and a Civil Defense armband on safety-orange cloth should be worn. There should also be at least one uniformed police officer at each checkpoint, and it's a good idea for a woman to be present as well - this will comfort refugees who would otherwise fear being shot or robbed. Weapons must remain holstered or out of sight, and checkpoint operators must be clean-shaven and well-presented for as long as the supply of razors lasts. This encourages the well-intentioned to cooperate by presenting a professional air.

Unambiguous signs should be placed at the checkpoint, looking something like this:



It's critical that roadblocks not be misused. Personal property, regardless of nature or origin (even if it was looted), must never be confiscated from any refugee, whether they're allowed to settle in your town or encouraged to move on. Only if they're an obvious predator and gained their goods through obvious violence should their property be confiscated and used for the town's good. Persons whose goods are confiscated for such reasons need to be rapidly tried and yes, executed lest they return to get revenge - imagine if they returned for revenge with a whole gang of raiders!

These videos contain more info on the kinds of security actions and other considerations for your future checkpoints, besides what I've just discussed here:
https://yewtu.be/PMljQPSbQOY , **https://yewtu.be/ZbJRBFci-V8**

It may be appropriate to offer persons who don't intend to settle but who do have bulk quantities of tradeable goods an opportunity to barter them under supervision in an area set aside for the purpose, a kind of scavver's market. Perhaps a refugee will appear with a carload of salvaged medication - this would be a boon for your town's doctor.

The roadblocks at entrances around town serve to screen refugees in order to determine who should be absorbed into the population and who should be given water and maybe a sandwich and told to move along. Many will only wish to pass through on their way to elsewhere, and these should be encouraged and suitably assisted to do so if safe.

Excluding obvious criminals and similar dangerous types among the refugees, the majority would be ill-prepared and financially ruined but otherwise basically decent people. On the other hand, dangerous individuals should be quietly be taken aside and hanged ASAP. Individuals who attempt to evade and escape your roadblocks will likely be the kind of person who is the most dangerous type to your infant society, usually members of marauding gangs or career criminals. If they turn and try to escape immediately on seeing the checkpoint, they should not be allowed to survive, so establish a hidden blocking force to catch anyone who does so.

Those with practical skills and those willing to do physical labor should be welcomed. There would be many displaced individuals which your town would do well to accept. Properly applied, this policy would not only protect your town from raiders, but may help rebuild civilization. In this way people like nurses, doctors, engineers, architects, chemists, scientists, etc., could be persuaded to settle in your town. Skilled people such as machinists, tool and die makers, chemists, plumbers and all kinds of skilled laborers will be needed in abundance. Local skilled workers will find they're swamped by demand for their skills due to risk of the infrastructure going to pieces.

Such people should only be allowed entry on the understanding they will not be allowed a voice in any political decisions for a specified yet extended number of years, say, twenty at the very least. Better yet, the refugees' children who are born in your town will one day have a say, lest your town's decisions be influenced in a way harmful to you.

Nearly every town is surrounded by large farms and rangeland. Present farming practices would be non-viable after a collapse, and even bulk food shipment as is done today will become impossible without easy access to oil-based fuels and safe long-distance transportation. Refugees will be necessary to provide the hand labor that will be in great demand once the heavy farm machinery starts to break down. Farms would reorganise around smaller plots of a few acres, each farmed by a family, the original owners remaining as technical landowners but recompensed by being entitled to a percentage of resident refugee/farmers produce, or some other agreement.

The town itself will need to focus on cottage industries to manufacture everything from boots to buckles, and all skills will be in high demand. Few small towns will have the skilled workers to keep civilization going when long-distance trade grinds to a halt.

While having 10,000 people in your small town of might seem crowded right now, that population would over time easily grow to double or even triple, a necessity if you want your tribe to eventually reboot civilization. Without sufficient population density, you can't have the critical mass of intelligent people who create the innovation that lifted us out of Malthusian misery in the 1800's and gave us enormous economic payoffs. If Einstein had been born in a village in Africa, or Newton in a goat-herder's tent in Arabia, they would have left no mark on humanity.

The burning of coal launched us into the realm of non-renewables, where we depend on our technical advancement to find more and more of such stuff and solve the attendant problems. Can we bootstrap ourselves indefinitely? Consider - the stone age didn't end because we ran out of stone. It ended because we discovered bronze was better. If we go full-steam ahead with nuclear power, coal power will be obsolete. If we throw our best minds at fusion, the very stars will come within our grasp - or at least, that of our grandchildren.

The limiting factor in a Malthusian economy is land, not people. Once all available land is farmed, a marginal human is less than useless. The key to transitioning away from a Malthusian economy is a critical mass of people with a high IQ. Once high-IQ people progress technology past certain points, there are other food sources beside muscle-powered farming; for instance, Atlantic fisheries have been a major food source for Europe for many hundreds of years. Amusingly enough, Malthus penned his essay of doom-and-gloom just a handful of years before humanity's material well-being entered "hyperdrive mode" by inventing capitalism and the steam-engine.

So consider that our present practice of infanticide and anti-natalism leads to Malthusian misery. Assuming there's the energy to spare, there's always a way to convert intelligent human labor to productive biomass. Having energy to spare depends on that critical mass of smart people, and good leadership and planning in funding things such as magnetic fusion containment, for just one example. Properly dispersed over unused land in your territory, citizens and refugees will create a city-state where every pair of hands and every mind will be gainfully employed, leading to an upwards spiral of growth and well-being for your people. (Ref. the book "*The Ultimate Resource*")

By and large, in conflicts against peoples that practice human sacrifice, people tend to resort to drastic methods, which suggests that lesser means will fail: Cortéz's men found that human sacrifice was disturbingly persuasive to the locals, necessitating the elimination of the persuaders. The ancient Hebrews defended their population against Canaanite child-sacrifice memes through the use of genocidal violence. The Romans eradicated the child-sacrificing Carthaginians through genocidal violence, and also eradicated the Druidic priesthood of the Celts due to their persistent use of human sacrifice. What solution should *your* civilization-seed use after the Fall against those who support abortion and contraception for your people? Think on this long and hard, because these are some of the kinds of rules you will need to apply to protect your own people - but let other, "foreign" tribes do whatever they want, then take over their lands when they die out childless.

Refugees screened and absorbed by your community will be a source of material supply to the town - without cheap and abundant fuel, most vehicles would become sources of spare parts, as well as iron and steel for blacksmithing, being systematically stripped of wiring, electrical components such as alternators, glass, sheet metal, etc., all of it useful for making other things. People will revert to traveling on foot, by bicycle, cart and horse.

Of course, not everyone will be a welcome addition to your town, but many will be a source of skills and knowledge the locals will not be able to supply.

119. <u>SELECTING IMMIGRANTS FROM AMONG THE REFUGEES</u>

You must be selective about who you allow to settle in your tribal territory. These people and their offspring will be the citizens of your future nation. Better to turn away ten "maybes" than accept even one "aw *hell* no". It's important to remember that the majority of people you turn away will look just like you. If you're not selective, and accept them on the basis of (for example) simply being the same race you are, you'll screw yourself over. For example, the number one enemy of White people today are leftist Whites - take it from the guy who originally invented the term 'alternative right': [**https://www.chroniclesmagazine.org/2019/September/43/9/magazine/article/10847183/**]

Native migrants are the pre-collapse equivalent of refugees. They can usually be spotted because they use terms like "*clean air*", "*good schools*", "*low taxes*", "*a stable environment*", "*good place to raise kids*" to justify moving to areas like yours - in short, all the various terms cuckservatives use to mean mono-ethnic White areas. This is done subconsciously, to avoid being perceived as different from the herd and singled out as prey by Universalists. Native migrants are usually liberal elitists who want to have their cake and eat it too, but who've been forced to partially come to grips with reality and are struggling to build an acceptably politically-correct rationalization for their reluctance to live in the multi-racial dumpster-fire they helped create. Universalist Liberals make messes, then run away and leave it for others to clean up; California being Exhibit A here, and London in the UK being exhibit B.

You must always remember that these people (both native migrants & refugees) aren't ***<u>YOUR</u>*** people. They aren't part of your tribe, they're ultimately competitors for the survival resources your tribe needs, and even if some are accepted initially, their kids might well fail or even refuse to fit in.

Testing begins at the checkpoint. Have one person who is good with people (the "face") but who won't actually sympathise with them very much asking the initial questions, such as what they did for a living. You must prepare a short list of critical questions for the face to ask, and your team must role-play this procedure with them to ensure they can do it smoothly and effectively. People who have worked in marketing are likely to be good at sorting the wheat from the chaff and sizing them up rapidly, as will experienced police officers who understand their role is no longer to enforce old-world laws - social workers and the like will inevitably be terrible for the role. It would be best to get a man to do this job, sadly far too many women are likely to fall for the tales of any Harry Hard-luck or Sally Sob-story, leaving you with a town full of useless people demanding hand-outs and voting rights. Those who don't pass this stage must be told to move along, even if they have children in tow. Remember, **they aren't your people** - "*They might got your skin, but it don't make them your kin.*"

Once you have identified a good potential candidate(s) for immigration, the individual candidate (ideally, the candidate family) gets passed on by the "face" to your immigration agent, perhaps using an unobtrusive hand gesture. Your immigration agent will ask each person if they're seeking a place to settle down. If they answer that they are, the immigration agent should outline prospective employment opportunities and again light-heartedly question them on their former life, work, and experience. They must explain your socio-political structure briefly and in a way that makes it sound positive, emphasizing to the candidate that they will have <u>no</u>, repeat, ***<u>no</u>*** political voice whatsoever for the foreseeable future, and perhaps for the rest of their life. The agent must receive a positive response from the candidate that they understand and accept the conditions of entry. Again, this must be role-played repeatedly so the immigration agent does this well, and anyone who refuses or reacts in a strongly negative manner must be invited to continue their journey in a firm but polite manner.

Assuming the candidate gets past this point, every person over about 15 years of age should then be given a multiple-choice questionnaire of no less than 200, and no more than 500, questions. This is best created by getting several people to come up with questions, then combining the results. The questions must be worded to sound neutral, and several questions, including the most important, need to be asked at least twice in different ways. Be sure to include decoy questions that the candidate will think are important but you don't actually care about. If there's a psychologist available, they would be a good person to help create some of the test's questions.

Officially, the questionnaire exists to get a feel for the person's mental state and outlook, and to gather where they might fit in to your community - similar to the US military ASVAB, and this is what you would say to the candidate if they ask why they're filling it out. You should emphasize that there are no right or wrong answers but that its best to answer as fully and as honestly as they can.

The *actual* reason for the questionnaire is to see what their political and social views are, and to gauge their intelligence. You should however expect people to be somewhat evasive about their real values and beliefs. It's best to set a time limit on the test to ensure the person does not overthink their answers too much and try to "game" it with what they think you want to hear, though no doubt they will try to do this anyway.

Use tests such as the "political compass" online test as inspiration for some of the kinds of questions to ask. Others should be taken from Raven's Progressive Matrices* or even high-school textbooks on mathematics and such. Don't expect high math scores, however – those are mostly decoys, and partly to gauge the candidate's intelligence. Remember to throw in plenty of decoys.

A few example **non**-decoy questions to include might be:

"*The purpose of government is to do what the citizens want, regardless of what that is*."
Do you: A [_] Strongly Agree
B [_] Moderately Agree
C [_] Moderately Disagree
D [_] Strongly Disagree

"*All people are equal, no matter their gender, nationality, or race*."
Do you: A [_] Strongly Agree
B [_] Moderately Agree
C [_] Moderately Disagree
D [_] Strongly Disagree

"*We should allow people such as racists to express their opinions, even if we disagree*."
Do you: A [_] Strongly Agree
B [_] Moderately Agree
C [_] Moderately Disagree
D [_] Strongly Disagree

"*A good government should provide free or affordable healthcare for its citizens*."
Do you: A [_] Strongly Agree
B [_] Moderately Agree
C [_] Moderately Disagree
D [_] Strongly Disagree

"*Systemic racism is what disadvantages people of color in our country, not lack of effort*."
Do you: A [_] Strongly Agree
B [_] Moderately Agree
C [_] Moderately Disagree
D [_] Strongly Disagree

…and so on. Notice how the wording is unlikely to raise red flags even in someone who is a staunch Universalist. Hopefully, they will answer honestly, so you can then inform them that they "unfortunately" don't meet your requirements and could they kindly move along, have yourself a safe journey, sir/ma'am, and good luck with the zombies/cannibals/whatever. Note that these are just examples; **don't use these questions exactly as they're written here**: change the wording. Also note that there aren't any neutral "*I don't care"* - type responses available.



Once prepared, take the test yourselves and compare answers, so you know what candidates to select and who to refuse. Obviously, this means that the more the candidates' responses resemble your own, the better they would fit in, and those who obviously clash ideologically should only be allowed to enter if they have a critical skill you need that is in extremely short supply of (eg: you desperately need a doctor and don't have one). However, mark the official file of any such "critical skill" individual and make sure they're never allowed to teach or wield any sort of public office or other position where their subversive toxic ideas may spread.

> * Raven's Progressive Matrices are visual IQ tests designed to work even with illiterate people. Interestingly, when under time pressure, people normally tend to score quite "low", with 60-70iq an average score for Europeans and anything above 90 is exceptional, but the score is only valid for the first time you take it, because of the issue of gaming the system – at least for online tests that aren't performed by professional psychologists.

The next step in selecting immigrants is to give the people who passed the earlier phase an interview. This should happen as soon as possible after they completed the questionnaire. The interviewer should be provided with the results of the questionnaire as soon as possible, to guide some of the later, more detailed questions in the interview.

Interviewers should ask open-ended questions about the immigration candidate's outlook and beliefs, allowing them to explain their world-view. Interviewers must scrutinize the immigrant while doing so, even to the point of staring at them until they feel uncomfortable. Their body language and presentation is the key to detecting lies and viewpoints, and you can't observe that if you're looking away. It's also useful to have some soft classical music (not Muzak) playing for psychological effect.

Another useful tool is to have them sit on a hard wooden chair the legs of which you previously sawed off between an eighth-inch and a quarter-inch off the front legs and then sanded all four legs so they sit flush on the floor. This gives you a chair that is flat enough for the person to not notice the angle, but anyone using it finds themselves having to brace their legs to avoid sliding forward and off their seat. The subconscious discomfort will ensure they answer more honestly than if they were fully at ease.

Some useful questions to include might be:

> "*In your own words*, [name], *could you explain what are the differences you believe exist between* [your ethnic group] *and* [antagonist ethnic group]?"

> "How do you think these differences influence relations between these two groups?"

> "Can you tell me how you feel about our policy that all people who aren't born here are allowed to have no say in our political matters?"

> "Why do you think this policy exists for immigrants to our region? Do you think it's a reasonable policy?"

> "What accommodations do you personally believe should be made for LGBT people in society?"

> "Please explain what influence you think religion should have in law and official policy and why?"

>"In your personal opinion, what is the right social role for women?"

>"Tell us your opinions on this sentence: '*Being vegan is more moral than eating meat*' - please explain your argument."

…and so on. Make the majority of the questions less obvious than these are. Be a bit subtle, you're trying to see if the person is compatible, if they're trying to infiltrate your society, or if they really just want a safe place to call home. Any attempt at bribery or evasion by the immigrant must mean rejection of their application – this includes a woman offering her body in exchange for sanctuary, something which is known to happen in collapse situations (think Yugoslavia, etc.)

Again, you don't want immigrants who will rock the boat or who may become disgruntled to the point they will try taking over – bullets are expensive, after all. It may be a good idea to have a camera set up recording the interview, or at least a dummy camera *appearing* to record the interview. Even under SHTF conditions, you should expect initial nervousness and fear in responding to politically incorrect questions while being "recorded", but if they absolutely refuse to answer them at all in front of the "camera", even under SHTF conditions, then sadly, they need to be shown the door.

Note that there's no point performing this interview process under present-day "normal" conditions - doing so before TEOTWAWKI is liable to attract unwanted attention from ACWE.

120. Equipment Suggestions:- Firearms

One very important point is owning firearms - anything is better than nothing. **If you're unarmed and cannot provide for your own security, then you'll labor for those who do.**

Firearms are perhaps the greatest equalizer ever invented. With a firearm, a petite 100lb woman can fight off a 300lb linebacker attacking her - without one, even the strongest man will end up being lorded over by his country's former police and military personnel - they end up as the ruling class of a new feudal system, and you get to be the lowly serf slaving away in the fields for them.

Owning firearms may be difficult in your country- certainly there are many countries where owning a pistol, rifle, or shotgun is difficult, and even a few where it's completely illegal. In such cases you may need to find a way to procure an illegal weapon, study how to obtain them from the military or police, or even make a crude example of your own. Being arrested for this may lead to lengthy and severe punishment, but it's something that you must at least consider. Notice that I'm not suggesting you go out and do this now; I'm merely pointing out that it may become a reasonable measure in the case of societal collapse.

If you cannot own a firearm at all, then one possible alternative before complete collapse is to own a powerful crossbow. Why a crossbow in preference to a bow? Because despite being slower to reload, a crossbow can be carried loaded and ready to fire by anyone with a few minutes of basic instruction, whereas a bow cannot and requires months or even years of practise. One can also manufacture a powerful crossbow with a little mechanical skill, using spring steel like a leaf spring from a junked car.

Notice there's no shotguns on the list of suggested firearms - tyrants will grudgingly tolerate plebs like us owning things like shotguns, because they're useless for overthrowing tyrants.

Shotguns also are extremely loud and with anything other than slug rounds, they have excessive spread for our needs after about 15yds (~14m): it's just too easy to hit bystanders, etc. with stray pellets. If you choose to get one anyhow, I suggest a 12-gauge pump rated for steel shot with a 3in chamber - this enhances durability and lets you use scavenged 3in ammo, ***but only stockpile 2.75in ammo***. After SHTF, avoid using it for outdoor defense or to hunt for food (even when you're hunting for birds, use slingshots, traps like the versatile *330 conibear*, air-rifles, or a .22).

If you have kids, get each of them an airgun or a BB gun once they reach an age where you consider them to be responsible enough for it, and then teach them to use and respect it as if it were a full-size weapon. This will not just teach them to act in a responsible manner around firearms, but means that after SHTF the kids can help by hunting small game for food with it.

Every Man Should Have A Rifle

Henry Lawson, 1907

So I sit and write and ponder, while the house is deaf and dumb,
Seeing visions "over yonder" of the war I know must come.
In the corner — not a vision — but a sign for coming days
Stand a box of ammunition and a rifle in green baize.
And in this, the living present, let the word go through the land,
Every tradesman, clerk and peasant should have these two things at hand.

No — no ranting song is needed, and no meeting, flag or fuss —
In the future, still unheeded, shall the spirit come to us!
Without feathers, drum or riot on the day that is to be,
We shall march down, very quiet, to our stations by the sea.
While the bitter parties stifle every voice that warns of war,
Every man should own a rifle and have cartridges in store!

The first weapon to get, regardless of all other plans and purchases, should be a bolt-action or self-loading .22LR rifle. This is an ideal beginner's or learner's weapon, and the relatively mild noise, low kick and lower ammunition cost make it a good weapon to practice shooting skills with. .22LR rifles are also the easiest to silence, especially if it comes with a threaded muzzle – note that I am **not** suggesting doing so illegally: get the proper paperwork and licenses for a silencer, or save the idea in the back of your mind for the end of the world after government collapses and there's no rule of law. Otherwise ensure you comply with **all** local, state and federal laws that apply in your area.

Handguns are the most portable and concealable firearms available and are excellent for defensive use, the main downside is their short practical range; their main use is at close ranges (<~30ft/10m) and/or in confined spaces. They're best when your assailant is unaware you're armed. The two basic types are revolvers and semi-autos. Revolvers hold rounds in a circular device called the cylinder which rotates a new cartridge into firing position when fired. They're less mechanically complex than semi-autos but have major downsides in that most only hold six rounds (so you'll be reloading more often), and many need more trigger pressure. Don't buy one in anything but .357 Magnum – this fires .38 Special equally well (the other way around does not apply), and these two are the most common revolver rounds. Semi-automatic handguns date from the 1800's, and the rounds go in a box-like magazine holding from seven to twenty rounds, depending on caliber. This obviously gives more shots before needing to reload, and replacing a whole magazine at once is much faster and simpler than refilling a revolver's cylinder one round at a time. Most police and other armed professionals use semi-autos, they're generally a little bit more expensive and complicated than revolvers, but are still very easy to learn to use. Stick to the calibres mentioned on the list below.

Laws differ between states regarding loaded rifles in vehicles, but AR pistols fall under handgun laws, so having one loaded and concealed in your car is legally no different to carrying a Glock or 1911. This may allow for good firepower in emergencies as well as a manual of arms basically identical with your main rifle. While hardly "concealable" like a normal pistol, it can be separated into upper and lower components to fit inside some backpacks and takes just a few moments to reassemble if entering a high-risk area - ideal paired with a minimalist low-profile chest rig carrying only ammo concealed under a light jacket. It's best to stick to AR pistols of a plain or "slick" buffer tube style (rather than a brace) to avoid any "*wait, that's an SBR*"-type issues with the local LEO goons.

Carbines are basically short rifles (the "*scary military-style assault rifles*" that we see leftists and do-gooders constantly trying to ban or restrict civilian access to), they are ideal for most environments and very dependable, but even a cheap one will cost several hundred dollars. They're definitely worth it however, as compared to other weapons such as bolt-action deer rifles and such, they have mild recoil, light weight, decent to superb accuracy, have rounds small enough to carry quite a lot of ammo without much trouble, and are designed to function under adverse conditions. The AR-15 is the most common and popular type, often resembling the military M-16 or M-4 series. Kalashnikov pattern weapons are (under some specific conditions like extreme cold) even more reliable than the AR-15. Other kinds of short rifles like lever-action rifles etc, are less ideal but may help you blend in better.

We also have full-size rifles. By this, I'm referring to the more traditional style of weapon, usually bolt-action, firing anything from .22 rounds up to big elephant-killing rounds, but most commonly chambered in something like .30-06 or .308. Again, stick to the suggested calibres to ensure you'll be able to get ammo for it. They're almost always fitted with scopes, but you should get a good set of iron sights added by a gunsmith to serve as a backup if the scope is damaged or broken. They're accurate and reliable, with the longest useable range of all listed weapons, but generally have small magazine capacities, lower fire rates, and larger calibers may have excessive recoil for inexperienced users.

Finally, we have shotguns - a decent second-hand 12-gauge costs just a couple hundred dollars in most areas. If you're on a super-tight budget and just a beginner shooter, I'd possibly suggest getting one after your .22 rifle. Despite what TV says, you **do** have to aim shotguns. Shotshells are better than slugs in urban settings, because the pellets are less likely to punch through several plaster walls. However, shotguns aren't very useful except for indoor home defense - they're ridiculously loud, they're pretty inaccurate, the ammo is both bulky and heavy, and stray pellets and ricochets are a danger to bystanders. Avoid shotguns unless you aren't permitted to own rifles.

121. Firearm Training

Regardless of whatever weapon system or equipment you choose you ***must*** be proficient with it. It's far better to spend $400 on a cheap AR-15 carbine or $300 on an AK clone and getting $2000 of training to learn to use it really well than wasting that money by spending it the other way around.

Only buy guns you'll actually practice shooting with: don't buy a fancy gun and put it in a gun rack to look cool and "be ready for emergencies", because if you do that, when the emergency comes, you won't be ready. A gun you don't shoot is a gun you should sell in order to buy a gun that you'll actually use. Only buy a safe queen or range toy after you own multiple guns and have undergone extensive range practice and tactical training with them.

If you're in the USA and can stomach giving money to the NRA they do offer plenty of classes geared mostly towards safety for beginner shooters. The store where you purchase your firearm should be able to recommend safety and shooting classes in your area. There no single organization dedicated to civilian skill-at-arms training so to develop your skills you'll need to search locally for courses.

For more advanced training, search online for available courses in your state or nearby using the key words "carbine", "long rifle", "precision shooting", and "pistol" courses, read the descriptions carefully and whenever possible, thoroughly read any customer reviews, the negative ones too. If you live nearby and/or can afford to travel to and take them, organizations such as Bear Solutions, Haley Strategic, Cogworks, Thunder Ranch, Pat McNamara, One Shepherd, or Max Velocity in Virginia all know their shit and teach it well - that's why they command high premiums (note this is *not* an exhaustive list). I also definitely recommend getting a copy of Max Velocity's book "*CONTACT! a Tactical Manual For Post Collapse Survival"*, regardless of who you train with. Remember to bring some humility if you go to any training courses, even if you're ex-military - you aren't there to look like a big-shot, but to learn new skills to share with your tribe that may save your butts.

The data on shootouts astonishingly indicates that a small pistol with the cheapest ammo, the gun that is the easiest and most comfortable to fire, is the gun most effective in resolving shootouts. Most likely it's not the gun itself, but rather the abundance of practice that gets done with a gun with plentiful cheap ammo. This indicates that the gun that you're most likely to practice with, that is the easiest, cheapest, and most fun to practice with, is what you should buy. Probably the best way to "*git gud*" with a weapon is to find a fully-operable .22 version of your chosen weapon to practice with, and practice at least weekly, and preferably even three times a week if possible. Definitely get the 9mm or .45 version for actual defensive carry use, but buy the .22 version **first** and practice, practice, practice.

Only very rarely do people drop dead on being hit with a .22, but they sure do lose interest, enthusiasm, and the capacity to harm you, at least if they're hit where they're not wearing armor. Don't worry about one-shot stops: worry about getting consistent, rapid hits on center-mass, and empty the mag into them as needed. Single-round stopping power is common in rifles and shotguns, and that's all well and good, but it takes an average of three pistol rounds. Remember Kyle Rittenhouse hit his third assailant in the arm holding a pistol - the man did *not* use the uninjured hand to continue his attack.

You should definitely train and train under stress to take aimed rifle shots at between 50 and 200 yards (timed obstacle course shoots if you can set up such a training range, perhaps take part in 3-gun matches, 2g-ACM matches, or even pay for proper tactical training. **Don't expect to win any such competitions** - you're simply competing in order to improve your skills.

Do it in full kit and you'll see the wisdom in cutting back on gear and weight. A lot of people, military and otherwise, start out with a dozen magazines, etc. but as we actually use gear in the field, we all come to the same conclusion- less on you is better. If you're ever in a prolonged firefight and need all that ammo, you will find that you've got the time to pull mags out of your pack. Mags on your vest or belt are usually for running and gunning and the thing about that is that you need to be able to actually move **fast**- nobody successfully wobbles and guns. Speed and accuracy are key and you'll find you lose both as you increase your loadout. Stick to around 8 mags in your webbing, and if you're not expecting immediate combat, as few as 3 total is fine. How much ammunition should YOU carry in total? Well, as much as you can carry and still do the task at hand. Of all the places to look at for reducing weight… ammunition load is **NOT** one of them.

There's no real rule on how much ammo to take, other than making sure you don't run out in the middle of a battle, which would prove... embarrassing. I recommend starting with a moderate amount of ammo and increasing it as needed; I suggest starting with 6+1 or 8+1 magazines for your rifle, and if you decide you want or need more then feel free to increase the amount carried as required. Consider that **AMMO=TIME** when you're in contact – time to allow you to suppress the enemy and move, whether that's towards them (attacking) or away from them (breaking contact). Note that this basic 6/8+1 is the number of magazines you should **carry**, not the number of mags that you **own** - you should own plenty of spare magazines (I recommend having at least 20 per weapon) in case any break or are lost, and you'll find that you *will* break some, and may lose others, over time.

It's very true that experts like Kyle Lamb and Paul Howe have publicly stated in classes and writing that 3-4 mags is all you need to carry. HOWEVER: they're focused on personal and home defense, and urban rifle fights for LEOs. Neither of these uses calls for lengthy firing such as you'll perform during break-contact drills against a numerically superior opponent armed with modern long-arms. A single break-contact drill (and let's assume it happens in thick brush so the fire-and-movement portion lasts only a hundred yards/meters or so before you start running away) will have you burning through magazines of ammunition like the hero of a bad '80s action movie, with each person using up 5 or 6 magazines to provide suppressive fire. Three mags may just be enough for ***a*** gunfight. Except battles are made up of multiple gunfights where you're unlikely to resupply between each one. Even then, the key word is: MAY. In combat, you should always stack ***every*** odd in your favor, leaving as little up to luck as possible. What happens if your pursuers catch up to you before you get all the way back to a resupply point, and you ran out of ammo? What will you use, harsh language? The doctrinal US military standard for infantry resupply (of anything, not just ammo) is a wheeled-vehicle or rotary-wing re-supply every 48 to 72 hours: you have to simply accept that you're just not going to have that.

Practice loading and operating your weapons not just normally, but also using your non-master hand (if you're right-handed, that'd be your left hand) - expect less-optimal accuracy and speed when using your non-master hand, but remember that you're training to fight on in desperate straits. Once you can do that, tuck your master arm away as if you'd been injured there, and operate the gun upside-down on the ground, magazine well facing you. Then once you can do that, do it with a weapon that has a different manual of arms- things can and will go wrong and you may very well end up having to pick up a weapon from a dead enemy to continue the fight. A good rule of thumb is that using your non-master hand halves the normal effective range. There's no need to go overboard with training to fire with your non-master side, but be familiar enough so that you don't fumble with reloads, etc.

A very important point for you to keep in mind is that you'll not gain fire superiority by yourself with any sort of rifle unless you're a character in a Hollywood movie, ***period***. Fire superiority isn't determined by how many weapons you have. It's determined by sending accurate rounds downrange, at every threat, nonstop, while accurately eliminating the suppressed threats that are firing back at you. You *won't* do that alone, with one rifle, regardless of how many rounds you have or how good a shot you are- it's best done with fully-automatic weapons, preferably belt fed, *supplemented* by accurate rifle fire to take advantage of that suppression. Semiautomatic fire alone is best suited for well-aimed shots and you should plan for that by making yourself lighter, faster and more maneuvrable.

Remember that all the ammunition suggestions in this document are MINIMUMS. If defending yourself against a larger or more skilled group, your team could use over 1000 rounds in as little as 5 or 10 minutes! (Picture 8 people firing 4x 30-round magazines each, that's just under 1000 rounds) Stock up now, as well as basic spare parts and a few spare mags, and cache it in safe locations in your expected AO. **Don't** expect it to be possible to transport ammo & supplies with anything more than muscle-power, human or animal, in a severe grid-down type of scenario. However, there's also no need to constantly carry 1000 rounds on you at all times, so cache it!

In the USA, as far as ammunition goes, you'll find these are the most common rounds:

Handguns: 9x19mm Parabellum/NATO, & .45 ACP, (.40S&W is less common but also found)

Shotguns: 12-gauge (don't bother with anything else, they're just too uncommon),

Rifles: .22 Long Rifle, 5.56x45mm NATO aka .223 Remington, 7.62x39mm Soviet, and .308 Winchester aka 7.62x51mm NATO (.30-06 is also a common hunting round)

Ammunition should always be purchased with cash whenever possible.

Note that 5.56x45mm and .223 Remington have very slightly different chamber dimensions, and 5.56mm has higher pressures. This is why some rifles are happy with one but don't tolerate the other, while other rifles can handle both without any problems. This small but annoying difference is the reason why the recommended rifle is an AR-15 with a .223 Wylde chamber, as that chamber is specifically designed to digest both without issues, even though for some bullet weights the accuracy may be reduced by an MOA or so - not enough to matter when combat ensues and the adrenalin in your system is pumping. .308 Winchester and 7.62x51mm NATO also differ from each other slightly in chamber pressures, but they're otherwise interchangeable.

It doesn't take bench-rest level accuracy to put a bullet where it needs to go. This is why Grandpa's old Remington 700 in .30-06 with a 3-9x scope on top is considered a "*dangerous long-range murder weapon*" by those wanting to ban guns; they understand that the capabilities of a 2moa off the shelf rifle that can kill a deer at 500 yards can do the same to their jack-booted thugs.

I suggest using a scope or some kind of optic on your firearm, I would suggest something of about 4x power or an adjustable sight if possible. Your scope should have a reasonable eye relief "sweet spot", and enough eye relief to avoid it smashing into your eye on recoil, even if you're holding the weapon loosely (the one criticism I have of ACOG sights is the short eye relief). Remember that scopes don't help you shoot better; they help you to *see* better. Along with dot sights, they're faster to acquire than iron sights. Always have backup iron sights on any scoped weapon, and practice occasionally with the backup sights as well as with the optic. If you have a rifle with no backup iron sights (especially bolt-actions), I strongly urge you to get a set fitted by a good gunsmith (many weapons now come with rails to take detachable sights). No matter how tough modern optics are, there may come a day when your scope breaks or fails and if you can't get a replacement, what good is the rifle then?

If you reload, know that primers are in short supply right now (*late 2022*) because the fed.gov fags are at war with America and it's illegal to build new primer factories (though Trump lessened that slightly). It's the primary source of ammo shortages that no one in the industry talks about because they're good little serfs. But it's possible to make primers safely at home with accessible ingredients, though you have to basically handcraft each one individually, so it's very time-consuming. If you choose to reload, just be extremely careful and knowledgeable when working with powder, primers and metal as it can be very hazardous if you don't know what you're doing.

You should also be aware that in 2016 the US federal government quietly redefined the main component of modern gunpowder, nitrocellulose (a "deflagrating" aka "fast-burning" explosive) as a high explosive, which makes anyone who makes ammunition subject to the same rules as those who produce artillery shells or TNT, which are almost impossible for anyone to comply with. Of course, the government also issued an unprincipled exception, telling people not to worry about it and, wink, wink, nod, nod, they won't prosecute you. Which will last until the next big push against guns comes. At some point, they'll start enforcing this, and say, "*we're just enforcing laws that have been widely ignored*" ...and private gun owners will find it strangely hard to legally buy ammo. "*Hey, the state didn't ban your precious guns, or your ammo, they just banned anyone who makes ammo for your guns. And this law has been on the books since forever. They're still allowed to make it, but they have to make it safely – so what if no one can comply with the permits required to make it safely?*" Of course those making ammo for law enforcement and the military will continue to get an exception, but anyone who makes ammo for private customers won't. The moral of this non-fiction story is: stock up on ammo and cache it.

Finally, be sure to have replacement parts for your weapons in case their components break. For each weapon I suggest laying aside a couple of spare firing pins, extractors, extractor plungers, extractor springs, ejectors, ejector springs, recoil and/or buffer springs, and hammer springs, and it's best to have at least one spare bolt - there's many online videos by firearm manufacturers and enthusiasts on how to do all such simple repair tasks, as well as plenty of offline manuals to be found. Watch the videos, and get copies of the videos and manuals to use as a reference. Also store as many spare magazines as you can – these may well become prized barter items eventually.

Finally, after doing all of the above and as a last-stop "*oh fuck we're back to using 1700's-level tech*" backup to the backups, consider getting a modern rifled muzzle-loader or two, with enough lead, powder, and percussion caps stored away to provide 500 shots per weapon. Similarly, a suitable bow/crossbow and a quantity of arrows/bolts will help you take game silently if it gets to the point that the sound of a gunshot becomes an "rob me I'm rich" signature to others, but unless technology regresses to that level, keep such things for sport or hunting use. Avoid compound bows as they can't use wood-shafted (eg. home-made) arrows.

122. The Four General Safety Rules Of Firearms

(Originally created by Col. Jeff Cooper of the American Pistol Institute, Paulden, Arizona).

No machine has a will of its own; guns never fire unless someone causes them to. Guns are safe; it's the people around them who are dangerous. You'll never have a mishap with a gun if you follow these four simple rules:

1). ALL GUNS ARE ALWAYS LOADED.

This includes if the safety catch is "on" - no exceptions. Don't pretend this is true, you must be deathly serious about it - it's a shooters responsibility and obligation to prevent careless shots.

2). NEVER POINT A WEAPON AT ANYTHING YOU DON'T WANT TO DESTROY.

This rule applies even while "indexing" during searching or challenging. This also includes if the firearm is supposedly "unloaded" - refer back to rule 1. If you intend to perform "dry" training with your weapon, remove the bolt and magazine first!

3). KEEP YOUR FINGERS OFF THE TRIGGER UNTIL YOUR SIGHTS ARE ON TARGET AND YOU HAVE DECIDED TO FIRE.

Just like with a handgun, your finger is the ultimate safety you have - by keeping your booger-hooks off the bang switch until you're aiming a shot, the weapon cannot go off accidentally.

4). BE SURE OF THE TARGET, AS WELL AS THE SURROUNDINGS AND BEYOND.

You **will** be considered responsible for every bullet you send downrange, even in a SHTF situation: historically about 25% to 30% of casualties in fire-fights were caused by friendly fire.

Notes regarding the lists on the following pages:

► Items marked with an asterisk (*) should be carried in your backpack.

► Optional items are marked with a hash symbol (#).

► Items marked with a caret (^) may be carried in greater amounts if you want.

► Items marked with a cross (+) are critical items. They must be in good condition, properly fitted, and sturdy. Keep these on you or in your webbing or pack. Failure to possess critical item/s may result in harm, illness, injury or death to the person and endanger the team. Members who lack or lose a critical item, should be appropriately punished by the team.

► Please note that the colors **black** and **Blue** should NOT be considered subdued!
Examples of subdued colors include: **Khaki**, **Brown**, **Tan**, **Green**, **Gray**, **Sand**, or variations.
Camo patterns are desirable, but aren't vital. Avoid bright/vivid colors like red, orange, purple, etc.
If your knives etc, have brightly-colored handles, dye or paint them to a subdued color!

NOTE: For any consumable items with a decent shelf-life, medical or otherwise, it's best to "stock deep" - buy the cheapest type that will still reliably do the job, then buy as many as you can afford over time: eg., buy five sets of decent-quality boots that cost $50 each, rather than just one top-notch set that costs $250.

123. Recommended Firearms In Suggested Order Of Purchase:

> 1 - a .22LR rifle in the action of your choice (***not a single shot***) - scope optional but recommended. (a threaded muzzle to fit a suppressor after SHTF would be a good idea)

> 2 - a reasonably-sized pistol in a common caliber, eg. 9mm or .45ACP (no rare/meme rounds) & a suitable holster (alternatively: a .22LR version of that same pistol, for training).

> 3a - a sturdy scoped bolt-action rifle in .308 or a similar common full-power caliber. (something like a .308 Ruger Gunsite Scout stainless would be superb if camo-painted).

AND / OR

> 3b - an AR-15 in 5.56mm or AK in 7.62x39mm (whatever you can get in your area), with lots of spare magazines. (AR's with a .223 Wylde chamber spec are ideal btw).

> 4 - a smaller backup pistol, in the ***same*** caliber (and from the same manufacturer) as the first.

> 5 - more of any of the above (especially 3a & 3b) to be used by family members, etc.

NB: your rifles should be camo-painted. They're field tools, not safe queens.

A nice video on this with "Chinese Bob Ross": **https://yewtu.be/YDgD4d-552o**
Garand Thumb ~~abuses~~ paints a SCAR-H: **https://yewtu.be/YUBGq9Xz_Jc**

A compact- or takedown- pistol-caliber carbine that shares ammo with your pistol, or a fuddish-looking lever action in a reasonably common caliber (such as .30-30 or .357 Magnum) may also be suitable in a pinch, or if you need to keep an lower profile during events. Remember their ammo may be hard to scavenge after SHTF, so purchase these in addition to the basics above, not instead of them.

Having multiple magazines (at least 10) for each weapon is VERY strongly recommended, as is a large stockpile of the ammo types you'll need. Weapon standardization is also very good - better to limit yourself to a few types (eg: your team uses two .308 bolt-actions of the same model and six ARs, with everyone using the same pistol) rather than 8 different rifle types each needing unique parts, magazines, and calibers. Use hollow-points for home defense to avoid over-penetration.

A light on any gun used for home defence ensures you *really* know what you're shooting at, at 1am.

While operating the following firearms and munitions are suggested for carry:

- Your rifle+ in a common caliber (such as 5.56x45, 7.62x39 or 7.62x51mm), with sling,
- with a minimum of 4^ loaded magazines for the rifle in your webbing, plus;
- a minimum 200^ rds of additional rifle ammo (bagged, boxed or in mags) in pack*
- Optionally, your pistol#, with two or three mags for the pistol (no more), and;
- ammo in your pack to fully refill all the pistol magazines you're carrying, once. ^#*

I advise you to securely cache a backup rifle and some basic accessories for it (items such as magazines, cleaning kit, ammo) well away from your home or workplace. This cached rifle should be set up as closely as possible to your "normal" one – same weapon, same sights, etc. Should your home rifle be taken from you, you should be able to retrieve the backup later. Store the batteries for optics and lights with, not in, cached weapons – leaking batteries can ruin the item they're in.

I suggest caching at least 10,000 rounds of .22LR ammunition, in separately cached lots of 1000 or so, and similar amounts of ammo for your other rifles as well. I suggest storing only jacketed .22LR ammo since that will foul a silencer much less if you can legally acquire one. This ammunition can be bought and cached a little bit at a time as funding allows - cache all your ammo in such a way that it will have long-term protection and remain dry and waterproof.

You would also keep some other ammunition (separate to the cached ammo) handy at home, for the .22 and any other rifles you keep there, for practice, hunting, etc. use, but if you don't (or cannot) keep a weapon in your house that uses a particular caliber, then logically: don't keep any ammo for it at your home either. Awkward to explain having boxes of AK ammo if there's no AKs allowed, right?

124. Equipment Suggestions:- Personal Gear:

NB: Ensure gear is durable as well as lightweight - you may not be able to easily replace it!

- \+ Sturdy backpack made of synthetic material, 30L to 45L capacity, in dull/subdued colors (or spray-painted), a model with a waist-belt is recommended, able to fit more pouches externally if possible. Where possible, it's better to use a "gray man" approach by using a heavy-duty non-military backpack and throw on a water-resistant camo cover once you hit the woods. (NB: this is your daily-use bag, not your duffle/large pack to arrive at the AO).

Read the section on pack selection below!

- Webbing set (personal preference, but a belt rig is recommended for dismounted use)
- \+ 2x water-bottles (4 recommended^) with pouches to fit on webbing and/or pack.
- Camelback (or equivalent, wide filler cap recommended)
- Fixed-blade knife (or knife-bayonet to fit your rifle) - MUST BE SHARPENED.
- \+ A folding knife or multitool from a reputable brand, with around a 3in blade.
- \+ Personal first aid kit including *at least:* two wound dressings and bandages
- \+ Water purifying tablets and/or passive water filter (ideally, have both).
- \+ Sleeping bag* (***NO*** DOWN-FILLED BAGS) rated to suit your environment and/or a poncho liner * and/or a wool or fleece blanket *
- \+ Mosquito net or "bug nest" (for sleeping - to maximise rest and prevent disease) *
- \+ Three different/redundant fire-starting methods (eg: lighter, a ferro-cerium rod, and matches)
- Large metal mug (eg canteen cups) to eat from and a metal spoon or utensil set to eat with
- Individual cooker to boil water with, etc. without gathering wood and lighting a fire
- \+ Eye protection- either ballistic sunglasses or workman's safety glasses (suggest having one set tinted for day use, and another with clear lenses for night use, to avoid eye injuries).
- Compact, powerful LED flashlight or headlamp (with a red or blue/green filter!!)
- Spare batteries for flashlights (the more the better)
- Personal anti-mosquito head net (depends on your AO, but recommended) #
- *Minimum* of 30yd/m of rope or cordage (e.g.: 550 cord/para-cord)
- \+ Tarp or military poncho* (and 4^ elasticized bungee straps to make a shelter)
- Bivvy Bag (only in addition to your tarp/poncho, never instead of it) #*
- Sleeping Mat (closed cell foam or the self-inflating 'therm-a-rest' style)
- Cleaning kit and lubricants for weapon/s*
- Compact camping stove and fuel canister *# (recommended)
- Toiletry set*
- Folding shovel, entrenching tool, or other portable digging tool *#
- Compact but large towel (full-size microfiber type is recommended) *
- An umbrella that folds down fairly small, spray-painted to match your AO. * (yes, really!)
- Toilet paper and baby wipes (lots)
-
- A large duffel or sustainment pack to stow and carry equipment not used daily, and/or a waterproof plastic container to put it in to protect it when it's cached.

Your toiletry set should include:
Shaving gear# (as compact as possible), a small travel mirror, tooth-brush & tooth-paste, floss, soap, a nail trimmer, tweezers, foot powder, and blister/foot-care items. Recommend keeping a spare tooth-brush in a container and 1x set of clean socks in a waterproof baggie in your webbing/admin kit.
Also throw in some toilet paper tablets for emergencies in your webbing and pack.

Note: a Jetboil stove is an ideal individual cooker choice - the larger sizes are better since you can cook larger and more varied meals in it. A good idea is to buy and stockpile/cache a significant number of the largest available size of butane cylinders for it for after-SHTF use.

Consider that resupply of items may become impossible once a SHTF event occurs.

125. Equipment Suggestions:- Clothing:

WARNING: wearing full camo will immediately identify you as a threat to any hostiles.

Note: In cold climates stick to wool or synthetics, in hot climates light cotton or linen are better. Jeans should only be considered acceptable if your AO is urban! (AO: **A**rea of **O**perations).

- Undershirts, 3^ (sets not being worn in ziploc bags, with excess air squeezed out*)
- + Socks, 8^ (sets not being worn in ziploc bags, with excess air squeezed out*, 1 in webbing)
- Underwear, 4#^ (sets not being worn in ziploc bags, excess air squeezed out*)
- + Shirt & trouser sets, 2^ (subdued colors, any sets not being worn in Ziploc bags, with excess air squeezed out*) *Note*: if member chooses to wear jeans in the field **(***you're a dumbass if you do***)**, they *must* be dyed or painted to a suitably subdued shade. Shirts should have long sleeves.
- + Boots (durable hiking, military, or work type) (with a set of spare laces in your bag)
- Spare insoles for the boots *# (recommended)
- + Hat ('boonie' hat type recommended, baseball or patrol style is less ideal but ok)
- + Heavy-duty trouser belt ('riggers' type suggested) (no, *NOT* the one from your webbing)
- + Identification documents & cash (e.g.: driver's licence, etc. - may need to be cached)
- + Cold weather jacket (recommend with liner) * *and/or:* Fleece or wool jumper, to wear under your outerwear when cold (eg: during fall/winter or on desert nights) *#
- + Waterproof wet-weather shell jacket (Gore-Tex/eVent type material) in subdued colors (inside ziploc bag, with excess air squeezed out*) (alternatively; a spare poncho)
- Wet-weather trousers # (Gore-Tex/eVent type material) in subdued colors (in ziploc bag, excess air squeezed out*) and/or gaiters.
- Gloves # (to protect your hands –*strongly* recommended)
- Helmet & body armor # (if available) (with camo cover and elastic foliage strap on helmet)
- 'Thermal' under-pants, preferably made of wool *#
- Shower flip-flops or (better) Teva-type sandals*# (sandals are also good for stream crossings)
- Scarf or neck gaiter (subdued) #
- Balaclava or beanie (subdued) #
- Ear plugs or other hearing protection #^ (very strongly recommended, especially active noise reduction earmuffs like sordins or peltors).

CLOTHING NOTES:

The above is a "supply closet" list and is not all meant to all be carried at the same time.

You don't need seven outfits for seven days in the woods: change your socks and underwear at least every two days, but otherwise one spare shirt & trouser set in your pack is enough to last a month or more – occasionally wash your stuff by hand and have more cached somewhere if it's a long-term deal.

If you can't get your team to standardize on some sort of actual uniform, I recommend sticking to mostly drab natural tones where possible and using a distinctive patch or armband to identify your group for recognition and legal purposes if applicable - wearing uniforms allows you to present as a trained security force, and may enable you to gain official status with post-SHTF authorities by presenting a "quiet professional" attitude. It's better to wear a camo top with drab pants than the reverse. You should also carry a set of civilian clothes, in dull or neutral tones, for urban operations. My own preference for woods is a well-worn OD hoodie and gray or brownish outdoor cargo pants.

Wet fleece retains warmth much better than quilted synthetic insulation, and drains faster than wool. Down is totally useless when wet and takes forever to dry – it absorbs water even from humid air. Use waterproofing spray on your outer shell clothing items, and the outside of things like your bivvy. Bring spare socks and change socks at least daily - if your feet are miserable, you'll be miserable. It may be a good idea to glue your insoles into your boots with shoe goo if they tend to move around excessively when your boots get wet.

As a rule, you want tight clothing to look smart on parade, and baggy, loose-fitting gear to actually fight in - baggy clothes break up your visible outline, it allows skin to "breathe", and gives room to carry gear inside pockets or wear bandages and dressings under the clothing if needed.

CONSUMABLES TO BRING ON INITIAL ARRIVAL AT YOUR AO:

- \+ 48hrs^ of pure drinking water (90oz/3L is the absolute minimum recommended)
- 48hrs^ of food (suggest canned foods, a bread loaf and a *small* quantity of snack or Clif bars for use until resupply) alternatively, dried peas, beans and/or rice in resealable containers.
- Spare fuel for camping stove (if used) *#
- Heavyweight large trash bin bags for waterproofing bag contents (alternatively, dry-bags)

126. Equipment Suggestions:- TEAM EQUIPMENT:

(SPLIT THIS STUFF BETWEEN THE TEAM's MEMBERS, AND CACHE IF NEEDED)

- \+ Group First Aid Kit *
- \+ At least two folding shovels/entrenching tools per team* (with sharpened edges)
- \+ At least two graduated compasses (preferably in mils *and* degrees, Silva-style suggested)
- \+ Several maps of your AO & surrounding area, laminated or carried in waterproof cases^
- Compact GPS device as a backup system # (keep switched **OFF** when not checking grid).
- A spotting scope or good full-size binoculars, and a DSLR camera # (for reconnaissance)
- Additional water purification filters and tablets, as well as insect repellent and bug spray
- A large frying-pan (good) or wok (better) *
- Cooking pot for group meals (excellent for turning wildlife into hot tasty stew) *
- Folding bow saw and/or smaller folding saw(s) ^* (at least one per team, but ideally one each)
- At least one large chopping knife (8in+), machete, or billhook for each squad/hand element, used to clear fields of fire, cut down saplings for camp tasks, and wood collection, as well as;
- A full-sized but lightweight ax (FYI larger axes, machetes, etc. are safer to handle than hatchets) *
- 1set of gardening hand-shears for every 4 men, to cut leafy branches for camouflage
- A jar of mixed spices, Tabasco sauce or similar, and plenty of salt (important!) *
- Scourers & detergent in a sealed screw-top bottle, & all-purpose laundry soap (in holder) *
- Some kind of way to recharge batteries, such as a portable solar panel
- Notebooks, pens, and pencils.
- Sewing/repair kit including a 'speedy stitcher' sewing awl (if available) and “shoe goo".
- Whistles and portable radios for communications.
- Wire cutter tool, small pry bar, and lockpicks
- Knife sharpening device(s)
- Heavy-gauge metal wire, spare paracord or similar, large zip-ties, and duct tape.
- Nails and screws and the tools to use them.
- Heavy-duty “contractor” trash bags
- Camouflage net or hunting blind fabric (check for camouflage effect in IR spectrum)
- Animal traps, snares, fishing gear, and other food-gathering and preparation equipment

127. Looking After Your Gear:

Set yourself two dates each year (eg. in fall and spring) to go over your kit’s contents and make sure that everything is still good to go. Things do go wrong and batteries leak, seals fail, etc. This would also be a good time to clean your gear and fix any loose stitching, worn-out camo, or other issues.

During these two dates, verify all expiration dates to ensure everything has at least some time left before going bad- eg. most medicines often last up to 20 years past the expiry date, however some medicines become toxic after the date marked. Learn which does what, and store and/or replace them as appropriate.

128. More Equipment Ideas

Make sure that your gear "works" when it's together - adjust it so that (for example) your ruck does not push your head forward when you wear it over your gunbelt, and so on. "Comfort" is not a synonym for decadent laziness; if you're busy fighting **with** (rather than fighting **in**) your gear and you're being hassled by all the little bits getting in the way constantly, your attention is being diverted away from what you need to pay attention to; your surroundings and events. "Comfort" is about not being distracted by, or having to think about something, good or bad. If your gear and clothes fit properly, if you're comfortable in them, you can focus on finding and engaging the enemy instead of being focussed on how much your shit's digging into your spleen right before your foot hooks the tripwire on an IED.

Anything you may need to get at quickly, such as water, cooking gear, rain gear, or medical gear, should be in the outer pockets of your rucksack. Small items should be put inside waterproof bags, and make sure to "dummy cord"/lanyard any items that could potentially be easily lost to something. Loose straps and shiny buckles should be covered and secured with electrical tape or "100mph" tape. Don't be afraid to modify your gear so that it suits your needs better.

Ensure you have some redundancy, especially in ways to start a fire - preferably have 3 different ways available to start one. You can make a sort of "synthetic fatwood" by melting paraffin wax or Vaseline and soaking strips of dry balsa wood or dry compressed cardboard in it for awhile while the liquid is hot. You can do the same with cotton balls or similar too. A small pencil sharpener makes it super easy to create fine tinder from twigs, even when they're damp on the outside.

Multipurpose gear reduces weight: for example, the author has a Cold Steel "Spetsnaz" shovel with one side sharpened up to function as an ax - two tools in one. Is it as efficient as a "proper" ax? No, not quite, but it's **much** better than nothing, and ***far*** less weight than carrying both tools.

To stop the noise of a large knife which is rattling inside its sheath, cut up a plastic juice or milk bottle to form a strip that can be inserted into the sheath as a liner. This takes up empty space and securely holds the blade - with a little testing, you'll be able to determine the correct size, and a few drops of glue on the liner's outside will hold it in place inside the loose sheath. If your knife must stay in the sheath to hold the liner in place as the glue bonds, first coat the blade in Vaseline to stop it sticking.

One additional (preferably waterproofed) bag or container is suggested to be brought by each person during deployment to your AO, to be cached in a hidden and secure location until needed. This is used to store gear which is not needed during the deployment season, but which will be needed should the situation continue longer than expected (eg: you headed innawoods in summer because SHTF happened, but you find yourself still there when winter arrives).

Groundsheets at your long-term base are best made of a material like a heavy polymer shade mesh so that any water landing on it goes straight through, rather than a nylon fabric which will let water pool and then flow into your shelter.

For your purposes, trekking poles will be essentially useless, since their use removes the ability to hold your weapon. The need for them will be reduced by packing light and traveling at a slower speed where necessary. If crossing streams they might come in useful, but they're easily improvized by cutting some stout, straight branches.

Consider bringing bear spray if you're in the USA or Canada. This is of course useful against bears and saves ammo, but can also be used to prevent urban youth enrichment in a genuine SHTF emergency. Larger sizes are recommended - small units are harder to aim and have poor capacity.

*129. **Communication***

Even under ideal conditions there are limitations to cell phones and landlines, not least of which being that everything you say over a phone is listened to by the NSA's ECHELON system - so it's a good idea to have back-up communications. Old-fashioned military field phones are one useful item, at least when static positions are involved, but their availability is uncertain at best, so until your technical people can pull one apart and figure out how to replicate it, your main non-telephone system of communication will be radios.

There are many types of two-way radios on the market today. They work on either Family Radio Service (FRS) frequencies, General Mobile Radio Service (GMRS) frequencies, or dual mode models that can transmit on either set of frequencies. Such radios generally work on line-of-sight, meaning the more obstructions between the transmitting and receiving radios, the worse the reception is, and therefore these devices don't often work very well in urban areas due to interference. They're certainly a step up from the toy walkie-talkies you may have played with as a child, but they aren't going to always be as good as the package they come in claims. If you go this route, remember that "privacy channels" means people can use the same channel with different privacy codes and not talk over each other: it **doesn't** mean your chat is actually private from eavesdroppers.

Portable CB radios are another option, particularly for vehicles. However, the range won't be very far without a powerful transmitter. A range of a couple of miles is about average, though this is adequate for most of our likely needs. Amateur radio, commonly referred to as ham radio, is definitely worth considering. It does require a license to transmit, but the cost is minimal. Ham operators have a long history of assisting with communications during disasters. Not to mention, I have yet to meet a ham who won't bend over backwards to help someone who is genuinely interested in the hobby.

Your choice of any mobile radio should be made on the basis of battery use/life and availability, not radio weight. Modern radios are already very light. Also look into AM Citizens Band as it's almost unused these days, as well as Single Sideband (SSB) transceivers, for post-SHTF information gathering and transmission. See the "*Strelo/k/ Guide to Radios*" pdf for more detailed info on the subject, or talk to the local HAM radio people in your area. Be aware that compared to UHF and VHF, HF radios have a much lower chance of detection.

Whenever possible, using cellphones for communications **should be avoided**, both before and after the collapse. Cellphones rely on centralized networks that are unlikely to be under your direct control, meaning any hostile groups will be able to interfere or eavesdrop on your communications. The position of a cellphone can also be triangulated to within 100m (or less!) even if it's not GPS-enabled, simply by triangulating the signal return from multiple cell towers.

130. ***Communication Under Fire*** (UNDER CONSTRUCTION)

When under fire, depending on the intensity of the fighting, you can scream at the top of your lungs and not even hear yourself - verbal commands just won't cut it. Hand signals can be useful, but your hands will probably be too busy to give them and your troops will be too busy to watch for them. Radios may be unavailable, or too rare to give to every available warrior. Even if the radio's aren't too rare, what about the batteries? If the grid is down, it will be hard to keep more than one radio per team charged. And what if they all got fried by an EMP or similar event?

Fortunately for us, there's a low-tech (and thus dependable) and cheap means of communicating in such conditions: whistle commands. A pea-less police or coach's whistle can be heard through gunfire and is quite cheap. Every man in your unit should carry one. Assign each basic action to be taken in a firefight a different whistle command. Use a morse-type system: dots and dashes (short and long blasts on the whistle) and keep it as simple as possible, (eg: two long whistles and one short whistle, repeated several times if necessary, means retreat, and so on). Hand signals based on normal body language should still be used when silence is needed however (eg: thumbs-down means you have a potential threat in your line-of-sight).

These may be hard to learn, so practice them frequently and occasionally give one another “pop quizzes” on the various signals (“*pop quiz Mac: what's two long, one short mean*?”). You’ll need around 10 or so signals to cover the most important battle commands, and to keep it simple learn 2-or-3 at a time - once your group knows the first few by heart, add a few more at a time. Learn whistle commands with their corresponding Battle Drills by putting them both together from the start - just like you'll be doing it when it's the real deal.

For drills which have overlapping uses (i.e: they can be used under fire but also in other circumstances) it's sensible to give the appropriate whistle command AND hand-arm signal at the same time while practicing, to reinforce the meaning in everyone's mind while training. Of course, not all actions require will whistle commands, but those which need to happen when under fire, such as forming up into a “line abreast” formation, should definitely be assigned one.

If you don't get enough time to regularly practice out in the woods, get your guys to dress for sport and take them to a vacant football field or similar area to practice them unarmed. Start off by dramatically tightening your formations and perform the drills the way one might practice football plays (or whatever your preferred sport is). This way you'll learn the commands and the execution, without having the average cop or Karen on your ass - they're unlikely to freak out over hearing whistles and seeing guys practicing on a sport field.

While you're at it, take a football along and toss it around a bit between drills, maybe mix in some bogus plays if need be. If anyone is still suspicious, and asks you what you're doing, tell them you're practicing for a grudge sandlot game against some guys from a rival company (or department, or neighborhood, etc.) who think they're so tough. A good but simple cover story will help you here.

131. <u>Equipment Suggestions:- Pack Selection For Teotwawki:</u>

Whether you call it a bag, pack, or ruck, it does not carry your gear- it only **holds** your things- **<u>you</u>** carry them. This part is not for the ruck full of supplies and backup equipment that you'll leave at your base camp, bunker, or home, but for your everyday Assault/24hr/48hr/72hr pack you'll carry everywhere, basically every single day, post-SHTF. The two aren't and will not be the same thing.

Technically, a person in reasonable physical condition (whatever *that* means) can carry up to ~30% of their body weight, *<u>in theory</u>*. However, the only way to get in condition to carry such loads over long distances is... to regularly carry heavy loads over long distances (duhh). One common mistake is to load a pack and *then* see if you can lift it, as if that means it's okay - wrong. The pack's weight should be something you could carry for many miles, perhaps a hundred, not just across a room.

Yes, yes, you're not geriatric (*yet*) but be honest with yourself- you're not some hyper-fit 19-year-old Green Beret halfway up an Afghan mountainside with a fuckton of heavy fire support on call either. You need to keep it light so you can run like hell in case you bump into the guys who *do* have heavy fire support on call. Carrying 30% of your bodyweight will end up with you in agony or worse, breaking your neck, shoulders and spine, with feet covered in blisters, and your mind so fogged up you'd stroll right into the most obvious trap or ambush. So how to avoid that?

The solution is twofold: **1)** training, and **2)** travel light.

<u>Training</u> - Start with the lightest-build pack you can afford of small capacity, (around 30 liters/1800 cubic in. is good), and load it with no more than 10 lbs/5 kg of kit. Unless you have super-ultralight gear, you'll find that a water bottle, a packed lunch, a sweater and rain jacket/poncho, phone, a set of spare socks and underpants, and your usual EDC shit will quickly add up. Go /out/ or even just around your town and cover some ground. Walk. Even if you're a runner, don't run yet- that will come later. Walk. Vary your route, up and down hills, on trails and sidewalks. Walk. Increase the weight little by little. Walk. Do some of this at least two-three times a week. Remember to always keep your head up and looking around, to mantain your situational awareness.

Don't push hard too early or you'll injure yourself and set your training back by weeks. After a couple of weeks, pick up the pace, but still pay attention to your body- if you're already a runner, you'll find that with extra conditioning, you can also run with a properly-fitted pack. Slowly start increasing the weight, distance, and speed - but only one at a time!

When you can still remain alert while you carry ~20 lbs (10kg) and proceed at 5 mph (8 km/h) for a couple of hours on reasonably level ground, you're better conditioned than 95% of civilians. Do the same with 30 pounds over broken ground, and you're in the top 1% of civilians and at least as fit and conditioned as an average grunt. Always listen to your body- if you start to get sore, ease back on the weight, distance, and/or speed for a few weeks.

Even if carrying a “bug-out bag” on foot to a secure location, or escaping a disaster on foot, is unlikely to ever happen to you - **train** - after a while you'll know exactly how much weight and how large a pack you can carry while still being able to move well and stay alert, and will be able to equip yourself accordingly. Your fitness will also improve and that too, will help you survive.

<u>Travel Light</u> - Even if you're a well-conditioned endurance athlete or sneeki-breeki SF operator, (or if you actually do the suggested training) it's best to carry the most compact and lightest load possible that includes your critical gear (which should still be of reasonably durable construction). The specific pack capacity you choose will depend on your environment, your physical size and condition, and your projected mission/task.

You'll have no trouble finding a decent pack that's comfortable to carry if you're an average-sized person and don't overload it with shit. If you're larger than average (yes, that includes the fatties as well as the ~~faggots~~ *ahem*... bodybuilders) it may be more difficult to find a comfortable pack. Comfort does matter: walking 10 miles with a loaded pack that doesn't fit will provide a life lesson you'll never forget. When buying one, ask if there are weights to simulate a load, and to test it load it up and then run on the spot, jump and move your body as if climbing or negotiating a steep hill. Top-loading packs are usually lighter, simpler and more reliable, and be aware that the so-called "water-resistant" zippers are especially prone to breakage, so avoid them.

In 99% of environments, a sturdy but lightweight 30 to 50-liter (1800-3200 cu.in). pack will hold enough gear to allow for extended survival in comfort when using lightweight modern equipment, even when you're away from your base-camp. Your empty pack will be one of the heaviest items of your gear as percentage of weight, so pick a lightweight model. It's easier to cut weight from heavy items than it's from small items. Going lighter also means going faster and farther. There's now smaller companies making packs from materials like Dyneema, Hypalon and Kevlar that weigh as little as *one pound* which are far more wear & tear resistant than even the thickest Cordura is.

A nondescript 30ish-liter pack is about the size of a large schoolbag or computer backpack and thus provides a low-profile "gray man" appearance, enabling you to insert by simply walking through city streets or using public transportation while wearing civilian clothes. It also enables you to move about in public and maneuver through crowds without bumping into people and drawing unwanted attention that way. If you can't sit your pack on your lap or between your legs on a bus or train - it's too big. If you insist on choosing a tactical-style pack, these sizes are often marketed as "*RAID*", "*48-hour*" or "*72-hour*" packs by gear manufacturers. Stick to plain colors and non-military patterns. An excellent question to ask when choosing one is: "*What's the most popular pack (or color) you sell in this size?*"

Smaller bags aren't just lighter and easier to carry, they're also easier to move with through close or difficult terrain and allow for better balance and situational awareness while you do so. Unlike people in the military, you're allowed to think for yourself, and you're unlikely to be carrying a 50lb four-foot-long missile tube, or thousands of rounds of HMG ammo. Be sensible, and leave the backbreaking loads either in a vehicle or cached.

Arctic areas or high mountains where bulky clothing and shelter gear is needed may be exceptions but otherwise for combat, personal survival and travel, even for very long periods, **you simply don't need a 90-liter pack stuffed with 80+lbs. (40+kg) of crap**. Other exceptions might be if you're setting up your initial base-camp deep inside some wilderness where there's no trails, or if you're carrying gear for others. In either instance, you'll need to be in top physical condition, or just use a light vehicle, a handcart or a travois to take gear to your chosen location for drop-off.

Brightly-colored packs will draw some attention, but this is one instance where a black or blue color is acceptable, even a dull red if it blends in with whatever the hippies and college kids are carrying around your area, but remember to bring a camouflage cover for use in the boonies. It's easy to improvise one from an old camo shirt, or buy a cheap one online. They're never truly waterproof.

Remember to check the quality of material and stitching, and that it's a good thing if it doesn't look too military - you *want* to be inconspicuous while training and while getting out of dodge.

You ***don't*** want to overload yourself like the poor fucker in the image here. Unlike him, you don't have a dumbass LT ordering you to permanently bust your knees carrying 90lbs of dumb shit.

So only take what you actually need.



Example of what your thought process should be when selecting gear:

▶ **Strelok** 08/09/18 (Thu) 00:59:53 ID: 1f7111 No.600149 >>600295

File (hide): 9db9f57109de8e3···.gif (1.57 MB, 288x288, 1:1, 9mm vs. ballistic gel.gif) (h) (u)



>>600083 (You)

>What kind of LBE do you recommend? Chest rigs? Plate carriers? Old school style vests? Something else?

What are you doing?

If you're operating mounted in a vehicle and/or frequently getting in/out of one, go chest rig.

If you're required to wear body armour, wear a PC.

If you're doing both of the above, but fighting as a dismount (eg: mech inf or scout) combine the above two like here:
https://downrangegear.wordpress.com/2011/09/05/2933/
By mounting one to the other with fastex clips.

If you're fighting fully dismounted, *use an old-school belt rig. It simply works*, even if it isn't "*tacticool*".

It even works with body armour if you use thin shoulder straps such as the ones BFG makes:
https://www.blueforcegear.com/soc-c-low-profile-suspenders.html

The two major aussie kit manufacturers make similar items. I'd go SORD if you can't get BFG.

If there is no need for you to wear armour or follow unit SOPs, then maybe try a vest if you can get a cheap one. They can carry a lot of shit, but they can get pretty damn hot in Aus.

Whatever you use, fill it full of all your shit and then go for at least a 1km run, then low crawl for 50-100m. If anything snags or comes loose, move it to where it won't.

>Is it a good idea to have a water bladder on your LBE in a pouch on the back?
Yes.

>Does this cause problems when using a rucksack?
Yes it can. Platatac sells a bladder that fits under the plate in your PC (if relevant) otherwise use one you can stuff into your pack.

>What manufacturers would you recommend? And who should I avoid buying from?
You're an Aussie, so I'd recommend SORD first, Platatac if they make something SORD doesent.

You can import kit from the US or elsewhere if you don't mind paying an arm and a leg, or you can dig through surplus stores for old stuff that may be in decent condition.

Not 100% sure about all US manufacturers, but I know London Bridge Trading Co. is the absolute best (and most expensive). Crye Precision, First Spear, TYR Tactical, Blue Force Gear, Eagle Marine and Tactical Tailor are companies I've heard good things about.

Blackhawk and Condor should only be bought if you're going to sell them on to a foreign soldier for more than you paid. 5.11 has great clothes, shit tactical gear.

Why the question? Joining up? If so, *don't* buy anything yet, you probably won't be allowed to use any gucci gear. Wait till you complete training and get to your operational unit. They **may** allow you to use own gear, I'd recommend the BFG suspenders first, then other stuff as needed.

In the meantime, buy some army green bamboo hiking socks, at least 6 pairs, and a decent and non-flashy watch. You'll use them more than anything else.

More gear selection thoughts, borrowed from a comment found on another site:

The gear setup used is ultimately determined by the operational environment and Mission. Max has really clarified for me the differences in loadout between mounted and dismounted operations for SUT. What I think is also in need of greater exploration is the differences between mounted and dismounted in an environment more advantageous to concealment, like during a bugout or prior to full scale social chaos. Max has touched on this issue in “Contact”, “Patriot Dawn” and even this article.

Personally I’ve put together two separate kits for pre and post collapse situations. After testing I found I was unable to flex my military gear setup into a concealed role, especially when dismounted. If for instance I had to go on foot during a bugout, prior to full on chaos, the use of plate armor and a battle rifle would make me stick out like a sore thumb and draw unwanted attention in a non-rural environment. Ideally one would try to bugout mounted and with all of their gear. But shit happens and the foot-mobile may be what’s available, like following an EMP. In such a situation I’m certain that weight of equipment and concealment would be a top priority, being the grey man while moving through a declining world as efficiently as possible. The ramifications upon my kit for such a situation besides wearing civy’s are:

- Non-Military looking backpack of a small to moderate size,(1800 cubic inches)
- Small plain shoulder bag that carries sustainment items,(Basic survival gear, rations, water and Ammo)
- Folding 9mm carbine that shares mags and ammo with pistol
- A carful choosing of all other items to reduce weight and bulk
- Soft body armor

With such modifications I can look like just some guy fleeing the area. The most notable loss however is the reductions in armor and battle rifle fire power. But in the operational environment that this kit addresses the most common threats will still be low velocity rounds. Anyone carrying a rifle will likely be government forces and those who aren’t will be drawing the attention of government forces. This gives one an increased chance for avoidance. While a 9mm carbine is by no means equivalent to a battle rifle, when loaded with +P, the increased barrel length does give 357 mag type velocities. Regardless, such a weapon grants credible accuracy up to 100yds to facilitate a break in contact, a far cry better than just a pistol. This kit is not ideal by any means but it prevents glaring holes in equipment, is low profile, and provides an OK platform to improve one’s situation. Besides can re-equip in the future at one of those many caches we should be making right?

132. Equipment Suggestions:- Choosing LBE …And Why Body Armor Isn't That Great:

When choosing LBE, first you need to consider what you're going to be doing. If you're going to be operating vehicle-mounted or going to frequently get in and out of one, use a chest rig (eg. the US Ranger RACK). They're difficult to overload because you run out of space quickly, but they can make it hard to go to ground and crawl if poorly set up, such as when using triple-stacked magazine pouches - I've seen it done. They're best when set up to carry limited amounts of ammo. Depending on the threat level, you may need body armor - a chest rig can be attached directly to your armor by adding some fastex clips to the armor, and stowing the shoulder straps of the chest rig elsewhere (eg. in your pack), this lets you reduce the load while for eg. digging trenches. Vests may also be an option, but some models may cause issues with heat retention, so be aware of that.

However if you're operating dismounted an old-school belt rig set up similar to the British Army's PLCE or the Velocity Systems Jungle Kit, among others, worn low on a padded belt sitting low on your hips is the best and most time-tested method - "*It just works*". US Army-issue FLCs work for this if worn low on the hips and the load in front is kept to an absolute minimum. The old LBVs are an excellent set-up too. This isn't a duty belt with a couple of taco pouches - leave that for the 3-gun crowd. When using a British-style belt rig, your pack sits on top of the "shelf" formed by the rear pouches, and while sitting there, the pack's top shouldn't sit significantly higher than the bottom of your neck. This transfers most of the weight from the shoulders to the hips, removing the need for a big waist belt on the pack, which you'll need with other types of rigs.



A belt rig can also be used with body armor if you select thin shoulder straps similar to Blue Force Gear's low-profile suspenders. It's a good idea to use a water bladder on a pouch in the back of your LBE - tuck it under the top flap of your pack when carrying a pack if it gets in the way. If your belt line is larger than your chest, there's no load-bearing gear in existence that will make carrying your gear comfortable or even bearable. If you can't walk up a flight of stairs without getting winded, it doesn't matter what you use, you won't be able to carry shit.

Whatever you end up getting, don't cheap out - this is a buy-once, cry-once situation. If your funds are limited, just buy surplus or second-hand gear in good condition. If you can afford it, any major manufacturer is likely to provide decent equipment, however avoid Blackhawk and Condor as their gear is at best suitable for airsoft. 5.11 makes great clothing, but their gear is not. London Bridge Tactical (LBT), Crye Precision, First Spear, TYR Tactical, Blue Force Gear, Eagle Marine, SKD-TAC, Platatac, Beez, Banshee, Mayflower, ITS Tactical, SORD, and Tactical Tailor are all good companies to buy gear from in the USA, even though it can be expensive. If you don't care about color matching your gear, look for Black Friday and Cyber Monday specials or Clearance items, perhaps around tax time. Always check the stitching and materials. Don't cheap out on gear: you should absolutely intend to use it as hard as you possibly can and will need to be able to trust your life to it.

To test whatever you end up using, fill it full of your equipment and go for a 1km run, then low-crawl for 50-100yds/m, then move anything that got in the way or snagged to where it won't. As long as your gear is made of modern materials, its camouflage can be improved with a little spray-paint to match your local area's colors (especially necessary for cheap surplus ACU stuff), and if needed some tufts of suitably colored cloth or netting can be used to further break up your outline around your shoulders.

The author certainly advises having and using a modern helmet such as the MICH whenever possible - during the Vietnam War, 50% of all wounds and 60% of all fatal wounds were on the head or neck - clearly, protecting your head is important. Helmets also have the added benefit of protecting you from concussion or other head injuries when operating in structures or vehicles.

However, excepting helmets, you'll notice a certain ...~~hostility~~ dislike for body armor in this document. This is due mostly to its weight, which (apart from destroying your joints and spine) removes your ability to move tactically for any length of time as it causes fatigue, no matter how fit you are. In any case, total armor weight should be under about 15lbs (plates, soft armor if applicable, and empty carrier) – unless you're just starting or have minimal funds, avoid AR500 steel plates just because they're so damn heavy.

What's that you say? "*Do more PT?*"- ok, sure, but the lightest plates available on the market still add ~12lbs, and what if your knees are already fucked from the military? How's Afghanistan been going by the way, the last I heard the USA was pulling out and the Taliban, they're still there?

I especially loved the "*gay pride*" and "*black lives matter*" flags flying from the US embassy roof as the helicopter landed to grab the last of the embassy staff before the Taliban seized the building, truly a touching symbol of 21st-century America…



Remember that back in 1776, lightly-equipped, fast-moving colonials used the asymmetric guerrilla warfare tactics they learned fighting the native tribes to run rings around and finally defeat the heavily-equipped British regular infantry, who were further slowed by their heavy supply wagon trains.

Armor weight also means you're more likely to be hit, there are studies that show that armor weight over a certain percentage of body mass all but guarantees you'll end up shot in combat! On the other hand, good use of cover and concealment negates the effectiveness even of accurate fire when dug-in, something not much practiced now.

Once you've worn plates for a living, it's not something you look forward to doing. In other words, if you can fulfil your mission without them, do it. You won't be wearing plates while minding your kids or farming your land day-to-day after SHTF, but you *can* farm with a rifle slung on your back or within arm's reach, and **you can always throw armor on if you're expecting an attack, preparing to raid a warehouse for canned goods or if a horde of zombies is approaching**.

Look at how Special Forces do things - they only go full kit when they kick in doors. Out and about they keep it simple and low profile. I know of Tier 1 operators who went on raids without wearing body armor, because it was not needed for their specific task on that mission. This was thanks to not having overbearing risk-averse leaders as found in regular units. Before you ask, no, I was never SF/SOF myself though I met plenty of them, and that's all you need to know.

If you're wearing armor on a task then you shouldn't need to carry a pack. Just because the military does it doesn't mean it's smart, or that you should do it too. Cache packs when you're moving fairly short distances and can return. Consider that body armor is more effective if it's concealed, such as by hiding it under a civilian hoodie so your enemy doesn't aim for your face. A proper belt set-up as discussed here is also important in that it enables you to get flat on your guts in the prone to minimize your profile and reduce your odds of getting shot – the opposite effect to having your shit on the front of your armor. I do **not** recommend having more than 4-to-6 magazines (in a single layer) on your plate carrier - everything else belongs on your belt kit.

Your M.O. should basically be something like- set up a home base at the start of the SHTF scenario, whether you're bugging in or bugging out doesn't matter. In this home base is where you'll drop off the main part of your kit, especially the various heavy items not in constant use, such as cast-iron cookware and your long-term shelter setup. From there, infiltrate to where you're planning to scavenge, raid or ambush, carrying only your loadout and daypacks. On reaching the area, set up your covert patrol base/cache site where you drop off any sustainment gear. Perform your mission. Return to the patrol base, collect any gear you cached there and head home.

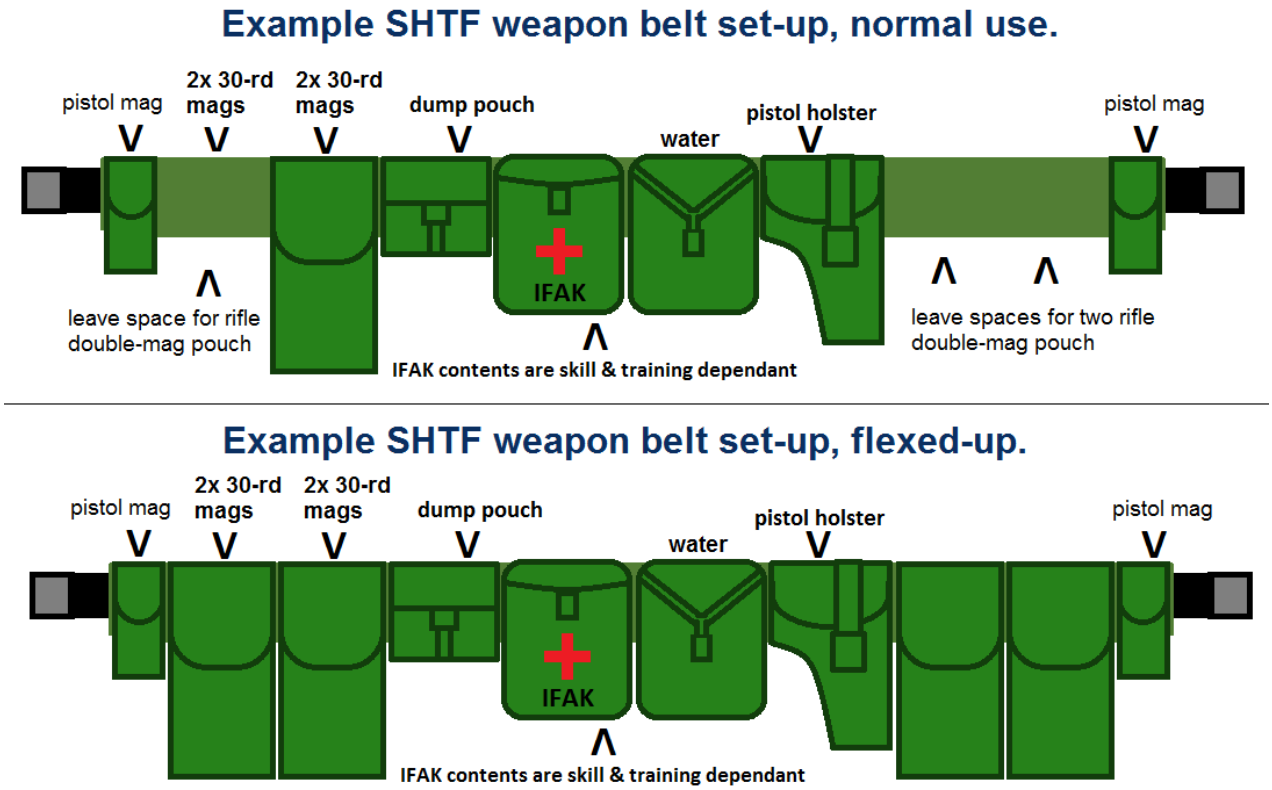
Plates don't magically prevent you from getting shot or dying, proper cover and maneuver do, not a relatively small piece of ceramic/steel. Save the armor for urban or vehicle ops, not innawoods. If you run low on ammo, break contact and come back with explosives, or think asymmetrically and avoid getting into a direct fight in the first place.

Weight saps speed, and the slower you are, the more likely you're to be caught/killed or worse! While you should certainly own a set of modern "lightweight" body armor, and use it where appropriate, I suggest using your armor in urban or vehicle-mounted situations, or when expecting attack, **rather than constantly**. An E-tool weighs less and protects you more - think about it.

From the ancient Greek hoplites (hyperlink) all the way up through the American Civil War infantryman, the overall weight carried by a foot soldier remained steady at about 40lbs (~20kg). There were few significant increases in the infantryman's load until the beginning of the 20th century. Then during World War I infantry loads increased by 50%, to over 60lbs (~30kg). World War II saw loads increase again, to 80–100 pounds (~40-50kg), depending on the weapons the soldier carried.

You need to get your loads back down to ~40lbs, and regain the warriors' lost mobility. Only carry the barest essentials, both in technology and sustainment - you're not gonna die because you skip one meal. If your overall combat load is over ~40lbs, you're doing something wrong. Keep your load low, and you'll run rings around your enemies. In training, if you find that you don't use a thing, don't take it with you next time. This is the easiest way to drop pounds from your combat loads - realistic training, followed up with a critical eye on what worked and what didn't.

Now, having stated all of that for your benefit, my suggestion for your basic gear set-up is this:
Firstly, have a weapon belt of some sort, on it put the following items (going clockwise from your front center) a pistol mag pouch, a double rifle mag pouch, another double rifle mag pouch*, pistol holster, pouch that fits a canteen, IFAK, dump pouch (if necessary), double rifle mag pouch*, double rifle mag pouch*, pistol mag pouch (see the diagram below). (*: situational)



Shoulder straps are optional, but they're very recommended because they make carrying the load *much* easier with a full ammunition load. The dump pouch is also optional, I personally prefer to replace it with another canteen pouch (mine have flaps over the top), even though I usually only carry one canteen on my belt and just use a camelbak (the other pouch is full of gear or protein bars), but many people like them and anyhow you can carry water bottles in a dump pouch. See the example diagram for ideas on how you can "flex-up" your belt if you're expecting trouble.

This allows you to carry 2+1 pistol magazines and 2+1 rifle magazines under ordinary conditions, and lets you "flex-up" if conditions worsen to carry 2+1 pistol magazines and 8+1 rifle magazines. You can also put additional magazine pouches on your armor, which you could throw on over the top of this when shit starts to go down. Call that an additional 3 double magazine pouches on the armor, for a total of 14+1 rifle magazines (up to 450 rds). Even without flexing-up the belt, throwing armor on over the basic belt gives us a decent 8+1 AR mags (that's 270 rounds).

Carry enough loose (bagged/boxed) ammo in your pack to refill all your rifle mags at least twice.

You can carry a decent fighting and basic sustainment load on a battle-belt like this, and can go on short patrols with nothing else, even without "flexing-up". If you lose or are forced to dump your ruck, always keep your battle-belt on and you'll be able to fight and survive from it - a well-set-up belt enables you to carry a decent amount of critical gear on you, reducing what you must carry in your pack. A properly-rigged battle-belt with harness hugs the hips and distributes the weight - 80% to your hips, the rest to your shoulders. The padded battle-belt sits a little lower than the old ALICE belt US troops used - sit it on your hips, so it hugs the upper pelvis.

A ruck sitting on top of your fighting belt distributes its weight through the belt the same way - the array of pouches on the back makes a nice 'ledge' on which a pack sits, which spreads its weight. Soldiers regularly carry very heavy rucks like this. There's many rucks you can wear this way, the main concern is to select one of the 'short back' design like the ALICE style or many modern patrol or RAID packs, rather than the alpine long-and-thin designs often popular with civilian hikers. You need to analyse why (and if) you actually need a 'full ruck' - the 3-day/72hr pack concept is generally far more realistic and practical and that type of pack will sit very nicely on top of a battle belt. They can be large but they're generally squat and usually sit "just right".

If you're carrying so much weight that you can't effectively do this, I advise you look at and fix ***that*** issue before you criticise the battle-belt/ruck combo. If you have a need to carry heavy non-divisible loads, then revisit the problem with an eye to your mobility: can you tow a pulk while cross-country skiing, or a small trailer while patrolling? Can you ride an ATV or a snow mobile? Can you perhaps source a mule or a horse to carry your heavy stuff?

In fact, the best addition you can make to your logistic transport line-up is the mule. Able to go anywhere a man can go. Resilient. Quiet. Refuels itself by eating grass. Fairly easy to breed more quickly. During WW2 and immediately after, militaries were eager to get rid of their pack animals, but in hindsight maybe that wasn't such a smart idea - mules are probably THE best option for stealthy off-road logistics, and are ideal to carry things like bulk water, ammo, or mortars.

An image I found online of someone's gear set-up similar to my own and the above suggestions, minus the pistol stuff: ►



Yes, I also own a chest rig for use in a vehicle, and so should you. Learn to select the right tool for the job depending on what you're doing.

Note that pistols are generally useless except at not much more than arm's length - reality just isn't like the movies and you're unlikely to hit anything with a pistol at much over 10 yards while under stress, and more likely at just half that. A pistol is generally carried by police or criminals as an implied threat, that threat being: '*Don't mess with me because I can shoot you if you do*'. Civilians carry pistols for the same purpose in many areas, obviously the non-verbal implication is directed at potential violent criminals, a deterrent even if concealed. However pistols are pretty useless for actual fighting. Generally speaking, in a post-SHTF situation, a pistol will be carried when a hidden weapon is needed allowing you to mingle with others, yet kill defensively at short range if/when there's a need to. Finally, remember a pistol is a *backup* weapon, which means carrying only minimal ammo for it.

Secondary (pistol) magazines need far less attention than your primary weapon: 2 spare pistol magazines is enough, perhaps 3 if they hold less than 10 rounds. You do **not** need more pistol magazines - the weight penalty is better used carrying another couple of primary weapon mags. By all means, practice your transition drills; that pistol can definitely do more than just prop up your ego, but your primary weapon will be the one doing the bulk of the work.

Select a pistol holster having good retention abilities, and use a lanyard to prevent loss if you drop it somehow. A flapped holster may be a sensible choice to prevent snagging. *add the bit about drop-leg holsters here*

The current mainstream emphasis on high-speed pistol draws and weapon transitions comes from the LEO/SOF emphasis on close urban assault. Honestly, as long as you can cleanly and smoothly get from fully-holstered to aiming/firing in about one to two seconds, there's no need to fuss over your pistol draw that much. You may think you're accomplishing something by blasting away but unless your rounds are on target, chances are you're just fucking yourself. The draw/raise/aim process does not need to be done in .001 seconds - if your target is armed and already aiming at you, you'll either have no chance to draw at all, or they won't be expecting you to draw. If they *aren't* armed, or aren't aiming at you, you have time. There are numerous historical examples of people like Bat Masterson, Wild Bill Hickok, Wyatt Earp, etc. back in the late 1800s who were ***not*** the fastest shots – there are multiple instances where their opponents were faster on the trigger but missing, while the folks listed were a little slower but put they actually their first round into the opponent and lived to tell the tale.

Carry enough loose (bagged/boxed) ammo in your pack to refill your pistol mags <u>once</u>.

133. Combat Logistics

3 Days of basic supplies for one man for patrolling and light combat, (not including body armor, water, rations and batteries) equals about 13lbs/6kg per man under most conditions. This also neglects including any sleeping and cold- or wet-weather gear. You'll need around 1 gallon/4L of water per day, per man - this includes drinking water and just enough to wash face and hands once per day. Count on an additional 50oz/1.5L of drinking water being needed in very hot or desert weather. All this water, consumable supply, and other gear quickly adds up, especially if you're carrying it.

During our "War on Terror" in Iraq and Afghanistan, it was interesting seeing that our soldiers, marines, etc., regardless of service branch, would usually drive or walk around on a "patrol" until the enemy decided to strike. Generally this would be an ambush (which is how IEDs were mostly used), indirect fire, or a sniper attack, sometimes followed by a short-range enemy assault.

Clearly the way our troops were acting is reactive, not pro-active and it's probably this passive outlook that ultimately led to our humiliating withdrawal from Afghanistan, and the poor post-invasion outcomes we saw in Iraq. However if you're able to operate as if you're under enemy observation at all times, utilizing camouflage and concealment, you can retain the initiative, as US troops did in WW2.

Given that many of the individuals in your group (especially as it grows after TEOTWAWKI) may suffer from age, obesity, lack of training, existing injuries and medical conditions and so on, and that you'll still need to be able to maneuver tactically under fire despite all that, I suggest a maximum total combat load per person of 35lb (18kg). This may or may not include the person's rifle, depending on personal fitness. If you carry too much of a load, you'll make bad choices when out on a mission - you won't move to the high ground for overwatch, your fire position won't be the best choice available, you'll take a knee for cover when you should go prone, you'll fail to see the bad guy hiding with his rifle under the bushes, etc.

This is how load weight intersects with physical fitness. You must balance your equipment weight so you can effectively operate without taking any shortcuts. Don't kid yourself and say that your fitness is as good as it could be, or even what it should be. After SHTF your nutrition will likely suffer as well, so trim the weight and trim it hard, otherwise you may go to ground right over a tripwire that you'd have seen if you weren't so exhausted from carrying so much crap.

Members shouldn't be loaded with (for example) their armor, plus 20 magazines, plus whatever. They should carry something like ~8 mags depending on mission, with a support team providing resupply as needed by truck, ATV, or horse (I suggest adding enhanced exhaust muffling to all vehicles).

The QRF can act as the resupply team for local patrols if you're using actual vehicles- a technical can carry far more food, water, and ammunition than anyone ever could in a ruck. The QRF should also provide for longer-distance casualty evacuation - it's really fucking hard to pick a guy up, gear and all, and carry him twenty-plus miles back to your base (and it takes forever), but dragging/carrying him for one or two miles and loading him into the back of a technical is doable.

Sleep and comfort gear is best kept minimal for short-duration missions - you're not camping, just getting some sleep as you make your way out to and back from your objective - a poncho/tarp and woobie/liner (plus a bug net in summer) should be all that's needed for overnight stays except in the coldest of winters (huddle together under the poncho/tarp and layer multiple woobies to keep warm).

With sleep gear you must consider the environment and the weather. You need to be able to carry it easily as well as put it up or take it down fast. There are different challenges in cold weather than there are in hot weather, which will depend on your local conditions. It's best to assume that it will snow, rain, or at least dew, and there's always the possibility of a drone passing overhead, so set up your tarp to shield from thermal also as a standard night procedure.

Sure, throw a toothbrush and toothpaste in your gear*, but there's no need to bring a full shaving and toiletry kit - you're not the military, nor do you need to copy that spit-shine garrison BS. You can only carry a limited amount and remain effective, and you then need to resupply, either from a mobile logistic team or a friendly location. Don't bring the logistic vehicle/s to the combat team as this endangers both, get the combat team to stealthily go and resupply from the logistic element. (*There's nothing worse than a 24hr operation that turns into 3 days with no tooth care or TP, then once you get back out you go on a "24hr" op again. Even without paste, you'll feel better and your teeth won't rot.)

134. Water In Combat

Dehydration is both easy to avoid, as well as easy to fall victim to. You can have the best hiking shoes, the best backpack, the best clothing, and then you set out with a little 20-oz bottle of water and you collapse from the heat as soon as you drank it all and now need to be helicoptered out from the middle of fuck-knows-where. The same goes for when it's cold - I've had to carry a dehydration casualty who collapsed to an aid station through winter woods and foot-deep snow, and it sucks. Without access to good drinkable water, your physical condition rapidly deteriorates, often in way less than a single day.

Remember: when you're out in the boonies or anywhere, **the only water that you have guaranteed access to is the water you're carrying on your person right then and there**. NEVER assume you'll have access to any other water than you are carrying, not from your home, not from your patrol base, not from natural sources, nothing – it's far, far too easy to find yourself cut off from sources of good water, even without any enemy action, even water carried by your QRF/logistic element. I have personal experience with having to carry a 5-gallon water canister (in addition to all the usual military crap) while infiltrating enemy territory on foot in 100-degree heat, just so we could be sure to have enough water without needing to be resupplied (which would have given away our exact location to the enemy) all because the local water was so bad.

Consider that an average person needs to drink a minimum of 90oz (about 3L) of water **every single day**, and nearly double in severe heat. Consider that most easily-accessible groundwater, and water in rivers, lakes, etc. in the US and Europe is polluted with a variety of harmful toxic chemicals which are often difficult to remove without a large fixed (and therefore hard to move) purification filter set-up. Plan your water load accordingly, and always carry a little more than you believe you'll need.

In cold/freezing weather, store water canteens and Nalgene bottles upside-down. This prevents the lid from freezing shut and ensures you'll be able to continue drinking as long as there's some unfrozen water in the bottle. Nalgene bottles are a better option in freezing conditions because of the wide opening, while Camelbaks tend to have the water in their hoses freeze solid, making them useless. Should the lid on a bottle freeze shut, tap it gently against a hard object a few times until it can be unscrewed again. Having one insulated canteen may be a good option in below-freezing temperatures, especially if it's filled with warmed water just before setting out (just one bottle insulated though).

135. <u>Other Gear:</u>

I cannot emphasize the need for eye protection enough. Safety glasses will protect your eyes from the damage done by everything from gas blown back by your rifle to the sand or dirt thrown up by enemy bullets, to getting a twig jammed through your eyeball like a shish-kebab while patrolling. While the're the best option and nice to have, you don't have to shell out big money for military-grade brand-name ballistic sunglasses - $5 gas station safety glasses (especially those made of polycarbonate) are still suited for the purpose, since they're designed to protect your eyes from flying fragments. Get a tinted set for sunny days, and a clear set for night-time use or when it's less bright. The first time a branch hits you in the face while you're messing about outdoors, you'll thank me.

Remember to store spare eyeglasses in your current prescription if you need them - the semi-blind are at a huge disadvantage in SHTF, so have at least two pairs of backups put aside in your current prescription. Use a hard case to prevent damage when they're not being worn. If you're broke right now, you can still replace your old glasses with new ones at least every three to five years on most insurance plans, and the old ones should go into your BOB/SHTF kit as backups.



Camouflage clothing is (*<u>generally speaking</u>*) overrated. Camouflage properly understood is a verb, not a noun– something you do, not something you wear. A camouflaged suit makes it easier for you to conceal yourself, but only if you understand the other principles of concealment. Basic hippy-style earth tones such as coyote brown or OD green (and the more brownish shades of gray in cities) generally work much better across multiple different environments than even the best camouflage clothing patterns. However, do keep a camouflage boonie hat handy with some netting attached, lightly garnished with a few strips of scrim cloth, twine, or jute to break up the distinctive outline of a human head. You should add some netting and similar light garnish to helmets, in order to break up the distinctive outline at a distance. Go easy with the garnish on both- use just enough to break up the silhouette a little, and to give more depth to any natural camouflage materials you might add.

Here's a primer on basic rural personal camouflage: **https://yewtu.be/jLZjbnhhvgQ**

Here's another, more infantry-related, one: **https://yewtu.be/QETRb9qe3js**

Use camouflage face-paint during your tactical operations. The US military seems to have forgotten face-paint even exists during its adventures in Iraq and Afghanistan – a shame, because the human face is likely the single most human-recognizable motif, even two spots and a curved line → **:)** are enough for us to see one. Disguising your face is one of the most important things you can do to not get shot. I personally prefer a camouflage neck gaiter to cover my mouth and neck, but the rest of my face also needs hiding. There's no need to get fancy - just make it not look like a face. A line of black down your nose, some wobbly black stripes across the rest, maybe with a couple of green blobs between, is enough to make your skull much less of a target. If you don't have camouflage face-paint, substitutes can be made using various local materials you may have to hand; many leaves on being crushed will yield a yellow-green stain and mud dries the color of the dirt from which it was made, dirty oil or grease wiped off a cold engine will serve for black. Even some burnt cork or soot will do the job, or crush a little charcoal and clay to make a fine powder and mix it into something that sticks, like sunscreen or sap.

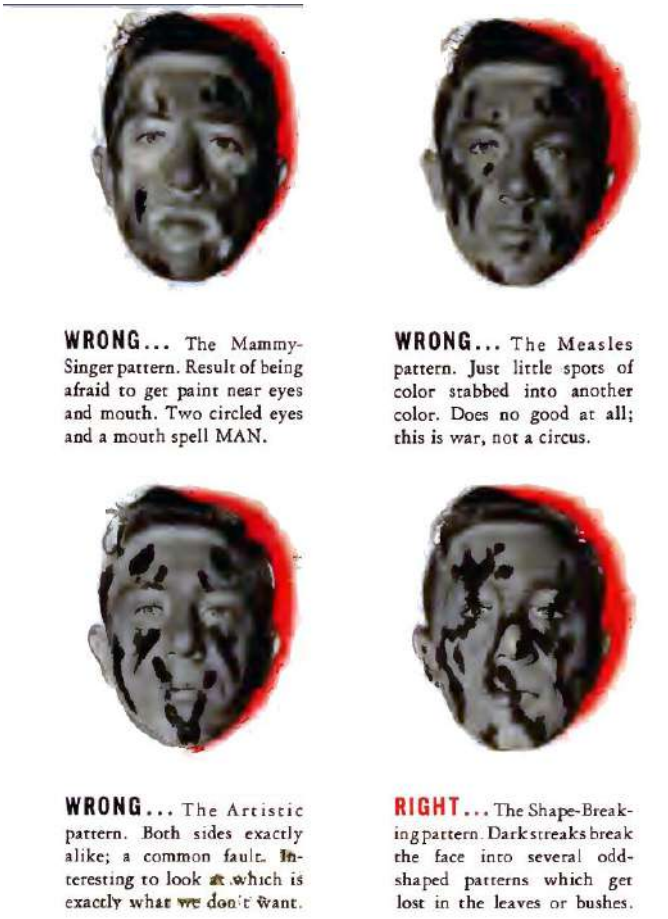


Image from the book: "*Camouflage for Marines*" by USMC HQ, 1944

Gloves will protect your hands from getting scratched up and hurt, preventing infections caused by bacteria and viruses entering the wounds. The specific type you use doesn't really matter, just wear whatever you can pick up at the hardware store or gas station that aren't in bright colors.

Bring and use an unscented soap like ivory. It's cheap, keeps forever and in emergencies can be used as catfish bait. Scents (including your sweat) can be detected by animals (both 2- & 4-footed). At least once a week, wash your clothing with minimal soap and plenty of water. Even without soap, washing removes sweat, dirt, and gritty particles that degrade the material's performance and damage the fibers. Take advantage of modern fabrics and materials like Gore-Tex to make life easier, and I strongly recommend the use of waterproofing spray on outer clothes, boots, packs and sleeping bags.

If you can afford it, any non-IR-emitting night vision gear will be worth its weight in platinum, no matter how old or limited it is. Even if it one day wears out, while it lasts it gives you a game-changing advantage against any hostiles. This is a pretty low priority however, and you should not use your limited funds on night vision gear if you don't already have a bug-out or bug-in location, or if you don't have the suggested other gear to defend that place.

136. Hillbilly Mad Max - Diy Body Armor

What if you're too poor to buy proper body armor plates or you live somewhere shitty where it's illegal to own body armor (*gayyy*)? Well, you can download and follow this video's instructions to roll your own: **https://yewtu.be/_7jiIQOgwtI**

If you can't get plates to shape the laminate you're making, you can watch his other video here: **https://yewtu.be/3tiSGslFKjg** and use that information to make a pair of molds.

If you add a layer of small ceramic tiles in the laminate at the strike face, it should cause rifle rounds to fragment. Remember to **make a test plate and thoroughly shoot it until penetration** to determine its protection abilities, before relying on this to potentially save your life. As long as it can withstand at least one non-AP rifle round, and a charge of birdshot (to simulate fragments), that should be sufficient for most people's needs, as long as you don't re-use it afterwards.

According to one commenter, "*the best combo I found is a fiberglass cloth strike face (anti-spall and fragmentation coating), then ceramic tile, double layer of 1/8" mild steel (performed better and deformed less than a single 1/4" layer), and additional fiberglass at the back. All fixed together with epoxy and backed inside of a plate carrier with a trauma pad*."

Something like this: / Fiberglass / Ceramic / Steel / Steel / Fiberglass / anti-trauma pad /

Thicker Polycarbonate or UHMWPE might do as a substitute for the steel layer, and oven baking aluminum makes it extremely hard (info from a former automotive industry toolmaker), so you might be able to use 1/4in or thicker aluminum layers as a replacement for the steel if you do that.

According to the comments of a fiberglass specialist with 8yrs experience: "*you should roll out the air bubbles between each layer of fiberglass, turn each layer of fiberglass at a 45-degree angle, wax inside of both outer plates, and don't clamp the plates so tight you press the resin out*."

And from yet another expert commenter, one in composite molding, "*You only want the total product to be about 30% resin by weight for optimal strength. Also, epoxy resin is preferable to polyester resin (Bondo). You get a little more pot life, and the epoxy takes longer to cure, but it's much stronger. The ideal situation would be to vacuum bag it, but if you don't have a vacuum set up, clamping is good enough. The main thing is to not have any void*s".

Author's tip: closed-cell foam like neoprene or even polystyrene in a layer at least 3/4-inch thick makes a good improvised antitrauma pad especially if you add a cloth cover for abrasion resistance. You won't need a trauma pad for uses other than wearable armor (eg. to armor the bed-bunker mentioned elsewhere in this book) - for those, the Ceramic + Fiberglass (+Steel/etc) should be enough.

From the video footage itself, we see that a half-inch-thick plate of plain fibreglass-epoxy composite stops shotgun rounds up to slugs all by itself, though it will not stop 5.56mm rounds (doing so would require adding metal and/or ceramic elements). This means a half-inch plate will stop most pistol rounds up to at least around 9mm/.45/.38 Special - the most common threat. Notice that in the video there was significant back-face deformation present after the composite plate was hit by the shotgun slug, so anti-trauma pads should definitely always be worn with any such home-made plates, but it's better to be nursing a broken rib than a sucking chest wound.

Good luck - you're probably going to need it if you're forced to rely on this after SHTF!

*137. **Selecting Equipment:***

Give a good deal of thought to selecting the right equipment. If you're even slightly unsure of an item you have not used, test it in an overnight backyard camp environment or perhaps in your local woods before venturing further with it. Ensure that any military surplus items you buy are new or in excellent condition, otherwise stick to the highest-level civilian outdoor products you can afford.

While you may be planning to bug-out to the wilderness, you'll likely have to start from an urban location, cross through an urban location at some point during your escape, or you may even have to re-enter an urban location for example to forage for supplies, therefore it's important to tailor your dress and equipment with the situation to make you appear to be just another civilian nobody trying to get by.

Regarding your "Bug Out Bag"; it should be a personal project reflecting your personal needs. Good equipment at good prices can be had at camping stores, surplus stores, gun shows and even better deals can be had by mail order or online on places such as amazon, ebay, or the actual product manufacturers, **if** you inform yourself first. It's a ***terrible*** idea to buy some cutesy pre-packaged "survival kit/bag" dump it in a closet and forget it until "the big day" comes - it will be full of mostly junk, and most of what you paid for it was mark-up. Instead, assemble your own based on needs and skills, test it out by camping and hiking and then adjust the contents accordingly- more important than just having something, is knowing what to do with it.

I recommend watching this video by a former Green Beret laying out his items for an "*ultralight bug-out bag*" which weighs a mere 18lbs. (~8kg): **https://yewtu.be/5EJQQPKHtJw**
I also recommend this rather long 45min video for more ideas: **https://yewtu.be/x7nq7UqsJv4** , finally here's a (49min) video of a SERE expert's 2 week + loadout: **https://yewtu.be/mPq5tS7-upk**

You should scrutinize each and every single item you pack and pick the lightest available gear that still fits your intended use and need for durability to minimize total weight. Backpackers, especially ultralight backpackers, have a lot of useful tips on reducing the weight of equipment. Ultralight backpackers travel more miles and spend more time in the outdoors than even the US Army Rangers do in places like the Appalachian Trail, the Pacific Western Trail, etc. under all sorts of (often horrible) weather conditions.

Lighter stuff means you can use more of your weight budget for ammo, water, etc. While not everything backpackers do will apply to your situation, and much of their gear is far too flimsy for our purposes, do some research, copy whatever you find relevant to your needs, and your knees and feet will thank you.

For this reason, avoid carrying a tent unless you're in the arctic or high mountains, and use a tarp or poncho instead. This also provides you with better situational awareness of your surroundings. If bugs are an issue use a mosquito net and, in the jungle, use a lightweight hammock. Some natural oils such as peppermint oil, lemongrass and citronella act as an effective and natural bug repellent, mix some up in a small plastic bottle and keep it with you – other plant extracts that work include crushed mint and catnip - apply often to keep the mosquitos and other bugs away.

One item where the lightest option is not the best would be your sleeping bag- while down-filled sleeping bags *are* the lightest, and squash down to the most compact size, they have a major issue for our needs: if the insulating down fill gets wet even a little bit, all its insulating properties vanish. Therefore, your sleeping bag should ALWAYS be synthetic-filled. **DO NOT USE GOOSE-DOWN SLEEPING BAGS**. If (when) it gets wet, you'll freeze. You freeze, you die.

Caring for a sleeping bag starts with proper storage. Never store your bag by stuffing it into its stuff sack and tossing it in the closet. The sustained compression of the insulation, whether down or a synthetic, will cause the bag to lose its loft. Instead, store your bag by hanging it in a closet, stashing it under your bed (laid out flat, not stuffed), or by placing it in the extra-large cotton storage sack sold by most sleeping bag manufacturers. Heat and compression combined are worse than compression alone. Don't store your stuffed sleeping-bag in the trunk of your car during the summer, as you might be tempted to do if you're alternating between backpacking pilgrimages in national parks with visits to the city fleshpots during a two-week vacation.

Clothing can also be used as part of your sleep/shelter system- by wearing some of your clothes at night, you can use a lighter sleeping bag, and won't have to change into cold clothes in the morning. If you can't avoid getting your day clothes wet, carry some dry "sleep" clothes in a waterproof bag and in the morning change back into wet gear. **Never wear wet clothing to bed**.

If using a mosquito net, take it and loosely put it inside the largest plastic trash bag you can find, and then spray a whole can of permethrin or any long-lasting outdoor surface spray insecticide into the bag. Close and tie off the opening, shake the whole thing around for ~10 min, and leave in there to dry for a week or so. After that, keep your net inside a plastic bag to avoid losing the insecticide coating during storage. When the mosquito net gets used, you'll be amazed at how many dead mosquitoes and other nasties you'll find dead on the ground around it in the morning. The coating will last for many months of use if you keep it reasonably dry - just don't lick the net!

138. Look After Your Feet:

Footwear is one item where pinching pennies can literally **kill** you when SHTF - civilian hiking boots are almost always far superior to military boots, that's why SF guys wear them.

"Waterproof" footwear will eventually fail, since water can enter through the top whether it splashes in when you step through puddles, or by running down your legs in the rain, therefore ensure that the boots you choose are quick-drying once they do get wet. Most experienced backpackers consider waterproofed boots or shoes to be more suitable for cold weather and winter conditions, where the risk of cold feet from outside moisture outweighs the risk of wet feet from interior perspiration. In warm weather or in dry climates such as the American Midwest, select footgear that breathes well - one type that comes highly recommended are Merrel's unlined MOAB boots, they were extremely well-thought of by USSOCOM members in Iraq.

Rather than trying to keep your feet dry at all costs via waterproofing, ensure that your footgear dries rapidly once it gets wet, and that you have plenty of dry socks to change into. Gore-Tex gaiters help keep water out of boots in the rain or walking through wet grass and undergrowth.

Note that lightweight boots make it easier and less tiring to walk in them all day long- as Horace Kephart wrote in his 1906 book, Camping and Woodcraft, "*Weight is even more important on the feet than the back… in ten miles there are 21,120 average paces. At one extra pound to the pace, the boots make you lift in a ten-mile tramp, over ten tons more footgear*". (if you don't believe Horace and I, then see "*Energy Cost of Backpacking in Heavy Boots*" by S. J. Legg and A. Mahanty, published in Ergonomics, Vol. 29, Issue 3, 1986, pages 433–438).

If the boots aren't comfy right out of the box, or if the ones you like weigh over 2lbs (~1kg) per foot, try again with a different and lighter pair (ideally, they should weigh under 1.5lbs each). As a rule of thumb, your footwear should ideally last for an average of about ~500 miles (800km) of hard walking. To extend their life, fortify their most common blowout points before use with shoe glue (not superglue!) or additional stitching, based on your past shoes' wear-&-tear.

Clean boots protect your feet, repel water better, and last longer. Clean them after each and every mission. To clean your boots, remove the insoles and remove or loosen laces. Soak in a tub of warm water. Add a half-teaspoon of regular dish detergent (i.e. Dawn). Lightly scrub with a bristled brush - toothbrushes or dish brushes work well, but don't scrub hard. Ensure you clean all crevices and seams. Rinse several times to ensure all soap is removed, and air-dry them out of direct sunlight. NEVER DRY BOOTS NEAR A FIRE OR OTHER RADIANT HEAT.

Air out your boots frequently - take out the insoles when you dry them. If your boots are soaked, stuff them with dirty socks or long strips of clean dry cardboard to try and wick some of the water out overnight. After-market insoles will protect your feet better than most standard insoles as having a better shape. Ideally, use boots one size larger, and lay the after-market insoles over the standard ones. Remove the standard insoles for winter use if you wear two sets of socks. Tying a simple overhand knot at the end of your bootlaces will stop them coming out of their holes when you take the boots off.

Learn to recognize the warning signs of blisters, and pre-empt them. Keep your toenails short and rounded, and keep your feet clean, warm, and dry. Wash your socks daily (you don't even need to use soap if you're on the move) and rotate between them at least once a day, leaving the previous set to hang and dry on the outside of your pack. When you stop for meals, take your socks and boots off, turn the socks inside out, and let them dry for a couple of minutes. Use foot powder or talcum powder to keep feet dry. At night, put on a separate set of clean, dry, sleep socks. When your feet get wet, such as by crossing a stream, stop and dry them ASAP - your mission (and survival) will fail if you end up a casualty from infection.

Synthetics wick water poorly, but they do resist water absorption. This can be a desirable property, especially if you're using a non-waterproof system where you expect your feet to get wet and then want them to dry out quickly. Thinner synthetic socks, such as those made with polyester (e.g., Coolmax), tend to dry very quickly. Synthetics are somewhat effective as insulators and lose little of their insulating properties when wet.

Wool socks are warmer than synthetic socks and do a much better job wicking water away from your feet. Wool does take a while to dry when wet, but wool socks generally feel drier to the touch and less clammy than synthetics. In addition, the reaction of water molecules during their adsorption to wool fibers results in heat storage -and release upon evaporation- making thin wool socks quite comfortable in warmer temperatures. Most wool hiking socks available are actually a blend that includes synthetic yarns as well. When buying socks, select those made from merino-wool fibers- these are finer, itch far less than traditional “ragg” wools, and wick moisture better.

139. Carrying It All:

Backpacking guides and manuals contain good advice in how to pack your backpack to ensure at least some comfort when walking long distances with heavy loads cross-country, so I won't go on about it at length here, other than to say put any heavy items in your ruck closest to the body and be sure to read the ruck selection guide in this book carefully.

Ensure things like food and medicine are broken down and divided amongst the team, so that if one bag is lost, it doesn't turn a problem into a catastrophe. When packing kit always distribute the weight evenly. Remember someone besides an adult male (eg: your wife or kids) may be forced to start traveling without you. This includes cross-loading equipment and supplies within your team.

Don't overload one guy because "he can take it" - eg; if you're lucky enough to salvage an M240, then EVERY team member should carry at least a 100-200 round belt for it during operations, in addition to the 600(+) the gunner carries. Consider that an M240 GPMG and 800 rounds of linked 7.62x51 weights about 56lbs total, not including any packaging – divide that ammunition up among the team. A trick used by Australian and New Zealand soldiers in Vietnam to carry MG belts was to slide the ammunition belts inside old bicycle inner tubes to keep them clean and dry in the mud and wet. This also eliminates any shine from the brass which might give you away. One last item with any belt-fed MG is that you really, really, need at least two and preferably three or even four men to look after it – the gunner with the MG and a basic load of ammo, and the assistant(s) carrying the rest of the ammo and a spare barrel or two. Between them they should have at least 1000 rounds for the MG. The assistant also carries a rifle or carbine for protection if the MG has a stoppage during battle.

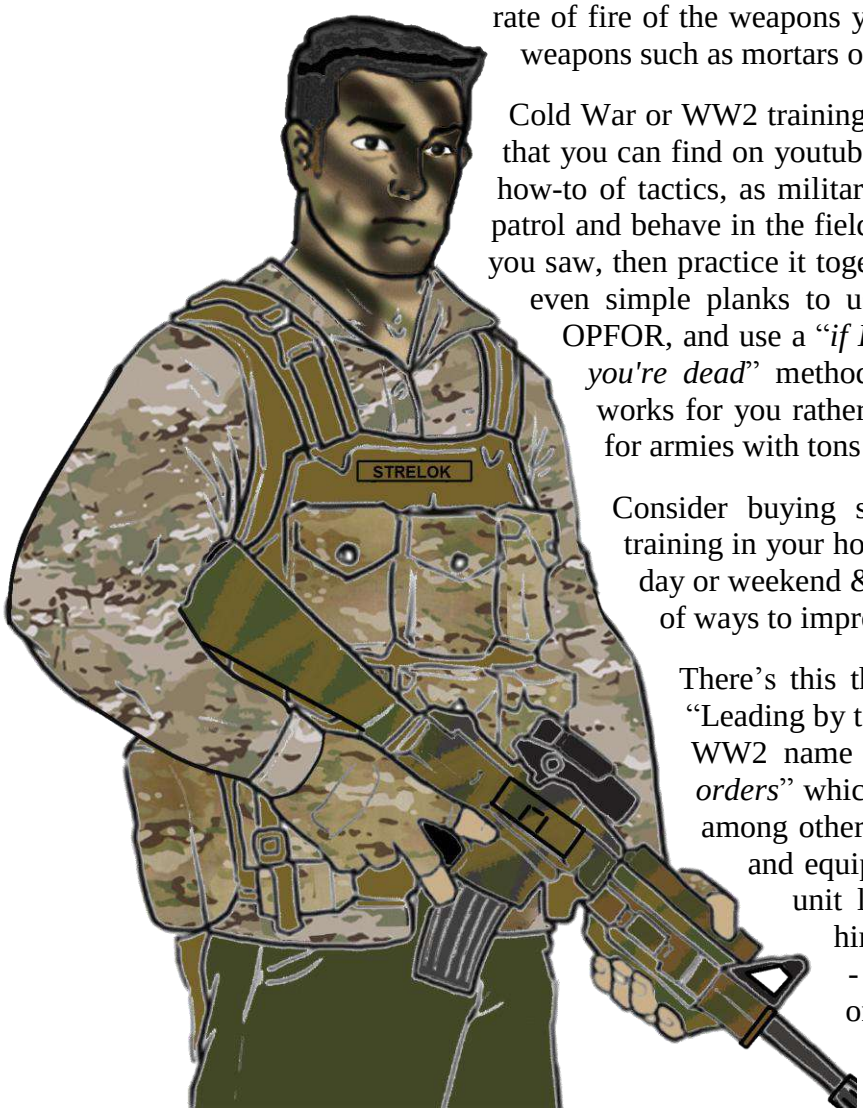
Consider buying or improvising a small cart or similar to carry heavy/bulky gear – I'm aware of one person who adapted an old golf club trolley from a thrift store to carry heavy loads cross-country to their bug-out location. They did this by removing the golf club bag, installing a metal mesh platform, and replacing the original wheels with larger tires. Now they can place a load of several duffle bags on the trolley and pull that along as well as the gear they have in their pack. Such a device would be especially useful if you had to bring gear for small children with you, or if you wanted to move a large amount of ammunition to cache in a hidden location.

140. <u>Tactical Training:</u>

Don't buy gear to post pics of it on instagram*, buy it to use it. You need to put it through its paces. The absolute worst time to do a gear shakeout and figure out what works and what doesn't is when your life depends on it. Go to the range and shoot in the prone with it. Put it on and get some miles of running and hiking done while wearing it. Put a pack on over it. Climb into the back of a truck wearing it. Run an obstacle course. There's lots of things that look cool but are functionally terrible and the only way you'll know is by doing. It does no good if the first time you put it on is when SHTF, and you tear a muscle because the load sits unevenly, or your lower back goes out because you weren't used to the weight. How awesome will it be to learn you can't holster your pistol with your vest set up the way it is, or your rifle catches on a pouch every time you move, or you lose half your shit every time you bend over? Testing yourself and your gear is a MUST. (* in fact, just <u>don't</u> post anything involving weaponry or survival online, ever, ***period***.)

Study history - there are good reasons why certain forces have been disproportionately effective in recent conflicts. Study their strengths and see how you can apply these. The southfront video on how Hezbollah is organized ("*Hezbollah – Capabilities and Role in the Middle East*" **https://yewtu.be/tzBZpNxkui8**) is a must-see for information on how to organize and integrate a post-SHTF militia organization into society. While it doesn't go in depth into their military tactics, in the part on their military it does give you a great example on how shit's organized in command structure and logistics for a rather small structure (basic Hezbollah units are 252 men strong). It's probably not the only method they have, but they use parallel cells with the same functions that aren't aware of each other, so if one is compromised, they can use another.

Here's a video of the most basic tactics used by German squads in WW2. This is perhaps the most applicable initial tactics system for your group to use due to the relatively low rate of fire of the weapons you'll have available, and your lack of heavy weapons such as mortars or artillery: **https://yewtu.be/-rKRt5zVZgw**



Cold War or WW2 training videos like some of the old US or UK ones that you can find on youtube are another good place to get the hands-on how-to of tactics, as military manuals rarely show you how to actually patrol and behave in the field. Gather your team, watch and discuss what you saw, then practice it together with rifles (with the bolts removed!) or even simple planks to use as "guns". Have one or two guys play OPFOR, and use a "*if I can hold aim for three seconds, bang-bang you're dead*" method. This lets you flexibly try what actually works for you rather than be limited to military doctrine written for armies with tons of artillery and air support.

Consider buying some airsoft guns for your group to run training in your home base area occasionally - camp there for a day or weekend & practice attacking your defenses, then think of ways to improve them, and your tactics.

There's this thing Germans call "*Führen mit Auftrag*" = "Leading by task/mission" known to US officers by its old WW2 name "*aufstragtaktik*" or the term "*mission-type orders*" which is one of the things that makes Hezbollah, among others, so effective despite their limited numbers and equipment: you order a unit to do a task and the unit leader makes decisions about how to do it himself since he can gauge the situation better - this enables small units to act incredibly fast on their own initiative.

For a historical example, many/most parachute drops during WWII were clusterfucks of biblical proportions, and under normal circumstances such fuck-ups lead to disaster. However, as noted by German generals at the time, paratroopers would form up from ones and twos into fire teams, squads and then rump platoons and carry out their primary mission. It helps when individual paratroopers were actually told the overall mission, i.e. "*take and hold bridge such-and-such*", and the reasons behind the mission.

ISIS was interesting in this regard because they used simple mission-type executive orders from the top combined with social-media flash-mob assembly for their attacks, with dispersion to multiple vehicles beforehand to avoid air strikes. Mission-type orders are something American officers have been trying to go to for decades, but we always get dragged back into using the French WW1 Western Front system of micromanagement from 2+ layers above (even down to squad leader calls and spot checks on uniform and equipment). But of course, when starting your own little army, you can start fresh, just like ISIS did.

Do note that the Iraqis are using (in addition to their own corrupt baggage) the USSR rigid tactical template (also based on an old French system from the 1800's) coupled with the American massive staff meeting system that in both peacetime exercises and war consistently results in enemy columns roaring past the Command post before they finish the meetings. All their officers have time to do is get a seat on the escape plane out, leaving their men leaderless – not a good thing for Arabs.

The leaders among your force should be encouraged (as long as power and other facilities last) to play realistic tactical videogames, specifically, the *Close Combat* series by Atomic Games, on the hardest possible settings. As related by Major Brendan B. McBreen USMC in his article in the Marine Corps Gazzette (Sep 2004) while student at the School of Advanced Warfighting;

"*I have learned more about small-unit infantry tactics from the "Close Combat" simulation than I have from thirteen years of Marine Corps infantry experience".*

He goes on to say:

"*'Close Combat' permits a player to fight hundreds of scenarios, make thousands of tactical decisions, experiment with different tactics, and learn from his mistakes."*

- and all this far more cheaply than live-fire exercises. Once your militia leaders have understood and internalized these blood-free platoon-level tactical lessons, then comes the time to practise them with men, hopefully to push into the future the day iron and blood are used to prove if the lesson was truly learned. Having played one of the series, I can honestly say it would definitely help teach even grunts some valuable skills.

On youtube look up ex-military guys like Brent0331 - he's an ex-crayon eater who actually goes into some tactical stuff that might be useful to you, such as setting and reacting to an ambush. Channel is here: **https://yewtu.be/channel/UCl1a1FOUwxh5pOsGOZw37Cg**

Your rifle, boots, and webbing should ***ALWAYS*** be within your arm's reach (or at least that of one of your buddies such as when you search a captive).

Machine gunners should fight like they have an MG and units shouldn't sit in the same position for hours in a meeting engagement - aggressively advance around and through enemy positions.

Forming your bases or overnight hides in a Y or X shape (rather than a circle, triangle or square) forces any enemy to walk into an L- or V- shaped ambush, regardless of their direction of approach.

Team leaders & scouts should carry a magazine or two loaded only with tracers to designate targets if possible. Mark the magazine with colored tape to avoid confusing it with the rest. Get your team to practice Rhodesian ("Drake") shooting - ricochets can kill, but overs are just wasted.

Be aware that the Rhodesian ("Drake") shooting method is not appropriate in all situations - it's designed for use in a 'free fire' environment were background and friendlies in depth aren't considerations to worry about. In a SHTF environment you may or may not have to worry about background and innocents, depending where the fight is taking place. In such situations you must ensure you pro-actively visually identify every single enemy before firing and only fire aimed shots. Not that cover shooting is un-aimed, but it's just less discriminatory over where the rounds actually go, which is kind of the point of it.

Work on your rate of fire – resupply ~~probably~~ will not be easy. Rapid fire is about 1 aimed shot every 2 seconds (1 minute for a 30-round magazine) with sustained fire being 1 aimed shot every 5-6 seconds as long as targets can be found. It's far too easy to massively exceed these rates.

One of the key problems with battle drills is 'locating the enemy'. Once you come under fire and carry out your immediate RTR response, before you can move on to the 'winning the firefight' phase, you have to first locate the enemy. The traditional procedure for doing this is by observation – fire – movement.

Observation: this is literally observing visually and by sound to try to locate the enemy firing point/s. The 5 S's, movement, muzzle flash, kicked up dirt (muzzle blast) etc are all utilized observation methods to find them.

Fire: failing observation, fire control orders are issued to designate fire into likely enemy cover or positions. The idea is to elicit a response which can then be followed up on.

Movement: this is where the squad observes while one or two riflemen dash forward, changing position, to try and draw enemy fire. This is used when enemy fire has stopped. If there's no response at this point, it may be because the enemy has used 'shoot and scoot' tactics to leave the immediate area, and movement may be continued cautiously at first, using bounding overwatch. If still nothing, continue movement as appropriate.

Effectively, Rhodesian Cover Shooting fits into this context as a TTP (Tactics, Techniques, Procedures) used by Rhodesian infantry to win the firefight, adapted to their bush conditions – a way of speeding up the process of locating the enemy. If the enemy was seen, he'd be rapidly killed as part of the initial return fire reaction (controlled pairs or appropriate response to put him down). If the enemy was not seen, time would not be wasted observing to try and find him in the relatively close bush conditions – riflemen would simply initiate a methodical cover shoot as per their SOP (Standard Operating Procedure). They'd expend a couple of magazines rapidly shooting up any cover close – near – far. Vitally, this was not just to flush any enemy, though occasionally this would happen, but really to simply kill the enemy in place. Once the cover shoot was complete, skirmish line type movement would commence to fight through the enemy positions.

Divide your group into permanent teams of three to five men, preferably by getting them to group themselves once the members know each other. Don't be afraid to give the teams specific and clearly-laid out tasks, whether it's a recon/observation mission or an infiltration/ambush.

Learn the technical solutions applied by the US military to its recent conflicts in Iraq and Afghanistan, or older conflicts such as Vietnam, and think of low-tech ways to counter them- the movie Blackhawk Down should inspire you to a few possibilities. You're unlikely to fight the government post-SHTF (if ever), but regional post-collapse actors will likely use similar methods.

141. Health And Medical Care Out Field:

The old adage goes, the more you know, the less you take. With first aid, the opposite is true- you can take more if you know how to use it. Only take things that you have been professionally trained to use, so get out there and (as stated earlier) take a first aid course or two - youtube videos aren't training!

Shooting well means nothing if you or your buddies are dead so take a first aid class or two. These are readily available basically everywhere thanks to the Red Cross. Start here: **https://www.redcross.org/take-a-class/first-aid** by taking the Red Cross basic course and then their advanced course and CPR course. Then take a "*Stop The Bleed*" course and one of the field-medic courses offered by the Medical Corps - modestly priced and led by ER doctors with 30+ years experience, they'll teach you how to deal with stuff the Red Cross courses don't, e.g. gunshot wounds.

You can also find other medical aid courses online by searching for key words like "*stop the bleed", "first aid", "TCCC", "wilderness medicine"* and so on, and once you're there talking to the instructors running the courses to learn what kind of more advanced courses are available. Often the people teaching the basic courses provide more advanced courses as well. Finally, try to have at least one person in your tribe take EMT training. Volunteering with local emergency medical or ambulance services is the best way to do it , this will offset training expenses since they're usually paid positions.

Everyone should have on their load-bearing gear a basic Individual First Aid Kit (IFAK), or Blow-Out-Kit (BOK) containing items to treat immediate medical **emergencies**, defined as something that will kill you in 30min or less if untreated, such as a gunshot wound. **Never** use your IFAK/BOK to treat someone else – always use **their own** IFAK/BOK to treat them. This should always include at least one tourniquet (ideally a windlass type like the CAT-T or SOF-T), two chest seals, a couple of pressure bandages (eg. the so-called Israeli bandage), a few rolls of gauze, a set of nitrile (***not*** latex) medical gloves, an ACE bandage if there's room, and of course, the professional medical training I harped on about. Always remember that:

IT'S MORE IMPORTANT TO BE TRAINED TO USE THIS GEAR THAN TO HAVE IT!

Once you've been trained, you should actually carry the gear you were trained to use - the attitude of "*I don't need to carry it, I can improvise one when I need it*" is a bad idea (especially when it comes to tourniquets) because the purpose of improvization is to make do with whatever you can scrounge up after the purpose-designed items run out - eg, you use both of your buddy's TQs to stop him bleeding out after an IED, but you realize you really need a third too.

Never skimp on money buying medical gear that's supposed to save your life - a cheap $10 tourniquet is **not** the same as a $35 one. There's no need to have things like haemostatic dressings unless you have been professionally trained on the use and the pros and cons of such equipment. As you become more and more skilled in first aid and life-saving skills, you may end up including other items, such as medical shears, IV starter kits, dedicated needles for tension pneumothorax, etc. etc. Leave "advanced" first-aid and medical gear like sutures, abdominal wound dressings, etc to your team medic. **If** your team medic is trained to use it, each team member should however carry a 1000mL bladder of IV saline fluid in their pack to avoid overloading the medic. In your pack is also where to keep a separate "boo-boo" kit of stuff for treating minor, non-emergency health issues – that's where your band-aids, antibiotic ointment, foot-blister kit, and so on live.

Depending on the climate in your area, your level of physical exertion, diet, and fitness level (or lack thereof) you may need an additional source of electrolytes, such as powdered Gatorade or similar (this is also useful if someone doesn't wash their hands and comes down with diarrhea). Especially if you're fat and unfit, you'll sweat heavily when trying to move tactically on a warm day, causing you to become electrolyte-deficient which will make your muscles cramp. If you're deficient enough, your heart can stop beating. Even salting your food may be insufficient to replenish the sweat caused by such a lack of fitness, and therefore a level teaspoon of powdered electrolyte supplement in your canteen cup mixed with water 2-3x daily or so may be necessary to prevent fainting or worse. However, don't add electrolyte drink powder directly to your canteens, as I know from bitter personal experience that this will permanently leave a taste similar to that of dirt or mold in your plastic canteens, which even bleach and drain cleaner can't get out.

For those living in hot areas, a major risk that is both very easy to fall victim to and very easy to avoid is heatstroke and heat exhaustion - the first symptoms are dry mouth, headache, dizziness, drowsiness, irritability, and confusion, often accompanied by nausea and vomiting. The victim then generally collapses and suffers delirium before slipping into unconsciousness. In early stages the skin is hot and sweaty, and in later stages is hot and dry. Prevention couldn't be simpler: drink plenty of water frequently and avoid overheating as much as possible. The cure consists of two parts: bringing the victim's body temperature down and rehydrating them. To do this, place them under shade, remove outer clothing, wet them down and fan them, and apply cold wet cloths to their forehead, armpits, and groin in order to lower their body's core temperature. If there's a body of cool water nearby dunk their body in it. Should you see immediate improvement in their condition, make the victim drink plenty of water and keep them in the shade until their body temperature returns to normal. Thereafter avoid strenuous effort in the heat for the following 24h. If you **don't** see rapid improvement, continue cooling the victim and begin hydrating them by applying about half a gallon of cool, clean water mixed with two tablespoons of salt rectally (yes, up their butt) until there's noticeable improvement in their condition, then proceed as previously described – team medics should carry a spare camelback bladder for this purpose. Seek priority medical aid for the victim either way as it's a potentially lethal condition that causes permanent brain damage if not resolved immediately.

Again, **prevention is very simple**: drink lots of water, often.

Shaving is a total waste of time when fighting, and any nicks and scratches on your skin could lead to an infection - save it for when you're on base again. The same goes for your hair, which you won't really be able to wash in the field - trim it before operations, and wash and trim again once you return to base after each mission.

Assessing casualties in a TEOTWAWKI environment.

There are whole medical encyclopedias dedicated to assessing patients. This is not one of them, but it will serve as a reasonable basic pre-primer for your efforts to learn this stuff. The assessment is based on what time and resources are available to you.

The first, and far too often ignored, is the Eyeball Assessment. What you see in the first few to twenty seconds of contact with your patient:

- Are they conscious? Alert? Do they know where/when they are, and what's happening?
- Are they breathing? And: are they breathing normally? Gasping for air, etc.?
- Are they bleeding anywhere?
- Do they have any massive fractures or obvious, unnatural deformities?
- What color is their skin, is it normal nail-bed pink, or pale, or yellowish, etc. etc.?

…in short, can they walk, talk, and basically function normally?

This is a Go/No Go evaluation, because it determines how severe their condition is, and the scope of any further efforts.

I suggest you download and print out this *Simple Triage And Rapid Treatment* (START) system which was developed for use during Mass Casualty Events - a Mass Casualty Event being defined as ANY event during which the demand for medical care exceeds the immediate available resources, and which could be as little as one patient, especially under TEOTWAWKI conditions.

https://chemm.nlm.nih.gov/chemmimages/StartAdultTriageAlgorithm.gif

This simple algorithm enables one person to triage multiple patients in a few seconds apiece, with only a handful of color-coded triage tags needed to determine rather exactly your medical future, enabling treating personnel to focus on helping the worst first without wasting precious limited resources on those have, or will soon, die. There's multiple videos on YouTube that cover START Triage (this process) – a quick survey shows they're all pretty awful (poor quality, lousy presenters, boring as fuck), but pick one and watch the whole thing all the way through, because they cover the information you need despite sucking.

142. The Number One Killer

The biggest historical killer of soldiers before WW2 was not being shot/stabbed, it was disease, usually dysentery, cholera, typhoid, etc. all of which cause diarrhea. Diarrhea takes just three days to kill you by dehydration and as with most things, the best medicine is prevention - wash your hands, be disciplined when making cat holes to shit in, and prepare your food & water properly. Just because your last 10 canteens from the river were fine don't mean the next one will be too. Just because you don't get sick when you wipe your ass and don't wash your hands at home doesn't mean you can do that innawoods. Same goes for anything your buddy touches with *his* hands:

Wash your hands - don't shit yourself to death.

Finally, and most important of all- always, *always*, ***ALWAYS*** carry a bottle of Loperamide aka Imodium to field with you. While it should not be relied on for long-term use, it's very useful if you suddenly come down with diarrhoea in the middle of an operation, and should enable you to complete the raid or whatever and return to base, where you should seek further medical help.

Remember that diarrhoea is the body's way of purging itself of intestinal toxins such as those caused by unwelcome soil bacteria, so if you come down with it the cure is not to stop the diarrhoea, it's to replace the body's lost fluids and electrolytes – if you don't have purpose-made electrolyte fluid replacement mix (eg. Pedialyte, sold at drugstores for children's diarrhoea) mix a tablespoon of salt and a tablespoon of sugar or honey into 32oz/1L of lukewarm water, and drink it down even though it tastes awful. Do this at least hourly until the diarrhoea stops.

Medical supplies: as a minimum, in your home base you should have a first-aid kit large and varied enough to meet the needs of your household. You might need to add extras, depending on your particular risks - e.g., snakebite kit, thermal blankets for treating hypothermia, etc.

Build up a good supply of any medications you require to stay alive and functioning, as well as any backup medications such as antibiotics, anti-diarrhea and anti-nausea medicines, pain killers and others you might need while cut off from your regular medical suppliers. Be sure to keep a stock of anti-parasitics and de-wormer as well. A year's worth is best, if possible. Keep this stash in a cool, dark, dry place and rotate in new supplies, since drugs deteriorate over time, and some (eg. some antibiotics) become toxic when they start to degrade. If you're into alternative/natural medicine or see a possibility that you may come to lack "civilized" medical supplies in the event of a collapse, there are various books on the topic, which I suggest researching before buying.

Include some good non-specialist books on diagnosis and treatment in your home library. Try to include a Red Cross first aid book, the Merck Manual and the Physicians' Desk Reference. Also strongly suggested are the Hesperian Foundation's "*Where There's No Doctor*" and Bradford Angier's "*How to Be Your Own Wilderness Doctor*" - a few more are included in the "suggested reading" section at the end of this book.

For the record, the number **two** killer in the pre-modern era was infection, and the no.1 cause of those infections was dental issues. Get your teeth sorted out before SHTF and keep them in good order - you'll regret putting off getting a filling at the dentist if the tooth has to be removed in someone's garage with nothing but a shot of whiskey and a set of pliers.

Gearfag Training 102

This infographic will address placement of gear and training with your plate carrier or rig. This is a very large topic with a significant amount of variations but I will do my best to address as many as I can.

Placement

Ammunition and medical supplies take preference in terms of placement, followed by hydration, followed by everything else.

Front - Common items affixed to the front of a kit include spare ammunition, secondary weapons, admin pouches, grenades, and communications. Ensure that you can still achieve a good supportive prone position and that you can low crawl at least 100 meters without losing or rendering inoperable any equipment. Don't be that fucking asshole who hot mikes every single time he drops into the prone on his operator as fuck push-to-talk.

Support Side - Common items affixed to the support side of a kit include many items previously mentioned as well as hydration in the form of water bottles or canteens. It is also one of the most if not *the* most common location to place medical supplies in the form of an IFAK. I personally like to have my IFAK bumped as far forward on my support side so that I can also access it with both hands if necessary.

Dominant Side - Common items affixed to the dominant side of a kit include many items previously mentioned; however, if a secondary weapon such as a pistol is worn it is advisable for the wearer to ensure they can easily and quickly access this weapon as well as reholster it without serious interference from additional pouches. This may mean moving or removing excess items or lowering the secondary weapon with either a drop-down/duty holster or a drop leg holster. If choosing or forced to wear a drop leg please consult Rob Pincus' "Proper Adjustment of Drop Leg Holster" and Panteao Productions "Travis Haley Pro-Tip: Drop Rig Holsters" on youtube. As a measurement of time I would say it should take no more than 2 seconds to draw and discharge your secondary weapon. If you can't achieve this you need to practice with your draw more or to move any interference out of the way.



Drop-Down/Duty Holster



Drop Leg Holster with bad adjustment

Rear - If mounted in a vehicle it is advised to keep the rear of your kit clear of any attachments or attach only thin ones such as a hydration bladder. Ensure that the drinking tube of your hydration bladder will not be rendered inoperable by low crawling. Unless your radio is huge I would highly suggest not mounting it on the rear of your rig where you cannot easily adjust it.
If dismounted and carrying a pack/ruck it is in your best interest to train while wearing it so you can practice moving to cover/engaging with it on you. It makes no sense to train with nothing on your back when in actuality you fully intend to wear a pack/ruck into the field.

Movement and Accessibility Drills

Now that you've got everything placed it's time to give it a basic test. Begin by putting all your gear on.

In the standing position practice getting a quick and consistent sight picture, reloading your primary within 5 seconds, transitioning to your secondary within 2 seconds, all of the above while moving forwards, backwards, left, right, and diagonally. Practice leaning out from behind cover (unpracticed individuals often lose balance when leaning), moving around the confines of a home, sprinting short distances (if you have anything that's very loose you'll notice it here and should do your best to tighten it down), and entering and exiting vehicles.

Before conducting drills in the kneeling position practice dropping down to a knee repeatedly until this is a smooth process. Don't let the excess weight drive you down so fast you go and bust your kneecap. Alternate which knee you drop down to as terrain may force you to take your non-prefered knee. Practice reloading your primary within 5 seconds, transitioning to your secondary within 2 seconds, accessing your IFAK, leaning side-to-side and above cover, dropping into a prone position, and returning to a standing position in order to sprint a short distance.

Before conducting drills in the prone position practice dropping down until this is a smooth process. Don't let the excess weight cause you to knock the wind out of yourself or slow your ability to engage. For anyone wearing headgear such as a helmet if you have not properly set this up your sight picture may be interfered with in the prone. Practice reloading your primary within 5 seconds and transitioning to your secondary within 2 seconds; this may seem difficult if you must roll over on your side to gain access which is exactly why you need to put in the practice. Practice accessing your IFAK and snapping up to a standing position in order to sprint a short distance. Go and low crawl at least 100 meters, if anything falls off your kit or breaks you need to rearrange your equipment.



Finally, you should at least familiarize yourself with doing the above actions with your primary weapon shouldered on your support side. If you must peek around a corner on your support side or your dominant hand is injured the experience of using your other limb for any of these tasks should not be alien to you.

You do not need to be a true ambidextrous shooter; however, the first time you try drawing your secondary weapon with your support hand should not be when you are gravely injured and an enemy is rapidly advancing upon you.

Live Fire

When you're sure that simple movement drills won't undo you or your kit it's time for you to hit the range. Practice some of the above listed basic skills while effectively engaging targets. Buy a shot timer so that you can see how fast you are performing. Practice these skills in conjunction with other gearfags and see who can get the best time as well as the most accurate hits; being fast isn't all there is to shooting.

143. Some Final Tips And Tricks (In No Particular Order):

144. Bibliography And Suggested Reading

Note: Ideally, having paper hard-copies of these is preferred, since electronics might not function for very long after an extended SHTF event.

TITLE	AUTHOR	ISBN:(s)	OTHER SOURCES
Poverty Prepping: How to Stock Up for Tomorrow When You Can't Afford to Eat Today	Susan Gregersen		found on libgen
the **CD3WD** database	various	n/a	https://
The Fate of Empires and the Search for Survival	Sir John Glubb	ISBN: 085-1-58127-7 ISBN:13: 978-0-85158-127-9	https://people.uncw.edu/kozloffm/glubb.pdf
Prepper's Survival Retreats	Charley Hogwood	ISBN: 978-1-61243-749-1	found on libgen
Forging The Hero: who does more is worth more	John Mosby	ISBN: 5-800-11578-977-8	only available from: https://warhammersixpress-com.3dcartstores.com/
The Reluctant Partisan Volumes 1, 2, & 3	John Mosby		only available from: https://warhammersixpress-com.3dcartstores.com/
SHTF Intelligence	Sam Culper		
MAGS: the People part of Prepping	Charley Hogwood	ASIN: B00G70F2X2	https://z-lib.is/book/3314892/5c53d2
The Art of War	Sun Tzu		https://www.gutenberg.org/files/132/132-0.txt
The 36 Stratagems	Various ancient Chinese guys		https://changingminds.org/disciplines/warfare/36_strategems/36_stratagems.htm https://steve8988.homestead.com/files/36strategies.pdf
The Prince	Niccolo Machiavelli	(written circa 1525AD)	found on libgen, at the Gutenberg Project, or your local bookstore or library
Take Back Your Government	Robert Heinlein		A guide to practical politics based on the writer's 1930s experiences.
On Rhetoric	Aristotle		The oldest systematic work on the skill of persuasive speech.
How To Win An Election	Marcus Cicero		It worked in ancient Rome, it'll work for you.
The People's Pottage	Garet Garrett		(1953) Available online at Mises.org Library of Congress Card No.: 53-5405
The Edible Ornamental Garden	John E. Bryan & Coralie Castle	ISBN-10: 912-2-38461 ISBN-13: 978-0-91223-846-3	https://archive.org/details/edibleornamental00brya
Total Resistance	H. Von Dach	ISBN: 873-6-40217 ISBN-13: 978-0-87364-021-3	can be found on libgen
U.S. Army Ranger handbook	US DoD	ISBN: 160-2-39052-5 ISBN-13: 978-1-60239-052-2	2006 ranger handbook is better for guerilla tactics but 2017 ed. focuses more on squad level tactics and how to fight once rounds start flying. Get both.
FM 7-8 The Infantry Rifle Platoon and Squad	US DoD		Get the 1992 edition. The new one has a different number code and is less useful.
Eating Soup with a Knife	LTC John Nagl		
Guerrilla Warfare	Mao Tse-Tung		

We Die Alone	David Howarth		Essential reading for understanding the reality of E&E, based on ww2 experience.
FM-90-10-1 Infantrymans Guide to Combat in Built Up Areas	US DoD		can be found on libgen
Training for the Fight	MSG Paul Howe		
The Tactical Trainer	MSG Paul Howe		
The Knowledge: How to Rebuild our World from Scratch	Lewis Dartnell	ISBN:978-0-698-15165-9	Penguin Press, also seek it on libgen or the site z-lib.is
Where There's No Doctor - A Village Health Care Handbook	David Werner, Carol Thuman, Jane Maxwell	ISBN: 0-942364-15-5	The Hesperian Foundation 1919 Addison St., #304 Berkeley, California 94704 bookorders@hesperian.org Also here if link still works: https://mega.nz/folder/6QUlVLiK#XSwJInrF_3lF07ajiC8A1g
Where There's No Dentist	Murray Dickson	ISBN: 978-0-942364-05-7	The Hesperian Foundation 1919 Addison St., #304 Berkeley, California 94704 bookorders@hesperian.org
Wilderness Medicine	Paul S. Auerbach		found on libgen, or hardcopy at bookstores
Ditch Medicine, Advanced Field Procedures for Emergencies	Hugh L. Coffee,	ISBN: 0-87364-717-3	Paladin Press
The Doctor's Guide to Surviving When Modern Medicine Fails	Dr. Scott A. Johnson	ISBN: 978-1-63450-052-4	skyhorsepublishing.com
Ambush! A Professional's Guide to Preparing and Preventing Ambushes	LtCol J. Potter, Gary Stubblefield & Mark Monday	ISBN: 13: 978-1-58160-724-6	Former (1994) title: "*Killing Zone*"
The Five Stages of Collapse	Dmitry Orlov		
SURVIVE: The Economic Collapse	Piero San Giorgio		
Osprey Elite 100: World War II Axis Booby Traps and Sabotage Tactics	Gordon L Rottman	ISBN-10: 184-6-03450-7 ISBN-13: 978-184603-450-3	found hardcopy at bookstores
Osprey Elite 168: World War II Street-Fighting Tactics	Stephen Bull	ISBN-10: 184-6-03291-1 ISBN-13: 978-184603-291-2	found hardcopy at bookstores
Osprey Elite 236: Vietnam War Booby Traps	Gordon L Rottman	ISBN: 9781472842459	found hardcopy at bookstores
Violence of Mind: Training and Preparation for Extreme Violence	Varg Freeborn, Lauren Bechtel	ISBN: 057-8-20200-X ISBN:13: 978-057820-200-6	https://library.lol/main/46164BB7F79D22BEC81893D2325CAAF1
The Home Guard Training Manual	John Langdon Davies	n/a (1940)	https://library.lol/main/06E646235DF420A9F680B24C322FA0DA
Home Guard Manual 1941	Campbell McCutcheon	n/a (1941)	https://epdf.pub/queue/home-guard-manual-1941.html
Enjoy the Decline	Aaron Clarey	ISBN: 1480284769	https://longfiles.com/seplyh4vqsj7/Enjoy_the_Decline_Accepting_and_Living_with_the_Death_of_the_United_States.epub.html
Encyclopedia of Country Living	Carla Emery	ISBN: 1632172895 ISBN-13: 978-1632172891	https://gen.lib.rus.ec/book/index.php?md5=FAA02845BD8A247280F8F18525886D2E
Coup d'État; A Practical Handbook	Edward Luttwak		found on libgen, or hardcopy at bookstores
Life After Doomsday; a survivalist guide to nuclear war and other major disasters	Bruce Clayton		

Primitive Toothcare	Rowan WalkingWolf, PhD		https://yggdrasildistro.wordpress.com/
Battle Leadership	CPT Adolf Von Schell	n/a (published 1933)	found on libgen
Take Back Your Privacy	David Haywood Young		
Lindbergh on the Federal Reserve (aka The Economic Pinch)	Charles Lindbergh	ISBN: 0-939482-15-0	found on libgen, or hardcopy at bookstores
Web of Debt	Ellen Brown		
This Is Not Propaganda: Adventures in the War Against Reality	Peter Pomerantsev	ISBN: 978-0-571-33865-8	found on libgen, or hardcopy at bookstores
Prepping for a Suburban or Rural Community : Building a Civil Defense Plan for a Long-Term Catastrophe	Michael Mabee	ISBN:1482731215 ISBN-13: 9781482731217 eBook: 978-1-63003-462-7	found on libgen, or hardcopy at bookstores
Dumbing Us Down	John Taylor Gatto	ISBN: 0-86571-448-7	found on libgen, or hardcopy at bookstores
Erectus Walks Amongst Us: The evolution of modern humans	Richard D. Fuerle	ISBN 978-1-60458-121-8	pdf@https://libgen.rs/book/index.php?md5=7FF54D09BDBF485EAE9683B2E4818326 epub@https://libgen.rs/book/index.php?md5=3998D1EA96E4CA0F26E13023ECD75402
The 10,000 Year Explosion	Greg Cochran, H. Harpending	ISBN 978-0-465-00221-4	found on libgen
The Seneca Effect: Why Growth is Slow but Collapse is Rapid	Ugo Bardi	ISBN: 978-3-319-57206-2 eBook: 978-3-319-57207-9	(A Report to the Club of Rome) found on libgen
Civil War II - The coming breakup of America	Thomas Chittum		found on libgen, or hardcopy at bookstores
The Ultimate Resource (1 & 2)	Julian Lincoln Simon	ISBN 0-691-04269-1 ISBN 0-691-00381-5 (pbk).	
The Tigers Way: A U.S. Privates Best Chance for Survival	H. John Poole	ISBN: 9780963869562 ISBN: 0963869566	Best source is amazon. Ignore Poole's ninja obsession.
Democracy - the God That Failed	Hoppe		
The Handbook of Chlorination and Alternate Disinfectants	George Clifford White	ISBN: 0471292079	
The Way Things Work	David Macaulay		Houghton-Mifflin Publishing
Centrifugal Pumps: Design and Application	V. S. Lobanoff and Robert Ross		Gulf Professional Publishing
Marks Standard Handbook for Mechanical Engineers	Eugene A. Avallone & Theodore Baumeister		McGraw-Hill Publishing
America's Decline: The Education of a Conservative	Revilo P. Oliver		http://www.vanguardnewsnetwork.com/Instauration/AmericasDecline.pdf
Resistance Manual; Assessing Revolutionary and Insurgent Strategies	USASOCOM		found on libgen
The Strongest Shall Survive	Bill Starr		
The Purposeful Primitive	Marty Gallagher		

Starting Strength	Mark Rippetoe		
Combat Rifle Marksmanship Exercises	Andy Stanford		
Surgical Speed Shooting	Andy Stanford		
Convict Conditioning	Paul Wade		
FM 3-25.150 Combatives	US DoD		
FM 3-05.222 Special Forces Sniper Training and Employment	USASOCOM		
FM 21-75 Scouting, Patrolling, and Sniping, 1944	US DoD		
Composite Warfare: The Conduct of Successful Ground Force Operations in Africa	Eeben Barlow	ISBN: 978-1-928211-76-1 ISBN: 978-1-928211-77-8 (ebook)	found on libgen, or as hardcopy at bookstores
Stormtroop Tactics	Bruce Gudmundsson		
Green Eyes, black Rifles	SGM Kyle Lamb		
Stay in the Fight!	SGM Kyle Lamb		
Combat Tracking Guide	John Hurth		
Tracking: A Blueprint for Learning How	Jack Kearney		
Tracking: Signs of Man, Signs of Hope	David Diaz		
Unschooled: Raising Curious, Well-Educated Children Outside the Conventional Classroom	Kerry McDonald, Peter Gray	ISBN: 978-1-64160-066-8	found on libgen, or as hardcopy at bookstores
Helping Children Succeed: What Works and Why	Paul Tough	ISBN: 978-0-544-93528-0 eISBN: 978-0-544-93531-0	found on libgen, or as hardcopy at bookstores
Small Animals: Parenthood in the Age of Fear	Kim Brooks	eISBN: 9781250089564	found on libgen, or as hardcopy at bookstores
Empty Planet; The Shock of Global Population Decline	Darrell Bricker, John Ibbitson	ISBN: 1-472-14295-0, 978-1-472-14295-5	found on libgen, or as hardcopy at bookstores
Unrestricted Warfare (超限战)	Col. Qiao Liang, Col. Wang Xiangsui		1999 - found on libgen, or search the internet
USEFUL FICTION BOOKS:			
Indian Country	Kurt Schlichter		**Note**: fiction, but will give you a very basic understanding of what makes a resistance work.
Tools for Survival	James Wesley Rawles	ISBN: 978-0-698-19695-7	
How to Survive the End of the World as We Know It	James Wesley Rawles	ISBN: 1-101-14773-3	